



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

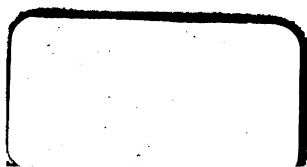
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

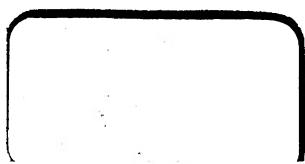
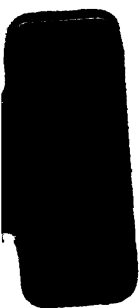
### About Google Book Search

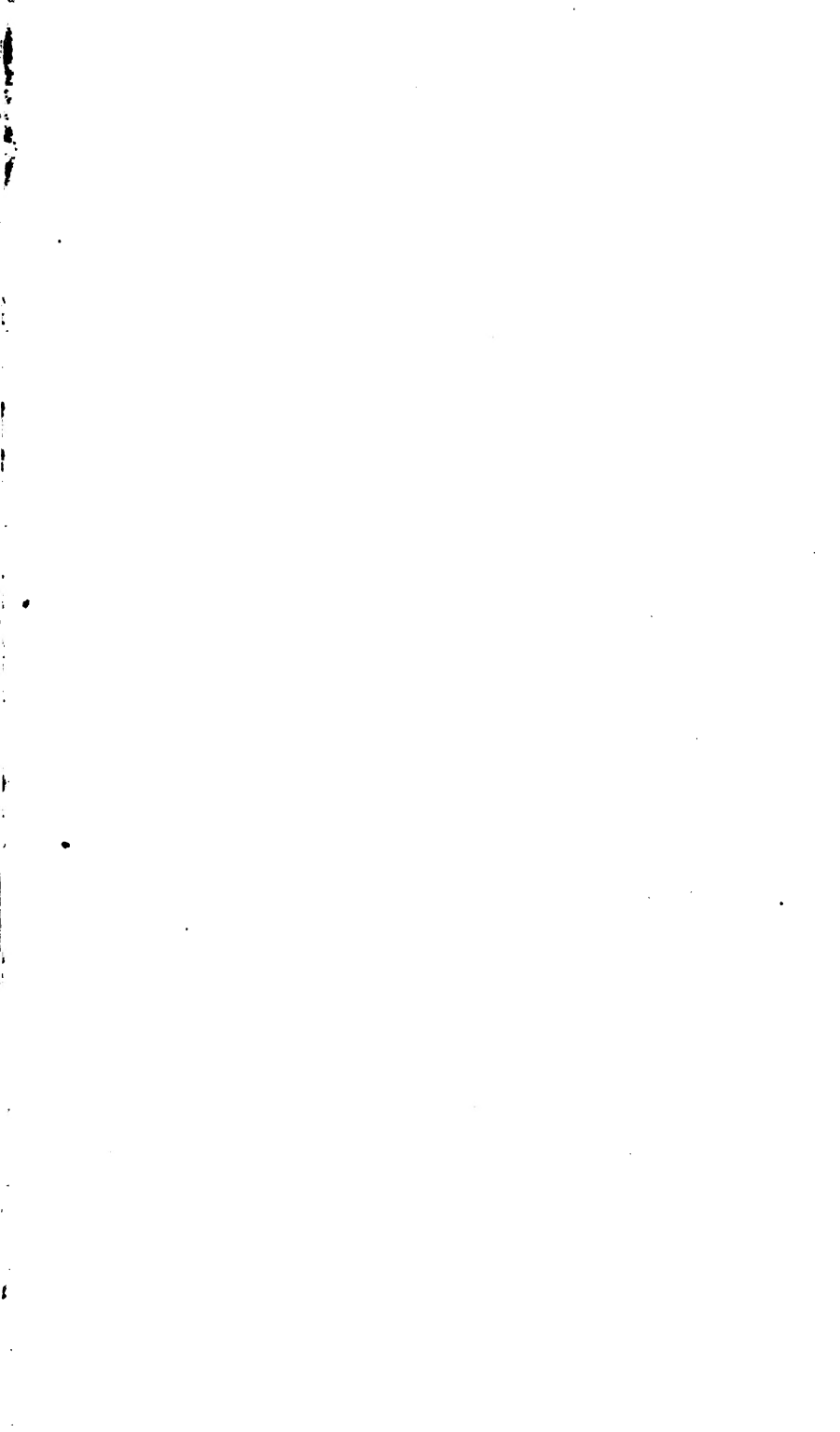
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





1911







THE  
MODERN PART  
OF AN  
Universal History,  
FROM THE  
Earliest Account of Time.

VOL. XLII.

WOW  
WOW  
WOW

THE  
MODERN PART  
OF AN  
Universal History,  
FROM THE  
Earliest ACCOUNT of TIME.

Compiled from

ORIGINAL WRITERS.

---

By the AUTHORS of the ANTIENT PART.

---

VOL. XLII.

---



---

L O N D O N :

Printed for T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH, A. MILLAR,  
JOHN RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER, B. LAW and  
Co. T. LONGMAN, and C. WARE.

---

M.DCC.LXIV.



THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION

500 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK, N. Y.

1910

NOV 10 1910

1910

---

---

# Modern History:

BEING A

## CONTINUATION

OF THE

# Universal History.

---

### The HISTORY of HUNGARY.

**T**HE modern *Hungarians* are descended from the ancient *Hunns*, whose origin and emigrations are related in the Antient History. Though the *Hunns* were entirely subdued by *Charlemain*, yet they were not utterly extirpated by that conqueror, as some authors pretend; on the contrary, he gave orders to spare the common people<sup>a</sup>; many of whom, in order to be free from paying tribute, consented to become Christians<sup>b</sup>; for whose service he caused a church to be built, and dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, without the walls of the city of *Buda*. Their country, indeed, during the long continuance of the war, was greatly depopulated, their nobility and princes destroyed, and their chief taken prisoner; so that this once flourishing nation, which formerly possessed all the countries from the east part of *Germany* to *Thrace* and the *Euxine-Sea*, and from the *Adriatick* gulph as far north as *Sarmatia*, was then reduced within the limits of the present kingdom of *Hungary*, which is bounded towards the south by the river *Drave*, on the north by the *Carpathian* mountains, which divide it from *Poland* and *Russia*; on the east by *Transilvania* and *Walachia*, and on the west by *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*. The river *Danube* runs

*The Hungarians from whom descended.*

*The bounds of the kingdom.*

<sup>a</sup> SAX. CRANTZII, lib. ii. c. 16.

<sup>b</sup> BONFINIUS, Dec. i.

## The History of Hungary.

through the middle of the country, and divides it into two provinces, called the *Upper* and *Lower Hungary*. The counties in the whole kingdom are reckoned fifty-seven, many of which were formerly subject to the dominion of the *Turks*; but by the conquests of prince *Eugene*, the emperors have again recovered almost the whole kingdom. There are here very few cities, and these but thinly inhabited; but the kingdom abounds with villages and towns as large as cities, and full of people.

*The Hungarians rebel against the descendants of Charlemain.*

So far was this nation from being extirpated by *Charlemain*, that we find they rebelled against his son *Lewis the Pious*, who, when he was holding an assembly of the states at *Aix la Chapelle*, was informed, that *Lindeutus* had prevailed with the people of *Lower Hungary* to revolt<sup>c</sup>. *Lewis*, immediately dismissing the assembly, went with an army to the *Danube*, and, marching along that river, engaged and defeated *Lindeutus*, whom he afterwards pursued to the mountains of *Transylvania*, whither the rebel had retreated. *Lindeutus*, finding himself unable to resist the arms of the emperor, sued for peace, which he obtained, and was generously pardoned.

A.C. 889. We do not read of any expedition of the *Hungarians* after this, till the reign of the emperor *Arnolphus*, who is said by *Luitprandus* to have introduced them into *Germany* and *France*; though *Bonfinius* affirms, that they rebelled against *Arnolphus*<sup>d</sup>, and while the *Franks* were weakened with intestine divisions, over-ran *Germany*, sparing no age or sex, burning the cities, and pillaging the churches of their wealth. Afterwards they invaded *France*, where they committed the like ravages; and, returning with their spoil through *Bavaria*, defeated the emperor *Lewis III.* near *Augsburg*. Four

A.C. 893. years afterwards, we find them assisting *Leo* the emperor at  
A.C. 902. *Constantinople*, against the *Bulgarians*<sup>e</sup>. In the year 902, the *Hungarians* hearing of the divisions in *Italy* between the two contending kings, *Berengarius*, duke of *Friuli*, and *Guido*, duke of *Spoletto*; they entered that country by the pass of *Friuli*, and ravaged that part of *Lombardy*. *Luitprandus* relates, that not thinking themselves powerful enough to engage the numerous forces of *Berengarius*, they quitted *Italy*, and wintered in *Pannonia*; from whence many of their countrymen having joined them, they returned in the spring, and, having defeated *Berengarius*, who endeavoured to oppose them, they took *Aquileia*, *Padua*, and *Verona*, without any resistance, and marched as far west as the river *Tisno*. But

*They invade Lombardy, but retire upon receiving a sum of money.*

<sup>c</sup> BONF. Dec. i. l. 10.  
vol. x. p. 634.

<sup>d</sup> Idem ibid.

<sup>e</sup> BARONII Ann.

## The History of Hungary:

*Berengarius*, having again assembled a numerous army, prepared to oppose them; upon whose approach the barbarians, thinking themselves unequal to the *Italian* forces, retreated precipitately over the *Adda*, and sent to *Berengarius*, offering to deliver up all their booty, provided he would allow them to march home in safety: which request being denied, they continued their retreat to the river *Medodocus*, where being again refused the liberty of marching home in safety, their despair drove them to the resolution of attacking the *Italians*; and dividing their armies into three bodies, they surprised *Berengarius*, and entirely routed his forces. Being thus a second time masters of that part of *Italy*, they took and plundered *Treviso*, and having suddenly built some boats; they likewise made themselves masters of *Venice*; but failing in their attempt upon the island of *Clodia*, they retired to their camp at *Padua*; and *Berengarius* consenting to pay them a large sum of money, they quitted, for that time, *Italy*.

A FEW years after, the *Hungarians* were again invited into *Italy* by *Albericus*, prince of *Etruria*; who, though he had repulsed the *Saracens* from *Naples* and *Calabria*, had been expelled from *Rome* by a faction of the nobles. The *Hungarians*, upon his invitation, immediately collected an army, and entering *Italy* by *Priull*, marched from thence to the *Flaminian* way, pillaging and destroying the towns through which they went; but, instead of marching to *Rome*, they turned aside into *Etruria*, which they miserably ravaged with fire and sword, carrying off with them an infinite number of people into slavery; and having thus learned the way into *Italy*, for several years after they invaded it annually, for the sake of booty; till *Berengarius* II. desirous of freeing *Italy*, his country, from those incursions, concluded an alliance with them.

The *Hungarians*, having made a peace with the *Italians*, turned their arms against *Germany*; and the *Chronicle of Minden* makes mention of their incursions into *Saxony*, in the year 908. *Arnulphus*, duke of *Bavaria*, having led them towards the *Rhine* against the emperor *Conrad* I. who had formerly taken his duchy of *Bavaria* from him, and obliged him to fly with his family into *Hungary*<sup>f</sup>. In the year 916, they again invaded *Germany*, and, among other ravages, burnt the church of *Bremen*<sup>g</sup>. *Henry the Fowler*, in the beginning of his reign, to secure his dominions from the incursions of these barbarians, made a truce with them for nine years, and consented to pay them a sum of money annually. About

*They are again invited into Italy by Albericus.*

A.C. 908.  
*They invade Germany.*  
A.C. 916.

<sup>f</sup> MEIB. Rer. Ger. Script. v. i. p. 558. SAX. CRANT. l. iii. c. 3. & ADAM BREM. lib. i. cap. 46. BARON. ANN. V. X. p. 694.

## The History of Hungary.

this time, *Berengarius II.* having been expelled his kingdom by *Rodolphus of Burgundy*, whom the discontented *Italians* had called in to their assistance, fled to the *Hungarians*, his allies, and begged their help to recover *Lombardy*. *Berengarius* having continued in exile three years, at last returned to *Italy* with an *Hungarian* army, under the command of *Salardus*, who, wherever he marched, ravaged all with fire and

A.C. 924. *They make an irruption into Italy and burn Pavia.* sword; and having made himself master of the city of *Pavia*, which was then the royal residence, and very populous, he gave it up to be plundered by his army; and afterwards setting fire to it, of all the inhabitants, only 200 were saved, who redeemed their lives by paying eight bushels of silver, picked up from the rubbish of the houses, and forty-three churches which were destroyed. *Berengarius* dying this year, the *Hungarians* quitted *Italy*, and crossing the *Alps* with intention of going into *France*, they were inclosed in a valley, and cut off by *Rodolphus of Burgundy*, and *Hugh* prince of *Arles*<sup>b</sup>. Some years afterwards, the truce made with the emperor *Henry* being expired, the *Hungarians*, some say to the number of 100,000, invaded *Germany*; and leaving one half of their army to besiege *Jechebourg*, they marched with the rest into *Saxony*. But *Henry* assembling an army, and hearing the

A.C. 933. *They are entirely routed in Germany.* *Hungarians* were encamped at *Mersburg*, marched against them, and taking the advantage of a fog, fell upon them unexpectedly, killed 36,000 of them on the spot, and drove several thousands of them besides into the river. Those who were left at the siege of *Jechebourg* being informed of this defeat, retreated immediately in great confusion, but were mostly cut off by the country people<sup>i</sup>. This expedition of the *Hungarians* is variously related by several authors, but they all agree, that at *Mersburg* they received a signal defeat; in consequence of which, *Germany* was freed from their incursions for several years after. In general, the *Hungarian* history, during that period, is very obscure and uncertain; there is no mention made of the internal government of their kingdom, or who were their princes or rulers; they are only known to exist by their incursions upon their neighbours the *Germans*, *French*, *Italians*, and *Bulgarians*; no enemy hav-

A.C. 937. *They invade Italy, but are defeated near Capua.* ing penetrated into their own kingdom for more than a century, it remained a quiet nursery for those roving warriors. THE *Hungarians*, notwithstanding their defeat in *Germany*, four years after invaded *Italy*, marching down as far as *Capua*

<sup>b</sup> BAR. Ann. v. x. p. 707. <sup>i</sup> Ibid. v. x. p. 719. LUITPRAND. l. ii. c. 8, & 9. MEIB. Rer. Ger. Script. v. i. p. 247, 641, & 648. SAX. CRANT. l. ii. c. 8. BONF. Decad. i. l. 10. p. 107.

without meeting with any resistance. Having ravaged that country, from thence they went to *Beneventum* and *Nola*, plundering and destroying all before them; and having burnt the monastery of *Casinum*, they obliged the monks to redeem themselves by parting with their most valuable effects, which they had concealed, an enumeration of which is given by *Leo Ostiensis*. The Hungarians returning again to *Capua*, encamped for twelve days upon the banks of the *Liris*, or *Garigliano*; and, loaded with booty, went from thence into the territories of the *Marfi* and *Peligni*, by whom they were surprized, and almost entirely cut in pieces, the few that remained marching with precipitation out of *Italy*. The same year another body of Hungarians invaded *France*, where they committed great devastations, and carrying off many prisoners, returned to their country<sup>k</sup>.

THE next expedition of the Hungarians that history mentions, was in the year 949, when, under the command of A.C. 949. their king *Toxis*, the father of *Geyza*, their first Christian king, *Toxis the king of the Hungarians invades Germany*, they entered *Italy*. *Berengarius III.* not being then in a condition to oppose their arms, sent his son *Albert* to *Toxis*, to offer him a large sum of money, provided he would leave the kingdom. *Toxis* agreeing for ten bushels of silver, *Berengarius*, by a capitation-tax, raised that sum from his subjects, which the barbarians receiving marched out of *Italy*<sup>A.C. 985.</sup>. Some years afterwards, the Hungarians being informed that the emperor *Otho* was engaged in reducing his rebellious son *Ludolphus*, they entered *Germany*, and pillaging and burning the country as they went, they passed the *Lech*, and besieged *Augsburg*, which then was very weakly fortified. *Otho*, who had conquered and pardoned his son, was at this time in *Saxony*; but being informed of the invasion of the Hungarians, he immediately assembled an army near *Augsburg*, and attacking the enemy, after an obstinate dispute, he totally but is defeated routed them, and pursued them to the river *Lech*, where seated great numbers of them were drowned. The following days near Augsburg he continued the pursuit, and surrounding the villages, whether they had fled in small bodies, he cut them all off; few, or none, of the great multitude that had invaded *Germany*, returning to their own country. After this signal victory, the emperor returned to *Ratisbon*; where, as a terror to future invaders, he caused three of the Hungarian princes, whom he had taken prisoners, to be hanged<sup>m</sup>: and going

<sup>k</sup> LEO OSTIEN. l. i. c. 58. <sup>l</sup> BONF. Dec. i. l. 10. p. 109. BAR. Ann. v. x. p. 755. <sup>m</sup> BONF. ibid. p. 109. BAR. Ann. v. x. p. 766. SAX. CRANT. l. iv. c. 6. MEIB. Rer. Ger. Script. v. i. p. 240, & 657.

afterwards to *Rome*, he was crowned with great solemnity by pope *Leo VIII.* and among other titles assumed that of king of *Pannonia*.

THE Hungarian forces were so weakened by this defeat in *Germany*, that we read of no other expedition under the reign of their first king *Toxis*, who died not many years after, and was succeeded by his son *Geyfa*, a lover of peace and justice, who was converted to the Christian religion by St. *Adalbert*, the bishop of *Prague*<sup>m</sup>. In the beginning of *Geyfa's* reign, the Hungarians were in possession of *Austria*; but the emperor *Henry II.* giving that province to *Leopold*, duke of *Suabia*, who had married his sister, on condition that he conquered it from them; *Leopold*, accepting the condition, and assembling an army, defeated the Hungarians near *Mellicum* upon the *Danube*; after which defeat, *Geyfa* surrendered that province, and concluded a peace with the *Germans*, being more intent upon propagating the Christian faith in his kingdom, than seizing the dominions of others. Though it is said, that some of the Hungarians bordering on *Germany*, had already privately embraced the Christian religion; yet *Geyfa*, in converting his kingdom, met with great opposition from the nobles, who thought nothing glorious or worthy of their attention, but invasions and ravages of their neighbours; and accusing their king of neglecting the administration of the kingdom, by omitting to declare war, and suffering the youth to live idly, they at length ventured in some measure to oppose his proceedings. Notwithstanding this opposition, *Geyfa* still continued his endeavours to civilize his people, and in order to strengthen his authority, made an alliance with some of the princes of *Germany*; the *Bavarians*, *Saxons*, and *Suabians*, willingly supplying him not only with money, but with auxiliary troops<sup>n</sup>. In the year 997, *Geyfa* died, and was succeeded by his son *Stephen*, then very young, but who had been declared king by the states, the year before his father died; which title, with the addition of that of apostolic, four years after was confirmed to him by pope *Sylvester II.* *Stephen*, at that time, surrendering his kingdom to the church. This *Stephen* is reckoned the first of the kings of *Hungary*, for his predecessors were kings more by authority and power, than by ordinary title. He is greatly celebrated for his piety, and unwearied study in converting his heathen subjects. In the beginning of his reign, his nobles, who were greatly addicted to their ancient idolatry, despising the

\* PARON. Ann. v. x. p. 882. BONF. ibid. p. 112. • BONF. ibid.



tender years of the king, raised a rebellion against him, which was headed by one *Cupa*, who wanted to marry the widow of *Geyfa*, in hopes of possessing the throne. The rebels, after destroying the possessions of many of those that had embraced the new religion, laid siege to the city of *Vesperin*. But *Stephen*, trusting the command of his army to some experienced *Germans*, marched against the rebels, whom he defeated; and *Cupa* being killed, his body was quartered and exposed in four of the principal cities of *Hungary*. The authority of the king being established by this victory, many ecclesiasticks flocked into his kingdom, which was, at this time, divided into ten bishopricks, all of them richly endowed by the king, who was not contented with building churches only in his own kingdom, but likewise founded and endowed a monastery at *Jerusalem*, and built a church at *Constantinople*, and another at *Rome*.

*His subjects rebel against him, on account of the new religion, but are reduced.*

*HUNGARY* did not long enjoy the fruits of peace; for we find *Giula*, prince of *Transylvania*, in the year 1002, infected the province next to him, with design to oblige the young king his nephew to return to the religion of his ancestors. But *Stephen* marching against him with an army, in a few months made himself master of *Transylvania*, and took his uncle *Giula*, with his wife and two children, prisoners. Soon after this, *Hungary* was invaded by the *Bulgarians*, under the conduct of *Cca*; but *Stephen* having repulsed the invaders, pursued them into their own country, where he gained a signal victory, and returned loaded with booty. Towards the end of his reign, the emperor *Conrad II.* having conquered some provinces from the *Poles* and *Bohemians*, turned his arms against *Hungary*; but finding *Stephen* in a condition to oppose him, he renewed the peace<sup>p</sup>. History makes no mention of any other expedition of *Stephen*; he married two wives, both named *Gyssa*; the first was the sister of the emperor *Henry II.* and remarkable for her piety, By her he had one son, named *Emeric*, who died before his father without any issue, leaving his wife a virgin, and being canonized after his death. The second wife of *Stephen* is said to have been a daughter of *William of Burgundy*, and of a character very different from that of his first wife. Four years after the peace concluded with *Conrad*, *Stephen* died; and was buried at *Albe Royal*, or *Sleukweissenburg*, being succeeded in his kingdom by his nephew *Peter*.

A. C. 1002. The Bulgarians invade Hungary, but are defeated by Stephen. A. C. 1030.

*PETER* was surnamed the *German*, on account of the favour he shewed to those of that nation, upon whom he be-

Peter. A. C. 1034.

<sup>p</sup> GARLUI. in vita St. Steph. c. 9, 10, 11.

*Is deposed on account of his favour to the Germans.* stowed many of the chief posts in his kingdom; and despising his own subjects and countrymen, he introduced *Germans* into his council, and appointed them for governors in his cities. By these proceedings, he became extremely odious to his subjects, who conspired against him, and chusing one *Aba*, by others called *Ovo*, they conducted him to the camp, where he was approved of by the soldiers, and declared king<sup>a</sup>.

*Aba invades Bavaria and Austria.*

*Peter* then flying into *Bavaria*, left his ministers to the fury of the opposite faction, who put many of them to death, and annulled all his decrees. *Aba* had not long possessed the throne, when he heard that the emperor *Henry III.* was preparing to assist *Peter* to recover his kingdom; upon which information, he immediately assembled an army on both sides of the *Danube*, and invaded *Bavaria* and *Austria*; and returning to *Hungary* with great booty, he ordered another army to invade *Carinthia*, which returning likewise loaded with spoil, was intercepted and cut off by *Gothofred*. In the spring following, *Henry* advanced with an army as far as *Raab*, with an intention of restoring *Peter*; but *Aba* giving him a large sum of money, and promising to restore the captives which he had made in his former incursions, the emperor retired without any action. *Aba* now thinking himself

*He becomes hateful to his subjects on account of his cruelty.* secure in the possession of the throne, gave himself up so much to insolence and cruelty, that he soon became more odious than his competitor; and having put fifty of the nobles to death upon the discovery of a conspiracy, the rest fled to the emperor, who was prevailed upon by their entreaties to assist *Peter* in recovering his kingdom. Accordingly, being

joined by *Brelislaus*, marquis of *Moravia*<sup>b</sup>, he attacked *Aba* near *Raab*, and after a most obstinate dispute, in which so many of the *Bavarians* were slain, that they gave a name to the field, he at last gained the victory; *Aba* flying to the village of *Scoeb*, not far from the river *Tibisc*, where he was slain, and buried in a neighbouring church, but was afterwards dug up, and interred in a monastery, near the *Saar*, built by himself<sup>c</sup>. *Peter* being again re-established in his kingdom, banished the three princes of the blood-royal, and thinking himself secure from any rival, he continued as formerly to give the command of his cities to *Germans* and *Italians*, and to do every thing by their advice; which so provoked his subjects, that many of them formed a conspiracy against him, and conceived an aversion for the religion of

A. C.  
1044.  
*Peter is again restored.*

<sup>a</sup> BARONI. v. xi. p. 130. <sup>b</sup> DUBRAV. Hist. Bohem. l. vii. p. 50. AVENT. Ann. Boii. l. v. p. 408. & 416. <sup>c</sup> BARON. Ann. v. xi. p. 177. BONF. Dec. ii. l. 2.

those foreigners: so that recalling two of the exiled princes, *Andrew* and *Leventa*, the other having married the king of *Poland's* daughter, they promised to them to kill *Peter*, and drive out the *Germans* and *Italians*, provided they would allow them to follow their old religion, and destroy the churches. The princes finding that they could not obtain the kingdom without granting their request, at last gave their consent. Immediately the people, assembling in great bodies, fell upon those who still continued Christians, killing them by various torments, especially those who were of the *German* or *Italian* nation. The churches and monasteries were likewise plundered of their wealth and burnt, and the monks and bishops many of them stoned to death. *Peter*, finding that the whole nation had deserted him, and gone over to the party of the banished princes, endeavoured, with a great body of *Germans*, to escape into *Austria*; but the passes being seized, he was prevailed upon to return, under the pretence of a reconciliation. He had not marched three days when the *Hungarians* endeavoured to surprise him, and take him prisoner; however, being assisted by the *Germans*, he defended himself for two days, till all his friends were slain. Being at last taken, his eyes were immediately put out, and afterwards he was conducted to *Albe Royal*, where in a few days he died.

A. C.

1047.

But continuing still to favour the Germans, his subjects against him.

*ANDREW*, by the death of his rival, was no sooner in full possession of his throne, than he ordered the churches to be rebuilt, and all his subjects to profess the Christian religion. About this time *Wratislaus*, the second son of *Breislais*, king of *Bohemia*, being driven from *Moravia* by his brother *Spiligneus*, retired to *Hungary*, where he was honourably entertained by *Andrew*, who gave him his only daughter *Adelhard*, (*Dubravius* \* says his sister) in marriage; which *Spiligneus* being informed of, recalled him home, and again put him in possession of his marquisate. *Andrew* is said, by the *Hungarian* annals, in the beginning of his reign, to have reduced *Austria*°. This is not mentioned by the *German* writers; on the contrary, they affirm, that *Andrew* paid homage and a yearly tribute to the emperor *Henry III.* However, this is certain, that in the year 1051, a peace was concluded betwixt him and *Adelbert* of *Austria*; soon after which he invited his brother *Bela* to come into *Hungary* with his family, his other brother *Leventa* having died in the first year of his reign, and he himself being without children. Upon *Bela's* arrival, he divided *Hungary* into three parts, two of which he reserved

Andrew reduces Austria.

A. C. 1051.

\* DUBR. l. viii. p. 58.

° BONF. Dec. ii. l. 2.

to himself, and with the universal consent of the states, gave the third to his brother; but afterwards marrying *Agmunda*, the daughter of the duke of *Russia*, he had by her two sons, *Soloman* and *David*, which marriage was afterwards the occasion of civil dissensions, on account of the succession. This

Henry III. invades Hungary, but marching too far into the country, he was obliged to conclude a peace.

year the emperor *Henry III.* invaded *Hungary*, but it is uncertain upon what account; however, his fleet meeting with a misfortune on the *Danube*, he was obliged to raise the siege of *Presburg*, and returned into *Germany*. The year following, he again entered *Hungary*, and advanced with his army within twenty-five miles of *Buda*; but *Andrew*, and his brother *Bela*, driving off the cattle from the countries through which he was to pass, and burning the forage and provisions; his fleet likewise, which was to have followed him upon the *Danube*, returning to *Germany*, in consequence of a counterfeited order from the *Hungarians*, the army of the emperor was reduced to the greatest extremity for want of provisions, and he was obliged to conclude a peace, by which he promised to give his daughter *Sophia* to *Andrew*, who was at this time a widower\*. Some years after, *Andrew*, in order to secure the succession to his son *Soloman*, caused him to be crowned, though then only five years of age; which giving offence to his brother *Bela*, he retired into *Poland*, and the year following returned with an army to make good his pretensions to the throne\*. *Andrew*, having received assistance from the emperor *Henry*, to whose care he had committed his children, marched against his brother, whom he engaged near the *Tibisc*, or the *Theyffe*, but was entirely defeated, and killed in the pursuit.

Bela. A. C. 1059.

*BELA* being settled in the throne, immediately pardoned all those who had taken the part of his brother; and applying himself to the administration of the kingdom, he lessened the taxes, established fairs, and coined gold and silver money. In order likewise to settle the affairs of religion, he commanded out of every town two elderly men to assemble, against a certain time, at *Albe Royal*. But when the day appointed arrived, not only those who were summoned appeared, but an infinite number of others, who having chosen chiefs to themselves, sent them to the king, demanding to be allowed their ancient religion, *Bela* told them, that he would give them an answer in three days; and in the mean time, having assembled an army, when the chiefs returned, he ordered them to be cut in pieces, and the mob to be attacked,

The people assemble in a tumultuous manner, demanding their old religion.

\* BARONII Ann. vol. xi. p. 202. BONF. Dec. ii. l. 2.  
\* Idem. vol. xi. p. 398.

many of whom were slain, and the rest either taken prisoners or dispersed. Soon after, having been greatly hurt by the ruins of a building, he died in the third year of his reign, and was buried in the church of *St. Salvator*, which he had rebuilt.

**SOLOMON**, the son of *Andrew*, who was then in *Germany*, hearing of the death of *Bela*, begged the assistance of *Henry IV.* whose sister he had married, to help him to recover his father's kingdom. The emperor, at his entreaty, marched with an army into *Hungary*, and settled him in the kingdom, *Geysa* and *Ladislaus*, the two sons of *Bela*, having fled into *Poland*, being unable to oppose the party of *Solomon*. But as soon as the emperor returned to *Germany*, they raised an army in *Poland*, and entered *Hungary*, with a design of dethroning *Solomon*; but a reconciliation being made between the two contending parties, by means of the bishops, *Geysa* agreed to quit his pretensions to the kingdom, and to be contented with his father's duchy; and in *Easter* following, in the city of the *Five Churches*, he publicly put the crown on *Solomon's* head. Soon after this reconciliation, *Geysa* marched with an *Hungarian* army to the assistance of *Zelomirus*, king of *Dalmatia*, his brother-in-law, who was attacked by the *Carinthians*. While he was engaged in this expedition, the *Bohemians* having invaded *Hungary*, and ravaged some of the northern provinces, in return *Solomon* and *Geysa* entered *Moravia* with an army, pillaging and burning the country without opposition; but at last a peace was concluded betwixt the two kingdoms at *Olmutz*, in *Moravia*. When *Solomon* was returning home with his army, he was informed that the *Chuni*, a heathen nation inhabiting that part of *Geta* now called *Wallachia*, had invaded *Hungary*, and were pillaging and destroying the country. *Solomon* immediately marched against the invaders, and after an obstinate dispute, entirely defeated them, not one of the enemy being said to have escaped. After this victory, *Hungary* enjoyed peace for three years, which were scarce expired, when the *Bessi* and *Bulgarians*, who inhabited towards the mouth of the *Danube*, passing through *Athania*, and crossing the *Save*, plundered and destroyed all the southern provinces of *Hungary*. *Solomon* and *Geysa* assembling an army near *Zalankemen*, repulsed the *Bulgarians*; and afterwards declaring war against the *Albanians*, because they had allowed the invaders to pass through their country, they besieged *Alba Greca*, their capital, now called *Belgrade*, which, after a three months siege, was taken.

A. C.

1063.

*Solomon, the son of Andrew, is restored by the assistance of the emperor.*

*He defeats the Moravians and the Chuni.*

*The Bessi invade Hungary, but are repulsed.*

A. C.

1070.

and plundered by means of a *Hungarian* maid, then a captive in the town, who set fire to it in several places, to favour the attack of her countrymen. The division of the immense booty that was taken in this city, occasioned a dispute betwixt *Solomon* and *Geyſa*, which turned afterwards to a civil war, by which *Solomon* lost his kingdom, and was obliged to retire to *Germany*, where he did homage to *Henry IV.* for *Hungary*, in expectation of his assistance to recover his throne. This homage was protested against by pope *Gregory VII.* who pretended that the kingdom of *Hungary* belonged to the *Roman* see, by the gift of king *Stephen*, and threatened *Solomon* with excommunication, if he did not acknowledge this right<sup>2</sup>.

*Solomon*  
is expelled  
by *Geyſa*.  
A. C.  
1074.

*Geyſa* is  
reconciled  
to *Solo-*  
*mon*.  
A. C.  
1077.

*GEYſA*, in the mean time, marching with his army to *Albe Royal*, was proclaimed king with the universal consent of the states; and being informed that the emperor *Henry* was marching with a great army to replace *Solomon* upon the throne, he corrupted his counsellors and chief officers, by whose advice the emperor was prevailed with to lay aside that expedition. The year following, *Geyſa*, by the persuasion of the bishop of *Strigonia*, agreed to surrender two-thirds of the kingdom, with the regal dignity, to *Solomon*; reserving the other to himself with the title of duke; but he died before this reconciliation was effected, and was buried at *Vacia*.

*Ladislaus*  
accepts of  
the admi-  
nistration  
of the  
kingdom,  
but refuses  
the title of  
king.

THE states of *Hungary*, on the death of *Geyſa*, chose his brother *Ladislaus*, who was prevailed upon to accept of the administration of the kingdom, but would not allow himself to be crowned, because *Solomon* was still alive. In the beginning of his reign, *Zelomirus*, king of *Dalmatia*, dying without issue, left his kingdom to his wife, the sister of *Ladislaus*, who having quelled her seditious subjects by the assistance of her brother, afterwards resigned her kingdom to him and his heirs, and since that time, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* have been annexed to the dominions of *Hungary*. *Solomon*, who still possessed some part of *Hungary* near *Presburg*, though he despaired of being able to regain his kingdom by force, yet continued to molest the provinces in his neighbourhood by frequent incursions. At last, in the fourth year of *Ladislaus's* reign, he consented to accept of a yearly pension, and resigned all pretensions to the crown; but soon after, endeavouring to surprise *Ladislaus* at a friendly conference, he was himself seized and imprisoned in the castle of *Wissegrad*. *Ladislaus* afterwards setting him at liberty, as he had no resource in the emperor, who was then engaged in disputes with the pope and the Saxons, he fled to the *Chuni*,

<sup>2</sup> GREGOR. I. ii. Epist. 13.

and excited them to invade *Hungary*, by promising, if he should recover his kingdom by their assistance, to yield *Transylvania* to the *Chuni*, and to marry the daughter of *Cuthescus* their chief. The *Chuni* being prevailed upon by these promises, invaded *Hungary* with a numerous army; but they were entirely defeated by *Ladislaus*, with the loss of 10,000 men. *Hungary*. *Solomon* being thus disappointed in his design of regaining his kingdom, turned the army of the *Chuni* against the *Bulgarians* and *Thracians*, but was repulsed by *Nicephorus*, the emperor of *Constantinople*, and obliged to fly beyond the *Danube*. After this defeat, he abandoned all schemes of ambition, and forsaking the society of men, lived, for several years, a solitary life in the woods, and at his death was buried in the city of *Pola*. Though *Solomon* now ceased to disturb *Ladislaus*, yet the *Chuni* by themselves again invaded *Hungary*, and having ravaged and plundered the country, carried off with them much booty, and a great number of captives. On the first news of this invasion, *Ladislaus* was then in *Dalmatia*, quieting some disturbances in that kingdom; but immediately marching against the *Chuni*, he overtook them as they had passed the river *Themescus*, and engaged them without delay. During the engagement, the captives having by mutual assistance unbound themselves, both men and women attacked the enemy in the rear, while *Ladislaus* and their countrymen engaged them in the front. The *Chuni*, unable to sustain both attacks, immediately began to disperse, but were mostly slain or taken prisoners by the *Hungarians*. Notwithstanding this great defeat, they again invaded *Hungary*; but *Ladislaus* killing their king *Acus* in a single combat, the barbarians, upon his death, retreated with precipitation, but were almost all intercepted, and cut off.

AFTER this defeat of the *Chuni*, *Ladislaus* was engaged in a war with the *Rutheni* or *Russians*, who not venturing to oppose his arms, sent ambassadors, desiring a peace; which being concluded, *Ladislaus* then turned his arms against the *Poles*, who had assisted the *Chuni* in their incursions; and having defeated their army, he marched to *Cracow*, which surrendered to him after a three months siege. Having obliged the *Poles* to conclude a peace<sup>a</sup>, he returned with his army to *Hungary*, and being solicited by pope *Victor III.* he promised 20,000 horse to act against the emperor *Henry IV.* who had been excommunicated by *Gregory VII.* About this time, the christian princes, by the persuasion of *Peter* the hermit, having resolved upon an expedition into the holy

*Ladislaus is engaged in a war with the Rutheni. A. C. 1087.*  
*Is appointed chief of the first crusade. A. C. 1095.*

<sup>a</sup> BONF. Dec. ii. l. 4.

land,



land, to recover it from the dominion of the *Turks*, *Ladislaus* made great preparations for that holy war; but marching with an army into *Bohemia*, to assist *Bretislaus* in obtaining that crown, vacant by the death of his uncle *Conrad*<sup>b</sup>, he (A) was seized with a distemper, of which he died in the 19th year of his reign, greatly lamented by all his subjects, who wore mourning for him three years.

*LADISLAUS* dying without issue, was succeeded by *Coloman*, the eldest son of his brother *Geysa*, who had fled into *Poland*, to avoid becoming an ecclesiastick, *Ladislaus* having designed the succession for his other nephew *Almus*. In the second year of his reign, the *Germans*, who had assembled for the expedition into the holy land, after having committed great cruelties against the *Jews* at *Worms*, *Cologne*, *Mentz*, *Triers*, and in many other cities, marched towards *Hungary*, and sent to *Coloman*, demanding a passage through his kingdom. But he denied their request, and prepared to oppose them with an army; upon which refusal, they resolved to open to themselves a way by the sword, and attacking *Coloman*, defeated him, though not without a great loss of their own army. Afterwards penetrating into *Hungary*, they met with very different reception, some of the *Hungarians* privately furnishing them with money and provisions, while others massacred all those whom they could find straggling from the main body; and *Coloman*, with an army, harassed their march.

*Coloman opposes the march of the Germans through Hungary.*

*HUNGARY* was no sooner freed from this numerous army of foreigners, than it was disturbed by a civil war betwixt the two brothers *Coloman* and *Almus*; but when they were on the point of deciding their difference by a battle, a reconciliation was effected betwixt them, which, however, did not continue long; for *Almus*, flying into *Bavaria*, endeavoured to raise an army, with an intention of attacking his brother; but by means of some nobles, he was prevailed upon to return, and was again reconciled to *Coloman*. After this, *Almus* is said to have gone to *Jerusalem*, and upon his return, to have lived in amity with his brother; but soon after, upon account of some suspicion, *Coloman* ordered him and his son

*His brother Almus raises a civil war against him.*

<sup>b</sup> DUBRAV. l. ix. p. 68.

(A) *Bonfinius* says, that this is both contrary to the history *Conrad* was the person restored, of *Bohemia*, and the genealogy and had been banished by his of those princes. brother *Otho*<sup>a</sup>; but this account

<sup>a</sup> *Eorfi. Dec. ii. l. 4.*

*Bela*

*Bela* to be seized, and the eyes of both of them to be put <sup>but is sei-</sup> out. *Hungary* was not only harrassed by these civil dissensions, but likewise by the foreign wars in which their king <sup>zed, and</sup> was engaged; for *Coloman* alledging, that the *Russians* had not <sup>his eyes</sup> fulfilled the terms of peace concluded with *Ladislaus*, entered their country, and destroyed all with fire and sword. *Lance*, their queen, being unable to oppose him, went personally to his camp, to beg for peace; but being disdainfully treated by *Coloman*, and even kicked by him, when on her knees, she left him fully resolved to take revenge. Assembling all the <sup>He is de-</sup> forces she could, and being joined by *Mircodes*, general of <sup>feated by</sup> the *Chuni*, with a great body of that nation, she attacked <sup>the queen</sup> the *Hungarian* camp about midnight, of which she soon got <sup>of the</sup> possession; and the *Russians* afterwards penetrating into the woods, whither the *Hungarians* had fled for safety, cut in pieces all whom they found, and the rest perishing by famine, *Coloman*, with difficulty, escaped to *Hungary* with a very few attendants <sup>Rutheni.</sup>.

AFTER this defeat, *Coloman* entered into an alliance with *The Nor-* the *Venetians*, in order to repulse the *Normans*, who ravaged <sup>mans ra-</sup> all the sea-coasts of *Dalmatia*. The *Hungarians* embarking <sup>vage the</sup> on board the *Venetian* fleet, made themselves masters of *Brun-* <sup>sea-coasts</sup> *disi*, and marching up into *Apulia*, ravaged the country with <sup>of Dal-</sup> fire and sword, carrying off with them a great many men and cattle. The presence of *Coloman* in *Dalmatia* encouraged a great many cities of that province to throw off the *Venetian* yoke, and acknowledge the dominion of the *Hungarians*. Upon this revolt, the *Venetians* accusing *Coloman* of breach of faith, prepared a great fleet, which, under the command of *Ordephalus*, their doge, failed to besiege *Jadra* or *Zara*, the chief town of the province. After a long siege, the *Venetians* again recovered that city, and several other places; and improving their success, they landed their forces, and penetrated into *Croatia*, which province they subdued, and have ever since retained the title of that conquest. *Coloman*, who was then in *Hungary*, being informed that the *Venetians* had recovered *Zara*, raised a great army, and marched into *Dalmatia*, where he engaged the *Venetians*, who had returned to protect their conquests; but *Ordephalus* being killed in the action, the *Venetians* were defeated, and retired home, leaving the country in the possession of *Coloman*, who, upon the entreaty of the *Venetians*, concluded a peace for five years. The year following, the emperor *Henry V.* having undertaken the protection of *Almus*, and

*The emperor in-  
vades Hungary,  
but is re-  
pulsed.* threatening to invade *Hungary*, *Coloman* made an alliance with the duke of *Poland*, for their mutual defence; and a marriage was concluded betwixt *Stephen*, the heir of the kingdom of *Hungary*, and the duke's daughter <sup>d</sup>. *Henry*, marching with his army into *Hungary*, was repulsed with loss; wherefore he turned his arms against *Poland*, where the war continued for two or three years, during which time *Coloman* died, and was buried at *Albe Royal*, having reigned nineteen years.

*Stephen  
III.*

A. C.  
1114.

*Stephen  
invades  
Poland,*

*and de-  
clares war  
against  
Bohemia.*

*The confe-  
rence is  
prevented  
by the  
treachery  
of Soltha.*

*STEPHEN*, the son of *Coloman*, succeeded his father with the consent of the states; and being then a minor, the affairs of the nation were administrated by the bishops and nobles for eight years, during which time *Hungary* enjoyed a profound peace. In the ninth year of his reign, *Stephen* took the administration of the kingdom into his own hands, and testified, by his actions, a temper no less cruel and savage than that of his father. His first expedition was into *Dalmatia*, which province the *Venetians* had harrassed by frequent piratical incursions, and had likewise endeavoured to regain by bribery the chief men. *Stephen* having renewed the garrisons in the towns, and confirmed those who were wavering, returned to *Hungary*, and sent his army against the *Poles*, finding himself then in a condition to repay the injuries which *Hungary* had formerly suffered from them. *Stephen* afterwards declared war against the duke of *Bohemia*, and advanced with his army as far as the river *Orsana*, which divides *Moravia* from *Hungary*; but the nobles being averse to the war, advised their king to endeavour a reconciliation by means of a conference, which was agreed to by the duke of *Bohemia*. One *Soltha*, a *Hungarian* refugee, in the *Bohemian* camp, thinking that a reconciliation would be to his great disadvantage, wrote to *Stephen*, that the duke of *Bohemia* intended to surprise him at the conference, therefore he ought to send his archers and light-armed soldiers before to prevent the fraud; at the same time he told the *Bohemians*, that he was informed that *Stephen* had proposed the conference only with the design of seizing upon the duke. Both parties being thus rendered jealous of each other, on the day of the conference went towards the place appointed, attended with armed troops, with design to act upon the defensive; but the *Bohemians* observing the *Hungarian* archers, immediately attacked them, and drove them back to their camp, and being assisted by their friends, forced the entrenchments, and obliged the *Hungarians* to fly; which *Junus*, the son of *Brofa*,

and the count *Palatin*, who were entamped at some distance from the king; observing, they drew out their men, and repulsed the *Bohemians* with great slaughter. At length, both parties being sensible of their error, a peace was concluded; by which it was agreed, that *Sobieslaus*, brother of the duke of *Bohemia*, should marry a daughter of *Stephen*, who was then an infant. The traitor *Soltba* was seized, and carried to *Hungary*, where he was torn to pieces by horses. After this expedition into *Bohemia*, *Stephen* married the daughter of *Robert Guiscard*, prince of *Apulia* and *Sicily*, and soon after was engaged in a war with the *Russians*, under pretence of assisting their exiled duke *Bezzen*, who had fled to his protection. Marching with a great army into their country, by the advice of the duke he besieged their capital city; but he being killed in the first action, *Stephen* was persuaded by his nobles to quit the siege, and return to *Hungary*. Three years after he again invaded *Poland*, where he committed great devastation; and being informed that the emperor of *Constantinople* had struck his wife, for defending his character, he declared war against him, and ravaged his provinces with so much fury, that the mothers used his name to quiet their crying children for many years after. The emperor at last marching against him with an army, entirely defeated him at the river *Carasus*; after which, a peace was concluded in the city *Borochus*, within an island of the *Danube*. *Stephen* rendered his name infamous, by his cruelty towards his subjects, and was surnamed the *Thunderer* by the common people, because his actions flowed more from violent passions, than from reason. He banished his uncle *Almus* into *Thrace*, where he was honourably entertained by the emperor, and founded a city, which was soon inhabited by *Hungarians*, who fled from the cruelties of their king. As *Stephen* had no children by his queen, towards the end of his reign he was very solicitous about a successor; and being informed that his cousin *Bela* was still alive, and in *Hungary*, he adopted him for his son; and having concluded a marriage betwixt him and the daughter of *Uro*, count of *Macedonia*, he resigned the kingdom to him, and is said, before his death, in sign of penitence, to have taken on the monkish habit. He died of a dysentery, in the seventeenth year of his reign; and was buried at *Waradin*.

*Stephen invades Russia, under pretence of restoring their exiled duke.*

*He declares war against the emperor of Constantinople.*

*BELA*, surnamed the *Blind*, the son of *Almus*, succeeded to the throne with the unanimous consent of the states, and was

*Bela II. A. C. 1131.*

\* BONF. ubi supra. DUBRAV. l. xi. p. 82.  
Ann. v. xii. p. 230. Rer. Hun. Script. p. 682.

f BARONII

His subjects rebel against him,

greatly beloved by his subjects for his moderation and continual application to the administration of justice; but being prevailed upon by his queen to allow his former enemies to be punished according to the rigor of the laws, he by that action alienated many of the nobles, who rebelled against him, and invited *Borichus*, a bastard son of *Coloman*, who was then in *Russia*, to claim the kingdom, as the lawful heir. *Bela* being informed of this conspiracy, called an assembly of the states, and asked their opinion of the legitimacy of *Borichus*. The nobles who wished well to the state, answered, that they were certain *Borichus* was a bastard, and unworthy of the throne; but those of the other faction affirmed, that he was a lawful son, *Coloman* having been married to his mother in *Russia*. Upon this reply, a dissension arose in the assembly; and orders being given to seize those who favoured *Borichus*, all was immediately in confusion, while those of his faction endeavoured to defend themselves, or escape, and the others to apprehend them, and drag them to punishment. Count *Lampertus* was dragged from the king's feet, whither he had fled for protection, and killed by his brother with a piece of the bench; his son *Nicolas* suffered the same fate, with many others of the nobles. Those who escaped immediately fled to *Borichus*, who was marching towards *Hungary* with an army of *Russians* and *Poles*. *Bela* having assembled an army, marched against the pretender; and having obtained a conference with the chiefs of the *Poles* and *Russians*, count *Budus* prevailed with the greatest number of them to forsake *Borichus* and return home. Those who remained were easily defeated by the *Hungarians*, and the chiefs of the rebellion being taken in the engagement, were brought before *Bela* and put to death. After this victory, *Bela* addicted himself to feasting and entertainments, whereby he contracted a habit of drinking, which threw him into a dropy, of which he died in the tenth year of his reign, leaving behind him four sons, *Geyfa*, *Ladislaus*, *Stephen*, and *Almus*.

Geyfa III.

A. C.

1141.

The marriage of Austria takes Presburgh by surprise.

UPON the death of *Bela*, his eldest son *Geyfa* succeeded to the throne, and being under age, the affairs of the state were committed to the management of the bishops and nobles. In the beginning of his reign, having entered into a league with *Guelph VII.* duke of *Spoleta*, and guardian of *Henry the Lion*, his nephew, to assist them in recovering *Bavaria*, by this means he drew upon himself the resentment of *Henry* margrave of *Austria*; who, being assisted by the forces of the emperor *Conrad III.* made himself master of *Presburgh* by stratagem, and from thence made incursions upon

upon the *Hungarians*. Upon the news of the surprising of *Presburgh*, *Geyſa* immediately aſſembled an army; and marching againſt the *Germans* before they had received all their reinforcements, he routed their army with the loſs of 7000 men, *Henry* himſelf with difficulty eſcaping into *Auſtria*. *Geyſa*, though then but a youth, acquired great reputation by this victory, and ſecured his kingdom from invaſion during the reſt of his reign. But having given leave to the emperor *Cohrad III.* to paſs through *Hungary* with 60,000 horſe, in his way to the holy land <sup>2</sup>, that emperor, mindful of the late defeat of his ally the margrave of *Auſtria*, and thinking he had now an opportunity of being revenged, acted like an inveterate enemy; and under pretence of furniſhing himſelf with neceſſaries for the expedition, plundered the churches, monaſteries, and other ſacred places, of their wealth, and gave licence to his ſoldiers to commit all manner of exceſſes. The ſame year, *Geyſa* gave permiſſion to *Lewis VII.* king of *France*, to march through *Hungary* with his army upon the ſame expedition, and entertained him in an honourable manner, as he kept his army under the ſtricteſt diſcipline, and marched without offending the meaneſt ſubjects. *Borichus*, the baſtard ſon of *Coloman*, having inſinuated himſelf into the army of *Lewis*, in expectation that the *Hungarians* would riſe in his favour, *Geyſa* demanded him to be delivered up as a pretender to his throne; but *Lewis* declaring, that the protection of kings ought to be a ſanctuary to thoſe who claim it, *Geyſa* renewed his requeſt with greater earneſtneſs; upon which *Borichus*, fearing to be delivered up, took one of the king's horſes, and immediately fled; but being purſued by the king's maſter of the horſe, he was overtaken and killed. *Geyſa* ſoon after was engaged in a war with the *Ruſſians*, *Lodomerius*, having by the aſſiſtance of the *Chuni*, expelled their lawful king *Minoflaus*, whoſe daughter *Geyſa* had married. *Geyſa* having aſſembled a great army, to aſſiſt his father-in-law, marched againſt the emperor, whom he defeated; and reſtating *Minoflaus* in his kingdom, he returned with honour into *Hungary*. Hiſtory makes no mention of any other military expedition of *Geyſa*; during the reſt of his reign, he diſtinguiſhed himſelf by his liberality to the poor, and bounty to the church. He died in the twentieth year of his reign, his eldeſt ſon *Stephen* having been declared king by him before his death.

He is afterwards defeated by Geyſa.

A. C. 1147. The king of France marches through Hungary to the holy land.

Stephen III.

AFTER the death of *Geyſa*, the ſtates aſſembled in the uſual manner; and although *Stephen* had before been declared

A. C. 1161.

*Enters into an alliance with the emperor of Constantinople against the Venetians.*

king, they again gave their publick consent, and according to custom, crowned him with the sacred crown of St. Stephen his ancestor. In the beginning of his reign, Stephen entered into an alliance with Emanuel Comnenus, the emperor of Constantinople, who had been for several years at war with the Venetians. In consequence of this league, the Hungarians recovered Zara, and several other places on the coast of Dalmatia, which the Venetians had for some time before possessed; but those cities soon after revolted from the Hungarians, and put themselves under the dominion of the emperor, who likewise engaged Guiscard, duke of Ancona, to harass the Venetian coasts with his galleys. Guiscard being taken by the doge Vitalis, and executed as a pirate, Emanuel pretended to lay aside hostilities, and gave allowance to the Venetians to trade in his ports; but soon after, he seized all their ships on one day; which perfidy so provoked the Venetians, that they are said to have built and fitted out an hundred galleys and twenty ships of burden within an hundred days; with which fleet they took and plundered the city of Traw, and likewise made themselves masters of Ragusa; and, sailing into the Egean sea, took Chios, and attacked Eubœa: but their fleet being attacked with the plague, they were obliged to return home; and the distemper being communicated to the city, almost one half of the inhabitants were destroyed. While the Venetian fleet was employed in this expedition, Stephen, who had marched into Dalmatia with an army, ravaged their territories, but was recalled into Hungary to oppose the usurpation of his uncle Ladislaus, the son of Bela; who, during his absence, had stolen the sacred crown of St. Stephen, and being supported by most of the bishops and many of the nobility, had declared himself king. Stephen, finding that the greatest number of the people favoured Ladislaus, kept himself private in some of the castles that continued faithful to him, while the usurper enjoyed the kingly dignity and power. Ladislaus dying within six months, his faction immediately proclaimed his brother Stephen king; but Stephen, the lawful possessor being still alive, at length assembled an army of his friends to oppose the usurpations of uncle. Hungary being then divided into two parties, the two armies engaged with vast animosity; and after a great slaughter on both sides, especially of the nobles, victory at last declared for the nephew, who thereby again recovered his kingdom. The usurper having possessed the throne five months, died soon after this defeat at the castle of Zemlin. Stephen did not long survive him, but died the same year, and was buried at Strigonia.

*Ladislaus the usurper.*

*Stephen the usurper.*

*Stephen defeats the usurper, but dies soon after.*



As Stephen left no children, his brother *Bela* succeeded *Bela III.* him; whose integrity, justice, and gravity, were very necessary to restrain the licentiousness that had been introduced by the intestine divisions; all those who were obnoxious to the laws having taken refuge in the armies of *Ladislaus* and *Stephen* the usurpers. Upon his accession to the throne, he immediately published an edict against thieves, robbers, and murderers; and, as before his reign, the *Hungarians* had presented their requests to their kings personally, and in an undistinct manner, he ordered, after the manner of the emperors and the pope, that all petitions should be delivered in writing. He was afterwards engaged in some short wars with the *Poles* and *Bohemians*, and likewise restrained the *Austrians* from making incursions; but his chief concern was, to recover the maritime places of *Dalmatia*, which were again in possession of the *Venetians*. An opportunity soon offered for him to obtain his wishes; for *Peter*, the doge of *Venice*, having drawn off the inhabitants of *Pisa* from their alliance with those of *Ancona*, had obliged the metropolitan bishop of *Zara* to be subject to the patriarch of *Grade*, which those of *Zara* took so ill, that they revolted the fourth time from the *Venetians*, and put themselves under the protection of the *Hungarians*. *Bela* being informed of this revolt, immediately marched with an army into *Dalmatia*, and put strong garrisons into *Zara* and the neighbouring places; while the *Venetians*, sensibly affected with the loss, prepared a fleet with the utmost expedition, and sailed to besiege *Zara*. They soon regained the islands, as the *Hungarians* had no naval force; but *Bela* had so strengthened the sea-coasts, and especially the city *Zara*, that the efforts of the *Venetians* to recover them were in vain. At this time, news being brought to *Europe*, that *Saladin* had taken *Jerusalem*, a new croisade was resolved upon, for the recovery of the holy city; and by the mediation of pope *Clement*, a truce was agreed to for two years betwixt *Bela* and the *Venetians*, that the Christian princes might have the use of their fleet in transporting their troops to the Holy Land. The emperor *Frederic Barbarossa*, in his march through *Hungary* for that expedition, with more than 100,000 men, was honourably entertained by *Bela*, and supplied with all necessaries. After the truce was expired, the *Venetians* met with a new loss; for the *Pisans*, who had been their allies for several years, seized upon the city and port of *Pola* for themselves, and concluded an alliance with the *Hungarians*. But the *Venetians* immediately sailing to *Pola*, recovered the city, which they dismantled, and afterwards defeating the *Pisan* fleet, obliged them to quit their

A. C.  
1173.

A truce is  
concluded  
by the me-  
diation of  
the pope.  
A. C.  
1189.

new ally, and conclude a peace. While *Bela* was employed in this *Venetian* war, he was seized with a lingering distemper, of which he died in the 23<sup>d</sup> year of his reign, leaving by his wife, who was a sister of *Philip* king of *France*, two sons, *Emerick* and *Andrew*. His widow, <sup>h</sup> the same year, resolved to visit the sepulchre of our Saviour at *Jerusalem*, and went at the head of a great body of *Hungarians* to the holy land; but from the fatigue of the journey she died at *Ptolemais*, before she reached the holy city.

Emerick.  
A. C.  
1196.

UPON the death of *Bela*, his eldest son *Emerick*, or *Henry*, succeeded to the throne with the universal consent of the states. He began his reign with putting in execution the laws of his father against robbers and murderers. But his government was soon disturbed by the rebellion of his brother

Andrew  
his brother  
rebels a-  
gainst him.

*Andrew*; who, having debauched the minds of many of the nobles, raised an army, and openly declared war against him. *Emerick* having in vain used his utmost endeavours, by letters and intercessions, to dissuade his brother from so desperate an enterprize, at last raised an army to oppose him. But, that he might spare the blood of his subjects, when both armies were drawn up ready to engage, he is said to have put off his armour, and to have gone alone into the middle of his brother's army, with the crown on his head, and the sceptre in his hand, and to have addressed them after this manner (B) :

He pre-  
wails upon  
the rebels  
to lay  
down their  
arms.

*Which of you, Soldiers, will dare to pollute his hands with the most sacred blood of his king? which of you desires to violate, in my person, the divinity of St. Stephen? I am not Emerick, a private person, but the vicar and heir of St. Stephen; and your king by the universal consent of the states. Consider whom you attack: Emerick can die but once, and to die here will be most glorious for me, but most ignominious and destructive for you. Accept of the pardon I offer you, and acknowledge your king.* This speech had such an effect upon the army of his brother, that they immediately threw down their arms, and strove who should first ask pardon for their crime: which sudden alteration in his army being observed by *Andrew*, he quitted the field, and endeavoured to make his escape, but was taken and brought to *Emerick*, who freely pardoned him. While *Emerick* was engaged in this intestine war, the *Venetians*, intent upon recovering the places on the coast of *Dalmatia* which they had formerly possessed, agreed to transport to the

<sup>h</sup> BONF. Dec. ii. l. 7.

(B) It was a received opinion among the *Hungarians*, that whoever possessed the crown of *St. Stephen*, had thereby a divine right to the throne.

holy

holy land the troops of *Montferrat*, *Savoy*, and *Flanders*, upon condition that they would assist them in recovering *Istria* and *Zara*. The condition being accepted by those foreigners, the *Venetians* quickly fitted out sixty galleys, and as many ships of burden, besides many other smaller vessels; so that they invaded *Istria* with a fleet of 240 sail. The inhabitants of that coast being struck with terror at such a warlike appearance, immediately submitted. From *Istria*, the *Venetian* fleet sailed to *Zara*, and landing their men, besieged it by sea and land. The *Hungarian* garrison being very strong, they met with great opposition, scarce a day passing without a sally from the besieged: at last, they began to make some impression by sea; upon which, the chief men of the city, despairing of safety and pardon, privately quitted the place; which the *Hungarian* garrison observing before the last assault, they likewise quitted the city in a body, and retired to the towns in the neighbouring mountains. Notwithstanding the reduction of *Zara*, the *Venetian* trade was as much molested as ever by the exiles, who, being assisted by *Emerick*, seized the *Venetian* ships, and made frequent descents on their territories. The *Venetians* at last fitted out another fleet, and having defeated the exiles, took many of their sons as hostages, and allowed them to return to *Zara*; concluding a peace on these conditions, that they should receive the governor of their city, and their metropolitan bishop, from the *Venetians*; and pay a yearly tribute of 3000 rabbit-skins to their republick. Soon after the conclusion of this peace, *Emerick* died, leaving the kingdom to his son *Ladislaus*, who enjoyed it only six months, being taken off by an immature death.

*LADISLAUS* was succeeded by his uncle *Andrew*, who was crowned with the universal consent of the states. During the first twelve years of his reign, *Hungary* enjoyed a continual peace; but pope *Honorius* III. ordering a new croisade to be preached, *Andrew* resolved to make an expedition into the holy land; and for that purpose assembled a great army in *Hungary*, having determined on this expedition before he came to the throne, not only on his own account, but to fulfil the vow of his father *Bela*. Before he quitted the kingdom, he appointed *Bancbanus*, one of the nobles, to govern in his absence, trusting to his fidelity his queen *Gertrude*, and his four children, *Bela*, *Coloman*, *Andrew*, and *Elisabeth* (C). *Bancbanus* administered the affairs of the kingdom;

(C) The *Venetian* annals relate, that *Andrew* and his forces were transported to *Syria* by a *Venetian* fleet; in consideration of

who murders the queen,

but is acquitted on his trial.

A. C.

1217.

dom with great justness and assiduity, his government giving universal satisfaction. But *Gertrude's* brother coming from *Germany*, to pay her a visit in the absence of her husband, during his stay in *Hungary* debauched the wife of *Bancbanus*, by means of his sister. The injured lady informing her husband, he, in revenge, next day stabbed the queen, and coming out with his bloody sword into the street, published his wrongs, and the revenge he had taken; declaring, that he did not refuse to stand his trial, but would go directly to *Constantinople* to receive his sentence from the king. Next day, setting out with a few nobles, he arrived soon after at *Constantinople* (D); but *Andrew*, being otherwise satisfied with his fidelity, refused to judge him till he returned from his expedition, and desired him, in the mean time, to go back to his charge. At the trial, the accusation against the queen being found to be just, *Andrew* acquitted *Bancbanus*, but, nevertheless, his family was ruined by the resentment of the king's sons. *Andrew* having transported his troops into *Asia*, marched into *Syria*; but after having washed himself in the river of *Jordan*, he took the resolution of returning home<sup>1</sup>. As there was an agreement betwixt him and the duke of *Austria*, that neither of them should return without the consent of the other, the duke of *Austria* opposed his journey, being afraid lest, after his return to *Hungary*, he should invade his dutchy. The king still insisting upon his departure, the duke of *Austria* engaged the patriarch of *Jerusalem* to endeavour to prevail with him to stay; but the exhortations of the prelate having no effect, he proceeded to threats, and at last to excommunication, which sentence occasioned an accommodation; *Andrew* promising, by a solemn oath, in presence of the patriarch, and the *German* bishops and lords, not to make war on the duke of *Austria* while he should be employed in the croisade; and to leave in *Palestine* one half of his troops under the command of the duke. This proposal

of which *Andrew* ceded to the republic of *Venice* all his right to *Dalmatia*. But this is not only contrary to the *Hungarian* annals, which affirm, that *Andrew* marched by land to *Constantinople*, but likewise appears improbable, that for such a small service, so powerful a king would have given up a

kingdom, for the retaining of which so much blood had been spilt by his ancestors.

(D) Some authors make no mention of the journey of *Bancbanus* to *Constantinople*, but relate that he and his family were both destroyed immediately after the queen's death.

<sup>1</sup> VITRIAC, Hist. Orient. l. iii.

being accepted, the excommunication was taken off, and *An- Andrew* departed with the other half of his troops to return into *Hungary*, having continued but three months in the holy *quits the* land, and bringing home with him the head of *St. Margaret*, *holy land.* and of *Stephen* the first martyr; likewise, the right hand of *Thomas* and *Bartholomew*, a piece of *Aaron's* rod, and one of the water-pots in which the water was turned into wine by our Saviour, and many other relicks. Returning to *Hungary* by sea, on board the *Venetian* fleet, he was honourably entertained upon his landing by the prince of *Este*; and falling in love with that prince's daughter, he married her, and took her with him into *Hungary*. By her he had a posthumous son named *Stephen*, born at *Este*, who had a son named *Andrew*, afterwards king of *Hungary*. Nine years after his return, his daughter *Elizabeth* was married to *Lewis*, landgrave of *Thuringia*. This princess made herself most remarkable for her austere and pious life, and for her bounty towards the poor, whose feet she often washed. After the death of her husband, she entered into the order of *Franciscans*, in which she continued to her death, refusing to return to the splendor of a court in *Hungary*, though earnestly requested by her father. She died in the year 1231, and was afterwards canonized. *Andrew* survived his daughter only four years, and after having reigned thirty-one years, left the kingdom to his eldest son *Bela*, to whom he had ceded the sovereignty before his death.

THE states having assembled, *Bela* was crowned at *Albe* *Bela IV.* *Royal* in the church of *St. Peter*, founded by himself; during the procession his brother *Coloman* having been created *A. C.* king of *Haliria*, in *Prussia*, walked before him with the sword; while *Daniel*, prince of the *Rutheni*, or *Russians*, led his horse. *Bela* had scarce been five years on the throne, *1235.* when he was alarmed with the news of the approach of the *Tartars*, by some called *Thatturi*, by others *Mangali*; who, *The Tar-* quitting their northern habitations in different hords, or *tars in-* companies, over-ran *Georgia*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, and even pe- *vade the* netrated into *Egypt*; while others, under the command of *Europe,* *Bathus* and *Peta*, sons of *Hocotam Cham*, son of *Genzis Cham*, first king of *Tartary*, ravaged *Great Russia*, *Lithuania*, *Poland*, and *Bohemia*. The news of their incursions was brought into *Hungary* by the *Cumani*, a *Sarmatian* nation, whose country those barbarians were then ravaging and burning. *Guten*, the king of that country, being unable longer to re- *The Cu-* sist their violence, sent ambassadors to *Bela*, begging that he *mani quit* would allow him, and the remains of his people, to take re- *their coun-* fuge in *Hungary*, promising not only to become his subjects, *try on ac-* but *count of*

*the Tartars, and ask a refuge in Hungary, which is granted by Bela, who thereby offends his own subjects.*

but likewise to turn Christians. Their request was readily granted, and soon after *Cuten* came into *Hungary* with 40,000 *Cumani*, besides slaves, who were all generously received by *Bela*. This generosity was far from being acceptable to his own subjects, who accused the strangers of ruining their fields and vineyards as they passed, of plundering the towns and villages, and of ravishing the daughters, not only of the poor, but likewise of the nobles. They alledged also, that *Bela* shewed a partiality to the foreigners, extenuating their crimes, and refusing to do justice to his subjects; that the rumour of the invasion was only a false report, which had been often talked of, and was published at this time only with a design of preventing the bishops from going to the general council; and that the *Cumani* had conspired with the *Russians*, and designedly quitted their country, that they might be more ready to assist them in exterminating the *Hungarians*. The *Cumani* had not been a year in *Hungary*, when *Bela* was informed, that the *Tartars* having ravaged *Russia*, were approaching the frontiers of his kingdom with an army of near 300,000 men, under the command of *Bathus*; while *Peta*, with almost as numerous a body, invaded *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Bohemia*<sup>k</sup>. Though the rumour was still disbelieved by the people, *Bela* sent the *Palatin* with a body of forces to guard the passes of the mountains; and an assembly of the states being called at *Buda*, it was resolved, that the bishops and nobles should prepare their vassals for war, and faithful persons be sent to watch the conduct of *Cuten*, and the chiefs of the *Cumani*. In the mean time, the *Tartars* having attacked the *Palatin*, entirely defeated him; and afterwards entering *Hungary*, marched for the first five days in a very peaceable manner, partly with a design not to alarm the *Hungarians*, and partly that they might have provisions, in case they were obliged to retreat. But advancing afterwards into the country, they began their ravages with a barbarous fury, sparing neither age nor sex, and marched directly for *Bela*, who was encamped at *Pesth*, having sent his queen before into *Austria*. The *Hungarians*, instead of vigorously assisting the king, continued their murmurs against the *Cumani*; and affirming that the *Tartars* had invaded *Hungary* by their invitation, they barbarously murdered *Cuten*, with his attendants, while he was on his journey to join *Bela*; at which action, the *Cumani* were so incensed, that they joined the *Tartars*, and became the most bitter enemies of the *Hungarians*. The *Tartars* daily ravaging the coun-

*The Tartars invade Hungary, and commit great barbarities.*

A. C.  
1241.

*The Cumani join the Tartars.*

<sup>k</sup> DUBR. l. xvi. p. 129.

try, and cutting off some detached body of *Hungarians* by their sudden and unexpected attacks, *Bela* was earnest to come to a general engagement, and marched after the enemy; *Bela* <sup>as-  
sembles an</sup> who, as he advanced, retreated leisurely towards *Agria*, both <sup>army to</sup> parties seeking an opportunity to engage, though most part of <sup>oppose their</sup> the *Hungarians* did not even desire the victory, but wished <sup>ravag-</sup> that *Bela* might be defeated, that for the future he might have <sup>ings;</sup> an aversion to foreigners, and depend more upon them; believing that the defeat would only be a private loss, and that they could expel the invaders when they pleased, as they had formerly done the *Chuni* and *Bessi*. The two camps being now only separated by a marsh, which the *Tartars* having found passable in some places, they privately passed over their army; and having surrounded the camp of the *Hungarians* before day-break, they raised a shout, and began the engagement with a shower of arrows. The *Hungarians*, confounded at this unexpected attack, could not be persuaded to go out of their camp; but at last, about mid-day, *Coloman*, hoping, by his example, to encourage the rest to follow him, sallied out with his friends against the enemy, whom he attacked in a desperate manner; but not being followed as he expected, he cut his way through them and escaped. Afterwards many parties rushed out of the camp; but the *Tartars*, out of policy, gave them leave to fly, and killed them in the pursuit; it being their manner of fighting to pursue a flying enemy, and to retreat when they themselves are attacked. *Bela*, who had believed that these parties went out against the enemy, at length being undeceived, and seeing himself deserted, sallied out in the middle of his friends, and hid himself in a neighbouring wood. Those who remained in the camp were cut to pieces by the *Tartars*, who likewise <sup>but is to-  
tally de-  
seated</sup> made such a slaughter of those who fled, that for two days <sup>with the  
loss of all  
his troops.</sup> journey round the camp, the earth was covered with dead bodies and mangled limbs. After this victory, the *Tartars* ravaged all *Upper Hungary*; and in searching the booty, having found the king's seal, they caused letters to be wrote in his name, and to be dispersed all over the kingdom, which were composed in this manner; That the *Hungarians* had no occasion to quit their houses, or be afraid of the *Tartars*, for though the baggage had been lost by the imprudence of some persons, yet he hoped soon to recover all, and expel the invaders. By this stratagem, *Bela* being prevented from assembling another army, was obliged to quit his kingdom and fly <sup>Obliged to  
fly into</sup> into *Austria*, where he was detained a prisoner, under pre- <sup>Austria,  
where he  
is detained  
and</sup> tence of owing a large sum of money to the duke. Having obtained his liberty by giving all his money which he had, <sup>a prisoner.</sup>

But afterwards  
conceals  
himself in  
Dalmatia,  
while the  
Tartars  
ravaged  
Hungary.

and all his plate and jewels, and likewise ceding three counties of Hungary to Frederic; he went with his queen into Dalmatia, and sent Stephen, bishop of Vacia, to beg the assistance of the emperor and the pope<sup>l</sup>. But the pope having called a general council to depose the emperor, whom he had formerly excommunicated, sent only letters of condolence into Hungary, and granted indulgences for those who would fight against the barbarians<sup>m</sup>; while the emperor Frederic published a manifesto, declaring, that he was prevented by the persecution of the pope from opposing the Tartars, whom he could easily have destroyed. In the meantime, the Tartars having ravaged and destroyed all Upper Hungary, passed the Danube on the ice, and making themselves masters of Strigonia, killed all the inhabitants except nineteen. Afterwards a party of them ravaged the country, and pursued Bela into Dalmatia, who was obliged to fly into the islands of the Adriatic. Being disappointed in seizing Bela, they turned aside into Croatia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria, ravaging and burning those countries. At last, hearing of the death of Hocotam<sup>n</sup>, they loaded themselves with booty, and returned into their own country through Cumania and Ruthenia. Bela being informed of their departure, returned

A. C.

1244.

Bela is restored by the assistance of the knights of Rhodes,

to Hungary with many auxiliary troops, raised by the princes of the name of Frangipani, who were settled in Croatia and Dalmatia. The knights of Rhodes likewise landing their men at Segna, accompanied him on foot into his own kingdom. Bela having settled his kingdom in the best manner that he could, soon after his return raised an army, and with the assistance of those foreign troops invaded Austria, and laid siege to Vienna, which had been but lately founded.

A. C.

1246.

and afterwards invades Austria.

Frederic being informed that his new city was greatly pressed, marched with an army to its relief; and engaging the Hungarians before the walls, he was entirely defeated and killed in the action. After this victory, Bela ravaged great part of Austria, and returned with his booty into Hungary. Frederic, duke of Austria, leaving no children, his estate fell to his sister, the widow of Henry, son of the emperor Frederick II. Othogar, king of Bohemia, an ambitious prince, hoping in her right to be possessed of Austria, married her, and likewise bought Carniola, Carinthia, and part of Sclavonia, from Ulrich the possessor, who had no issue. Being still ambitious to extend his dominions, a few years afterwards he declared war against Bela, reclaiming the province of Stiria, which he

A. C.

1260.

Othogar, king of Bohemia, declares war against Bela.

<sup>l</sup> BONF. Dec ii. l. 8. DDBR. l. xvi. p. 132,

Ann. xii. 41. SPONDANI, Ann. ad an. 1241. <sup>m</sup> RAIN ad

<sup>n</sup> Id. ibid. 1241.



had formerly ceded to him by a treaty; and hoping not only to conquer that province, but likewise all *Hungary*. *Bela*, being informed of his design, marched against him into *Moravia*; but his army consisting chiefly of auxiliaries, he was easily defeated, and obliged to conclude a peace upon disadvantageous terms. The following years of his reign, *Bela* was wholly employed in rebuilding the cities and churches through his kingdom, and recovering it from that dismal state in which it was left by the barbarians. He died in the thirty-sixth year of his reign, and was succeeded by his son *Stephen* (E.)

*STEPHEN*, soon after his accession to the throne, declared war against *Othogar*, king of *Bohemia*, whom he defeated with great slaughter at the *Lower Kapeza* (F.) He afterwards marched into *Bulgaria*, and having taken *Bodon*, obliged the king of the *Bulgarians* to become tributary. He died in the third year of his reign, leaving behind him two children, *Ladislaus*, who succeeded him, and *Mary*, who was married to *Charles the lame*, king of *Sicily*.

*LADISLAUS* was surnamed *the Chun*, upon account of the barbarity of his disposition. A few years after his accession to the throne, the war was renewed with *Othogar*, king of *Bohemia*, who was at war with the emperor *Rodolphus* for the duchy of *Austria*. *Rodolphus* and *Ladislaus*, having concluded an alliance, marched their army against *Othogar*, who had taken *Drozendorf*, and ravaged great part of *Austria*. The two armies engaging within a few leagues of *Vienna*.

Chron. BACKSEAL. ad Ann. 1270. BONF. Decad. ii. l. 8.

(E) *Tburce*, *Ransan*, and *Bonfinius*, place the death of *Bela* in 1275; but as they say he reigned thirty-five years after his father, who, according to them, died in 1235, they are not only in a mistake, but likewise inconsistent with themselves. Besides, there is extant in the Registry of pope *Gregory X.* a confirmation granted in the year 1272, of the peace concluded between *Stephen* and *Othogar* the year before, which *Stephen*, in his letter to the pope, calls the second year of his reign (b).

(F) So says *Bonfinius*; but other authors relate the events of this war very differently; and say, that *Othogar* entered *Hungary* with an army, took *Presburg*, where *Bela* had placed his treasures, and besieged *Stephen* in the island of the *Raab*; but that *Stephen* gaining a small advantage over *Othogar*, by breaking down the bridge of *Javaria*, returned to *Buda*, as though he had gained a victory, while *Othogar*, finding his enemy gone, marched back with his army to *Vienna*.

(b) *Spondani Ann. ad an. 1270.*

enna,

A. C.  
1278.

*Is excommunicated by the bishop on account of his oppressing the Christians.*

*The Cumani invade Hungary.*

A. C.  
1285.

*Ladislaus is murdered by a Cumani woman.*

Andrew  
III.  
A. C.  
1290.

*Anna, Othogar* was entirely defeated, and killed in the action by *Ladislaus*, according to the *Hungarian* writers<sup>p</sup>; but according to others, by two brothers from *Stiria*, whose third brother he had put to death<sup>q</sup>. *Ladislaus* returning victorious to *Hungary*, addicted himself wholly to his pleasures, and neglecting all care of the government, spent his time wholly with women of the *Cumanian* nation, whose idolatrous manners he had imbibed, and was even suspected to have renounced the Christian religion, upon which account he became odious to his subjects; and the nobles having complained to the pope, that he oppressed the Christians, and plundered the churches and monasteries, *Philip Firmianus* was sent from *Rome* this same year, to exhort him to abandon the society of the heathens, and to live in friendship with his queen. *Ladislaus*, paying no regard to the admonitions of the bishop, was at last excommunicated by him; which sentence obliged the king to acknowledge his errors, and to promise, among other things, to build an hospital for strangers; which we find he performed, by his letter the following year to pope *Nicholas III*<sup>r</sup>. The inactivity of this prince, at last, encouraged the *Cumani* to invade *Hungary*; who, for several years, came regularly in the harvest-time in great bodies, and encamping with their flocks in the fields, ravaged the country. The *Hungarians* being, in a manner, without a chief, made no opposition; the rich retiring to their fortified castles, and the poor hiding themselves, with their effects, in the mountains and caves. *Ladislaus* was at length prevailed upon to raise an army, with which he marched to the passes of the mountains of *Krapak*, where he gained a compleat victory over the *Cumani*. Upon this defeat, *Oldamir* their king fled to the *Tartars*, and having excited them to invade *Hungary*, returned at their head, and ravaged the country as far as *Pesth*. The *Hungarians* not daring to make any resistance, the barbarians retired loaded with booty. *Ladislaus*, notwithstanding the admonitions of the pope, the emperor, and his father-in-law the king of *Sicily*, still continuing his attachment to his pleasures, he was at last stabbed, when sleeping in his tent, by some of the *Cumanian* women whom he had offended.

*LADISLAUS* dying without issue, there appeared several competitors for the crown of *Hungary*. The emperor *Rodolphus*, pretending that *Hungary* was a fief of the empire, vacant by the defect of the male issue, gave the investiture of

<sup>p</sup> BONF, *ibid.* THUROZ, c. lxxviii. <sup>q</sup> DUBR. l. xvii. p. 143. ÆNEAS SYL. Cap. xxvii. <sup>r</sup> SPOND. ANN. ad an. 1278.

it to his son *Albert*, duke of *Austria*. *Charles the lame*, king of *Sicily*, who had married *Mary*, the sister of *Ladislaus*, upon the news of his death, caused his son *Charles Martel*, then a youth of seventeen years of age, to be crowned at *Naples* king of *Hungary*, in right of his mother. This right was supported by the pope, who pretending that *Hungary* held of the *Roman* church, sent a legate to the emperor, ordering him to desist from his claim. After some disputes, a marriage being agreed to betwixt *Charles Martel* and *Clementina* the daughter of the emperor, *Rodolphus* consented to quit his pretensions. In the mean time, the *Hungarians*, by unanimous consent, had elected to themselves another king, one *Andrew*, surnamed the *Venetian*, grandson of *Andrew II.* by his son *Stephen*, born after his death. *Andrew II.* upon his return from the holy land, having married a daughter of the prince of *Este*, left her big with child at his death; she retiring into her own country was delivered of *Stephen*, who afterwards marrying *Thomasina*, a rich *Venetian* lady, of the family of the *Maurocenis*, had by her *Andrew*, who was born and brought up in *Venice*, from whence he had the surname of *Venetian*. The *Hungarians*, even before the death of *Ladislaus*, from their hatred to that prince, had sent for *Andrew* into *Hungary*, and created him duke, that is, heir-apparent. *Andrew* was, however, obliged to quit *Hungary* for fear of *Ladislaus*; but, upon his death, he was immediately recalled, and elected king. The year following, *Andrew* declared war against *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, upon account of some rebels whom *Albert* refused to deliver up. Before he committed any hostilities, he endeavoured, by means of the bishops, to bring the dispute to an accommodation; but not succeeding that way, he entered his territories with an army, and ravaged his country in a most miserable manner; till at length, by the intercession of the bishops of *Hungary*, a peace was concluded and ratified on both sides over sacred relics, *Albert* having agreed to satisfy the claims of *Andrew*. Upon his return to *Hungary*, *Andrew* found his kingdom greatly divided, the pope having prevailed with the greatest part of the ecclesiastics, and many of the nobles, to acknowledge the right of *Charles Martel*, who, in consequence of their invitation, had set out for *Hungary*, with his wife and son *Charles Robert*, or *Charlesbert*, then an infant. The greatest part of the *Hungarians* being highly incensed that the pope should pretend to dispose of their kingdom, and deprive them of the rights of election, continued steady in their allegiance

Several competitors for the crown of Hungary.

The Hungarians chose Andrew the Venetian.

The pope favours Charles Martel.

\* VILLANIUS, l. vii. c. 134. † SPOND. Ann. ad ann. 1291.

to *Andrew*, notwithstanding all the endeavours of the pope's emissaries. However, as the party of *Charles* was very numerous, and *Andrew* himself had no children, *Charles* continued in possession of part of *Hungary* for several years without opposition. The two rival kings are said both to have died in the same year. *Charles* having gone to *Rome* to the jubilee, died at *Naples*. *Andrew* died at *Buda*, and was buried in the church of *St. John*.

*Andrew dies at Buda.*

A. C.  
1301.

*The Hungarians refuse to acknowledge any right in the pope to dispose of their kingdom.*

*Ladislaus IV.*

A. D.  
1302.

*And chooses Ladislaus a son of the king of Bohemia.*

By their death *Hungary* was again involved in troubles and confusion; for the greatest number of the nobles being incensed that the pope should pretend to deprive them of the right of election; which they had always hitherto retained, refused to accept of *Charobert* or *Charles*, the son of *Charles Martel*, for their king; whose right, on the other hand, was supported by pope *Boniface VIII.* and many of the nobles. The party which favoured an election prevailing, an embassy was sent to *Wenceslaus*, king of *Bohemia* and *Poland*, desiring him to accept of the crown of *Hungary*. *Wenceslaus* refusing to accept of that crown for himself, offered them his son *Wenceslaus*, then a boy of thirteen years of age, who was accordingly conducted into *Hungary*, and crowned at *Albe Royal* by the archbishop of *Kolotza*. Pope *Boniface* being informed of the coronation of *Wenceslaus*, whom the *Hungarians* called *Ladislaus*, exclaimed against it as an injury done to the holy see; and not only wrote to his father to recall his son from *Hungary*, but prevailed with the emperor *Albert* to declare war against him, and enter *Bohemia* with an army. *Wenceslaus*, though he obliged *Albert* to retire without coming to an engagement, yet as he heard his son enjoyed only the name of king without the power, and that *Hungary* was torn to pieces by intestine divisions, fearing for the life of his son, he marched with an army as far as *Pesth*; and ordering his son to come to him with the crown, he carried him and it back with him into *Bohemia*.

A. C.  
1303.

*The pope sends a legate into Hungary.*

UPON the departure of *Ladislaus*, *Boniface* sent a legate into *Hungary* to urge the election of *Charles*; but the nation being still firm in maintaining their rights of election, and refusing to accept of a king from the pope, the legate quitted *Hungary*, and returned to *Italy*; but, before his departure, laid the city of *Buda* under an interdict. In return for this severe sentence, many of the ecclesiastics assembling, not only excommunicated the pope, but likewise excommunicated and banished all those ecclesiastics who adhered to him; and all of that faction entering into an association against the

pope and Charles, chose Otho, duke of Bavaria, for their king.

OTHO having obtained the sacred crown from *Wenceslaus*, entered *Hungary*, and was crowned at *Buda*. After his coronation, instead of strengthening his party, or settling the disturbances of the kingdom, he employed his time in vain parade, and magnificent processions through the towns and villages. Making a progress afterwards in *Transylvania*, he was there taken prisoner by the vaivode, and kept in chains till he renounced the kingdom. Upon his abdication, another legate was sent from *Rome*, who, after continuing a year in *Hungary*, during which time he had prevailed with many of the nobles to come over to the party of *Charles*, at last, finding the nation wavering in their determinations, he anointed *Charles* at *Pesth*; and the year following crowned him in *Buda*; at the same time publishing an edict of a general excommunication against all those who opposed him. In consequence of this sentence, a general assembly of the states was held the year following, in a plain near *Pesth*, where *Charles* at last was unanimously chosen king; and soon after crowned at *Abbe Royal* with the sacred crown of *St. Stephen*; the sentence of excommunication being taken off, and a free pardon granted to all his subjects. In the second year of his reign, *Hungary* was disturbed by the rebellion of *Matthew* count *Palatin*, who, trusting to his great power and wealth, ventured to oppose the king's commands; and to keep possession of some forts. *Charles* raised an army, and being assisted by the knights of *Rhodes*, marched against the rebels, and after a most obstinate engagement, entirely defeated them, though not without great loss on his own side. By this victory *Charles* entirely quieted his kingdom, and having had no children by his two former wives, the first of whom was *Mary*, daughter of duke *Casimir* of *Poland*; the other *Beatrice*, daughter of the emperor *Henry VII.* he married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Ladislaus*, king of *Poland*, by whom he had four sons, *Ladislaus*, *Lewis*, *Andrew*, and *Stephen*. *Charles* was engaged in no expedition for several years after his marriage; but at last being excited by his nobles, he declared war against *Baizarad*, vaivode of *Walachia*. Immediately before this expedition he was in great danger of his life from one *Felicianus*, a courtier, who had so insinuated himself into the friendship of the king, that he had free access at all times into the palace. *Felicianus*, hoping, by his great power and wealth, to obtain the kingdom; if the king

A. C.  
1305.  
Otho.  
The Hungarians  
chuse Otho  
duke of  
Bavaria,  
for their  
king.

A. C.  
1308.

*Charles*.  
A. C.  
1310.  
*Charo-*  
*bert* or  
*Charles*, is  
at last ac-  
knowledg-  
ed by the  
states.

A. C.  
1312.

A. C.  
1320.

He de-  
clares war  
against the  
vaivode of  
*Walachia*.

\* THUROZ. Ref. Hungar. c. 90. BONF. ibid.

and his issue were once slain, entered the apartment where the king was dining, and quickly drawing his sword, made an attack upon him, but only wounded his right hand; next struck at the queen, and cut off four of her fingers. Afterwards he made an attempt upon the children; but was prevented by their preceptors, who interposed. In the mean time, the palace being alarmed, *Felicianus* himself was attacked, and immediately slain, and his children and relations were likewise put to death upon account of his crime.

A. C.  
1130.

THE king being delivered from this treasonable attempt, assembled his army, and marching into *Walachia*, took *Zeurin*, and ravaged the neighbouring country. The *vai-vode*, surprised at these hostilities, sent ambassadors to the king, desiring peace, and offering not only to pay his usual yearly tribute, which he had never omitted, but likewise to bear the expences of the present expedition. The king, rejecting these terms of peace, advanced with his army into the *vai-vode's* country, but adventuring too far into the woods and mountains, his army was reduced to such difficulties, that he was fain to conclude a peace upon the condition of the *vai-vode's* future obedience, and allowing him to retire safe with his army. *Charles*, trusting to those conditions, marched back with his army, but was attacked by the *Walashians* in the narrow passes of the mountains, where he had no opportunity of escaping, or engaging his enemy. The attack continuing for four days, his troops were almost wholly cut off, and he himself narrowly escaped by changing his dress.

but is de-  
feated  
with the  
loss of al-  
most his  
whole  
army.

Charles  
goes with  
his son  
*Andrew* to  
*Naples*.

THREE years after this unfortunate expedition, *Robert*, king of *Sicily*, reflecting upon the injustice of possessing a kingdom that of right belonged to his nephew, sent for *Andrew*, the second surviving son of *Charles*, with the intention of giving him his grand-daughter in marriage, and declaring him his heir. *Charles*, upon receiving this message from his uncle, went with his son to *Naples*, and a dispensation being granted by the pope, the marriage was celebrated betwixt the two cousins, *Andrew* being then but seven years of age, and his bride only five. The year after *Charles* returned from *Italy*, he had a visit from *John*, king of *Bohemia*, with his son *Charles*, and *Casimir*, king of *Poland*, who were magnificently entertained by him at the castle of *Wissegrad*, where a defensive alliance was concluded betwixt them. He had a visit likewise three years afterwards from *Locha*, duke of the *Rutheni*, desiring to conclude a peace, which was agreed to between them. Not long after, *Casimir*, king of *Poland*, came again into *Hungary*, attended by a great many of his nobles, in presence of whom, and those of *Hungary*, he ap-  
pointed

pointed his nephew *Lewis*, eldest son of *Charles*, his heir; and after being treated in a royal manner, returned to *Poland*. Two years afterwards *Charles* died, having been long afflicted with the gout both in his feet and hands. He was universally lamented by his people, who, though they received him at first unwillingly, yet seemed not to be able to praise him enough after his death.

UPON the death of *Charles*, *Lewis*, his eldest son, was elected king with the unanimous consent of the states; and for courage, religion, and other virtues, he was not inferior to his father. In the beginning of his reign he immediately raised an army to reduce the *Saxons* of (G) *Transylvania*, who hearing of the death of *Charles*, and despising the youth of his successor, had revolted and intercepted the king's tribute. *Lewis*, marching with his army into *Transylvania*, quickly made himself master of several of their towns; upon which the *Saxons* thought fit to lay down their arms, and return to their allegiance, *Lewis* pardoning all those that quickly submitted. Upon the news of these successes, *Alexander*, the duke of *Walachia* beyond the mountains, who had revolted from *Charles*, and could not be reduced by him, came of himself and submitted to *Lewis*, asking pardon; and that he might not seem to defraud the king of his tribute, he presented him with 1000 pound weight of gold. *Lewis* having granted him a peace, sent him back loaded with no less rich presents.

ABOUT this time, *Elizabeth*, the widow of *Charles*, resolving to visit *Rome*, went into *Dalmatia* with a great retinue, and being transported into *Apulia* by two *Venetian* galleys, was received with great affection by her son *Andrew*, and his wife *Joanna*, who had now succeeded to the crown of *Naples* by the death of *Robert*. From *Naples* *Elizabeth* went to *Rome*, to visit the sacred places and relics in that city, where she bestowed in sacred donations great part of the money that she brought with her, which consisted in 27,000 pounds of refined silver, and 21,000 pounds of pure gold. She returned again to *Naples*, where she continued some time, but being displeased with the levity of her daughter-in-law, she went back to *Hungary*, passing the *Adriatic* with four galleys of the king of *Naples*.

SOON after the return of *Elizabeth* to *Hungary*, *Lewis* was engaged in assisting *Casimir*, king of *Poland*, in his expedition

(G) The ancestors of these *Saxons* are said to have been transported into this country by *Charlemagne* in his wars with the

A. C. 1340.  
*Lewis*, the eldest son of *Charles*, is declared heir to the king of *Poland*.  
*Lewis*.  
A. C. 1342.

The *Transylvanians* revolt, but are quickly reduced by *Lewis*.

The duke of *Walachia* likewise submits.

*Lewis* assists *Casimir* against the *Lithuanians*.

tion against the *Lithuanians*, with an intention to force them to renounce their idolatry and embrace christianity. As they found the barbarians very obstinate, they ravaged their country with fire and sword; but the south winds beginning to blow, they were obliged quickly to leave their country before the melting of the ice cut off their retreat. *Lewis* was soon after called upon by *Casimir* to assist him in his war with *John*, king of *Bohemia*, who claiming the superiority of *Schweidnitz* in *Silesia*, declared war against *Casimir*, who disputed that title. *John* entering *Poland* with an army, ravaged the country, and laid siege to *Cracow*; but *Lewis* marching to the assistance of *Casimir*, *John* consented to a truce for three weeks, during which time a peace was concluded, in which *Lewis* and all the allies of *Casimir* were comprehended<sup>2</sup>.

*The Tar-* WHILE *Lewis* was engaged in assisting *Casimir*, the *Tar-*  
*tars again* *tars* again threatened *Hungary* with an invasion; and news  
*threaten to* was brought that they were ravaging the borders of *Transyl-*  
*ivania*. Upon this information, *Lewis* marched with his  
*Hungary.* army into that province, and giving the command under  
 himself to the son of the *vaiode*, he engaged the barbarians,  
 and after an obstinate dispute, totally routed them, taking  
 their duke prisoner, whom he caused to be immediately be-  
 headed, and returned to *Wissegrad* with great booty, and  
 many prisoners. After this expedition, *Lewis* was engaged in  
*The Croa-* a war with the *Croatians* and *Dalmatians*, who, by the in-  
*tians re-* tiguities of the *Venetians*, had revolted from the *Hungarians*,  
*volt, but* and taken possession of many castles and towns, which they  
*are subdu-* had fortified. *Lewis* having concluded an alliance with *Ste-*  
*ed by* *phen*, prince of *Bosnia*, whose daughter he afterwards mar-  
*Lewis.* ried, was assisted by his troops, which joined his army at the  
*Save*. The allies had no sooner entered *Croatia*, than the  
 rebels distrusting their strength, came and submitted, and hav-  
 ing obtained pardon, renewed their allegiance to *Lewis*.

A. C. CROATIA being subdued, and the inhabitants of *Zara*,  
 1346. who had a seventh time revolted from the *Venetians*, sent am-  
*Zara a-* bassadors to *Lewis*, offering, if he would march with an  
*gain re-* army to their protection, to surrender their city, country, and  
*volt from* all their fortunes to him. The terms being accepted by the  
*the Vene-* king of *Hungary*, he immediately marched with an army of  
*tians.* 120,000 men, but according to others, of only 20,000, into  
*Dalmatia*; but before he could reach *Zara*, the *Venetians* had  
 not only invested it with a fleet, but recovered several of  
 the islands. *Justinian* also arriving with an army by land,

<sup>2</sup> Vita Caroli IV. a seipso scripta. BONP. Dec. ii. l. 10.



he erected a fort near the town, and carried on the siege with the utmost vigour, with an intention of gaining the place before it should be relieved by the *Hungarians*. But the *Zarans* despairing of pardon, made a vigorous resistance, till the arrival of the *Hungarians*, when the *Venetians* were besieged in their turn. *Lewis*, next day after his arrival, ordered the *Venetian* fort to be attacked; but, notwithstanding the utmost bravery of his men, they were repulsed with great loss. A few days after he ordered another attack, and commanded that none should retreat; nevertheless, the *Venetians*, being assisted by the sailors from the fleet, made a most obstinate resistance, throwing boiling pitch over the walls, and using all other means of defence; so that the *Hungarians*, after continuing the attack till night, were obliged to retire with incredible loss. *Lewis* beginning to want provisions for his army, and despairing of dislodging the *Venetians* without a long siege, returned with his troops into *Hungary*, upon whose departure, the *Venetians* soon made themselves masters of *Zara*, where they exercised all manner of cruelties upon the authors of the revolt.

*Lewis marches to their assistance, but without effect.*

THE following year, *Lewis* marched with an army into *Italy*, to revenge the death of his brother *Andrew*, king of *Naples*, who had been strangled at *Aversa* by some conspirators, not without the approbation, as it was supposed, of *Joanna* his queen. (H) *Joanna*, that she might clear herself

Y VILLAN. l. xii. c. 50, BONF. Dec. ii. l. 12.

(H) *Andrew* was murdered on the 13th of September, 1345, at *Aversa*, in the nineteenth year of his age, the conspirators calling him up in the middle of the night from his queen, under pretence of his presence being immediately needed at *Naples*, to quell an insurrection of the people. He had hardly got out of his bed-chamber, when they threw a rope over his head, and dragging him to the balcony of the hall, hung him from thence into the garden. The noise of the buckle awaking a *Hungarian* woman in waiting, she alarmed

the palace; upon which the conspirators fled, not having time to bury the corpse in the garden, as they intended. This murder was generally believed to have been committed with the privity and consent of the queen<sup>a</sup>. What contributed to fix this suspicion upon her, was the known levity of her disposition, her neglect in enquiring into, and punishing the murderers, her marriage afterwards with *Lewis*, second son of the prince of *Tarentum*, with whom she is said to have had an intrigue before the death of *Andrew*, and who was suspected

<sup>a</sup> Villan. l. xli. c. 50.

Lewis  
marches  
into Italy  
to revenge  
the murder  
of his brother.

He executes  
several of  
the murderers,  
and takes  
possession of  
Naples.

A. C.  
1350.

He returns  
to Hungary, but  
is again  
called into  
Italy.

from the suspicion of being concerned in the murder, immediately wrote letters to *Lewis*, to pope *Clement*, and other christian princes, professing her great sorrow for the action, and resentment against the murderers. However, as there were many presumptions against her, *Lewis* resolved to march into *Italy*, not only to examine into the murder, but in case *Joanna* were found guilty, to claim the kingdom; accordingly, entering *Italy* by *Friuli*, he was every where received with great respect, and joined by many princes, who attended him to *Aversa*, where he executed several of the murderers, and sent others, who were suspected to be guilty, prisoners into *Hungary*. From *Aversa* he marched to *Naples*, with a black standard, and striking a terror into the people, he was saluted by them king of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*. Upon the news of his approach, *Joanna*, and *Lewis* of *Tarentum*, whom she had married, quitted *Naples*, and sailed to *Avignon*. In the mean time, *Lewis* changed the magistracy of *Naples*, and leaving a garrison in that city, marched against those places which still held for *Joanna*. Having reduced the most part of them, he put *Hungarian* garrisons into them, and leaving the administration of the kingdom, and the command of his army to *Guilford Wolfard*, and his brother *Conrad*, two noble *Germans*, he crossed the *Adriatic* to *Dalmatia*, and returned to *Hungary*, having been about four months in *Italy*, which he quitted, upon account of the plague at that time raging there.

UPON the departure of *Lewis*, the *Italians* entered into a conspiracy to expel the *Hungarians*, and recal *Joanna*; but being defeated in two engagements, they failed in their attempt. However, *Joanna* and her husband returning again into *Italy* with a body of auxiliaries, and the nation threatening to revolt in their favour, *Lewis* ordered an army to

to have been concerned in the murder; lastly, his confession upon her trial in 1351, that she was under the power of incantation, which hindered her from loving her husband so well as she ought. However, *Boccace* and *Petrarch*<sup>b</sup>, who were then alive, and both remarkable for their freedom of speech, lay no blame upon the queen, but ac-

cuse several of the nobles; who being sensible of the young king's regard to justice, and therefore afraid of an enquiry into their conduct, resolved upon that execrable deed. The queen was likewise acquitted by a decree of the apostolick see<sup>c</sup>, but afterwards suffered the same fate with her husband.

<sup>b</sup> *Petrarch. vi. Epistle Famil. 5. ad Barbat. Salmons Boccac. q. de Castb. vir lib. 26.*  
<sup>c</sup> *Spond. ann. ad an. 1351.*

follow him, and quickly passed over into *Apulia* by sea, with many of his nobles, and soon made himself master of the whole kingdom, either by force or voluntary submission. But at length, by the intercession of *Guidon*, apostolick legate, he consented to refer the determination of the matter to the apostolick see, on these conditions, viz. That if *Joanna* was found guilty, she should be deprived of her kingdom, which should be adjudged to *Lewis*; but if she should be proved innocent, *Lewis* promised to restore to her all those places in his possession, upon receiving 300,000 florins of gold for the expences of the war. A truce being then agreed to for some months, *Lewis* went to the jubilee at *Rome*, and from thence returned to *Hungary*. The following year, *Joanna* being declared innocent by a sentence of the apostolick see, though her exculpation chiefly rested upon her declaring herself under the power of incantation, which prevented her from having an affection for her husband, and consequently encouraged others to conspire his death<sup>2</sup>; *Lewis* immediately resigned all right to her kingdom, and to shew her he did not make war from an ambitious view, likewise forgave the payment of the 300,000 florins.

A FEW years afterwards, he was engaged in a war with the *Venetians*, upon account of *Dalmatia*. Having in vain endeavoured, by means of a negotiation, to prevail with them to quit their possessions in that kingdom, he invaded their territories with a very numerous army, and having taken a great many towns, at last laid siege to *Trevise*. The *Venetians*, though they omitted no means of defence, and hired a great body of *German* auxiliaries, yet sent an embassy, desiring peace. Their terms being rejected by the king of *Hungary*, the siege was carried on with great vigour on both sides. Soon after the *Venetians* sent another embassy to *Lewis*, offering to give up a great part of *Dalmatia*, to hold the rest of him by an annual tribute, and to pay all the expences of the present war; but *Lewis* insisting upon the whole province, the ambassadors returned, and the siege continued. Soon after, the *Germans* in his army revolting, and the *Hungarians* mutinying for want of provisions, *Lewis* was forced to raise the siege, and to conclude a peace upon worse terms than those offered by the *Venetians*. While *Lewis* was before *Trevise*, he received letters from the pope and council of cardinals, declaring him standard-bearer of the holy church against the infidels. *Lewis* afterwards con-

The affair is at last determined by the pope.

He invades the territories of the Venetians, and besieges Treviso.

2 SPOND. ann. ad ann. 1351. MATH. VILLAN. l. ii. c. 24. 41. & l. iii. 68. 19.

cluded an alliance with *Carraro* and the *Genoese*, whom he assisted against the *Venetians*, and gave assistance to the pope against *Barnabo Visconti*, then harrassing *Lombardy*. He was likewise soon after engaged in a war against the *Bulgarians*, whom he reduced, taking their king prisoner.

NOT long after, by the death of *Casimir*, he succeeded to the throne of *Poland*, and was crowned with unanimous consent at *Cracow*. Having settled the affairs of that kingdom, he was engaged in a war against the *Walachians*, whom he reduced. *Joanna*, queen of *Naples*, favouring the antipope *Clement* against *Urban VI.* the pope excommunicated her, and resolving to dethrone her, sent to *Lewis*, desiring him to concur in assisting *Charles de Duras*, a prince of the blood of *Naples*, in obtaining that crown. Upon the entreaties of the pope, *Lewis* ordered a body of 8000 *Hungarians* to march to *Naples* along with *Charles*, who then commanded the king's army in *Treviso*. *Charles* being likewise joined by many *Italians*, marched against *Joanna*; and having defeated her fourth husband, *Otho of Brunswick*, and taken her prisoner, he ordered her to be strangled, at the request of the king of *Hungary*. The same year, *Lewis*, by his continual expeditions and fatigues, having ruined his health, died in the fifty-sixth year of his age, and the fortieth of his reign, having, before his death, resigned the kingdom to his daughter *Mary*, whom he had betrothed to *Sigismund*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, and second son of the emperor *Charles IV.* who, in expectation of this alliance, had been educated in *Hungary* from his childhood. *Lewis* was a great lover of learning, and was commended for his prudence, generosity, and fortitude.

*LEWIS* leaving no male children, the states of the kingdom unanimously chose his eldest daughter *Mary* to succeed to the crown, and from their regard to the memory of her father, declared her king of *Hungary*, which title she retained till her marriage with *Sigismund*, which was celebrated three years after. In the mean time, her mother *Elizabeth* had the administration of the affairs of the kingdom, and was assisted in every thing with the advice and council of *Nicolas Gara*, whom *Lewis*, upon account of his services, had raised to the dignity of palatine. The beginning of her administration gave great satisfaction to all ranks; but being prevailed upon by the suggestions of *Gara*, to curb the power of the nobility, they conspired against her and their female king, and secretly made an offer of their crown to *Charles de Duras*, king of *Naples*. *Charles* landing at *Segnia*, with a few attendants from *Apulia*, was immediately joined by many of the nobles with

A. C.  
1370.  
He is engaged in a war against the Walachians.  
He assists Charles Duras in obtaining the crown of Naples.

A. C.  
1382.  
Mary is declared king of Hungary.

with their vassals, and marched from thence to *Buda*, his army continually encreasing on his march. *Mary* and *Elizabeth* not having forces to oppose him, dissembled their knowledge of his intention; and *Sigismund* having celebrated his marriage, and retired to *Bohemia*, they received *Charles* as a friend and relation. *Charles* at first assumed only the title of *Guardian* of the kingdom, but finding his party encrease, he called an assembly of the states, at *Buda*, where *Mary* was deposed, and he himself declared king<sup>a</sup>. *Elizabeth* finding her daughter thus unjustly deprived of her right, consulted with the *Palatine* how to take off *Charles*; and having agreed with one *Blasius Forgach*, who undertook to assassinate him, soon after *Elizabeth* invited *Charles* to her apartment, under pretence of seeing some letters which she had received from *Sigismund*; and while he was reading the letters, *Blasius* struck him on the head, of which wound he died three days after. The queen's friends, who were in readiness, immediately took possession of the palace, and expelled the *Italians*, who, upon the king's death, left *Hungary*, finding *Mary* now supported with the universal favour of the people. The two queens thinking that all was quiet by the death of *Charles*, resolved to visit the southern parts of the kingdom, and going with a few attendants towards the *Save*, they were unexpectedly attacked by *John Horvatus*, the governor of *Croatia*, who had been one of *Charles's* greatest friends. The *Palatine* and *Forgach* were killed in the attack, and *Elizabeth*, by order of *Horvatus*, was thrown into the river *Bozota*, while *Mary* was carried into *Croatia*, and there thrown into prison. In the mean time, *Sigismund* having raised an army in *Brandenburgh* and *Bohemia*, and being informed of the death of *Charles*, marched into *Hungary*, where he was joined by many of the nobles, and conducted to *Buda*. *John Horvatus* hearing that *Sigismund* had got peaceable possession of *Hungary*, immediately was reconciled to *Mary*, and set her at liberty, after having made her swear to forget all that was passed. Upon her return to *Buda*, she was received with the utmost congratulation, and at her entreaty, her husband *Sigismund*, then twenty years of age, was solemnly crowned by the archbishop of *Strigonia*. The same year, *Hedwige*, the youngest daughter of *Lewis*, who, in his right, had succeeded to the crown of *Poland*, was married to *Jagello*, duke of *Lithuania*, who consented to become christian, and at his baptism took the name of *Ladislaus*.

The nobles  
revolt, and  
send for  
*Charles*,  
king of  
*Naples*.

A. C.  
1385.  
*Charles is  
declared  
king, but  
murdered  
soon after.*  
A. C.  
1386.

A. C.  
1387.  
*Sigismund  
marches  
into Hun-  
gary with  
an army,  
and is de-  
clared  
king.*

\* THUROZ in Car. par. c. ii. usque ad 7.

**SIGISMOND**, soon after his coronation, resolved upon an expedition against *Horvatus*, who had fled to *Dobor* in *Bosnia*, where the bishop of *Zagabria*, and many of the nobles, who had favoured *Charles*, now resided, and by their artifices, had persuaded *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Bosnia*, to revolt from their allegiance to the king. *Horvatus* being taken prisoner as he was endeavouring to escape, *Sigismond* soon after made himself master of *Dobor*, and having thus got the chiefs of the rebellion in his power, the provinces soon submitted. Returning with his army to the city of the *Five Churches*, *Horvatus* was there put to death with the most cruel torments, and the bishop of *Zagabria* banished. After

He marches  
against the  
Walachi-  
ans, and  
reduces  
them.

They again  
revolt, and  
are assisted  
by the  
Tartars  
from  
Thrace.

He marches  
with a  
great army  
against  
Bajazet,  
emperor of  
the Turks,

this *Sigismond* marched against the *Walachians*, who, encouraged by the civil dissensions in *Hungary*, had revolted from their allegiance, and fortified the passes in the mountains. *Sigismond*, after an obstinate dispute, having gained those passes, afterwards besieged the chief town of the *vaivode*, who thereupon quickly submitted; and, upon promise of future obedience, was pardoned by the king. Nevertheless, two years afterwards they again rebelled; and being assisted by some *Turks* from *Thrace*, which country those barbarians had lately subdued under *Amurath*, they made incursions into *Hungary*, plundering the frontier provinces. The king, resolving to punish their perfidy, raised a great army, with which he marched into their country<sup>b</sup>, gaining a signal victory, afterwards took the lesser *Nicopolis* upon the *Danubè*, and reduced the whole country. During his absence upon this expedition, his queen died; without having had any children; upon the news of which, *Ladislaus*, king of *Poland*, prepared to invade *Hungary*, which he claimed in right of his wife; but the archbishop of *Strigonia* quickly raising an army, and guarding the passes, he was prevented from entering the kingdom. Three years afterwards, *Sigismond* was engaged in a war with *Bajazet*, emperor of the *Turks*, who had invaded *Bulgaria*, then subject to *Hungary*. *Bajazet* having given an insulting answer to the ambassadors of *Sigismond*, he made great preparations for war, and sent to the king of *France*, and many other princes, desiring their assistance against those barbarians. His army being at length augmented to the number of 100,000 men, by auxiliaries and volunteers, from *France*, *England*, and *Flanders*<sup>c</sup>, he marched against the enemy, not only confident of victory,

<sup>b</sup> DUBRAV. l. xxv. p. 207. BONF. Dec. iii. l. 3. <sup>c</sup> FROSSARD Tom. iv. c. 67. THUROZ in *Sigism.* c. viii. DUBRAV. c. xxv. p. 202. BONF. Dec. iii. l. 2.

but boasting, that if heaven was to fall, his number of pikes would support it. *Bajazet* being informed, *Froffard* says, particularly (1) by *John Galeas*, duke of *Milan*, of the great preparations that were making against him, sent for great supplies out of *Asia*, and encreased his army to 200,000 men. In the mean time, the christian army having passed the *Danube*, took several towns, and put the *Turkish* garrisons to the sword. Advancing afterwards, they besieged *Nicopolis*; and *Bajazet* coming up with his army, a general engagement ensued, in which the christians were entirely defeated, with the loss of 20,000 men, by the precipitate courage of the *French*, who resolving to be the first that attacked the enemy, began the engagement before the *Hungarians* got out of their camp. In the attack, finding their horses galled by the *Turkish* arrows, they dismounted and engaged on foot; in the mean time, their horses returning to the camp without their riders, struck a panic into the rest of the army, who, notwithstanding the utmost endeavours of *Sigismond*, immediately fled in confusion<sup>a</sup>. The *Turks*, though they lost 60,000 men in the battle, yet gained the christian camp, and took many prisoners, among them were several nobles, who, after many years captivity, were set at liberty, upon paying a ransom of 200,000 crowns.

A. C.

1396.

but is entirely defeated.

AFTER this defeat, *Sigismond* crossed the *Danube* with a few attendants in a small boat, and fled to *Constantinople*; from whence by sea he returned to *Dalmatia*, where he continued for two and twenty months; the faction of *Charles de Duras* upon his defeat having again entered into a conspiracy against him, and secretly invited *Ladislaus*, king of *Naples*, and son of *Charles*, to accept of their crown, which, they said, belonged to him by right since the death of *Mary*. The minds of the people being in some measure appeased by means of the bishop of *Strigonia* and some other nobles that continued faithful, *Sigismond* at last entered *Hungary*, but thought fit to dissemble his knowledge of the conspirators,

(1) According to *Froffard*, *Galeas* being affronted that his daughter was turned away from the court of *France*, upon an accusation of fascinating the king, under pretence of sending some hawks and falcons to *Bajazet*, with whom he had contracted an alliance, gave him information of the preparations against him, mentioning the names of the princes and nobles, their manner of fighting, and the best method of attacking them<sup>a</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> *Froffard* c. lxxii. & lxxiii.

who thereupon grew more confident, and an assembly of the states being appointed a few years afterwards, they assembled armed, there took their king prisoner, and committed him to the keeping of the sons of the late *Palatine Gara*, who were the chiefs of the malecontents. Upon the imprisonment of *Sigismund*, the malecontents immediately assumed the government in the name of *Ladislaus*, who made some difficulty of trusting himself among the *Hungarians*. At last, being informed that his faction was every where predominant, he quitted *Italy*, and landing at *Zara*, was received as king, and crowned in that city by the cardinal *Acciajoli* \*; though *Buda*, and several strong places in *Upper Hungary*, still held for *Sigismund*.

A. C.  
1403.  
*Ladislaus*  
*V. who is*  
*declared*  
*king,*

but quits  
Hungary  
on *Sigis-*  
*mond's*  
approach  
with an  
army.

*LADISLAUS*, mindful of the fate of his father, proceeded with caution, and advanced into the kingdom no farther than *Javarin*, having appointed *Thomas of St. Severin* to govern as viceroy. In the mean time, *Sigismund*, after two years imprisonment, having been set at liberty by the sons of *Gara*, who were reconciled to him by the mediation of their mother, went into *Bohemia*, where he quickly raised a great army, and returning to *Hungary*, with the assistance of those who continued faithful, he soon recovered most of the strong places in the kingdom. *Ladislaus*, astonished at this revolution, immediately left *Hungary*, and sent a letter to *Sigismund*, excusing the part that he had acted. *Sigismund*, having again recovered the kingdom, gave a general pardon to the rebels, very few excepted; and finding his authority established, he summoned an assembly of the states in *Sclavonia*, where he ordered *Stephen*, vaivode of *Transylvania*, and several other chiefs of the rebels, to be put to death. Among other things, *Stephen* was accused of inviting the *Turks* to invade *Hungary*, they having made incursions betwixt the *Drave* and the *Save* during the rebellion, on account of *Ladislaus*.

A. C.  
1410.  
*Sigismund*  
*is elected*  
*emperor.*

NOT many years after, *Sigismund* was elected emperor of *Germany*, and presided at the council of *Constance*, where *John Huss* and *Jerome of Prague* were condemned and burnt for heresy †, notwithstanding the safe-conduct of the emperor. Soon after his being elected emperor, he was engaged in a war with the *Venetians* about *Dalmatia*, which they claimed, as being sold to them by *Ladislaus* before his departure to *Italy*. *Sigismund*, not acknowledging their claim, sent an army against the *Venetians*, and defeated them in *Frioul*; but soon after, a truce was agreed to for five years. His

\* NIEM. l. ii. c. 17 & 18.

† See his hist. of the Emp.  
brother



brother *Wenceslaus* dying four years afterwards, he succeeded to the crown of *Bohemia*; but the disciples of *John Huss* having taken arms to revenge the death of their master, and assert their own liberty of conscience<sup>a</sup>, defeated him in five engagements<sup>b</sup>, and obliged him to quit the kingdom. Two years afterwards, *Sigismund* again entered *Bohemia* with an army, but was again defeated, and obliged to retire to *Silesia*; the *Hussites* offering the crown of *Bohemia* to *Coribut*, *He is chosen* nephew of the duke of *Lithuania*. While *Sigismund* was engaged in restoring peace to the church, and reducing *Bohemia*, the duke of *Spolatri* revolted, and calling in the *Turks* but is defeated by his assistance, defeated the *Hungarian* troops that were sent against him. The *Walachians* likewise rebelled, and being assisted by the *Turks*, defeated *Laconsius* their governor. However, *Nicholas* the *Macedonian*, soon after being assisted with some *Hungarian* troops, gained two signal victories over the *Turks* in *Servia*; nevertheless, they still continued to make irruptions into *Dalmatia*, *Slavonia*, *Austria*, and even as far as *Aquileia*. The ravages of the *Turks* being, in some measure, repressed by *Nicholas*, who had got the command of the armies in *Hungary*, *Sigismund* went into *Italy*, and was crowned with the iron crown at *Milan*; and after spending two years in that kingdom, was likewise crowned emperor at *Rome*. *The Turks ravage the frontiers of Hungary.*

A. C.  
1420.

*The Turks ravage the frontiers of Hungary.*  
A. C.  
1431.

THE following year, the *Taborites* in *Bohemia* being entirely defeated by the *Hussites* their brethren, who, grieved at the desolation of their country, had joined the Catholic nobles and extirpated those ravagers; an embassy was immediately sent to *Sigismund* at *Ratisbon*, who, confirming their privileges, was declared king; and two years afterwards was solemnly crowned at *Prague*, with his queen<sup>c</sup>. *Sigismund*, to prevent any more disturbances in that kingdom, took the remains of the *Taborites* into his pay, and sent them into *Hungary*, where they gained a signal victory over the *Turks*, who had again made an irruption into the southern provinces. *Sigismund*, finding his health declining, quitted *Prague*, and went to *Zuyma*, in *Moravia*, where he died, in the 70th year of his age, and thirty-first year of his reign over *Hungary*, in the twenty-seventh year of his imperial reign, and the seventeenth year of his reign over *Bohemia*. Before his death, he presented *Albert II.* duke of *Austria*, his son-in-law, to the nobles of both kingdoms as his successor.<sup>d</sup> *The Hussites at last submit, and Sigismund is crowned king of Bohemia.*

<sup>a</sup> See the Hist. of Boh. <sup>b</sup> AVENT. l. vii. p. 652. <sup>c</sup> See the Hist. of Boh. <sup>d</sup> See the Hist. of the Empire, and the Hist. of Boh.

A. C. 1438. UPON the death of *Sigismund*, the Hungarians elected *Albert*, duke of *Austria*, for their king, who had married *Elizabeth*, *Sigismund's* only daughter, by his second wife *Barbara*, daughter of the count of *Cilly*. *Albert*, the same year, was likewise elected emperor, and king of *Bohemia*. The states of *Hungary* made some opposition to his accepting the imperial dignity, but at length they absolved him from his promise of not accepting it, and he was soon after crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*. In *Bohemia* he was opposed by the sect of the *Hussites*, or *Calixtines*, who invited *Casimir*, the brother of the king of *Poland*, a boy of thirteen years of age, to be their king. Notwithstanding this faction, *Albert* entered *Bohemia*, and was crowned at *Prague*; and soon after, with the assistance of *Albert*, the *Achilles* of *Brandenburg*, expelled the *Poles*, and obliged the malecontents to submit. In the mean time, *Amurath II.* had invaded *Servia*, resenting the treaty which *George*, the despot, had concluded with *Albert* of *Hungary*, and tho' the despot had several sons, claiming the succession to *Servia*, because he had married his daughter. *George*, not being able to oppose the arms of the *Turks*, fled into *Hungary*, asking assistance against his enemy. Upon the news of this invasion, *Albert*, taking a great many of the *Calixtines* and *Taberites* into his pay, quitted *Bohemia*, and arriving in *Hungary*, marched with his army against the *Turks*, who, in the mean time, had taken *Semendria*, after a two months siege, and put out the eyes of two of the despot's sons. *Albert* being informed of this, and that *Amurath* had again returned home, he dismissed his army, and returned to *Buda*; where, upon eating too liberally of melons, he was seized with a dysentery, of which he died soon after at *Nesmel*, in his way to *Vienna*, in the second year of his reign, leaving behind him two daughters, and his queen *Elizabeth* big with child<sup>m</sup>.

The *Turks* invade *Servia*, and take *Semendria*.

*Albert* raises an army against the *Turks*, but dies soon after.

UPON the death of *Albert*, *Elizabeth* remembering the fate of *Mary*, daughter of *Lewis*, proposed to the states to elect a governor of the kingdom to assist her in the administration. Upon her request, it was proposed to send an embassy to *Uladislaus*, king of *Poland*, offering him the crown; and that *Elizabeth* should marry him, and their children inherit *Hungary*. Soon after the departure of the ambassadors, *Elizabeth* being delivered of a son, orders were sent after them to prevent them from executing their commission; notwithstanding

<sup>1</sup> DUBRAV. Hist. Boh. l. xx. p. 230. ÆNE. SYL. Hist. Boh. c. 56. BONY. Decad. viii. l. 4. <sup>m</sup> See the Hist of the Empire, and the Hist. of Boh.

which, they proceeded to *Cracow*, and made an offer of their crown to *Uladislaus*, who, consenting to accept of it, immediately raised an army and went with the ambassadors into *Hungary*, where he was generally received as king. However, the greatest part of the nobles adhering to *Ladislaus*, the posthumous son of *Albert*, he was crowned at *Albe Royal*, by the bishop of *Strigonia*, in a very full assembly, when he was only four months old. *Ladislaus* being thus legally crowned, his mother went with him immediately into *Austria*, and put him under the guardianship of the emperor *Frederic*, having privately carried with her the sacred crown. The *Bohemians*, upon hearing of the death of *Albert*, called an assembly of the states, and made an offer of their crown to *Albert*, duke of *Bavaria*, and to the emperor *Frederic*; but both those princes refusing to accept of it, they acknowledged *Ladislaus* for their king, and appointed two governors to administer the affairs of the kingdom during his minority.

A. C.  
1440.  
*Ladislaus*,  
is crowned  
king at  
four  
months old.

DURING the absence of the queen, the faction of *Ladislaus* every day increased, and his claim being espoused by the governor of *Croatia*, and *John Corvin*, the Hungarian vaivode of *Transylvania*, he was crowned at *Albe Royal* with a crown from the head of the image of *St. Stephen*, the sacred crown being missing. Upon the news of the coronation of *Uladislaus*, and the loss of the sacred crown, all *Hungary* was in confusion; and being divided into two factions, the one supported by the *Germans*, and the other by the *Poles*, a civil war immediately ensued, which continued for several months, with various success and great calamity to both parties, till at last a peace was concluded; by which it was agreed, that the king of *Poland* should govern *Hungary* during the minority of *Ladislaus*, and succeed him in case he died without issue; that he should likewise marry the eldest of the daughters of *Elizabeth*, and his brother *Casimir* the youngest. By the unexpected death of *Elizabeth*, the war was again renewed; but at the solicitation of the cardinal *Julian*, and the bishop of *Agria*, a treaty was again set on foot, and the peace of *Elizabeth* was confirmed by both parties, who now resolved to turn their arms against the *Turks*.

*Uladislaus*  
is likewise  
declared  
king.  
A. C.  
1441.

*Amurath*, upon hearing of the death of *Albert*, had returned with his army, and besieged *Belgrade*; but, after lying seven months before the place, he was obliged to retire with great loss. Next year he returned with an army, and passing the *Theysse*, ravaged all the country betwixt that river and the

*Danube*, but was entirely defeated by *John Corvin* near *Belgrade*; who likewise, the same year, defeated another army of the enemy that had invaded his province of *Transylvania*; sending a cart, loaded with the heads of the *Turks*, to *Uladiſlaus*. Notwithstanding this defeat, the *Turks* ſoon after invaded *Walachia*, but were again routed by *Corvin*, with the loſs of half their army, and all their tents, baggage, and artillery. *Amurath*, alarmed with theſe continual loſſes, reſolved upon an expedition in perſon againſt the *Hungarians*, which *Uladiſlaus* being informed of, he ſent to the pope, the emperor, and many other Chriſtian princes, aſking their aſſiſtance againſt the infidels, and, at the ſame time, made great preparations in his own kingdom. The pope having ordered a croiſade to be preached againſt the *Turks*, many volunteers flocke into *Hungary*, and early in the ſpring the king was in motion with his army; and being joined by all the reinforcements about the middle of *May*, he paſſed the *Theyſſe*, and marched along the *Danube* into *Bulgaria*; and having taken and plundered *Sophia*, encamped afterwards on the banks of the *Morava*. The *Turkiſh* army being encamped at a ſmall diſtance, the king gave the command of 10,000 horſe to *John Corvin*, who attacking their camp in the night, gained a ſignal victory, killing 30,000 of the enemy, and taking 4000 priſoners, and nine ſtandards, with the loſs of only 500 men \* (K). Having plundered and burnt the enemy's camp, he returned to *Uladiſlaus*, who, by the perſuaſion of cardinal *Julian*, directed his march for *Adrianople*, which was within ſix days journey. The Chriſtian army marched for ſome time upon a Roman way, but was ſoon interrupted by the mountain *Hemus*, which the ſeaſon of the year rendered impaſſable, it being then the end of *Decem̄ber*: a retreat being therefore ordered, they were ſoon after attacked by another *Turkiſh* army under the command of *Carambus*; but in this engagement the *Turks* were entirely defeated by

A. D.  
1443.  
Who are  
defeated by  
John Cor-  
vin.

\* BONF. *ibid.* THÜROZ. c. 40.

(K) This is the account of many more taken priſoners. the *Hungarian* writers; but *Æneas Sylvius*, who was then ſecretary to the emperor *Frederic*, mentioning this victory of the *Hunniade* †, ſays, that the *Hungarians* amplified the account; writing to *Frederic* that 30,000 of the *Turks* were ſlain, and Whereas the cardinal *Julian*, who was preſent, wrote to the emperor, that only 6000 were ſlain. *Æneas*, likewise, elſewhere aſſerts from the letters of the ſame *Julian* †, that only 2000 were ſlain, and 4000 taken priſoners.

† *Æneas de Europ.* c. 5.

† *Id.* *Epist.* 44. & 81.

Corv

Corvin, and Carambus himself taken prisoner. *Uladislaus*, upon his return to *Buda*, was congratulated by the Christian princes, and great preparations were made for the following campaign, not only in *Hungary*, but likewise in *Poland* and *Italy*; the *Venetians* and *Genese* having fitted out a fleet of seventy sail to guard the *Hellepont*, and prevent succours coming to the *Turks* from *Asia*. *Amurath*, informed of those great preparations, and his dominions being threatened to be attacked in *Asia* by the prince of *Caramania*, concluded a peace with *Uladislaus* for ten years. Upon the conclusion of the peace, *Amurath* sent part of his troops into *Asia*, and employed the rest of his army against *Scanderbeg*, prince of *Albania*, who had revolted. The *Turks* being thus engaged in civil divisions, the cardinal *Julian*, at the instigation of the pope, prevailed with *Uladislaus* to break the peace a few months after it had been made. Accordingly, he marched from *Segedin* on the 20th of *September*, and having taken some towns in *Bulgaria*, and defeated several bodies of the enemy, he was informed that *Amurath*, having deceived and bribed those who guarded the *Hellepont*, had passed over into *Europe* with a great army. *Uladislaus* still advancing, marched on the left of the mountain *Hemus*, and in ten days came to the coast of the *Euxine-Sea*, and encamped at *Varna*; the *Turkish* garrisons every where submitting to him. *Amurath* at last arriving, the two armies engaged near *Varna*, and, after a long resistance, the Christians were entirely defeated, and *Uladislaus* himself killed. *Corvin*, immediately retreating with the remains of the army over the *Danube*, marched through *Walachia*, and returned to *Hungary*; where, recruiting his forces, he marched again towards *Servia*, hearing that the *Turks* had advanced within twenty miles of the *Save*. The two armies coming within view of each other, *Corvin* passed the *Save* in the night, and attacking the *Turkish* camp, gained a complete victory.

THE states of *Hungary* soon after assembling to deliberate upon the choice of a new king, it was unanimously resolved to send for young *Ladislaus* from *Germany*, and appoint a governor to administrate the kingdom during his minority. Accordingly, ambassadors were sent to the emperor *Frederic*, demanding their king, and the sacred crown of *St. Stephen*; but their request being denied, *Jehn Corvin*, who had been chosen governor, declared war against the emperor, and raising an army, ravaged *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia*: but *Frederic* still refusing to give up his pupil, the governor returned to *Hungary* to prepare for a war against the *Turks*. Being joined by the apostolic legate, and a great many nobles,

ing his  
minority.

Corvin  
marches  
against the  
Turks,  
but is de-  
feated.

A. C.  
1448.

He again  
engages the  
Turks and  
defeats  
them near  
Chryso-  
num.

bles, he passed the *Danube* with an army of 22,000 men, and marched into *Rascia* or *Servia*, endeavouring to engage the despot *George* in the expedition ; but *George*, afraid of the resentment of the *Turks*, excused himself from giving any assistance, and secretly gave advice to *Amurath* of the strength of the *Hungarian* army. Upon this refusal of the despot, *Corvin* marched through his country, in a hostile manner, into *Bulgaria*, expecting a strong reinforcement from *Scanderbeg*, prince of *Albania*. The *Albanians* delaying their march, and *Amurath* cutting off provisions from the *Hungarian* army, *Corvin* resolved to give him battle. Accordingly, the two armies engaging, the action continued the whole day with great obstinacy, the *Hungarians* having repulsed five different bodies of the enemy, and having dined and supped upon the field. Early next day the action was renewed, and continued till night, with great loss to the *Turks*. On the third day the engagement was decisive, for the *Hungarians* being spent with the fatigue, and many of them wounded, were at last overpowered by the *Turks* ; 8000 of them being slain, and *Corvin* himself with great difficulty escaping<sup>p</sup>. After having travelled alone in the woods for several days, and falling into the hands of robbers, he came at last to *Semendria* ; but was detained by the despot *George*, and obliged to leave his son a hostage for his ransom.

THE following year, the governor was again engaged in a war with the *Turks*. *Amurath* having attacked *Servia*, in revenge for the despot's setting *Corvin* at liberty, *Corvin*, though he had immediately after his return obliged the despot to send home his son without ransom ; yet forgetting his former injuries, willingly marched to his assistance against the *Turks*, whom he defeated near *Chrysonicum*. In the mean time, the count of *Ciley*, governor of *Austria* for the young *Turks* and king *Ladislaus*, envious of the glory of *Corvin*, excited some parties of *Bohemians* and *Moravians* to attack *Upper Austria*, and by secret practices alienated many of the nobles from the governor ; but the *Hunniad*, marching with some troops from *Lower Hungary* that were attached to him, soon repulsed the invaders, and quieted the commotions.

ABOUT this time, the *Hungarians* being informed that the emperor *Frederic* was going into *Italy* to be crowned at *Rome*, again sent an embassy, demanding their prince ; the *Bohemians* and *Austrians* likewise requesting the same. The ambassadors again being denied by the emperor, the *Bohemians*

<sup>p</sup> BONF. Decad. iii. l. 1. ÆN. EUROP. l. vi. THUROZ. Chron. Hung. c. 46, and 47.

imme-

immediately called an assembly of the states, and deliberated about the choice of another king; but *Lucas Sylvius* being sent to them from *Frederic*, by his persuasion they were prevailed with to lay aside their design, and even to send many of their nobles to attend the emperor. The *Austrians*, upon *Frederic's* return, revolted against their governor, and besieged *Newstadt*; declaring to the emperor, that he must either restore them their prince, or expect a war. *Frederic*, not being in a condition to oppose their arms, at last consented to their demands; and *Ladislaus* being delivered up to the *Austrians*, an assembly was appointed to be held at *Vienna*, to which the nobles of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* were invited. At this assembly it was ordained, that, during the king's minority, *John Corvin* should govern *Hungary*, *George Podiebrad*, *Bohemia*, and *Ulric*, count of *Ciley*, *Austria*; and that *Ladislaus*, in the mean time, should continue with the count of *Ciley*.

A. C.  
1452.  
*Ladislaus*  
is at last  
delivered  
to his sub-  
jects.

Soon after, *Ladislaus* went to *Presburg*, to be present at an assembly of the states of *Hungary*; returning from thence to *Vienna*, he went afterwards to *Bohemia*, and was crowned with great solemnity at *Prague*. Upon his return to *Vienna*, the count of *Ciley*, ambitious of the government of *Hungary*, accused *John Corvin* to the king; but the governor having justified himself from the accusations of his rival, went into *Lower Hungary* to oppose the *Turks*, who having taken *Constantinople*, were ravaging *Servia*, and threatening to invade *Hungary*. Three years afterwards, *Mahomet II.* elated with the conquest of *Constantinople*, marched with an army of 150,000 men to besiege *Belgrade*; upon the news of which, *Ladislaus*, who was then at *Buda* with his uncle, despairing of the success of his arms against so great a force; quitted *Hungary*, and, under a pretence of hunting, fled to *Vienna*. In the mean time *John Corvin*, having defeated the *Turkish* fleet on the *Danube*, threw himself into *Belgrade* with a strong reinforcement, and was joined by *Capistran*, a *Franciscan*; who, having preached a croifade in *Germany* against the *Turks*, was followed by 40,000 men. After having continued a month before the town, *Mahomet* gave orders for a general assault; but, though his troops had penetrated into the market-place, he was repulsed with the loss of 40,000 men, and most of his artillery, he himself being carried half dead into his camp, which obliged the *Turks* immediately to quit the siege.

The *Turks*  
besiege *Bel-*  
grade, but  
are de-  
feated  
with great  
loss by  
*John Cor-*  
*vin*.  
A. C.  
1456.

See Hist. of Bohem. ÆN. EUROP. c. viii. BOEM. c. lxxv. THUROZ. in Ladis. c. lxxv. BONFIN. Dec. iii. l. viii. CHALCOND. c. viii. MEYER, l. xvi.

NOT many days after this signal victory, *John Corvin* died of a fever at *Zemlin*, leaving behind him two sons, *Ladislaus* and *Mathias*; *Ladislaus* the eldest succeeding him in his government, to the great regret of the count of *Ciley*, who conspired his death, in order to succeed to the government of the kingdom. The king hearing of the defeat of the *Turks*, returned to *Hungary*, and soon after went to *Belgrade*, attended by his uncle, who was there slain by the friends of *Ladislaus*. The king, though greatly moved at the murder, pardoned the sons of *Corvin* and their friends, which pardon he solemnly confirmed by an oath over the Eucharist; but, upon his return to *Buda*, he ordered *Ladislaus*, who had attended him thither, to be put to death; and *Mathias* with his friends to be kept prisoners, whom he carried with him to *Vienna*. From *Vienna* he soon after went to *Prague*, to celebrate his nuptials with *Magdalene*, daughter of the king of *France*, but died suddenly of a cholic before his wife had left that kingdom; being greatly lamented by the *Bohemians*, but not much regretted by the *Hungarians*, upon account of his quitting the kingdom at the siege of *Belgrade*, and afterwards putting *Ladislaus* to death, contrary to his oath<sup>\*</sup>.

*Ladislaus goes to Prague to celebrate his nuptials, but dies of a surfeit.*

A. C.

1457.

A. C.

1458.

*Mathias, son of John Corvin, is declared king.*

THE same day that *Ladislaus* died, *Mathias*, then a prisoner, was sent for into *Bohemia*, in expectation of his pardon, by a counterfeit order from the king; but was detained by *George Podiebrad*. In the mean time his uncle, *Michael Zsiglag*, hearing of the death of *Ladislaus*, and his safety, and knowing that as the royal line was extinct, there would be great disputes about the succession, immediately assembled an army of 20,000 men, composed of *Hungarians*, *Germans*, *Bohemians*, and *Transylvanians*; *Elizabeth*, the widow of *Corvin*, liberally furnishing money in favour of her son. The nobles, having got a safe-conduct from *Michael*, assembled in the neighbourhood of *Pesth*, in order to elect a king; but, during their deliberations, being surrounded by his army, they were obliged to chuse *Mathias*; though many of them favoured the emperor, and some even expected the crown for themselves. *Mathias*, having paid 60,000 crowns to *Podiebrad* for his ransom, and contracted an alliance with him by marrying his daughter, returned to *Hungary*, and was received at *Buda* by the nobles as their king. In the mean time, the emperor took possession of *Lower Austria*, his brother *Albert* of the *Upper*, and their cousin *Sigismund* of *Carinthia*<sup>†</sup>; and *George Podiebrad*, by the favour of the *Huf-*

\* See the Hist. of Boh. † See the Hist. of the Empire.



the faction, got himself elected king of *Bohemia*<sup>u</sup>. *Mathias*, finding that his authority was not fully established for want of being crowned, declared war against the emperor, who still retained the crown of *St. Stephen*; pretending, that he himself had been elected king of *Hungary*. After some engagements, *Frederick* consented to renounce any right to *Hungary*, and to restore the crown<sup>v</sup>. Soon after the conclusion of this peace, *Mathias* was engaged in a war with the *Bohemians*; who, since the time of the death of *Albert*, had possessed several towns in *Upper Hungary*, and frequently disturbed the rest of the kingdom by their incursions and ravages, having been first called in by the empress *Elizabeth*, to support her infant *Ladislaus* against the *Polish* faction. The *Bohemians* being defeated in several engagements, their chief, *Gisera*, at last submitted; and delivering up the towns in his possession, was pardoned by the king. *Mathias*, having quieted *Hungary*, marched with an army into *Bosnia*, and recovered *Jaza*, the capital, which had been surprized by the *Turks*; from thence he returned to *Buda*, and the crown having been brought back from *Germany*, by an escort of 3000 horse, he was solemnly crowned in the 6th year of his reign<sup>x</sup>. The following year *Mathias*, having concluded an alliance with the *Venetians*, by which they stipulated to pay him yearly 60,000 crowns, he marched with an army into *Rascia*, and besieged *Zoynich*; but a rumour prevailing, that *Mahomet* was marching with a great army to the relief of the place, he suddenly quitted the siege and returned to *Hungary*; from whence he sent ambassadors to *Rome*, to ask assistance against the infidels. Soon after, *Mathias* marched into *Transylvania* against the vaivode, who had revolted, and assumed the title of king; upon his approach, the vaivode submitted, declaring, that he was called king against his inclination. From thence *Mathias* marched into *Moldavia*, which had likewise rebelled, and given assistance to the *Transylvanians*; here he was attacked in the night in the city *Bania*, but, according to *Bonfinius*<sup>x</sup>, defeated the rebels with great slaughter; though, in the beginning of the action, he was wounded in the back with an arrow, the head of which continued in the wound for four years; but, according to others, *Mathias* was obliged to fly, having received three wounds, and lost 10,000 men<sup>y</sup>.

THE year after, *Mahomet* being engaged in a war in *Syria* and *Egypt*, *Mathias* consented to a truce with the *Turks*;

<sup>u</sup> See the Hist. of Boh. <sup>v</sup> THURCZ. c. lx. <sup>x</sup> BONF. Dec. iv. l. 1. <sup>y</sup> MICHOV. l. iv. c. 68. CROMER, l. 23.

*Mathias agrees to a truce with the Turks, and marches into Bohemia to dethrone Podiebrad.* and having accepted of the kingdom of *Bohemia*, offered to him by the pope, he marched with an army into *Moravia*, in order to dethrone *George Podiebrad*; but being unsuccessful in his attempt upon some places, he left his army in *Moravia*, and returned to *Hungary*, having had a conference with *George*. Early in the following spring, he returned to *Moravia*, and was crowned king of *Bohemia* at *Olmutz*<sup>2</sup>; but *George* dying two years afterwards, the *Bohemians* elected *Uladislaus*, the son of the king of *Poland*, who was soon after crowned at *Prague*. *Mathias*, incensed at this, resolved to force the *Bohemians* to acknowledge him for their king; tho', at the same time, he was threatened with the loss of his own

*The Hungarians rebel against their king, and abuse Casimir, who is defeated by Mathias.* kingdom: for the nobles, displeased with his arbitrary government, had offered their crown to *Casimir*, second son of the king of *Poland*, who had entered *Hungary* with a *Polish* army, and was joined by a great many *Hungarians*. *Mathias*, having gained over some of the chiefs of that faction, marched against *Casimir*, who, finding himself too weak, many of the *Hungarians* having fallen off from him, quitted the kingdom without an engagement. The war with *Bohemia* and *Poland* was at last concluded by a peace in *Moravia*, by which *Moravia* and *Silesia* was ceded to *Mathias*, and *Bohemia* and *Lusatia* left to *Uladislaus*.

A. C.  
1474.

WHILE *Mathias* was engaged in these wars, the *Turks* had taken *Negropont* and the *Morea*, subdued *Transylvania*, and had ravaged *Dalmatia* and *Croatia*, and made incursions as far as *Frioul*; they had likewise built a strong fort on the side of the *Save*, from whence they had made continual inroads into *Hungary*. *Mathias*, being now at peace with the *Christians*, turned the whole force of his arms against the *Turks*; and having taken and destroyed the new fort on the *Save*, he blocked up *Semendria*, which he proposed to besiege in form the following year. But while he was engaged in celebrating his marriage with *Beatrice*, daughter of the king of *Sicily*, *Mahomet* made an irruption into *Dalmatia*, and in his return raised the blockade of *Semendria*; and, passing the *Danube*, ravaged *Servia*, after which he again passed the *Danube* on the ice, and retired into *Bulgaria*<sup>2</sup>. Notwithstanding those daring inroads of the *Turks*, *Mathias* neglecting to oppose their incroachments, turned his arms against the emperor, who had complained of his marriage as an infraction of the treaty concluded between them, and had begun to commit hostilities in *Upper Hungary*. Having marched with an army into *Austria*, he took several places, and

*A peace is concluded betwixt the Poles, Bohemians, and Hungarians.*

*Mathias declares war against the emperor.*

<sup>2</sup> BONF. Dec. iv. l. 2.    <sup>2</sup> BONF. ibid.

besieged *Vienna*; which obliged the emperor to conclude a peace, by which he renounced all right to *Austria*, and promised to pay 130,000 crowns for the charges of the war. The *Venetians* and the pope having refused to pay him his yearly subsidy, since he had engaged in the war against the emperor, he withdrew his garrisons from *Dalmatia*; which the *Turks* being informed of, they immediately made an irruption into that country, ravaging all with fire and sword; and having defeated the *Venetians*, obliged them to conclude a disadvantageous peace. Two years afterwards *Mahomet II.* dying at *Nicomedia*, and his sons disputing about the succession, *Mathias* ordered great levies to be made, with a design of attacking the *Turks*; but the emperor *Frederic* having refused to pay the 150,000 crowns, and still continuing to use the title of king of *Hungary*, he marched with his army into *Austria*, and having taken *Vienna*, soon after made himself master of all *Lower Austria*, which, by a treaty, was to continue in his possession till the money was paid. *Mathias*, turning now very infirm, endeavoured to procure the kingdom of *Bohemia* for his natural son *John*; but being opposed in this scheme, he proposed to give him *Silesia*, which was then in his own possession. The *Silesians* refusing to have a bastard for their prince, and being supported with the arms of *Ladislaus*, obliged *Mathias* to lay aside his design; and a treaty was concluded, by which *Silesia* and *Moravia* was to return to *Bohemia*, if *Mathias* died before *Ladislaus*, in which case the king of *Bohemia* was to pay to *Hungary* 400,000 ducats. His infirmities still encreasing, *Mathias* died the following year of an apoplexy at *Vienna*, in the forty-ninth year of his age, and the thirty-third of his reign; being greatly commended for his love to learning, as well as for his abilities in war.

A C.  
1481.

He takes  
Vienna,  
and con-  
quers all  
Lower  
Austria.  
A C.  
1487.

A FEW weeks after the death of *Mathias*, the states assembled in the neighbourhood of *Pesth* to chuse a new king; and after many tumults and disputes, *Uladislaus*, king of *Bohemia*, was elected; his cause having been supported by the queen *Beatrice*, whom he promised to marry. The other candidates, who were *Maximilian*, king of the *Romans*; *Albert*, the younger brother of *Uladislaus*; and *John Corvin*, the natural son of *Mathias*, being rejected; *Uladislaus* was declared king on these conditions; that he should reside chiefly in *Hungary*, and should not confer any employments upon foreigners. Before the arrival of *Uladislaus*, *John Corvin*, having the greatest part of the castles in the kingdom left by his father under his command, raised an army, and endeavoured to obtain the crown by force; but the nobles march-

Uladislaus  
II.  
A C.  
1490.

John Cor-  
vin opposes  
his electi-  
on, but is  
ing defeated.

ing against him with those troops that had been assembled at the diet, he was entirely defeated, and lost all his wealth, which was his greatest support.

Maximilian and Albert likewise declare war against him.

THE other two competitors, *Maximilian* and *Albert*, likewise declared war against *Uladislaus*; but *Albert* his brother, renouncing his pretensions, on condition of receiving annually 3000 crowns of gold, and some cities of *Silesia*, *Maximilian* consented to a peace. In the mean time, the *Turks*, having passed the *Save*, ravaged all the country betwixt that river and the *Drave*; and hearing that the *Hungarian* troops were chiefly employed against the king of the *Romans*, they even attempted the siege of *Belgrade*; but peace being concluded with *Maximilian*, *Paul Kinisus* marched with the *Hungarians* into *Lower Hungary* against the infidels, and obliged them to raise the siege of *Belgrade*. *Uladislaus* afterwards addicting himself wholly to sloth, the kingdom was not only exposed to foreign enemies, butarrassed with intestine divisions, the nobles losing all respect for their king, whom, upon account of his inactivity and bulk, they called an ox. *Uladislaus* being prevented by the states of *Hungary* from marrying *Beatrice* upon account of her barrenness, was absolved from his oath by the pope, and married *Anne*, the daughter of the duke of *Gondala* in *Gascony*, by whom he had two children, *Anne* and *Lewis*, who was crowned in the second year of his age at *Albe Royal*, while his father was still alive.

He marries Anne, daughter of the duke of Gandala.

The Turks threaten to invade Hungary.

A FEW years after, sultan *Selim*, having poisoned his father *Bajazet II.* marched with an army into *Croatia*, which province he ravaged; and, knowing the indolence of the king of *Hungary*, he likewise attacked, and took, the fort of *Sabacs*, on the *Save*, and threatened to make an irruption into *Hungary*; which *Uladislaus* being afraid of, proposed to the states to conclude a truce with the *Turks* for ten years, but was prevented by the bishop of *Strigonia*; who, having obtained indulgences from pope *Leo X.* ordered a croisade to be preached against the *Turks*. *Selim*, being informed of these preparations against him, and, at the same time, his dominions in *Asia* being attacked by the *Persians*, he procured a truce from *Uladislaus* for three years; which rendered the cares of the bishop of *Strigonia* useless against the *Turks*, and very destructive to *Hungary*; for the mob that had assembled against the infidels, having now no enemy, turned their arms against the nobles of the kingdom, by whom they had been despised and maltreated. After committing a great many barbarities and ravages, they were at last entirely sub-

dued

dued by *John*, count of *Scepus*<sup>b</sup>. The following year a peace was concluded between the emperor *Maximilian*, *Sigismund* king of *Poland*, and *Uladislaus*; which was strengthened by a double alliance, the one betwixt *Lewis*, the young king, and *Mary*, grand-daughter of the emperor; and the other betwixt *Ferdinand*, archduke of *Austria*, and *Anne*, the daughter of *Uladislaus*. This treaty being concluded, *Uladislaus* returned to *Buda*, where he died the year following; having reigned in *Bohemia* forty-five years, and twenty-five in *Hungary*.

A treaty betwixt Maximilian, Sigismund, and Uladislaus.  
A. C. 1515.

*ULADISLAUS* was succeeded by his only son *Lewis*, who had been crowned king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, when an infant. Though he was then only thirteen years of age, yet, to avoid disputes among the nobles, no governor was appointed; but the affairs of the kingdom were administered in his name, and *Stephen Bathoreus* was appointed palatine. The education of *Lewis* having been committed to *George* of *Brandenburgh*, he was taught to spend his time in the amusements of dancings and entertainments, without any care being taken to cultivate his mind by study; so that when he came to the administration of the kingdom, there was nothing he hated so much as application to business. The manners of the court being imitated by the nobles, they neglected their former study of arms, and were immersed in luxury and security<sup>c</sup>. In the mean time, *Solomon*, emperor of the *Turks*, was engaged in an expedition against the *Parthians*, in which he lost his whole army, returning to *Constantinople* with only 800 horse. Being in danger of being deposed by his seditious subjects, who were exasperated at his defeat, he at last appeased them, by assuring them of a successful expedition against the *Hungarians*. Accordingly, while the king was engaged in celebrating his nuptials at *Buda*, *Soliman* marched with his army against *Hungary*, and having taken the fort of *Sabacs*, on the *Save*, he besieged *Belgrade*, which soon surrendered; the garrison having been discontented on account of want of pay, and the governor himself absent at *Buda*, petitioning for 100 crowns; which sum, if it had been paid, 'tis supposed would have saved *Belgrade*. *Soliman* contented with this conquest in *Hungary*, retired with his army, and the year following made himself master of *Rhodes*<sup>d</sup>. *Lewis*, instead of recovering *Belgrade* during the absence of *Soliman*, went with his queen to *Bohemia*, where she was crowned.

Lewis II.  
A. C. 1516.

Neglected in his education.

The Turks take Sabacs and Belgrade.  
A. C. 1521.

<sup>b</sup> SAMBUC. in Appen. BONF. DUBRAV. l. xxxii. p. 263.  
<sup>f</sup> DUBRAV. l. xxxiii. p. 267. SAMBUC. ibid. <sup>d</sup> DUBRAV. l. xxxiii. p. 268.

UPON his return to *Hungary*, *Soliman* sent ambassadors to him, offering peace; as he was afraid lest the loss of *Rhodes* should awaken the Christian princes to declare war in general against him<sup>c</sup>. *Lewis*, by the persuasion of the pope and *Venetians*, rejected the offered peace, but, at the same time, made no preparations for war. Soon after, being alarmed at the great preparations of the *Turks*, he sent into *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, demanding succours against them; and hearing that *Soliman* had arrived at *Belgrade*, he ordered an army immediately to be assembled. In the mean time, the *Turks* having entered *Hungary*, advanced to the *Drave*, and having passed that river, encamped near *Mohats* with an army of 300,000 men, and 300 pieces of cannon. *Lewis*, notwithstanding the great number of the *Turks*, marched against them with an army of 25000 men, and engaged them without waiting for other troops that were on their march to join him. After an hour's engagement the Hungarians were totally defeated, the most of their nobles being killed, and the king himself drowned in the *Danube*<sup>f</sup>. The *Turks*, after this victory, advanced up along the *Danube*, and plundered and burnt *Buda*, sending out parties to ravage and destroy the country; from *Buda* they advanced as far as *Javarin*, still continuing their devastation and burning, but omitting to attack any fortified places. Having for fourteen days ravaged *Lower Hungary*, they laid a bridge over the *Danube* at *Pesth*, and committed the same desolation in *Upper Hungary* from the *Danube* to the *Theysse*; from whence they returned home, without leaving any garrisons in the places which they had possessed<sup>g</sup>. *Hungary* may date the declension of its grandeur from this invasion, in which more than 200,000 people are said to have perished; and as by the death of *Lewis* without issue, the house of *Austria* got possession of that crown, which they have ever since retained, *Hungary* came to be considered more as an appendix to another kingdom, than an independent sovereignty of itself.

As *Lewis* died without issue, there was a dispute about his succession betwixt *John Zapoli*, vaivode of *Transylvania*, and *Ferdinand*, archduke of *Austria*, who supported his claim by his relation to the late king, and by several treaties made betwixt the house of *Austria* and the kings of *Hungary*<sup>h</sup>. However, in an assembly of the nobles at *Albe Royal*, *John* was declared king, and crowned by some bishops a few

<sup>c</sup> SPOND. Ann. ad an. 1526. <sup>f</sup> BRODERITH. Descrip. <sup>g</sup> Idem ibid. <sup>h</sup> ISTUANF. de Reb. Hun. l. ix. Hist. Boh. l. xxxiii. p. 272.

months after the death of *Lewis*. But *Stephen Bathoreus*, the palatine of the kingdom, and the greatest part of the nobility and bishops, being attached to *Ferdinand*, archduke of *Austria*, who was likewise favoured by the queen *Mary* his sister, his claim prevailed, and he was crowned king of *Hungary*, at *Albe Royal*, about a year after *Zapoli*, whom he had expelled from *Hungary*, and obliged to take refuge with his brother-in-law the king of *Poland*<sup>1</sup>. *Ferdinand*, likewise obtained the kingdom of *Bohemia* without a competitor, and was peaceably crowned at *Prague*. *John* the vaivode, finding himself unequal to the arms of *Ferdinand*, sent to *Soliman*, offering to hold the kingdom of *Hungary* from him, and to pay him an annual tribute, provided he was restored by his means. *Soliman*, accepting of the condition, early in the spring marched with an army of 150,000 men into *Hungary*, and made himself master of the *Five Churches*, *Albe Royal*, and *Pesth*, which surrendered upon his approach. Afterwards *Buda*, *Strigonia*, and *Allenburgh*, and other towns and strong places situated on the *Danube*, surrendering to him, he besieged *Vienna* on the 26th of *September*; but meeting with a vigorous resistance, he was obliged to raise the siege on the 14th of *October*, having lost, according to some, 60,000, men before the place; but others make large abatements from this number. *Soliman* returned to *Buda*, where having called an assembly of the states, he declared *John* lawful king of *Hungary*, and, having given him the investiture of the kingdom, he returned to *Thrace*. Three years afterwards, the emperor *Charles V.* at the pressing solicitation of his brother, raised an army of more than 100,000 men, and marched to *Hungary* to expel the vaivode, and recover that kingdom from the *Turks*. *Soliman*, hearing of the preparations of the emperor, marched with 300,000 men to the protection of his vassal; but the two armies never came within view of each other, *Soliman* returning to *Constantinople*, after committing some hostilities, and *Charles*, instead of taking the advantage of the departure of the *Turks*, dismissed his army and returned to *Spain*.

Ferdinand.

A. C. 1527.

Soliman again enters Hungary, and besieges Vienna.

He gives the investiture of Hungary to the vaivode.

A. C. 1529.

A. C. 1532.

And marches into Hungary to his assistance.

A peace concluded.

A. C. 1536.

THE kingdom of *Hungary* still continued to be harrassed by the dissensions and hostilities betwixt the two kings; but at last, wearied with the devastation on both sides, they concluded a peace at *Vatia*, by which it was agreed, that *John* should continue in possession of that part of *Hungary* which he then enjoyed, but that, at his death, the whole kingdom should fall to *Ferdinand* and his issue; and if *John* should leave a

<sup>1</sup> SAMBUC. Append. ad BONF. ISTVANS. l. vii.

son, he should inherit *Transylvania*, and some places in *Silesia*; and, if the *Turks* should threaten either of them with a war, they were to oppose them with their united strength<sup>k</sup>.

*John dies,* This peace was of short continuance, for *John* dying four years afterwards, his infant son, *John Sigismund*, was crowned at *Alba Regalis* with the sacred crown of *St. Stephen*; while *Ferdinand* was assembling troops to take possession of that

and the war is re-

newed.

A. C.

1541.

*Ferdinand* was assembling troops to take possession of that part of the kingdom, according to treaty, and at the same time sent ambassadors to *Soliman*, offering to hold that part of *Hungary* from him, and to pay him an annual tribute. But *Soliman* taking the part of the orphan, rejected the embassy of *Ferdinand*, and the war was again renewed<sup>l</sup>. *Ferdinand*, the year following, sent *Rogendorf* with an army against *Buda*, where he was defeated by *Soliman* with the loss of 20,000 men. After this victory, *Soliman* entered *Buda* and ordered the queen *Isabella* to retire with her son into *Transylvania*; and having left strong garrisons at *Buda*, and *Pesth*, he returned to *Constantinople*, rejecting a second embassy from *Ferdinand*<sup>m</sup>. Notwithstanding the defeat at *Buda*, *Ferdinand* continued the war, and took several places in *Lower Hungary*; while *George* the monk, governor of *John Sigismund*, brought *Transylvania* under the government of *Ferdinand*, with the consent of *Isabel*, who agreed to a treaty with the king of *Hungary*. These advantages were counter-balanced by the loss of *Themeswar*, *Lippa*, *Zolnok*, *Zanad*, and several other places which the *Turks* reduced. Two years afterwards, *Isabella*, finding herself deceived in trusting to *Ferdinand*, called in the assistance of the *Turks* to recover that province, by whose means she expelled the *Germans* and *Hungarians* who favoured *Ferdinand*. But a few years afterwards a truce was concluded for eight years, and the limits of *Austrian Hungary* and *Othoman Hungary* were settled by *Soliman's* ambassador at *Frankfort*. As *Hungary* has continued, since this time, in the possession of the princes of the house of *Austria*, who have likewise been emperors, the transactions of this kingdom have been interwoven with the affairs of the empire, in the history of which the reader will find them related.

*Isabella endeavours to recover Transylvania.*

A. C.

1553.

*The limits of the Turkish conquests settled at Frankfort.*

A. D.

1562.

<sup>k</sup> ISTUANF. l. xii. ad finem. NEUGEBAUER. l. vii. <sup>l</sup> NEUG. ibid. ISTHUANF. l. xiv. <sup>m</sup> SPOND. ad an. 1541.



# THE HISTORY OF THE MODERN EMPIRE.

## CHAP. I.

**A**S the empire has never changed its title, it is still called the *Roman Empire*, upon account of its origin; and the *German*, upon account of the country whither it has been transferred. It is to no purpose, according to some *German* lawyers, to alledge against its title, that the imperial seat is no longer in the city of *Rome*; for they say, that there is *Rome* where the emperor resides; and although very little of the ancient *Roman Empire* remains in the hands of the modern emperors, they have still nevertheless the same pretension to *Rome* (L), that is, to the city of *Rome*, and the kingdom of *Italy*.

THE head of this body is the emperor, the members are the immediate and mediate states of the empire: the immediate states are the electors, and the archbishops, bishops, and prelates, the secular princes, the abbots, provosts, and abbeesses, the counts and lords, the free nobility (M), and the imperial cities: these are called immediate, because they hold immediately of the emperor and empire. The mediate states are the other ecclesiastics, monasteries, chapters, counts, gentlemen, cities, patricians, burghers, and labourers, who depend

(L) The *German* lawyers of this state does not require it.

the greatest prudence make no account of this title of the *Roman Empire*; a great many of the moderns even do not give it this title, and content themselves with calling it the empire of *Germany*. The *Germans* and princes of the empire have little reason to wish, that their emperors were more powerful, and still less that they should undertake to make themselves masters of *Rome* and *Italy*. This would be always at their expence, and the present con-

(M) The free nobility have no right to a seat or vote in the general diets. They are not regarded even as a member of the state, although they are allowed to be immediate, because they hold of no other sovereign than the emperor, whom they accompanied formerly in all his wars. Upon this account, the gentlemen who compose this body, take the title of noble servants of the emperor.

upon

upon and hold of those immediate states, and by their means are subjects of the empire. As the chief interest of all these members is the preservation of the body, it is their common duty to use all means of advancing its wealth and prosperity, and to avert from it every thing that may ruin it, or alter its constitution.

MANY civilians and politicians make a doubt whether the empire be a monarchy or an aristocracy, or a government of the many. When they propose this problem, they must necessarily mean the *Modern Empire*, for there is no doubt, before *Charlemain*, and a long time after, that is, while the empire was possessed by his family hereditarily, but that it was looked upon as a true monarchy; but since it has passed by election into the houses of *Saxony*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Luxemburgh*, and *Austria*, those of the greatest judgment pretend, that the power of the emperors has always been limited by the capitulations which they have been obliged to sign before their coronation, which limitation of their power extends to all the dominions of the emperor, whether in *Germany* or *Italy*.

It will not be improper at present to examine the state of affairs since the declension of the empire. Some authors date the beginning of this declension from the diminution of the imperial monarchy, occasioned by the desperate divisions made by *Lewis the Debonnaire* in favour of his sons. Indeed it may be said, that this division, if it was not the only, it was at least the first, cause of the dismembering of this great body, in forming of which *Charlemain* had employed more than thirty years of his reign. But *Lewis the Debonnaire*, instead of giving small inheritances to his younger sons, and by this means supporting the empire in its grandeur and majesty, made a division of it, by his will, into three kingdoms, without any dependence upon one another, thus making as many sovereigns as he had sons. This division was the cause of many disorders and wars, which these princes made against each other, and which greatly affected the empire. Although this example ought to have been a caution to their successors, they nevertheless committed the same mistake; moreover, the usurpations made by some younger sons of the imperial house, to the prejudice of their fathers or elder brothers, weakened and lessened this powerful body more and more.

OTHERS say, that the declension of the empire has only proceeded from the method of election taking place of the hereditary succession, after the death of *Lewis IV.* the last emperor of the race of *Charlemain*\*, because, besides the schisms and civil wars which it sometimes occasioned, the empire was often in the hands, either of those who, despairing of being able to leave the succession to their children, made

no

no scruple of prostituting it to their particular interests, as *Charles IV.* who alienated almost all its revenues; or else of those who could not support their dignity by reason of their poverty, as *Adolphus of Nassau*, who was deposed for this reason, and for having taken money from the king of *England* to make war against *France*.

In the beginning of election, one might nevertheless discover, for near two hundred years, some form of hereditary succession; for after the empire entered into the houses of *Saxony*, *Franconia*, and *Suabia*, the emperors were not chosen from any other house, whilst there were princes in these who could pretend to that dignity by their merit. Upon this account, five following emperors may be observed in the house of *Saxony*, four in that of *Franconia*, five in that of *Suabia*, inclusively till *Frederic II.* after whom the princes of *Germany* elected several emperors, sufficiently illustrious by their birth, but not strong enough to support themselves against the pretensions of the pope and several other states, particularly in *Italy*, where their predecessors, although invested with more authority, had already suffered a remarkable diminution of their power. Many authors, favourers of the house of *Austria*, and desirous of reviving at present the rights of the ancient emperors, and giving them to the modern, for this reason have affirmed, that *Frederic II.* was the last emperor who preserved the full monarchick power.

As after *Frederic II.* the princes of *Germany* had already rendered themselves so considerable as to oblige those who aspired to the empire, to purchase their vote, and make an acknowledgement for their good will by a sum of money, the successors of *Frederic* not being rich enough to have it in their coffers, began their reign by alienating several rights and cities of the empire, in order to raise money. It was thus that *Rodolphus of Hapsburgh* acted, minding chiefly the raising of money, by means of which he procured great alliances to his family, marrying seven of his daughters to seven of the greatest princes in *Germany*. He made war upon *Othogar*, king of *Bohemia*, who had refused the empire, and ceded it to him; so that being employed in that war, in which by the death of *Othogar*, he made himself master of *Carinthia*, *Stiria*, and *Austria*, he refused to make the journey of *Italy*; and to free himself from an expedition to the Holy Land, to which he had obliged himself at his accession to the imperial crown, he made an agreement with the pope, by ceding to him *Romagna* and the exarchate of *Ravenna*. The same prince, knowing that the greatest number of the cities of *Italy* had had such a taste of liberty, that it would

be very difficult to bring them back to their obedience, he resolved to draw money from them, and to sell them liberty as dear as he could. The city of *Florence* bought its freedom from him for the sum of 6000 florentines of gold; as the city of *Sienna* had done before for the sum of 10,000 ducats. He likewise enfranchised the city of *Lucca* for 12,000 ducats, and several others in proportion.

THE affairs of the empire were in no better condition under the reign of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*. This prince had *Frederic* of *Austria* for a competitor, who, although he had fewer votes in the election, nevertheless supported himself, because he abandoned the interest of the empire to attach himself to those of the pope; but he was at last defeated and made prisoner near *Mulsdorff*, in *Bavaria* \*. 1322. After this defeat, *Lewis*, in revenge for the assistance which the court of *Rome* had given his competitor, undertook to put in practice the right formerly enjoyed by the emperor of naming the pope, and created *Nicolas V.* antipope, against pope *John XXII.* But being obliged to apply himself wholly to the quieting the disturbances raised in *Germany* by the popes, he endeavoured to preserve the affections of the *Italians*, by giving them almost entire liberty, and by establishing lords in many of his cities, under the title of governors and vicars. The continuance of the troubles of *Germany*, the distance and neglect of the emperors who succeeded *Lewis*, soon gave these vicars an opportunity of making themselves masters of those places, the government of which had been trusted to them. It was thus that *John de Vic* made himself lord of *Viterbo*; *Galeot de Malatesta* and his brothers of *Rimini*; *Gentile de Verano* of *Camerin*; *Guy de Polenta* of *Ravenna*; *John Mainfredy* of *Faence*; and *Lewis Alidasi* of *Imola*. Besides, the *Venetians* at this time annexed to this republic all that they found lay convenient for them; and the pope, who pretended likewise to be master of the greatest part of *Italy*, established *Martin de l'Escale* at *Verona*; *William de Gonsague* at *Mantua* and *Reggio*; *Albert Carrara* at *Padua*; and *Obizo* of *Este*, at *Ferrara*. *Charles IV.* of all the emperors, thought least of the imperial dignity and the empire, employing all the time of his reign in the aggrandizing of his kingdom of *Bohemia* (N). He alienated to the crown of *France* the small right which the emperor still had to the kingdom of *Arles*; and besides, sold a large part of the imperial dominion to purchase the votes of the electors in favour of his

(N) The emperor *Maximilian* and his son *Wenceslaus* would often said, that the greatest have sold all the empire, if plague the empire ever had, they could have found any one was this *Charles*, and that he to purchase it.

son *Wenceslaus*, whom he caused to be chosen king of the *Romans*.

THE institution of the electoral college, and the right of electing the emperors, falling to seven princes; who have since taken the name of electors, is what prevented the empire from being reckoned monarchic after this period. Anciently, all the states of *Germany*, without objection, had a share in the election, even the people; although the princes and bishops had the greatest authority in that assembly, because the rest did not take the liberty of contradicting their opinion. *German* writers are very much divided about the time when the power was restrained to the seven electors, who are mentioned in the golden bull. The most common opinion is, that some time before *Frederic II.* who lived in the thirteenth century, the princes, who were great officers of the empire, began to raise their authority above the rest, whom they almost always drew over to their opinion; that the troubles which followed in *Germany*, after the death of that prince, disgusted the most part of those who were used to concern themselves with affairs of state, and to be present at elections. An interregnum of sixteen or seventeen years made them forget the road, so that there were present at the election of *Rodolphus I.* \* only the king of *Bohemia*, the archbishops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologne*, the count palatine of the *Rhine*, the duke of *Saxony*, and the marquis of *Brandenburgh*, who, by the difference of their rank, seemed to have preserved the rights of all the rest. They took care that their right of election should be preserved by the golden bull of *Charles IV.* which privilege they still hold without dispute. 1273.

FROM the time they found themselves single in possession of the right of discharging such an eminent function, it was not difficult for them to attribute to themselves several other rights to the exclusion of other persons who formerly enjoyed them: they nevertheless divided these rights with the emperor to induce him to favour them. This has likewise greatly augmented his authority, and given him an opportunity, in process of time, of extending it to the prejudice even of the electors, when he has found them so weak and so complaisant as not to oppose him openly. It is this mixture of authority, which has made many authors, even some *Germans*, assert, that the *Modern Empire* is an aristocratical state, and that the emperor of himself has not sufficient authority and power to be called and reputed a sovereign and absolute monarch.

It may be granted, that the present form of government in the empire, is in many things similar to an aristocratical

government, and what passes in the imperial diets is a proof of this. It may be allowed likewise, that many things, of which formerly the entire and sovereign disposition belonged to the emperor *Charlemain* and his descendants, at this day depend in part upon the consent of the electoral princes and other states of the empire (O); and that the authority of the emperor is divided with them, by the obligation laid upon him by the imperial constitutions, and particularly by the capitulations, which the emperors, at their election, make with the electors, to take their advice and consent, in most part of their affairs, especially in those which directly regard the general administration of the empire.

NEVERTHELESS, it ought to be observed, that in depressing the sovereignty and authority of the emperor, and raising that of the electors and princes of the empire to a level with the other, in order to establish the opinion of an aristocracy, the dignity of the empire is thereby greatly destroyed: for by representing it only as a pure aristocracy, or polyarchy, an opportunity is given to other monarchs of considering the empire only as a simple republic, whose head has no other advantage, than having the first rank; by this means, the emperor is deprived of that pre-eminence which he has over the other monarchs of christendom.

BUT nothing determines the sovereignty of the emperor so much, as the confirmation which the electors take from him, even by the capitulation which they make with him at his election. They judge this confirmation so necessary, that they take care to get from him authentic letters after his coronation, that is, after he is fully invested with the sovereign and monarchic power, which is an absolute acknowledgement from themselves of the sovereign and monarchic state of the emperor; and this is besides justified by the golden bull, where the emperor pronounces of his certain knowledge, full power, and imperial authority, and where every thing prescribed is ordained under penalties, which belong only to a sovereign to impose. Moreover, the clauses contained in

(O) The states of the empire, even before they were composed of the three religions, took care not to leave themselves to the despotic government of a prince and council of state depending upon him, which consisted for the most part only in counsellors, who were subjects or vassals of

his hereditary lands. So that it is not without reason that they have obliged the emperor by capitulations to take their advice and consent in the greatest part of his affairs, and especially in those which directly regard the general administration of the empire.

the capitulation, by which the emperor obliges himself to ordain nothing upon many heads, without the advice and consent of the electoral princes and other states of the empire, ought not to be alledged to destroy the right of sovereignty, which is attached to his dignity; for this right is so united, that it cannot be separated from the dignity, without breaking the imperial crown. So that these reserves are only as it were a suspension of the exercise of this right, which formerly was indisputable, and may again become so, by the privilege which the emperor has of disposing of the principal fiefs of *Germany*, which become vacant by forfeiture, disinherittance, or otherwise, even in favour of his own children, and by this means changing the elective state of the empire into hereditary and patrimonial. Therefore, it ought not to be inferred from these reserves, that the emperor is not a sovereign monarch, since there are many monarchs in christendom, who are obliged, in certain cases, to take the advice and consent of the states of their kingdom, in some manner or other, but are nevertheless allowed to be sovereign monarchs.

ON the other hand, it is alledged, that the high titles of honour conferred upon the emperor import no independent sovereignty, but are only compliments and magnificent expressions, which the *Germans* are very prodigal of among themselves. That the princes of the empire only want the emperor to be considered as the first monarch of christendom, and his ambassadors to have the precedence, as representing all the *Germanic* body in the person of its head. And although they confer upon him the most magnificent titles, and talk to him in the most submissive terms, yet the rights they have quitted to him, are in reality very small, and greatly limited by the capitulations, which he is obliged to sign at his election. And even the greatest part of the rights called regalia, are equally common to the greatest part of the princes of the empire within the extent of their territories; so that there remains little more to the emperor but his precedence, and the right of making kings, princes, counts, marquisses, &c. some even affirm, that the princes of the empire have no need either of his concession or confirmation. That they are several sovereigns, who have united under a head, whom they have elected for their common preservation, since they have been freed from the oath of fidelity which they took to *Charlemain* and his posterity. As to the confirmation which the electors take from the emperor after his coronation, they take it only as a security, that he shall not make any attempt upon their privileges. It is a title for

them to prevent his taking it amiss, that they arm in their own defence, and conclude alliances with one another, and with strangers for their preservation, which liberty they have reserved by the treaty of *Westphalia*. With regard to the privilege which the emperors have assumed of disposing of vacant fiefs in favour of their children, this claim is directly opposed by the princes of *Germany*; and for this purpose, the electoral college, with the intention of putting bounds to the acquisitions of the house of *Austria*, have inserted in the last capitulations this clause, *That the emperor shall not any more dispose of such important fiefs, without their participation, advice, and consent.*

BUT to discover more particularly, how far the sovereignty of the emperor extends, we shall mention in the following chapter some of those things which he does by his sole power and imperial authority, and those, in which he is obliged by the capitulation, to call the electoral princes, and even all the states of the empire, to have their advice and consent. From whence it may be concluded, after having considered the alterations, which have happened in the government of the *Modern Empire*, that this state holds a certain mean betwixt the monarchic and aristocratic form of government, and participates in some measure of both.

## C H A P. II.

### *Of the emperor and his election.*

THE consequence which we have drawn in the former chapter, that the empire is a mean betwixt a monarchy and aristocracy, naturally carries us to consider what the monarch is, and what is the union subsisting betwixt the head and the members of this great body.

THIS head is so necessary, that immediately upon any vacancy, the imperial dignity is conferred upon one, by the choice and election of the princes of the empire: this vacancy happens either by the death of the emperor, or by his voluntary resignation, which he can do, without the consent of the electors or other states of the empire; or by his promotion to sacred orders, or else in case of actual incapacity, by being deposed, of which there are three examples in the history of *Germany*; or lastly, when the emperor desiring to ascertain his successor during his life, causes the electors to chuse him under the title of king of the *Romans*, in the sense which that rank is at this day generally understood.



HE that is to be elected, must have the necessary qualifications ; the first is, that he be of the male sex ; the second, that he be of the *German* nation or extraction (P) ; the third, that he be of a reasonable age ; but as this age is not regulated by the constitutions, there are many examples of kings of the *Romans*, who have been elected very young, as *Otho*, who was elected at eleven years of age ; *Henry III.* at twelve ; *Henry IV.* at five ; *Wenceslaus* at five ; *Frederic II.* when he was yet in the cradle, and the emperor *Joseph*, when he was only eleven years and a half old. The fourth, that he be a laic, and not of the church ; the fifth, that he be a catholic ; however, there is yet no law that forbids a protestant from being elected to the imperial throne. The sixth, that he be a just and good man, who may be useful to the republic, and that he be endowed with solid piety, and much prudence and courage. The seventh, that he be of an illustrious birth, and at least a count or baron, rich, powerful, and so endowed with the gifts of fortune, that he may be able of himself to support the imperial dignity, which of itself brings very little revenue to him who possesses it.

THE electors finding in him whom they propose for emperor, or who is presented to them by the emperor then living, to be elected king of the *Romans*, the qualities which we have mentioned, or flattered by the hopes of his education, that in time he will acquire those which he wants, proceed to his election, which must be made according to the form prescribed by the golden bull. It is in this bull, that the functions of the electors, and all the ceremonies to be observed by them, are specified. Before this, they agree upon the capitulation, in which are contained all the precautions which they want to take with the elected prince, in order to regulate his power, and by this means support the prerogatives of which they are in possession, and the rights and liberties of the empire.

As soon as there is to be an election of the king of the *Romans* or emperor, the elector of *Mentz*, as grand chancellor of the empire in *Germany*, sends messengers express to all the electors, ecclesiastic and secular. There is this difference, that if it is a king of the *Romans* that is to be elected as coadjutor to the emperor then living, or if it is the emperor who desires the election to be made, then the archbishop of *Mentz* must be authorized by the states of the empire for this convocation, or by the electoral college, who

(P) This is not always true, and *Richard*, king of *England*, for *Alphonfus*, king of *Castile*, have been elected emperors.

represents them, and it must be noted in the decrees of the assembly, that the necessity of the empire required this election. But if after the death of an emperor, another is to be chosen, the elector of *Mentz* of himself may order the convocation, because he is authorized by the Golden Bull. His letters are carried by a gentleman of his court, who is accompanied by a secretary or notary, in order to certify the delivery. It is so necessary to the essence of an election, that all the electors be convoked, that if the archbishop of *Mentz* omit any one by negligence or otherwise, he that has been omitted, may declare the election null and defective.

THE archbishop of *Mentz* is not obliged to address his letters any where else than to the place of the ordinary residence and abode of the electors, unless from complaisance he pleases to send them to the place where they then reside. The convocation ought to be within a month after that the archbishop of *Mentz* has been informed of the death of the emperor. He generally appoints the opening of the diet within three months, counting from the day of the delivery of the letters; so that allowing about fifteen days for the journey of the gentleman who is letter-carrier, he fixes the opening of the diet three months and a half after the date of the letters. According to the Golden Bull, the election ought to be made at *Frankfort* on the *Maine*; but as there have been emperors elected at *Ratisbon* and elsewhere, we may conclude, that this depends upon the choice of the electors. Before the publication of the Golden Bull, there was no city appointed for the election. The term of three months and a half is so essential to the election, that it is not in the power of the archbishop of *Mentz* to grant a longer delay by his circulary letters; he may indeed prorogue the opening of the diet with the consent of all the electors, but not by his own authority. If the archbishop of *Mentz* should fail to summon the electors within the time prescribed by the Bull, it is lawful for them to assemble of themselves at the place of election, and they are even obliged to make the election by the oath which they have taken to the empire.

THE electors go in person to that ceremony, or send their ambassadors with a full power and formal proxy to give their vote. According to the Golden Bull, the retinue of the electors who come to the election, ought not to exceed two hundred horse, in which is comprehended fifty men armed, which they may have for a guard to their persons. But this regulation is not put in execution; for sometimes an elector will bring with him more than five hundred persons, more or less,

less, according to his magnificence or pleasure. The ambassadors, who represent the electors their masters at the election, are obliged upon their arrival to communicate their power, and cause it to be registred in the chancery of *Mentz*, from which a copy of it is delivered to all the other electors. It is to be observed, that if an elector sends several ambassadors, there is only one of them who has a seat in the electoral college, or is present at the deliberations.

THE electors both in going to, and returning from, the election, are conducted and escorted by the princes whose states lie in their road, through every country and territory under the jurisdiction of the empire; besides, the Golden Bull forbids, under express penalties, the troubling of them in any manner. The elector, who sets out on his journey, must signify expressly by letters where he desires to be received by the escort; and he who gives the escort, is obliged to give a safe-conduct in form. The electors and ambassadors are no sooner arrived at the place appointed for the election, but they oblige the magistrates and inhabitants of the city to take the usual oath, by which they promise to take under their protection and safeguard, the electors and their retinue; and to cause all strangers, of what rank and quality soever they be, to leave the city (Q). The magistrates make proclamation of this through all the streets of the city, and summon the citizens against next day to the town hall, where they take the oath to the electors.

THE Golden Bull ordains, that the electors open the electoral diet the next day after their arrival; that the election begin, By the mass of the Holy Spirit; and with the oath, the form of which is prescribed by the Bull itself. It ordains likewise, that they finish the election within a month, counting from the day on which they took the oath: but the electors do not conform to this, but take what time they please for their deliberations; saying, that the time which they spend in the deliberation upon other affairs, ought not to be counted; therefore they begin with protesting, that they have only assembled to deliberate; and when they have agreed upon the person whom they will chuse, and have drawn up the capitulation which they propose for him to sign, they declare that they desire to proceed to the election, and

(Q) This is not executed literally; the proclamation is, indeed, published; but strangers, nevertheless, do not quit the city. This decree only takes

place according to the pleasure of the electors, who sometimes, indeed, have put it rigorously in execution.

then they follow word for word what is prescribed by the Bull. Thus they sometimes pass six months before they proceed to the election, without fearing to incur the penalties threatened by the Bull, of being reduced to feed only on bread and water. The election of the emperor *Leopold* was thus deferred for more than eleven months; the elector of *Mentz* acting so politically that he prorogued the opening of the diet till that prince had attained his majority. No ceremonies are observed till the election is resolved upon; so that when the electors are agreed upon the person whom they will call to the imperial throne, they appoint a day for publishing it, and the day being arrived, they repair in the morning to the town-house, without observing any order, attended only with their retinue, and in their ordinary dress.

As soon as they are arrived, they retire each to a particular chamber, where they put on their electoral habits; the three ecclesiasticks wear robes and bonnets of scarlet, lined with ermine; and the secular electors, robes and bonnets of crimson velvet, lined also with ermine. When they come out of the town-house, they mount a horseback to go to the church (R); there is no regulation with regard to this procession of the electors, therefore they march as they think proper.

THE electors in this cavalcade are preceded by the hereditary marshals of their archbishopricks, or principalities, or of their courts, who carry the sword before them; the officers of the ecclesiastical electors bearing it in a scabbard, adorned with silver gilded; and those of the secular in a scabbard of red crimson velvet, adorned with silver. The ambassadors of the absent electors have nothing of all this, they have only their ordinary dress, without any officers going before them; but the administrators, or tutors, of electors, who are minors, enjoy all the honours and pre-eminences which the law allows to the electors themselves; and the elector of *Saxony* has this in particular, that he is not the hereditary marshal of his duchy; but this privilege is enjoyed by the count of *Pappenheim*, who carries the sword before him.

THE electors being arrived at the church, alight from their horses and enter the choir, where they find chairs prepared for them, and placed according to the rank which they held in the electoral college; each chair is marked with a

(R) It has been different almost in all elections, as may be seen in the treaty of the election of the emperor, published by Mr. *Wiquesfort*, in 1698.

writing

writing in large characters, containing the name of the elector who is to fill it. When the electors have taken their places, some other princes and counts, and the counsellors of the electors, enter the choir, after which the gates are shut by the count of *Pappenheim*, who takes possession of the keys: then the prelate, who is to officiate, begins the *Veni Creator*, during which, and during the mass, the officers of the electors stand before them, holding the sword inclined upon their shoulder. There have been elections, at which the officers of the electors have retired during the mass, and have laid the swords upon velvet cushions before the electors. After the music has finished the hymn, the mass begins, during which, the protestant electors formerly retired; but at present they remain, and content themselves with standing uncovered, while the catholicks fall upon their knees: after this mass, *Veni Creator* is again sung.

AFTER these ceremonies the electors rise, and approaching the altar, preceded by their officers, they turn towards the princes who are in the choir, and the archbishop of *Mentz* invites all the electors, his colleagues, to take the oath ordained by the Golden Bull, before they proceed to the election. After a short discourse, he puts the gospel into the hands of the archbishop of *Triers*, who dictates to him the form of the oath. The archbishop of *Mentz* is the first that takes the oath from the hands of the elector of *Triers*, the other electors afterwards take it from his hand, each in their turn, although after a different manner; for the secular electors put their hand upon the gospel, and the ecclesiastical upon their breast, and take the oath agreeable to the Golden Bull, in these terms.

I ——— prince elector of the holy empire, swear upon the holy gospels here placed before me, by the faith which I owe to God, and with all the strength of my mind and understanding, that I will chuse for king of the Romans, future emperor, him whom I shall judge in my conscience to be most capable; promising, upon the same faith, that I will give my vote and suffrage in the said election, without any hope of profit, pension, promise, reward, or other acknowledgement of what nature soever. So help me God, and his holy gospel.

THE oaths being taken, the archbishop of *Mentz* takes instruments thereupon by two notaries, or two secretaries authorized for that effect; who take for witnesses, the princes and persons of distinction who have entered the choir. After the oath, the electors resume their places, and the music sings the *Veni Creator* for the third time; which being finished, the electors retire into the conclave, or place appointed for the

the election, which the count of *Pappenheim* shuts, when they have taken their places; after which he withdraws, and puts the keys in a place where the elector may dispose of them. Here they observe, very exactly, the order which the *Golden Bull* ordains to be observed in this election: According to the intention of this Bull, the archbishop of *Mentz* ought first to give his opinion, collect the votes, and give his own in the last place. He begins to collect the votes by the archbishop of *Triers*, next by the archbishop of *Cologne*, the king of *Bohemia*, the duke of *Bavaria*, the duke of *Saxony*, the marquis of *Brandenburg*, the count palatin of the *Rhine*, and the duke of *Brunswick*; after this, the elector of *Triers* demands the opinion of the archbishop of *Mentz*, and the majority of the whole college makes the emperor. It must be observed, that if he who is destined for the empire be an elector, he may give his vote for himself, and thereby augment the number of votes in his favour.

THAT all the ceremonies of the election may be observed in all their forms, the electors cause their chancellors and principal counsellors to come in, as if to ask their advice; afterwards they make them go out, and continue their deliberations. But all these outward forms are mere ceremonies; for, in less than an hour, the election of the emperor is concluded. The election is no sooner ended, but the electors cause their principal ministers of state to enter, with the chancellor of the archbishop of *Mentz*, and chancellor of another secular elector, who, having collected the votes, take instruments thereupon, and draw up a verbal process, which all the electors sign, and cause seal with the great seals of their arms. After which, the electors come out of the conclave, and go directly to the great altar, upon which they cause the emperor to sit, if he is present. The archbishop of *Mentz*, after having recommended to that prince the interests of the empire, and made him sign the conditions upon which he has been called to the crown; obliges him to confirm to the electors all the rights, privileges, sovereignties, prerogatives, and pre-eminencies, which they possess (S).

(S) This confirmation of the rights of the elector is so necessary, that, without it, the new elected cannot take upon him the administration of the affairs of the empire. And he is bound to give one to each Elector, in form of letters patent, signed and sealed with the

great seal. This confirmation was formerly given near *Coblenz*, between *Rens* and *Capel*, at a place which is still called *Koningstad*, that is, *Royal-Seat*. It was a building raised in an orchard, under seven walnut-trees, where there are seats of cut stone for the emperor and the

## C H A P. III.

*Of the coronation of the emperor.*

**A**LTHOUGH the coronation of the emperor gives him no new right, nevertheless, it is a ceremony which renders his election solemn and publick, and which no emperor has omitted; therefore we shall mention the particularities observed at this solemnity. When the day and place for the coronation is agreed upon, the elector of *Mentz* gives notice of it to the magistrates of *Aix la Chapelle* and *Nuremberg*, and these send, by their deputies, the imperial ornaments, of which they are the guardians; namely, those of *Nuremberg* keep the golden crown of *Charlemain*, the ring, the sceptre, the shoes, and sword, which an angel, as 'tis said, gave to *Charlemain*; a long albe with a hole, a cane, and a bek. Those of *Aix la Chapelle* keep a shrine covered with diamonds, in which is kept a little of the blood of *St. Stephen*; the ordinary sword of *Charlemain*, with his belt, and a book of the gospels in letters of gold.

AT the same time, the church, appointed for the coronation, is hung with the tapestry of the elected prince (T). Seats and benches are raised for the emperor, the electors, the princes, the ambassadors, and other assistants. The place of the emperor is a little raised, on which is placed a chair, instead of that of *Charlemain*, which is still used when the coronation is at *Aix la Chapelle*. As to the ornaments of the great altar, the consecrating archbishop furnishes these. On the day of the coronation, the ecclesiastical electors, with the bishops, and other officiating prelates, in the morning, repair to the church, where the deputies of *Aix* and *Nuremberg* deposit in their hands the imperial ornaments. When the secular electors, or their ambassadors in their dresses of ceremony, accompany the emperor from the town-house to the church, the elector of *Bavaria* carries the globe, having on

the electors; these seats were raised upon pillars; and joined to one another by vaults, or arcades of stone. But this building is entirely ruined, and at present the confirmation is given upon the spot, and at the very place of the election.

(T) If it is at *Frankfort*,

the ceremony is performed in the collegiate church of *St. Bartholomew*, which is well enough built, but not very proper, the choir not being finished. The coronation of the emperor *Joseph* was performed at *Augsburg*, in the church of the abbey of *St. Ulrich* and *St. Afre*.

his

1

his right hand the elector of *Brandenburgh*, carrying the sceptre, and on his left the count palatin carrying the crown. Behind them, and immediately before the emperor, walks the elector of *Saxony* alone, carrying the imperial sword. When he is in person at this ceremony he carries the sword naked, and his hereditary marshal carries before him the scabbard; and when the elector is not present, his marshal carries that sword in the scabbard. Immediately before the emperor arrives at the church, the ecclesiastick electors come out of the vestry, and go to meet him in procession, with the bishops, abbots, and chaplains, as far as the door of the church. The elector who is to perform the coronation is in pontifical habits, with the mitre on his head, and the crozier in his hand; and the other archbishops electors, have only their electoral habits. As soon as the emperor is perceived, the officiating elector begins to sing, *Adjutorium nostrum in nomine Domini*: and after having said the prayer, *Omnipotens sempiterne Deus*, he turns about and walks towards the altar; and the two other ecclesiastical electors place the emperor in the middle between them, and conduct him till he come before the altar to his pew; where, having kneeled down, the electors go likewise to their places, leaving, in the mean time, the imperial ornaments under the guard of their hereditary officers. The elector, who officiates, begins the ceremony by the prayer *Domine saluum fac regem*, which is followed with the other ordinary prayers; which being finished, the mass of the epiphany is celebrated as far as the gospel. Then the royal mantle is taken from the emperor, and the two ecclesiastical electors conduct him to the altar; where, while he kneels down upon the highest step, the chaplains sing the litanies of the saints, as far as *Ut exaudire digneris*. After which, the officiating elector continues the particular prayers for the emperor, to which those in the choir answer. This being ended, the emperor rises, and the officiating elector, having the mitre on his head, and the crozier in his hand, speaks to him in Latin, and asks him these six questions. The first, *Will you hold to the holy faith, which Catholick men have taught, and confirmed by just works?* to which the emperor answers, *Yes, I will*. The second; *Will you be a faithful guardian and protector of the holy church, and its servants?* the emperor answers, *Yes, I will*. The third; *Will you justly administrate, as your predecessors have done, the empire which is given you from God, and defend it valiantly?* the emperor likewise answers, *Yes, I will*. The fourth; *Will you preserve the rights, and recover the possessions of the empire, and employ them faithfully to the publick good?*



the emperor answers, *Yes, I will.* The fifth; *Will you be a just judge of the poor and the rich, and a faithful protector of widows and orphans?* the emperor says, *I will.* The sixth, *Will you adhere and be submissive to the most holy father in Christ, the pope of Rome, and the holy Catholic, Apostolic, and Roman church?* to which the emperor having answered, *Yes, I will;* he approaches the altar, and confirms these answers by the following oath, which he expresses in Latin: "I will do all that has been proposed unto me, if God assists me, and the faithful give me their help; and I will faithfully and also truly accomplish it: May God, and the holy gospel of God so help me." This done, the officiating elector turns towards those who are assisting, and asks of them in Latin, *Will you accept of this prince to reign over you, and be faithful to him?* To which an answer is returned three times, *We will, we will, we will.* These words being pronounced, the emperor again places himself on his knees, and the archbishop resumes the prayers, and says this prayer, *Lord, thou who ever rulest all kingdoms, bless our king N. &c.* and this prayer likewise; *Grant, Lord, that the people may continue faithful to him.* After these prayers, the suffragans of the officiating archbishop uncover the emperor to consecrate him, and the archbishop takes the holy oil, saying, *Pax tecum;* and he is answered, *Et cum spiritu tuo;* then he anoints him in form of a cross, in the middle of the crown of his head, between his shoulders, in the neck, on the breast, on the wrist of the right arm; and lastly, in the right hand, saying, at each unction, the prayer appointed by the ritual of that ceremony, the two other archbishops electors wipe off the oil with cotton.

THEN the emperor is conducted by these two electors into a chapel, at the side of the choir, where are deposited the old imperial vestments brought from *Nuremberg*, and there he is clothed with a long albe and stole, which he places after the manner of the priests, with sandals and buskins, from whence they lead him back to his pew, placed a little nearer the altar. Being there, the same two ecclesiastical electors, go and take from off the altar the sword of *Charlemain*, brought from *Aix*, and at the time when it is put naked into the hands of the emperor, the officiating elector gives him the blessing, saying; Take that sword, and in virtue of this blessing employ it in the defence of the church of God, for which his goodness hath appointed it. During this prayer, the sword is put into the scabbard, and the secular electors having advanced, fasten it by the belt to the side of the emperor. Afterwards the ring is taken from off the altar, and the officiating elector puts it upon his finger, pronouncing

ing the ordinary wishes ; lastly, the officiating elector having also taken off the altar the sceptre and the globe, he puts them in the hands of the emperor, the sceptre in the right, and the globe in the left ; pronouncing the ordinary blessing and prayer. At the end of this prayer, the emperor gives the globe and the sceptre to the electors, who usually carry them ; and immediately, two deputies of the city of *Nuremberg* put upon his shoulders the great imperial mantle made like a cope ; then the three ecclesiastick electors take the crown off the altar, and place it together upon the head of the emperor, the officiating elector accompanying the action with prayers and wishes ; to which the choir answer *Amen*.

THEN the ecclesiastick electors cause the emperor to approach the altar, where he reads in the Pontifical, in the *German* language, the ordinary oath, which all the new elected emperors take over again after their coronation. From thence the emperor being reconducted to his place by the same electors, the mass is continued, the gospel and the *Crede* is sung, and at the offertory, the emperor, having the sceptre and globe in his hands, goes to the oblation, and there presents a piece of gold. As oft as the emperor goes to the altar, the crown is taken from him, which is put upon him again at his return ; and this office belongs to the elector palatin, as the ecclesiastical electors have the privilege of giving the book of the gospels, and the peace to the emperor to kiss, and of giving him holy water. It is the hereditary officers of the electors who give and take from the emperor the sceptre, the globe, and the sword.

THE emperor communicates at this mass without the crown, being always accompanied by two ecclesiastick electors. After the mass, the emperor is conducted processionally by the three ecclesiastical electors, followed by all the bishops, and preceded by the secular electors, to a tribunal (U). There he is placed in a chair appointed for this purpose, instead of that of *Charlemain*, which is at *Aix* ; the officiating archbishop pronouncing these words ; Take and keep the possession of the place which is given you, not by hereditary right, or that of paternal succession, but by the votes of the electors of the empire of *Germany* ; and particularly by the providence of Almighty God, and by our grant, and that of all the bishops and other servants of God ; and whereas the clergy are near the altar, so much the more you will remember to give them honour at places convenient. May *Jesus*

(U) At *Frankfort*, this tribunal separates the choir from the body of the church, and is very dark.

*Christ,*

*Christ*, who is mediator between God and man, establish you in this imperial dignity, to be on your part as a mediator between the clergy and the people, and cause you to reign with him in his eternal kingdom. This I pray from him who is King of kings, and Lord of lords, and who being true God, reigns eternally with the Father, and the Holy Spirit. So be it.

The officiating archbishop has no sooner finished these words, than the *Te Deum* is solemnly begun to be sung, to the sound of drums, kettle-drums, and trumpets, which is followed with the discharge of the cannon and small arms. Then his imperial majesty continuing still sitting, receives the compliment of congratulation, which is made by the elector of *Mentz* in the name of the rest; after which the officiating elector retires with the two other ecclesiastical electors, and going into the vestry, lays aside the habits of the church, and resumes his electoral habit.

IN the mean time, his majesty, accompanied with the secular electors, creates knights; these are, ordinarily, counts and gentlemen of the empire; whom he touches with the sword of *Charlemain*. After which, the emperor gives the sword again to the arch-marshal, and comes down from the tribunal to return to his pew. There a canon of the collegiate church of *Aix la Chapelle* presents himself before his majesty, and having shewn him, that every emperor is received as a canon of that church, according to ancient custom, he supplicates his majesty to be pleased to take the oath; the emperor satisfies him, and pronounces the oath in Latin, by which he obliges himself to protect the church of *Aix*, and to let the chapter enjoy its rights. He besides makes a present to the church of *Aix*, instead of the gift which was formerly given it, of a part of the moveables and ornaments which had served at the coronation, and which that church pretended to claim by an antient right; they consisted in the tapestries, in the cushion, and carpet of the pew, in the mantle and habit in which he was crowned; and in two carpets of gold brocade, the one of which had been used at the throne, and the other at the chair before the altar. The present is fifty-six florins of gold, two tons of the best wine for the church of *Notre Dame*, and one ton for the abbey of *St. Adelbert* (X). The emperor, and the

(X) This church is commonly called imperial, having been richly founded by *Henry II.* emperor and duke of *Bavaria*; but an inundation that happened in *Holland*, where it had great possessions, has destroyed a part of its revenue. Both of these

electors likewise give a writing, bearing, that the coronation made elsewhere than in the city of *Aix la Chapelle* shall not, in any manner, prejudice the church of *Aix*, nor the city, in their antient customs, rights, and jurisdictions.

## C H A P. IV.

### *Of the pre-eminencies, rights, and prerogatives of the emperor.*

**T**HE emperor, elected and crowned by the princes electors of the empire, is, in that quality, sovereign monarch, and acknowledged as such; being, in effect, invested with sovereign authority, holding only of God, and even his imperial crown enclosed and surmounted with the globe of the world, is a symbol of universal monarchy; and gives him the pre-eminence over all other monarchs of *Christendom*, who yield to him on account of his dignity; his precedence among the Christian princes being even acknowledged by the *Othoman* emperors at the *Porte*. Thus has he preserved all the distinctions of the antient emperors of the west, with the titles of, Always August, Cæsar, Sacred Majesty, First prince of the Christian World, and Rector, or Temporal Chief of the faithful of Germany. It is he alone that is acknowledged, and under his name every thing is done, even when the whole empire acts in general; yet it must be observed, that the name of the empire is often used in the publick acts, to shew that the empire equally pretends to preserve its authority. The emperor likewise convokes the diets, and other imperial assemblies; yet, if he fails to convoke them on necessary occasions, the elector of *Mentz*, or the vicars of the empire, in the absence of the emperor, may likewise convoke them; he likewise pretends to the right of proposing the affairs upon which they are to deliberate, but this is disputed by the diets; yet their resolutions are executed in his name. He confirms (Y) alliances, and

these churches are celebrated in the empire, and considerable for their antiquity. *Charlemain* caused that of *Notre Dame* to be consecrated by the pope, in presence of a great number of princes, dukes, marquisses, &c.

(Y) During war, the empe-

ror enjoys the right of being sole executor of the *German* decrees, with an absolute power, which dispenses him from taking the advice of the colleges, or of giving an account of his administration. This privilege gives him the means of augmenting his authority; of mortifying

public treaties, made by his predecessors for the good of the empire, without being bound to pay their debts, as he succeeds to him as elected, and not as heir. He enjoys alone, through all the empire, the right, as it is called, of first prayers; that is, to present, after his coronation, to all the chapters of cathedral and collegiate churches, abbeys, and monasteries, capable and sufficient persons, to fill the first canonicate, or first prebendary dignity, or other vacant place. He hath even preserved this right, by the treaty of *Westphalia*, over the chapters and monasteries of the confession of *Augsburg*, and over those where any catholick and protestant canons are mixt together. Without examining whether the emperor exercises this right by his own authority, or by the concession of the pope, it is evident, that he hath enjoyed it by an immemorial custom, and that he hath exercised it from the time that he established bishops through all the empire, and had the direction of the affairs concerning religion.

He likewise creates and confers high secular dignities; as that of king, prince, archduke, duke, marquis, landgrave, count, and baron. Thus *Henry II.* erected the duchy of *Hungary* into a kingdom, in favour of *Stephen*, who before had the title of duke. *Wratislaus*, or *Ladislaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, was created king by the emperor *Henry IV.* and as the successors of this *Ladislaus* did not preserve this title of king, the emperor *Frederick I.* conferred it anew upon another *Ladislaus*. The same *Frederic* invested prince *Peter* with *Denmark*, which then held of the empire, under the title of kingdom, and crowned him himself. The emperor, *Otho III.* likewise erected the duchy of *Poland* into a kingdom, in favour of *Boleslaus*. Thus it cannot be denied, but that *Leopold* had a right of creating the elector of *Brandenburg*, king of *Prussia*; although, indeed, it depended upon that prince to make himself be acknowledged as such, by other kings and princes, which are not dependant on the empire, over whom the emperor has no right. As to what regards duchies, and other principalities and dignities, there are numberless examples; as the duchies of *Milan*, *Savoy*,

tyfying those who dare name the laws in opposition to his will; to raise at his pleasure the *Roman* months; to make himself master of elections; and to put garrisons where he thinks fit, under the specious pretext

of securing himself against the malecontents. He finds, besides, in war, a thousand occasions of enriching the princes and generals of all the circles, who are devoted to his interests, by arbitrary winter-quarters.

*Mantua, &c. in Italy; Brunswick, Holstein, Juliers, Cleves, Berg, Brabant, Limburg, Gueldres, Pomerania, and in a word, all the duchies, and other great titles of Germany; and this extends not only to the subjects of the empire, but likewise to strangers; as John of Arundel, who was made count of the empire by Rodolphus II. and Robert Dudley, who was made duke of Northumberland, by Ferdinand II. However, it must be allowed, that this right has sometimes been denied to the emperor by foreign powers.*

It belongs alone to the emperor to confer rights of regality, and likewise, the principal fiefs of the empire in the changes which happen to them; the investiture of which is given, namely, to the ecclesiastical princes by the sceptre, and to the secular, by the standard and sword. For this reason, he judges the causes which concern these great fiefs, and which regard the honour, life, and person of these princes, to the exclusion of the imperial chamber. He authorizes and ratifies the transactions, confraternities, substitutions, and family pacts, which the princes make with one another for the advantage of their houses. The differences which happen between the electors, princes, and other states, with respect to customs, are judged in his name, but regulated in the diets, by the advice of the princes and states of the empire.

It is he also who gives letters of delegation to princes, of which there are many examples; as of the emperor *Wenceslaus*, who gave them to *Otho*, duke of *Brunswick*, in 1318. likewise *Maximilian I.* to *Louis*, king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; and to *Ulric*, duke of *Wirttemberg*; *Rodolphus II.* to *Christian II.* king of *Denmark*; and *Mathias*, to *Charles* cardinal of *Lorraine*, bishop of *Metz*. He likewise gives letters of legitimation through all the empire, and there is only the archduke of *Austria*, and the dukes of *Savoy* and *Milan*, who have the same privilege in their states, as vicars of the empire in *Italy*. He grants letters of respite, reprisals, naturalization, safeguard, sanctuary, confirmation, adoption, emancipation, and other letters of grace.

He has the right of life and death, and of repairing people's honour and reputation, of absolving from oaths, of granting favour, discharge of crimes, remission and pardon, to conclude truces and suspension of arms, to prescribe feasts and holidays, of instituting and confirming universities and academies; so that it was only not to obstruct the peace, that, by the treaties of *Westphalia*, the crown of *Sweden* was allowed to erect one in the states that had been ceded to him in the empire.

He gives the privileges of fairs and markets, and permissions of establishing carriages, by water and land. He grants the rights of a city, and likewise that of staple, which is a privilege that he grants to some cities; in virtue of which concession, they have a right of selling and disposing of certain merchandizes and wares, mentioned in the privilege. There are several cities in the *Low-Countries*, and in *Germany*, who enjoy this grant. *Middleburgh*, in *Zealand*, has the privilege of selling the wines of *France* and *Spain*; *Dort*, that of the wines of the *Rhine*. The cities of *Germany*, which have this right, are, *Spiers*, *Mentz*, and *Cologne*, on the *Rhine*; *Triers*, on the *Moselle*, *Ratisbon*, *Passau*, *Ingolstadt*, upon the *Danube*; *Hamburg*, and *Magdeburgh*, on the *Elbe*; and *Bremen*, on the *Weiser*.

WITH the consent of the princes and states of the empire, he disposes of the charges and offices of the chamber of the empire, whose function regards domestic and foreign affairs; but those of the imperial chancery depend upon the elector of *Mentz*, as also those of the marshal of the empire, and other hereditary offices, or vicariats, and great offices of the secular electors. It is to him and the empire, that all the electors and other princes, and generally all the other members and states give the oath of fidelity. As he is the head of the empire, he has the right of supreme appeal, and the revision of processess. Besides, in case of denial of justice by the electors, and other princes and states of the empire, to their vassals and subjects, these may have recourse to the tribunal of the imperial court. The emperor likewise takes cognizance of all the privileges granted without the consent of the princes and states of the empire, and in certain cases, even deprives the imperial cities, and other states, of their privileges; but some emperors, indeed, have made too arbitrary an use of this privilege, which has been restrained by the treaty of *Westphalia*. He can reclaim to the empire, all goods, rights, taxes, or other revenues, usurped or alienated.

As to other rights and powers which the emperor has, but where the advice and consent of the electoral princes is necessary, they consist in establishing, augmenting, proroguing, and granting, to any new state, new customs and rights, under the name of staple, passage, entry, reparation of roads or causeways, or other impositions. These must be communicated with the electors, and they must give their unanimous consent, for the plurality of votes will not suffice. The consent of the electors is likewise necessary when the emperor puts any prince, immediate state, or other rebels,

who trouble the public repose, to the ban of the empire ; when he confiscates their goods and estates, or when he deprives them of their seat and voice in the diets ; likewise, when he grants the right of coining-money, and when there is a necessity of mortgaging or alienating the possessions of the empire.

BUT the general consent of all the states of the empire is necessary, when he would regulate the concerns of religion ; make or publish laws, or repeal them ; establish, reform, or suppress, tribunals of justice ; fix the value of money, regulate the measure and weights ; declare, or make war, without, or within, the empire ; impose subsidies, taxes, and general contributions ; make levies, or appoint quarters for soldiers ; build new fortresses, and put troops in ancient places ; make peace or alliances, within and without the empire ; but, when the affair is urgent for the general good, the consent of the electors is only needed. Lastly, the emperor ordains and disposes of every thing that concerns the empire, directly, or indirectly, either by his own will and authority, or by the advice, participation, or consent, of the electoral princes, and even of all the states of the empire : as it is expressed by the Golden Bull, the treaties of *Westphalia*, the capitulation, and other imperial constitutions.

THUS of himself, or with the consent of the princes, he enjoys all the rights of sovereignty, which so naturally follows the imperial crown, that in case of absence of the emperor, the king of the *Romans*, if there be one, enjoys these privileges, as perpetual vicar of the empire ; that is, designed successor of the empire. And in case of defect, or death of any of these, the two vicars of the empire in *Germany*, namely, the elector of *Bavaria*, or the elector palatine of the *Rhine*, and the elector of *Saxony*, exercise the same functions each in his territory.

HOWEVER these rights and powers of the emperor, of which we have made an abstract, would have much more lustre, if the imperial dignity were not restricted by the capitulation which the princes oblige the emperor to agree to at his election, and which at present is always observed. This capitulation is a real barrier to his authority, which not only prevents this great power from turning despotick, but reduces it under the bounds of a mixt government. Some authors pretend, that the use of these capitulations has been introduced only since the emperor *Charles V.* and before that time the ordinary constitutions of the empire, in some measure, supplied the place of these capitulations ; but that the great possessions which that prince inherited without the empire, making



making the electors apprehensive that he should violate the *German* liberty; they thought proper to propose certain conditions to him, to which he agreed to submit, and that they have continued to use the same at all elections of the emperors whom they have since raised to the throne; others allege, that though there appears no capitulation more ancient than the times of *Charlemain*, yet it is not to be presumed, that he, powerful as he then was, and assisted by all his friends, would have allowed a new yoke to be imposed upon him, which so much diminished his dignity.

BUT if the authority of the emperor has received so considerable a diminution, his dominion is reduced to such a degree that it is matter of astonishment. I mean the dominion which the emperor has as emperor, and the revenues which he draws from the empire to support the imperial dignity. In hereditary kingdoms, there is no distinction between the dominion of the king, and the dominion of the crown, but it is otherwise in elective kingdoms, where the son is not sure of succeeding to the crown of his father. For this reason, the king ordinarily hath his particular dominion, distinct from that of the crown, as may be observed in *Poland*, where the kings have their particular dominion, of which they dispose absolutely and without the permission of the states. The same thing is practised in *Germany*, since the time the empire has begun to be elective, after the death of *Lewis IV.* Thus *Saxony*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Bohemia*, and the provinces incorporated with it; *Luxemburg*, *Holland*, *Bavaria*, and *Austria*, have remained to the heirs of the emperors of these houses. But the imperial dominion has always been appropriated to the successors of the emperor, that is, to those who have succeeded to the empire by means of election. This dominion must have been very considerable in the beginning, for in the time of the emperor *Frederic I.* when a good part of *Italy* was detached from the obedience of the empire, and many of the cities of *Germany* already enjoyed that liberty, which, at present, we see them enjoy, the revenue of the dominion of the empire amounted to eighteen millions of livres, a very considerable sum at that time.

IT is impossible to say in what the dominion of the empire consisted, and what was its revenue under *Conrad I.* and *Henry I.* or even after *Otho I.* had reunited *Italy* to the imperial crown, seeing there is not one author of that time who mentions it. We can only say, that the emperors of that time made good their rights of sovereignty, and drew from thence, as well as from the states and cities who were immediately subject to the emperor, wherewith to support

their imperial dignity. But *Italy*, by degrees, detaching itself from the empire, and the states and cities of *Germany* having partly purchased, and partly usurped their liberty, these branches of their revenue have been cut off, as well as many subsidies, customs, services, and rights, which he then possessed.

It is more than 300 years since the emperor *Charles IV.* told the deputies, whom the states of the empire sent to him, that *Bohemia* brought him more revenue than the empire; and the cardinal of *Grandvelle* told the landgrave of *Hesse*, that *Charles V.* his master, almost drew no advantage from the empire, and that the princes of *Germany* ought to think themselves happy to have a monarch, who, from the revenue of his hereditary dominion, had wherewith to support the imperial dignity. In reality, the empire has almost no dominion, and the emperor cannot draw from it even sufficient to pay a part of his officers, so far is he from having enough to support his imperial dignity, to entertain a retinue, and make a necessary expence proportioned to his quality, and still less has he from that revenue, wherewith to support the troops that would be necessary to be maintained, if his person or the empire were attacked.

THERE is not even a single city in the empire that belongs to the emperor as emperor, because the whole territory is divided among the electors, bishops, abbots, princes, counts, lords, and free cities; so that if an emperor has no proper dominion of his house in the empire, the bishop of *Bamberg* is obliged to quit his city of *Bamberg* for the residence of the emperor, and to retire himself to *Villac*, a small city in *Carinthia*. It may then be questioned, for what reason the house of *Austria* uses so many efforts, to preserve as long as possible, the imperial crown upon the head of its princes, since drawing so little profits and advantage from the dominion of the empire, the imperial dignity can only be a burden to them. But although the pecuniary advantages be none, there are a great many other real and solid ones; for, besides the advantage which the emperor has of preceding all other christian princes; and although he cannot of himself declare war, or raise money or soldiers, nevertheless, war being once resolved upon, and the impositions of money, and the levies of men being made, he can advance to the command and leading of the armies, whom he pleases, and can dispose of the money according to his pleasure; so that he has by this means all the troops at his devotion. Likewise the principal fiefs becoming vacant by forfeiture or otherwise, he formerly disposed of them as he pleased, even to the ad-

vantage of his own children, a means which the princes of the house of *Austria* have advantageously made use of, in opposition to the constitutions of the empire, with design of making themselves masters by degrees of all the fiefs, and changing the state of the empire from an elective form, into an hereditary monarchy.

IN effect, it is by this means that the princes of the house of *Austria* have mounted, within the space of 400 years, to that grandeur in which we see them at this day. *Austria* and *Stiria*, confiscated from *Othogar*, king of *Bohemia*, came into their house, by the gift which the emperor *Rodolphus I.* made of them to his son *Albert*; and a good part of *Suabia*, vacant by the death of *Conradin*, grandson of *Frederic II.* fell to them by the same means. The emperor *Charles V.* finding the dutchy of *Milan* convenient for him, instead of reuniting it to the empire, gave it to his son. Besides the alliances which this family have contracted with the most illustrious houses of *Europe*, and the rich advantages which have fallen to them, make it evident that the imperial dignity procures to those who are possessed of it, advantages much more considerable than are at first imagined. This dignity was the cause of the marriage of *Henry*, son of *Frederic I.* with the heiress of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and of *John*, son of *Henry VII.* with the heiress of *Bohemia*. And it was this consideration alone which annexed the provinces of the *Low Countries* to the states of *Austria* by the marriage of *Maximilian* with *Mary*, heiress of *Burgundy*, which united *Austria* and *Burgundy* to *Spain*, by the marriage of *Philip*, son of *Maximilian*; *Jean*, heiress of the kingdom of *Castile* and *Aragon*; and lastly, which caused the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* to enter into the house of *Austria*, by the marriage of *Ferdinand I.* with *Anne*, heiress of these crowns, which has given occasion to this distich:

*Bella gerant fortes, tu felix Austria, nūbe;*  
*Nam quæ Mars aliis, dat tibi regna Venus.*

Therefore there is no reason to be astonished, that the house of *Austria* has always done its utmost to perpetuate the imperial crown to its descendants, notwithstanding the little revenue that it is pretended it brings, which indeed only consists in extraordinary aids, called *Roman months*, which are payed in troops and in money, according to the matricular book or register; in some ordinary subsidies of the imperial cities, which amount only to about 40,000 crowns a year; and in taxes of the chancery, which amount likewise to very

little money; such are those of the processses, favours, grants, renewing of privileges, creations of titles and dignities, which taxes even the greatest part of the states are exempted from paying; and lastly, in ordinary and extraordinary taxes, which the *Jews* are obliged to pay to the emperor, namely, the extraordinary at his coronation, and the ordinary every year at *Christmas*, which does not amount to great sums. He has likewise the perquisites that are payed at the investitures of the fiefs of the empire given by the emperor; but the advantage of this goes almost wholly to his officers, who assist, and he has nothing but the honour.

As this honourable right of giving the investitures of all the fiefs of the empire, vacant by the death of the last male of the family, or by resignation, and which are bound to be renewed, upon the succession of every heir, is a prerogative of the emperor of great lustre, we shall mention the form of the ceremony used by the emperor at the investiture of *Maurice* duke of *Saxony*, when he received the electorate of his cousin *John Frederic*, who was put to the ban of the empire, for being the chief of the *Smalcaldick* league. The emperor was no sooner entered with the electoral princes into a tent of wood, in form of a theatre, raised in the middle of the market-place of *Augsburgh*; than *Maurice* appeared on horseback, accompanied with many princes and lords, preceded by twelve trumpets, and causing to be carried before him ten standards, which signified so many titled lands, of which the electorate was composed. He alighted at the foot of the stage, and having walked up upon it, with the princes, who accompanied him to do him honour, and who carried the standard; as he advanced, he made three profound bows, and came and placed himself on his knees before the emperor, who was upon a throne, having on his right and left, on other seats less raised, five electors. Then *Maurice* demanding of him the investiture of the electoral dignity, and the electorate, the emperor declared that he consented to grant it to him. For this purpose, the archbishop of *Mentz* having put the book of the gospel upon the knees of the emperor, read the oath of fidelity, given on those occasions, and *Maurice* repeated it word for word, having his hand upon the gospel. After which the emperor taking the sword held by the count of *Pappenheim*, which is the imperial ornament, carried by the electors of *Saxony* before the emperor, gave it to *Maurice*, and by this means invested him with the electoral dignity, and with the office of grand marshal of the empire. The emperor likewise took the standards from the hands of those who carried them, and gave them also into the

the hands of *Maurice*, to invest him also with the principalities. This done, *Maurice* went and placed himself among the electors, and the standards were thrown among the people.

BUT although an elector or other prince, by the death of his predecessor, finds himself in possession of the electorate or principality, and of all the rights belonging to it, in virtue of the first investiture, which the first of the family obtained of it, as well for himself as for all his lawful male descendants in the direct and collateral line, he ought nevertheless within a year and a day after his coming to his states, to demand a new investiture, which is properly only a confirmation of the first, and to pay homage for his states, and take the oath of fidelity that he owes to the emperor and empire, under the penalty, if he has no lawful excuse, to be deprived of his right to his states. And this is practised upon every succession, whether of emperors or electors, and other princes and counts of the empire. But there is a great deal of difference between the first investiture of a new dignity and a new state, and the renewing of this investiture. The first must be taken in person, and in presence of the other princes and members of the empire; whereas the renewing of an investiture may be demanded and obtained by proxy, in presence of witnesses, because it gives no new right to the heir; for a new elector may, without this, be present at the elections of the emperor or king of the *Romans*, and perform all other electoral functions.

IT must likewise be observed, that this first investiture of a fief is of such force, provided it be given to him who receives it, as well for himself as for his lawful male descendants, in direct and collateral line for ever, that neither the first invested, nor any of his successors, can, to the prejudice of others whom it regards, dispose of the fief, or alienate, sell, or divide it, while this first investiture has place. And as they have properly only the usufruct, it is still less in their power to divest themselves of it to the advantage of another family, without the consent of all those interested, and the approbation and permission of the emperor and empire.

AT the investiture of an ordinary fief, which is demanded and received by an ambassador, the following solemnities are at present observed at the imperial court. A great hall, ordinarily called the chamber of gentlemen, is hung with tapestry, and in the middle of it a throne raised for the emperor. When his majesty is arrived there with the principal officers of his court, and has taken his seat, the ambassadors of the princes and lords who demand the investiture are introduced.

Im-

Immediately after they have entered the door of the chamber, they salute the emperor by kneeling down on both their knees, which they do a second time in the middle of the hall, and again upon the carpet before the throne, where they remain upon their knees, while the chief among them addresses the emperor, and asks from his majesty the investiture of the fief in the name of his master. The vice-chancellor of the empire approaching the emperor, as if to know whether he thinks fit that a favourable answer be returned, soon after answers in such terms as these, *That his imperial majesty has most favourably heard their demand, although their master has not appeared before the throne as he ought : but as his excuses have been found valid, his majesty consents to grant his request.* After this, the ambassadors rise, and are conducted to the foot of the throne, where kneeling down, they place the two first fingers of the right hand upon the book of the gospels, which is supported before his majesty by two of his officers, likewise upon their knees. Then the oath is read to them, which they repeat word for word, and which they swear to observe upon the soul of their masters. It must be observed, that before the ambassadors are admitted to the audience of the emperor, the tenor of this oath is communicated to them, because sometimes the terms of it must be changed, with regard to some of the confession of *Augsburgh*, who say at the end, *So help me God and the holy gospel.* The oath being taken, the marshal of the empire, or in his absence, the marshal of the emperor's court, gives his majesty the sword, the pommel of which the ambassadors must kiss ; then they rise, and retiring a little backwards, and placing themselves again upon their knees, one of them makes a short compliment of thanks, after which they retire, with their faces all the while towards the emperor, kneeling down in the middle of the hall, and likewise at the door, as they did when they entered. It is in this manner that the emperor at this day gives the investiture of fiefs, although formerly he sometimes gave it with the sword, and sometimes with the sceptre, and sometimes by receiving from the hands of the person invested, standards, in which were represented the arms of each fief.

As to the perquisites due to the officers of the emperor for an investiture, before the ceremony begins, the sum to which they amount must be consigned into the hands of the great marshal of the court, or of the vice-chancellor of the empire ; and the distribution of it is made thus.

To the great marshal of the emperor's court	60 florins of gold.
To the vice-chancellor - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary marshal - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary chamberlain - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary cup-bearer - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary first cook - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary treasurer - - -	60 ditto.
To the hereditary marshal likewise for the horse - - - }	60 ditto.
To the secretaries of the empire, from	24 to 26 ditto.
To the taxes of the empire - - -	10 ditto.
To the keeper of the register - - -	10 ditto.
To those belonging to the chancery - - -	15 ditto.
For the principal letters of the fief - - -	16 ditto.
For the rights of the chancery - - -	6 ditto.
To the heralds - - -	32 rixdollars.
To the ushers of the chamber and antichamber	6 ditto.
To the ushers of the gentlemen's apartment	8 ditto.
To the archers and halberdiers of the guard	38 ditto.
To the emperor's upholsterers - - -	12 ditto.
To two harbingers of the chamber - - -	12 ditto.
To the usher of the council-chamber - - -	6 ditto.
To the ushers of the aulick imperial chamber	4 ditto.
To the harbingers of the court - - -	20 ditto.
To the emperor's valet de chambre, who carried the book of the gospels }	6 ditto.
To some officers serving at the investiture	8 ditto.
To the trumpeters and kettle-drummers	14 ditto.
To the musicians - - -	12 ditto.
To those who tax - - -	5 ditto.
To the keepers of the register, who ex- amine the letters of investiture - }	4 ditto.
To him who makes the minute of the letters of the fief - - - }	4 ditto.
To the officers of the chancery - - -	3 ditto.
To a secretary - - -	1 ditto.

None are freed from this tax except the electors, and when the death of the emperor and that of the vassal happen at the same time, the tax is doubled.

SINCE we have given a list of the officers of the emperor, who have a share of the perquisites, paid for the investiture, we shall likewise mention the other commensal officers of his household, who ordinarily serve near his person, his court, and retinue. The office of grand steward of the emperor is the first of his household; under this charge are the comptrol-  
lers,

lers, the treasurers, the pursers, the masters and officers of the kitchen, wine-cellar, buttery, pantry, and fruitery.

THE great chamberlain of the emperor has authority over the officers and servants of the rooms, the ushers, halberdiers, and other inferior officers appointed for the service of the rooms, and generally of all that depends upon them.

THE great marshal of the court is likewise one of the most considerable officers; his employment at the imperial court is the same with that of the count of *Pappenheim*, as vicar of the elector of *Saxony*, archmarshal of the empire, when the occasions of performing his office of vicar calls him thither; and in that case, the marshal of the court is without employment. He has under his charge the quarter-master, the marshals of the lodgings, the harbingers, the provost and his officers, and all the artificers following the court.

THE master of the horse has the inspection of, and the authority over, the great and little stable, having under him all the grooms, pages, masters and teachers of the pages, comptrollers, trumpeters, kettle-drummers, coachmen, footmen, and generally all others belonging to the stable.

AMONG the other principal officers of the emperor, are reckoned also the great huntsman, the great falconer, the captain of the halberdiers, the captain of the horse-guards, the postmaster-general of the court, who have each the direction of all that belongs to their charge. There are besides the ordinary and extraordinary gentlemen of his imperial majesty, who are more than one hundred, and all of great quality, the greatest part of them being at least counts of the empire, or of the ancient nobility, who have been in considerable offices. There are always thirty-five or forty of them who really attend, the rest, who are not so strictly obliged to this actual attendance, serve only when they are at the court, or when they are called there expressly for that purpose.

BESIDES these, there are a great many other offices very considerable, as among others, those relating to the emperor's chapel, namely, the masters of the chapel and of the music, the confessors, preachers, almoners, chaplains, and others, as also those of the physicians, library-keepers, and others, of which a minute detail would be tedious. We shall only observe, with regard to the great officers of the emperor's household, that when the electoral princes, or in their absence, their vicars, are obliged to serve his imperial majesty, the others are obliged to retire. But whenever the electors or their vicars have performed their services, or are absent, the ordinary officers resume their functions; as happens at the  
enter-



entertainment which the emperor gives after his coronation, where the electors having performed the service ordained by the Golden Bull, sit down at their own table, and the officers of the household succeed to the exercise of their charges, and serve his imperial majesty during the rest of the entertainment. It may likewise be observed, that the charges of these commensal officers do not depend upon the great officers of the empire, but that the emperor appoints whom he pleases.

BESIDES the aulic council, the emperor has always with him three kinds of councils: the first is his private council of state, composed of a president and twenty-four counsellors, the president being generally his high steward and first minister, and the counsellors are partly princes and counts of the empire, and partly persons of quality, as his great chamberlain, the great steward of the empress, the chancellor of the kingdom of *Bohemia*, the president of the aulic council, the archbishop of *Presburgh*, the bishop of *Vienna*, the master of the horse, the provincial captain of the country upon the *Ems*, his aulic chancellor, the president of the chamber of *Austria*, the provincial marshal of *Lower Austria*, the vice-chancellor of the empire, the president of the chamber of accounts, and other persons qualified, as he thinks fit. There are besides ten secretaries, the first of whom signs the principal letters of the emperor, and the rest are appointed for the dispatch of all other letters that come out of the secretaries office, which the *Germans* call *German* and *Latin* chancery. It is in this council, where the affairs of state are deliberated upon; other great affairs, and even those which have been already examined in the aulic council, come before the privy council; for which the states of the empire have often made remonstrances to the emperor, declaring what has passed in the aulic council by a plurality of votes, ought not to be changed, or even subject to a new examination.

THE second council that is near the emperor, is called the chamber of finances, in which is treated all that concerns the ordinary and extraordinary revenues of the empire, which come to the emperor, as also what relates to the revenues of his hereditary countries. This council is composed of two presidents, a director, and fourteen assessors, six officers of the chancery, and others.

THE third council is called the imperial council of war, which consists in one or two presidents, who are generals of the army, and seven counsellors, who are camp-marshals, generals, majors, colonels, and the auditor-general, with  
keepers

keepers of the register, secretaries, commissioners, and others. Besides all these officers, whom we have mentioned, in the service of the emperor as emperor, he has almost as great a number in quality of king of *Bohemia* and king of *Hungary*, who all have their distinct appointments and wages.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the titles of the emperor, and his marks of honour.*

THE titles assumed by the emperors, have not always been the same. *Otho the Great*, in the most part of his edicts, inscribed himself thus; *Otho, by the grace of God, king of the French and Lombards, and patrician of the Romans*. This title, *by the grace of God*, was in use from the year 963, as may be seen by the letters of the same year, containing the privileges granted to the monastery of *Laurislaum*. Sometimes instead of these words, *by the grace of God*, these are used, *by the divine will*; *by the disposition of the divine providence*; *by the favour of the divine goodness*; *by the mercy of God*. At first it was a form of piety and humility, by which the emperors acknowledged that they held their empire from God, that they might not appear to attribute to themselves absolute sovereignty. For the same reason, the prelates in the letters they wrote to the emperors, also entitled themselves *by the grace of God*, to which they afterwards added, *by the grace of the apostolick see*. But since the tenth century, the secular princes have likewise used the form *by the grace of God*; and even the counts of the empire have since used the same form; and lastly, foreign princes have been observed to give this title to the electors.

By the title of *king of the French*, is understood eastern *France*, or the kingdom of *Germany*; and by the title of *king of the Lombards*, is meant the kingdom of *Italy*. The emperor *Henry III.* still took these two titles. The title of patrician of the *Romans*, was given by the inhabitants of *Rome*, to *Pepin* and his sons *Charles* and *Carloman*, and with the title they granted them the right of protection over the city of *Rome*, and over the pope. *Charlemain*, who not only had received the title of patrician, but likewise had acquired the dignity of it, often entitled himself *king of the French and Lombards, patrician of the Romans*. *Otho the Great*, when he was raised to the throne of the empire, also took this title; and some other emperors, to declare their right against the pretensions of the *French* upon *Lorraine*, took the title of  
king

king of the *Lorrainers*, principally when by election and consent of the *Lorrainers*, they were crowned at *Aix la-Chapelle*. With the title of patrician, the *Romans* gave *Charlemain* the sovereignty over their city, and over the pope, a right which that prince exercised in its full extent, and which distinguished him from subaltern patricians; for among the *Roman* lords, there were some to whom the emperors granted the title of patricians of *Rome*. Since the reign of *Charlemain*, it appears that pope *Adrian* called *Charles the Bald*, king, patrician, and emperor. *Otho the Great*, by a treaty, was ordained patrician of *Rome*, a title which he used even after he was elected emperor. After the death of pope *Nicolas*, the *Romans* sent a crown, with other presents, to the emperor *Henry IV.* and entreated him to cause a pope to be chosen; upon which, that prince having convoked a council at *Basil*, solemnly received the crown of the *Romans*, and was called patrician. Some authors say, that this same prince was ordained patrician of the *Romans*, and blessed as emperor by pope *Clement*. The emperor *Lotharius* was the last that received the patrician crown, that title since his time having become obsolete. Indeed, under the reign of the emperor *Conrad III.* the *Romans* endeavoured to re-establish that dignity in favour of *Jordan*, son of *Peter Leon*, upon whom they conferred it, with the same authority that *Charlemain* possessed, but was at last abolished by pope *Eugene III.*

AMONG the titles which are at this day used, the principal is that of the emperor; a title known from the time the republick enjoyed liberty, and which signified a general of an army. *Julius Cæsar* retained this title after he had conquered *Pompey*, and began to lay the foundations of the *Roman* monarchy; but he, contrary to common use, put that title before his name. *Charlemain* assumed, when the clergy, the nobles, and people of *Rome* gave him the title of *Augustus*, The great, and peaceable emperor of the *Romans*. His successors bore it likewise; *Henry the Fowler*, after his victory over the *Hungarians*, was saluted emperor by his army. *Otho the Great* assumed the same title when he was called to the throne of *Germany*, and his successors have imitated him. However, the emperors of *Constantinople* refused them that title, and gave them only the title of king; as the history of *Otho I.* and *Conrad III.* informs us. Since the reign of *Henry III.* the emperors, when they were yet only crowned in *Germany*, took, from time to time, the title of king of the *Romans*, which became a constant practice after the death of *Henry V.* but after they were crowned by the pope, they took the title of emperors of the *Romans*. For, although

\* 1337.

† 1338.

\* 1187.

\* 1708.

though the emperors, immediately after their election, had the power of exercising all the rights of the empire, as the degree of *Rens* \*, and that of *Franckfort* † formally declare; affirming, that the prince elected by the emperors is true and lawful king and emperor, without needing the consent, approbation, or confirmation of the pope; nevertheless, the popes pretended, that the emperors were absolutely obliged to be crowned at *Rome*, and that they were not emperors before that coronation. In the Golden Bull, in speaking of the election of the emperor, the king of the *Romans* is named future emperor. *Maximilian I.* when at the diet of *Constance*, he concluded the alliance against the republic of *Venice*, caused it to be published at *Trent*, that from henceforth he should not any more be called king as hitherto had been done, but that he should be called emperor of the *Romans*; and he demanded of the states of the empire to be honoured with the title of the elected emperor of the *Romans*. The pope, *Julius II.* who dreaded lest that prince should take the road to *Rome* with an army; and claim again the antient rights of the empire, approved the title by a brief, as though *Maximilian* had received the crown from his hands: nevertheless, the title of elected emperor of the *Romans* is more antient than *Maximilian I.* for *Gregory VIII.* gave it *Henry VI.* in a brief which he sent to that prince \*. Although *Charles V.* after his election, and in his capitulation, took only the title of king of the *Romans*; yet, soon after, in the first diet which he held at *Worms*, he stiled himself ‘elected emperor of the *Romans*’; a title, which he still used, after having been crowned at *Bologna*. *Ferdinand I.* during the life of his brother *Charles V.* contented himself with the title of king of the *Romans*; but, after his death, he assumed that of ‘elected emperor of the *Romans*.’ With regard to the emperors that succeeded him, immediately after their election, they used the title of kings of the *Romans*; and immediately after their coronation in *Germany*, they took that of elected emperor of the *Romans*; the popes, likewise, at this day, grant the title of ‘elected emperor of the *Romans*’ to the emperors after their coronation in *Germany*. *Clement XI.* wrote thus to the emperor *Joseph* \*; To our most dear son in *Christ*, *Joseph*, king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected emperor of the *Romans*.

HOWEVER the title of the emperor is not so attached to the emperor of the *Romans*, but that other princes have likewise used it. *Pepin* is called by *Marianus* the first emperor of the *French*; nevertheless, *Charles VIII.* professed that he did not affect that title. The *Turks*, on several occasions, have

have given it to the kings of *France*: *Alphonfus*, king of *Leon* and *Castile*, called himself emperor of all *Spain*. Among the *Anglo-Saxon* kings, *Edgar* took the name of emperor. At present the grand duke of *Muscovy* takes the title of emperor, and the sultan of the *Turks*, the kings of *China* and *Japan*. However, it is certain, that the title of august emperor has been hitherto restrained to the emperor of *Germany*.

As to the title of august, it subsists since the time of *Octavius Augustus*, who received it from the senate. This word comes from the name of places consecrated by the augures, which were called august, or holy. And this title was so appropriated to the *Roman* emperors, that no king bore it unless the emperors granted it to him. *Clavis*, king of *France*, was complimented with this title by *Anastasius*, the emperor of the *East*; when he sent him the crown of gold, and the imperial tunick, he called him *Consul* and *Augustus* in his letter; the emperor designing thereby to encourage him to expel the *Goths*, and re-establish the empire of the *West*. But at this day the title of august is common to all kings.

It is only the title of always august that has been reserved to the emperors of *Germany*. This title seems to have been used in the time of *Septimus Severus*, who is entitled in a *Latin* inscription, *Propagator urbis, ac Romanæ rei, victor ac triumphator, semper Augustus*. *Theodosius II.* in the novels of *Valentinian*, is called *perennis Augustus*. Several emperors both of the east and west have taken the same title. *Charlemain* has also used it, though rarely, his successors have sometimes been called august, and sometimes august *Charles the Bald* wanted to be called perpetual august. This title varied thus till the time of *Frederic I.* when it became fixed, and the ordinary stile of the imperial court. In the treaties of *Westphalia* the *French* and *Swedish* plenipotentiaries made some difficulty to grant it to the emperor alone; but the plenipotentiaries of the emperor having insisted upon the antiquity of the practice, there was, at last, no alteration made.

THE first *Roman* emperors were proud of the title of *Cæsars*; but, in the third century, the emperors declared those *Cæsars* who were appointed to succeed them; but they had neither the imperial ornaments or power. The *Greeks* likewise called their emperors *Kaisares*, from which the *Germans*, have derived the name of *Kayser*. *Maximilian I.* granted this title to *Bazile Iwanowitz*, great duke of *Muscovy*. The same title was likewise granted to *Louis XII.* king of *France*. What is more surprising, is, that pope *Julius II.* endeavoured to make himself be called *Cæsar*, and

took that title on many occasions. *Maximilian I.* revived the title of king of *Germany*, which had been used several ages before.

THE variation which is found in the titles of the emperors proceeds chiefly from the diversity of kingdoms, which they have possessed by hereditary right. *Charlemain* sometimes called himself king of the *French*, with the assistance of God, governing the *Gauls*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and the neighbouring provinces. *Charles the Bald*, and *Otho the great*, both bore the title of king of *Lorraine*. *Otho III.* entitled himself the *Roman Saxon*, and *Italian* servant of the apostles, by the blessing of God, august emperor of the *Roman* world [empire.] *Henry VI.* to the title of emperor, added that of king of *Sicily*. *Frederick II.* stiled himself emperor and king of *Jerusalem* and *Sicily*; to which *Conrad IV.* joined the title of duke of *Sugbia*. *Charles IV.* and *Wenceslaus*, entitled themselves likewise kings of *Bobemia*; *Sigismund* called himself king of *Bobemia*, *Hungary*, *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Servia*. *Frederic III.* took the title of emperor of the *Romans*, always august, duke of *Austria*, *Suria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, count of *Tirol*. *Maximilian*, to the title of the elected emperor, and king of *Germany*, joined that of the provinces of the *Low-Countries*. *Charles V.* still gave a greater extent to his titles, to which he joined all those of the kingdom of *Spain*. His successors have used the titles of the hereditary kingdoms, provinces, and principalities, which they possessed. And lastly, *Charles VI.* found means even to preserve to himself the title of king of *Spain*.

THE following epithets were antiently conferred upon the emperors; namely, *Pious*, *Happy*, *Grand*, *Pacifick*, *Victorious*, *Triumphant*, *Illustrious*, *Most Christian*, *Most Pious*, *Most Serene*, *Most Sacred*, *Most Glorious*, *Most High*; which are likewise common to other kings. But the epithet of *Most Invincible*, is solely appropriated to the emperors. The origin of it is carried 'up as far as the emperor *Tiberius*. Afterwards *Charlemain* entitled himself, *Most Invincible King of the French*. The *Othos* imitated him, and the succeeding emperors have used it in the same manner. The emperor is likewise called, *The Vicar of Christ*. In the *Golden Bull*, he is called, *The Temporal Chief of the Christian people*.

IN the time of *Charlemain*, the title of *Majesty* was given to the emperor alone, not only by the states of the empire, but by foreign kings. However, from time to time, many states granted it to the kings of *France*. *Francis I.* obtained it in the treaty of peace of *Crepi*. *Louis XIII.* refused to ratify the treaty of *Ratisbon*, because the title of *Majesty* was not given

given him. The states of the empire, assembled at *Ratisbon*, in 1641, were going to treat that prince with the title of Royal Dignity and Majesty; but upon the protest made by the emperor's envoy, the word Majesty was suppressed. But at last, in the treaties of *Westphalia*, the kings of *France* and *Sweden*, not contenting themselves with the title of Royal Dignity, that of Majesty was granted them, which is now enjoyed by all other kings.

THE marks of honour, and the jewels of the empire, which are used at the coronation of a new emperor, consists in relicks, in imperial ornaments and dresses. The relicks have been preserved for many ages, and are said to have been transferred to *Aix la Chapelle* in the time of *Charlemain*. On the day of the emperor's coronation, they are placed on the altar, and are as follows; a part of the manger in which our Saviour lay; an arm of *St. Anne*, a tooth of *St. John the Baptist*, a part of *St. John the Evangelist's* cloak, some links of the chains with which *St. Peter*, *St. Paul*, and *St. John the Evangelist* were bound; a piece of the cloth, on which our Saviour celebrated the supper with his disciples; a piece of the cloth with which he was girt when he washed his disciples feet; five thorns of our Saviour's crown; a piece of the true cross; the spear with which the body of *Jesus Christ* was pierced; a little box with some drops of the blood of *St. Stephen*; the book of the gospels which *Charlemain* used, written in letters of gold.

UNDER the name of marks of honour of the empire which serve at the coronation, are comprehended the crown, the sceptre, the imperial globe, three swords, two of *Charlemain*, and one of *St. Maurice*; three tunicks, among which is the albe or dalmatick, the stole, the girdle, the copes, the buskins, and the sandals. It is said all these served *Charlemain*; but some affirm, that they are not more antient than *Charles IV.* because the lion of *Bohemia* is seen engraved upon one of the swords; but as the historian *Wittikind* asserts, that that sword came from the ancient kings of *France*; and the emperor *Charles IV.* himself attributes these marks of honour to *Charlemain*; it is probable, that *Charles IV.* caused the lion to be engraved on the sword when he had these regalia in his possession at *Prague*, and wanted to secure the empire to his family.

By the crown is meant the *German* crown, which the emperors have always received first. It is of pure gold, and weighs fourteen pounds. From the cincture of this crown are raised eight plates, which bend circularly, and unite at the top. Each being a particular piece they are all fastened

within by means of a circle of iron, of the breadth of one's little finger. Four of these eight plates are adorned with precious stones and unpolished pearls. On the others, are figures painted, and sentences described: this crown is surmounted with a cross, enriched with seventeen brilliant stones. Behind the cross is a semicircle, supported by the crown, adorned with pearls, and having this inscription; *Conradus Dei Gratia Romanorum Imperator semper Augustus.*

THE crown of *Milan*, which is the crown of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, or *Italy*, may likewise be reckoned among the marks of honour of the empire. The *Italians* make mention of two crowns of this name; the one of gold more ancient than the other, which was kept at *Monza*; the other of iron, which was kept at *Milan*, in the church of *St. Ambrose*. This last is a circle of gold, adorned all over on the outside with stones of a great value; the inside is wholly covered with a thin plate of iron. This circle, contrary to the fashion of other king's crowns, is neither surmounted with flower-work, nor rays, nor half diadems. Some carry the origin of this ancient crown as high as the reign of *Theodolind*, queen of *Lombardy*, about the end of the sixth century. They pretend that she caused the circle of iron to be made of one of the nails of our Saviour's passion; and for this reason, in the thirteenth century, this crown got the name of the crown of iron. But it is probable, this crown had another origin, for as no emperor had caused himself to be crowned in *Italy* from *Frederic II.* to *Henry VII.* the inhabitants of *Milan* had found means, during that time, to seize upon the antient crown of *Lombardy*; so that *Henry VII.* caused make a new one of polished steel gilt, enriched with precious stones, with which he was crowned, and afterwards trusted the keeping of it to the abbot of the monastery of *St. Ambrose*. Some years after, the antient crown was restored to the inhabitants of *Monza*; but the following emperors, namely, *Lewis of Bavaria*, *Charles IV.* *Sigismond*, and *Frederic III.* having been crowned at *Milan*, in the church of *St. Ambrose*, it is probable that they used on these occasions the crown made by the orders of *Henry VII.* But *Charles V.* was crowned at *Bologna*, by *Clement VII.* with that crown which was kept at *Monza*. The inhabitants of *Milan*, envious of the preference given to the other crown, and desirous of extolling their own, insisted upon its antiquity, and called the other a crown of straw; which has made some authors believe, that such a crown was really kept at *Monza*.



THE Roman crown has likewise been one of the marks of honours of the empire, and was the last which the emperors received. Pope *Léo VIII.* crowned *Charlemain* with a particular crown, which was very rich. Although *Lewis the Debonnair* was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*; while his father was yet alive, yet pope *Stephen* afterwards crowned him at *Rheims* as emperor, and put upon his head a beautiful golden crown, enriched with precious stones of great value, which he brought with him from *Italy*. The crown, with which the emperors were crowned at *Rome* was not always the same. The popes sometimes furnished it, and sometimes the emperors themselves, or else carried with them the crown of *Germany*, which served for their coronation at *Rome*, which was the case with the emperor *Sigismund*.

BESIDES the three crowns already mentioned, there is a fourth, which is the proper crown of the emperors, and is called in *German*, *Die Haus Crone*; it having been used since the time of *Charlemain*, who was even buried with such a crown. The emperor, *Henry II.* gave a crown of this kind to the monastery of *Cluny*. That of the emperor *Rupert* is preserved in the treasure of the palatin-house. *Rodolphus II.* caused make a very precious one, which has served the emperors of the house of *Austria*. This particular and family crown always served the emperors in those ceremonies, in which they appear with the crown on their head, because the crown of *Germany* was too weighty. However, the late emperors sometimes, instead of this crown, have worn the crown of *Bohemia*.

THE imperial globe is but small, not being so large as a man's fist. It is made of a plate of gold, and filled with earth. It is likewise girt with a circle set with precious stones, and surmounted with a cross of gold.

THE imperial sceptre is very large; it is made of silver gilt, and without ornaments, excepting that it is terminated with six oak leaves, three of which is turned upwards, and three downwards, and surmounted with an acorn.

AMONG the imperial marks of honour are found two rings, the one large, with a large carbuncle, together with four sapphires, and four pearls: it is believed to be a present of a duke of *Brunswick*. The other ring is enriched with a ruby.

OF the three swords which serve at the coronation, the first is very large, and upon the pommel of the handle, which is round, are seen on one side an eagle, and on the other a lion with a forked tail; The scabbard is of silver gilt, enriched with precious stones and pearls; on the broadest part of the blade these words are engraved lengthwise, *Christus*

*vincit.*

*vincit, Christus regnat, Christus imperat.* Then *Christus vincit, Christus regnat.* A fabulous tradition reports, that an angel brought this sword from heaven to *Charlemain*. In the other sword, which, as it is said, the martyr *St. Maurice* used, the pommel of the handle is in form of a heart. One of the sides of this pommel has no figure; the other represents the figure of a demi-half eagle, accompanied with three leopards above one another. On one side of the blade are these words, *Benedictus dos dei*, and on the other side these, *Deus qui docet manus.* These two swords are kept at *Nuremberg*, the third is kept at *Aix la Chapelle*. It is said, likewise, to have been used by *Charlemain*. It is in the form of a sabre, and is that which the emperor carries at the coronation. The imperial habits, which serve at the coronation, are for the most part of silk, enriched with pearls and precious stones. They are not sacerdotal habits as some pretend, but only made in imitation of those of priests, because the emperors are the protectors and defenders of the Christian religion. Of the three tunicks, the first is a violet colour, and has the sleeves embroidered with gold and pearls; the second is of a purple colour, having the sleeves likewise embroidered as the first; the third is white, and is called the albe. It is made like the albe of priests, and is likewise called the dalmatick, because that kind of robe was first invented in *Dalmatia*; its sleeves are adorned with pearls and precious stones. The imperial stole is composed of two large bands, and resting upon the shoulders it crosses over the breast; one of the bands is embroidered with gold, and enriched with pearls and precious stones. The buskins are adorned in the same manner, and the sandals are embroidered with gold and pearls. The stockings and breeches are likewise reckoned in the number of imperial habits.

THESE marks of honour were formerly in such veneration, that at the treaty of the emperor *Charles IV.* pope *Innocent VI.* ordained, that not only through all *Germany*, but also in *Bohemia*, the feast of the Spear and the Nails of our Saviour should be celebrated on the thirteenth day after *Easter*. The emperor *Sigismund* ordained, that during the solemnization of the funerals of an emperor, these relicks should be exposed to the veneration of the people; which was practised at the death of *Sigismund*, and at that of *Albert*. But after the city of *Nuremberg* embraced the reformed religion, this exposing of the relicks ceased, as well upon account of the outcry against them, as to prevent them from being worn by the often touching.

ANTIENLY the emperors themselves kept these marks of honour, excepting those which are preserved at *Aix la Chapelle*. They sent them to those who were appointed to succeed them ; or else the heirs of the deceased emperor sent them to the new emperor. *Henry V.* wanting to dethrone his father, caused these marks of honour to be taken away by force ; but *Albert*, archbishop of *Mentz*, persuaded *Matilda*, the widow of the same *Henry*, to send them back. After the death of *Lotharius*, *Henry the Proud*, his son-in-law, wanted to retain them, but the emperor *Conrad III.* forced him to surrender them. In the year 1189, *Frederick Barbarossa* going for the Holy Land, gave them to his son *Henry VI.* at whose death, his brother *Philip* retained them. Upon the death of *Otho IV.* his brother, *Henry of Brunswick*, sent them to the emperor *Frederick II.* And they were given in the city of *Mentz* to *Henry of Habsburg*.

HOWEVER, certain emperors thought proper that those marks of honour should be kept in certain places, and by certain persons to whom they trusted them. *Otho III.* gave them in keeping to *Herbert*, archbishop of *Cologn*. The emperor *Philip* deposited them in the hands of *Conrad*, bishop of *Spire* ; but that prelate, who had put them in the castle of *Trifels*, refused to render them to *Otho IV.* till that prince had confirmed him in his office of chancellor of the empire. *Henry V.* finding himself dying, ordered them to be shut up in the castle of *Hamerstein*. *Frederic II.* trusted them to the keeping of *Eberhard de Tanne*, baron of *Walburg*, his steward. *Otho IV.* after having been crowned at *Rome*, trusted them to the city of *Milan*. *Agnes*, daughter of the emperor *Albert I.* secured them in the castle of *Kyburg*. *Lewis of Bavaria* kept them at *Munich*, the place of his residence ; however, his son, *Lewis of Brandenburg*, sent them to the emperor *Charles IV.* for the cession of the march of *Brandenburg*, and upon condition that they should be sent back either to *Nuremberg* or *Frankfort* ; nevertheless, that prince, wanting to secure the empire to his family, caused them to be carried to *Prague*, and afterwards placed them in the fortrefs of *Karlstein*. The emperor *Sigismund*, fearing lest the *Hussites* might seize upon them, transferred them from the fortrefs of *Karlstein* to that of *Wicegrad* in *Hungary* ; but not thinking them in safety in that place, with the consent of pope *Martin V.* he caused them to be carried to *Nuremberg*, where he ordained them to be kept for the time to come. When they approached the city of *Nuremberg*, the magistrates were informed of their arrival ; immediately the clergy went out about half a mile to meet them, and on

\* 1424. the 16th of *March*\*, that treasure was received with great veneration in the city of *Nuremberg*, and was at first deposited in the church of *St. Sebald*, where it remained for some time under the guard of the two provosts of *St. Wilibald*, and *St. Laurent*, and the oldest of the burgomasters, in such a manner, that one could not open them without the others. But when the new hospital of *St. Esprit* was compleated, and consecrated by the bishop of *Bamberg*, *Sigismond* ordered the treasure to be transferred thither, and to remain under the guard of the same persons. Here it has continued ever since, and hangs from the roof of the church in an iron chest. The popes *Pius II.* and *Nicolas V.* have confirmed the privilege of being perpetual guardians of this treasure to the city of *Nuremberg*; which right at first granted by a bull from pope *Martin V*; *Pius II.* and *Nicolas V.* have added this exception, provided the city do not wholly become heretick.

When the city of *Nuremberg* embraced the Protestant religion, the *Roman* catholicks complained, that that city having become heretic, would infallibly plunder the sacred treasure, and that they had rendered themselves unworthy to keep it; and two years after they renewed the same complaints. Lastly, at the time of the coronation of *Charles VI.* the city of *Aix la Chapelle* represented, that they ought to have the keeping of that treasure, as well because it had the prerogative of being the first throne of the empire, a right confirmed to it by the emperors *Frederic II.* as upon account of having the keeping of the four principal marks of honour of the empire, in consequence of a privilege granted by the emperor *Richard*. But the city of *Nuremberg* opposed this claim, and to support its rights, it published a writing, in which it made appear, that they were protected by a privilege of the emperor *Sigismond*, by the bulls of the popes, and by a possession of 300 years, without ever having been molested either by the emperors or electors.

WE shall conclude this article of the marks of honour of the empire, with a few words concerning the eagle, that is in the arms. In the first ages of the *Roman* empire, the emperors caused their image to be engraved upon their seals, but afterward they placed an eagle. The arms of the empire are only a simple eagle, and not a double one, as some have written. The eagle of the empire is at present black, or sable, with two heads, having the bill and the feet red or gules, each of its heads is crowned with an imperial crown, and it is placed displayed in a field of gold. The first emperors used only an eagle with a single head; *Louis of Bavaria*,

*varia*, is supposed to be the first who put upon his seal, an eagle on each side of his throne, with their heads turned to each other; and it is only from this time, that the use of an eagle, with two heads, has been introduced. *Charles IV.* imitated *Lewis of Bavaria*, but it was only towards the end of his reign that he used the eagle with two heads. *Wenceslaus*, and his successors, likewise used the eagle with two heads; yet, after their election, and before their coronation in *Germany*, they used the arms of their houses: from their coronation in *Rome* to the coronation in *Germany*, they assumed an eagle with a single head; and after their coronation at *Rome*, they used the eagle with two heads. But since *Charles V.* the emperors, immediately after their election, have used the eagle with two heads. This use of the eagle with two heads, seems then not to have proceeded either from the *Romans*, nor from the two *Roman* eagles which *Arminius* took from them, nor from the division of the empire into eastern and western, but seems rather intended to signify the union of the kingdom of *Germany* with the *Roman* empire.

## C H A P. VI.

### *Of the king of the Romans.*

AS the title of king of the *Romans* has been often mentioned in this history, we shall mention the different acceptations, in which it hath been taken at different times. In the time of the first emperors this title was quite unknown in the sense in which it is at present understood, and even to those of the house of *Charlemain*; during which time, the emperors were, in fact, kings of the *Romans*, that is, sovereign princes of the city of *Rome*. Wherefore we have seen, that *Charlemain* having designed his eldest son to the succession of the empire, gave him the title of king of *Italy*; and that *Lewis the Debonnair* his son, and *Lotharius I.* followed his example, and gave likewise to their presumptive heirs the title of kings of *Italy*, which signified at that time, what was intended by the word *Cæsar* under the first emperors, and what is meant by the title of king of the *Romans* at present.

THIS last quality began only to be used in the time of *Otho I.* when a new kind of devotion had persuaded the princes, that the pope alone could give the crown and title of emperor. For this reason *Otho*, not daring to give the title of emperor unto his son at his coronation, he gave him the title of king  
of

of the *Romans* which he could dispose of because he was sovereign prince of the city of *Rome*. And upon this account likewise, many emperors, though sovereigns of *Rome*, and in full possession of the empire and imperial dignity, in virtue of election, have only taken the title of king of the *Romans*, till after they were crowned by the pope. And it is in this sense that the text of the Golden Bull must be taken, when it makes mention of king of the *Romans*; for it means him, who after the death, voluntary renunciation, or deposition of the emperor, was named by the electors to the succession of the empire, and who, although emperor in effect, yet did not take the title till after he was crowned by the hands of the pope.

At present, he is called king of the *Romans* who is chosen by the electoral princes during the life of the emperor, to have the conduct and administration of affairs, in his absence, as vicar-general of the empire, and to succeed after his death to the name and dignity of the emperor, without there being any need for another election or confirmation.

THE Golden Bull has made no mention at all of the king of the *Romans* in this last signification, nor of his election. The reason is, that *Charles IV.* having no other design in publishing the Golden Bull, than to render the empire purely elective, and to lay the firm foundations of the electoral power and dignity, was far from making any mention of the election of a king of the *Romans* during the life of the emperor, which secures the succession of the imperial crown, and renders the empire in some measure hereditary. For this reason, the elector of *Saxony*, and the confederates of *Smalkald*, protested against *Charles V.* desirous of having his brother *Ferdinand* elected king of the *Romans*, and demanded, that before they proceeded to the election, that the emperor, with the advice of the electors, explaining the constitution of *Charles IV.* should make an edict to serve for a perpetual regulation; so that in time coming, no mention should be made of electing a king of the *Romans* during the life of the emperor, unless the electors, and six other princes of the empire, should judge it necessary for the public good. That in such case, and not otherwise, the archbishop of *Mentz* might convoke the other electors, and six other princes of the empire, in a place proper to determine the affair; and when an election shall be judged necessary, and declared such by a decree in good form; the electors by themselves shall proceed to the election of a king of the *Romans*; who, nevertheless, shall not have the power of the government and administration of affairs, but under the authority of the

the emperor, to whom alone the princes and states of the empire shall be obliged by their oath to obey, and not the king of the *Romans*; that likewise none but a *German* should be made king of the *Romans*, and that three of the same family should not be elected after each other. To which the elector of *Saxony* and the other confederates added, besides several other demands upon the same subject; but all this was moderated by an agreement concluded at *Schweinfurt*, between *Charles* and the electors and the other princes. But even this regulation of *Schweinfurt* has not been observed, and this by the intrigues of the emperors of the house of *Austria*, who have always endeavoured to elude the putting it into execution.

AN election of a king of the *Romans* was held at *Augsburgh*, about the end of the year 1689. His imperial majesty, considering his advanced age, desired to provide a successor, in order to prevent the troubles that his death might otherwise bring upon the empire, at a time when the *Turks* threatened christendom. The electors meeting at *Augsburgh*, except those of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, who only sent their ambassadors, assembled several times in the town-house, and at last came to an unanimous opinion, and agreed upon the day of election. His majesty being informed of this deliberation again, by means of one of his gentlemen, renewed his instances with the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, that they might appear at the assembly; but they judging their presence necessary in their states, contented themselves with sending, besides their ambassadors, the princes of their house, to make their compliments to his imperial majesty, the elector of *Saxony* sending the electoral prince, and the elector of *Brandenburgh* sending his brother prince *Philip*. On the day of election, the electors who were present, and the ambassadors of the absent, assembled in the town-house, and after their final deliberation, and their being clothed with the ornaments usual in this ceremony, they took the road of the church of the *Benedictines* of *St. Udalric*, the three ecclesiastic electors going first, after them the electors of *Bavaria* and the palatine, who were followed by the three ambassadors. The grand chancellor of the kingdom of *Bohemia*, who was deputed by his imperial majesty to represent the king of that kingdom, went in the middle, having on his right hand the ambassador of *Brandenburgh*, and on his left that of *Saxony*. These ministers had no electoral ornament, but were on horseback as the electors, and all magnificently dressed in black with their hats on their heads. This electoral assembly determined in favour of prince

prince *Joseph*, already king of *Hungary*, in consideration of his imperial majesty, who had employed the armies of the empire with much success against the forces of the *Turks*, whom he had repulsed from *Germany*, more than a hundred leagues. It was these reasons and many others that induced the present electors and the ambassadors of the absent to declare for the archduke *Joseph* king of *Hungary*, and eldest son of his imperial majesty, and to chuse him unanimously king of the *Romans*. When the news was at first brought him, and he was entreated to repair to the assembly there, to take possession of that dignity, he thanked the electors for their affection towards him, and that they had thought him not unworthy of being one day the head of *Germany*, and at the same time made appear to them, that being yet a minor, and under the power of the emperor his father, he could not dispose of himself; but that he would follow the will of his imperial majesty, so that a deputation of the members of the electoral college was sent to the emperor, not only to inform him of the election, but also to entreat him to agree to the choice which the electors had made in the person of his son the king of *Hungary*. His imperial majesty thanked the electoral assembly for the affection which they testified for his family, and said, that although the new elect, upon account of his tender age, was not in a condition to be of service to the empire, yet he ought to yield to the strength of their votes, and to the good-will of the electors, and believe, that they continuing in the same sentiments, would always contribute to assist this new king rightly to govern the state. His imperial majesty on his side also promised, that during his life he would omit nothing for the education of his son, to render him expert and worthy of the sovereign dignity which was destined for him. It was thus that his imperial majesty answered to the determination of the electoral assembly, whither he repaired an hour after with the king *Joseph*, and again repeated the same things. The new king of the *Romans* was then complimented and reconducted under a canopy to the palace by the electors, who all had their ornaments. The emperor had his imperial crown and habit, and the emperor *Joseph* was dressed after the *Hungarian* fashion, having on his head the crown of that kingdom, for he did not receive that of king of the *Romans* till the 26th of *January* in the year after, in the cathedral church of *Augsburgh*, being then twelve years of age.

BESIDES all that has been said of the formalities of the election of an emperor, and of the ceremonies of his coronation, is almost wholly observed at the election and coronation



ronation of a king of the *Romans*, among other things there is this particular, that after the election of the king of the *Romans*, is made, and before it be proclaimed, the emperor is entreated by the electoral princes to come to the assembly to agree to it and ratify it. Moreover, the king of the *Romans* is not crowned with an open crown, which is called *Roman*, and no oath of fidelity is taken to him, till after the death of the emperor; and likewise he has only the title of august, and not that of always august, which is reserved for the emperor, and the eagle displayed, which he bears in his arms, has only one head. But the king of the *Romans* is without dispute, by virtue of this title, successor of the emperor after his death, and during the life of the emperor, he is the only and universal vicar, the second head and agent of the empire. When the emperor is absent from the kingdom, the king of the *Romans* has the supreme command in virtue of his dignity, on account of which, any suits that may be raised against him for debts or otherwise, are submitted, as those against the emperor, to the jurisdiction of the count palatine; and he cannot be obliged in those cases to appear before the emperor.

THE king of the *Romans* has many advantages that are common to him with the emperor, as that of presiding at the diets, of calling them with the consent of the electors, and of dismissing, of making counts and barons, of giving letters of ennobling, of granting privileges to universities, of putting rebels to the ban of the empire; and with the ordinary formalities, of recalling proscribed persons, of exchanging penalties, &c. Nevertheless, he acknowledges the emperor for his superior, and takes care as much as possible to act only in the name and by the order of the emperor. And even in the imperial capitulations, which he is made to sign at his election, it is expressly stipulated, that he shall have no administration or authority while the emperor lives.

It must be observed, that when one is elected king of the *Romans*, who is not eighteen years of age, he is subject to this condition, that in case the empire happens to become vacant before he attains that age, he shall only act as emperor under the authority of the vicars of the empire, who shall serve him as guardians till he has acquired the years of majority stipulated by the Golden Bull, with this restriction, nevertheless, that all acts and ordinances pass under his name.

It may likewise be remembered, that the king of the *Romans* has not all the rights, honours, and prerogatives, abovementioned, but in case of the absence of the emperor;  
for

for when the emperor is in the empire, he has no office, unless in the name, with the consent, or by the order of the emperor, to whom he is obliged to refer every thing.

THE king of the *Romans* is entitled as royal majesty by all the princes, and in processions or other ceremonies, he marches on the left hand of his imperial majesty a step or two behind him. When he is alone, the marshal of the court carries the sword before him only in the scabbard, whereas it is carried naked before the emperor. The same king entitles the emperor majesty, and calls him his lord, but the emperor gives him only the title of dilection.

## C H A P. VII.

### *Of the vicars of the empire.*

THE power of the emperor ceasing by his death, by his abdication, and by his deposition, vicars have been established, who, in such cases, are to take the reins of government into their hands, and charge themselves with the administration of the empire. These vicars are of two kinds, some are established during the life of the emperor, upon account of absence or other hindrance; others are only during the vacancy of the empire. During the life of the emperor, the king of the *Romans* is by right vicar-general of the empire, and exercises this office either by the concession of the emperor, or when the emperor is prevented by some hindrance. The other vicars are those of the kingdom of *Germany*, of the *Roman* empire, of the kingdom of *Italy*, and the kingdom of *Arles*; although in the last interregnum the vicars of the kingdom of *Germany* have exercised the rights of vicariate in *Italy*.

ANCIENTLY indeed, under the *Saxon* emperors, neither law nor custom had yet established perpetual vicars. When the emperors went into *Italy*, or when they undertook any other journey without the bounds of the empire, they either caused their sons to be declared kings of the *Romans*, or they named some other persons to be *provisors* of the empire. Thus *Otha the Grand* being called into *Italy*, trusted to *Herman Billing* the administration of his duchy of *Saxony*, a province then so large, that bestowing that government upon him, was in a manner bestowing upon him the government of the whole empire. The same emperor, when he went against the *Hungarians*, trusted the care of the empire to his brother *Bruno*; and when after the death of *Bruno* he went  
a second

a second time into *Italy*, he established *William*, archbishop of *Mainz*, as vicar of the empire; lastly, before his third expedition into *Italy*, he appointed a diet at *Worms*, where he caused his son *Otho II.* to be elected king of the *Romans*, and declared his successor. Thus likewise *Otho III.* before he went to *Italy*, put the government of the empire into the hands of *Mathilda*, abbess of *Quedlinburgh*, his aunt. This princess even assembled two diets, the one at *Darmburgh*, the other at *Merseburgh*, although the dukes of the provinces of *Germany* appear to have exercised, each in his district, the rights of vicariate of the empire during the absence of the emperor.

UNDER the *French* emperors, vicars of this kind may likewise be observed. *Conrad II.* proposing to go into *Italy*, appointed his son *Henry*, yet an infant, as his successor, and put him under the guardianship of *Bruno*, bishop of *Augsburgh*, to whom at the same time he trusted the government of the empire. During the minority of *Henry IV.* the empress *Agnes* his mother was regent of the empire, and conducted herself chiefly by the councils of *Henry* bishop of *Augsburgh*. After *Henry* was taken from under the guardianship of his mother, it was regulated that each bishop, in whose diocese the young king should be, should provide for the publick good, and judge the affairs that were brought before the court of the prince. But during the troubles which arose under the reign of *Henry IV.* the power of the counts palatine of the *Rhine* increased. *Henry IV.* when going upon his expedition into *Italy*, established *Henry du Luc*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, as vicar of the empire. However, *Henry V.* trusted the government of the empire to his brothers-in-law *Conrad*, duke of *Suabia*, and *Frederic*, duke of *Franconia*.

THE emperors of the house of *Suabia* likewise established vicars according to their pleasure. *Frederic I.* when he went to be crowned at *Rome*, named *Uladislaus*, king of *Bohemia*, as vicar of the empire. *Frederic II.* when he was about to undertake the same journey, left *Engelbert*, archbishop of *Cologne*, as provisor of the empire; the same emperor afterwards established *Henry Raspon*, procurator or regent of *Germany*. And during the interregnum, when the emperor *Richard* returned into *England*, *Werner*, archbishop of *Mainz*, *Philip* of *Falkenstein*, and *Philip* of *Hohenfels*, were each declared vicars in the different provinces that were assigned them.

NEVERTHELESS, it may be observed, that under these same emperors of the house of *Suabia*, that the authority and power of the counts palatine gradually encreased. Under  
the

the reign of the emperor *Henry IV.* the credit of the count palatine was very considerable at the court ; and by the *German* law, the count palatine of the *Rhine* enjoys not only during the absence of the emperor, but likewise during a vacancy of the empire, the right of the ban, beyond the *Rhine*, till within a mile of the city of *Metz*, and as far as the *Ocean*, as well as in *Flanders*. However, this right of the ban has not been granted to him by the emperors. There is likewise an ancient ordonnance, in which the office of count palatine is mentioned, it bears that the count palatine is always by right the representative or lieutenant of the kingdom. Lastly, how great the power of the counts palatine was, may be understood from this, that in the election of *Rodolphus* of *Habsburgh*, and in that of *Henry VII.* the other electors promised to acknowledge him as emperor whom he should name.

ALTHO', the power of the counts palatine had, as it were, secured to them the vicariate of the empire ; nevertheless, the emperors still reserved to themselves the right of establishing vicars. *Henry VII.* at the diet of *Spire*, trusted the government of the empire to his son *John*, king of *Bohemia*. The emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* granted to *Theodoric*, count of *Cleves*, the vicariate of *Westphalia* between the *Rhine* and the *Wefer*. The same emperor established *Otho* of *Austria* vicar of the empire ; and in 1338, at the diet of *Frankfort*, he created *Edward*, king of *England*, vicar-general through all *Germany*. *Charles IV.* established *Rodolphus II.* count palatine, and his brother-in-law, as vicar through all *Germany*, and likewise granted the same title to *Rupert the Old* ; and although by the Golden Bull he ordained, that the elector palatine and the elector of *Saxony* should be vicars of the empire at the death of the emperor, yet some years after, he named his brother *Wenceslaus*, duke of *Luxemburgh*, and *Prenislaus*, duke of *Teschén*, vicars of the empire. At last, in the year 1375, he granted the vicariate of the empire to the palatine by a particular decree. Nevertheless, the emperor *Wenceslaus* established new vicars according to his fancy. But as he abused his power, the electors, while he was prisoner, named *Rupert* count palatine, as vicar of the empire ; at the same time, they determined that the right of choosing such a vicar did not belong to the emperor, but to the electors of the empire.

In the year 1401, the emperor *Rupert* established his son *Lewis the Bearded*, vicar of the empire, with this clause, That hitherto it had been observed, and the electors palatine had the right, as they have still, of exercising the vicariate of  
the

the empire, in *Germany*, *France*, and the kingdom of *Arles*; during the absence of the emperor or king of the *Romans*, when they went into *Italy*. Nevertheless, the emperor *Sigismund* gave *Frederic*, burgrave of *Nuremburg*, the title of vicar, with full power in the empire; and when he carried his arms into *Bohemia*, he established *Conrad III.* archbishop of *Mentz*, vicar of the empire. However, *Lewis* count palatine having protested against this disposition, the archbishop of *Mentz* renounced the vicariate in presence of *Otho*, archbishop of *Triers*, and *Theodoric*, archbishop of *Cologne*, who had been chosen as arbiters in this affair. When the same emperor went to be crowned at *Rome*, he left *Lewis* count palatine as vicar of the empire, who nevertheless took only the title of vicar, in the countries which follow the law of *Franconia*: Under the reign of the same emperor, it was proposed to establish four vicars for the support of the public peace, to each of which vicars a standard of the empire should be given; but this scheme never took place. When *Frederic III.* went into *Italy* to his coronation, *Frederic* count palatine, in virtue of the right of his palatinate, exercised the vicariate, and was confirmed in that exercise by the electors. And when it was deliberated in the diet of *Worms* \*, about • 1493. establishing a regency in the empire, to administrate the government during the absence of the emperor *Maximilian I.* granted to *Philip* count palatine, that he, his heirs and successors, should enjoy the vicariate in the empire without any opposition. However, at the diet of *Constance* \*, the emperor • 1507. *Maximilian I.* granted to *Frederic the Wise*, elector of *Saxony*, the right of exercising the general vicariate, when the emperor should be absent; however, he gave him as assistants, some princes of the empire. But the elector palatine *Philip*, who was then proscribed, protested against this concession. The same emperor, eight years afterwards, established the king of *Hungary* his vicar-general, and that of the empire. But afterwards the vicariate was confirmed to the counts palatine of the *Rhine*, by several privileges of *Charles V.* *Rodolphus II.* and *Maximilian II.*

THE time is not agreed upon when the elector of *Saxony* began to enjoy the vicariate. Some authors affirm, that the dukes of *Saxony* were from the beginning vicars of the empire; they found their affirmation on this, that the *Germans* have always been divided into *Franks* and *Saxons*, and likewise, that *Herman Billung*, duke of *Saxony*, was settled *provisor* of the kingdom of *Germany* by the emperor *Otho I.* But although *Charles IV.* seemed to have regard to that distinction in the *Golden Bull*, yet it cannot be from thence

concluded, that the first dukes of *Saxony* enjoyed the vicariate, since under the *French* emperors, and under those of the house of *Suabia*, there was no law that established vicars in the empire. It is more probable, that the dukes of *Saxony* have arrived at the dignity of vicars by means of the power and authority of the office of arch-marshal, which in the twelfth century was united to their dutchy. In effect, the marshal of the empire had the direction of the troops, and his office gave him a great power, especially in the absence of the emperor. From whence it happened, that while the count palatine regulated the public and civil affairs, the direction of the troops by degrees procured to the marshal the right of vicar in the empire. However, there was this difference between the duke of *Saxony* and the elector palatine, that the last was vicar in virtue of very ancient titles, whereas the duke of *Saxony* enjoyed it only by concession.

THE elector of *Saxony* then exercises this right of vicar as arch-marshal of the empire, according as it is expressed in the *German* law. But this prerogative is not attached to the dutchy of *Saxony*, or else the other dukes of the empire might pretend to the same right; nor is it attached to the right of palatinate of *Saxony*; for anciently the title of palatine was given to counts, and at the time when the *German* law was committed to writing, the landgraves of *Thuringen* enjoyed the same right. By degrees the office of arch-marshal acquired to the electors of *Saxony* the privilege of vicar, till *Charles IV.* confirmed it to them by the *Golden Bull*.

BUT although by the *Golden Bull* the vicariate has been granted to the elector palatine and that of *Saxony*, at least during the vacancy of the empire, nevertheless the emperors even since that time, have named other vicars, when they have undertaken any journey out of the empire. In this case, the electors palatine and of *Saxony* took precautions to secure their vicariate, and procured a writing, bearing that this disposition should not in any manner prejudice their right; and even when *Maximilian* went for *Italy*, and established *Frederic III.* called *the Wise*, as his lieutenant, and that of the empire, he gave a writing to the two electors, in which he declared, that he did not pretend in any manner to prejudice them in the vicariate, which still more confirmed their right. Lastly, *Charles V.* did the same when he went into *Spain*, and at the time of his expedition into *Africa*.

ANCIENTLY, after the death of the emperor, the elector palatine, enjoyed alone the vicariate of the empire; however, he exercised it very rarely, because the greatest part of the

the emperors took care to make their sons be acknowledged as their successors. The original of their right seems to be owing to this, that sometimes the counts palatine were charged with carrying the marks of honour to the new emperor, as count *Eberhard*, who carried them to *Henry the Fowler*; and count *Henry*, who presented them to *Frederic II.* This right might likewise proceed from this, that the count palatine was the only one beside the archbishop of *Mentz*, who could convoke to the election under the pain of the ban. However, it is thought that the first confirmation of this right was only given by *Rodolphus of Habsburgh*; for although pope *Clement V.* claimed this vicariate by a particular constitution which he published, the diet of *Frankfort*, and the emperor *Lewis of Bavaria* vigorously opposed this encroachment. And when *John XXII.* claimed the same right, *Charles IV.* opposed him by the Golden Bull. The same emperor confirmed the vicariate to the elector palatine and the elector of *Saxony*. *Maximilian I.* did the same, and *Charles V.* approved the concessions of those two emperors. *Charles IV.* ordained by the Golden Bull, that as oft as the Holy Empire should become vacant, the count palatine of the *Rhine*, arch-steward, shall be *provisor* or vicar of the empire in the division of the *Rhine* and of *Suabia*, and in the countries which follow the law of *Franconia*, upon account of the principality and the privilege of the county palatine; and the elector of *Saxony*, arch-marshal of the empire, shall be *provisor* in the countries which follow the *Saxon* law.

By this division, *Charles IV.* seemed to have in view the ancient division of the people of *Germany* into *Franks* and *Saxons*, because the law of *Franconia*, and the *Saxon* law, were the laws most followed in *Germany*. In consequence of this division, the rights of the vicariate of the count palatine extend over all where the law of *Franconia* was formerly received; and according to the division at present used in *Germany*, they extend over the seven circles of *Austria*, *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, the *Upper Rhine*, the *Lower Rhine*, and *Burgundy*. But the countries of *Austria*, *Bavaria*, and *Burgundy*, have withdrawn themselves from the vicariate of the count palatine; the two first under pretence that they never followed the law of *Franconia*, and the last, pleading the transaction of *Augsburgh*\*; by which transaction they affirm, the right of vicariate over *Burgundy* was granted to the king of *Spain*, although in reality the terms of that transaction rather imply, that the lands of *Burgundy* should be under his protection, keeping, and defence, as the other princes and states of the empire. Besides, some time after,

\* 1548.

*Charles V.* demanded the vicariate of the *Low Countries* for his son *Philip*, without being able to obtain it.

THE vicariate of *Saxony* comprehends the circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, and that of *Westphalia*; so that it extends over all *Saxony*, and over the *Marche*, *Westphalia*, *East-Friseland*, *Thuringen*, *Misnia*, *Pomerania*, *Holstein*, *Bohemia*, *Lusace*, and *Moravia*. The vicariate of the elector of *Saxony* is not at present disputed by any one; but the elector of *Bavaria* not a long time ago claimed both the electorate and vicariate of the count palatine. The *Bavarian* pretended that the rights of the electorate belonged anciently to the house of *Bavaria*, and by the translation of the palatine electorate into his house, these rights acquired a new force; and as the vicariate was united to the electorate, the electors of *Bavaria* could not be invested with the one, without being invested with the other. The palatine pleaded, that the vicariate was not united to the electorate, but to the county palatine, which had not been transferred to the house of *Bavaria*, and that he having been re-established in that country by the treaty of *Westphalia*, the investiture given to the duke of *Bavaria* was annulled by this same peace. During the whole interregnum, this difference was often debated with much eagerness, and occasioned great disturbance in the electoral college; however, nothing was then decided, unless that the elector of *Saxony* and the imperial chamber acknowledge the vicariate of the elector of *Bavaria*. In the year 1670, *William Egon* of *Furstenberg*, proposed a certain project of union, and *Maximilian Henry*, archbishop of *Cologne*, having been chosen for mediator with *Philip William*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, it was proposed to create a third vicariate; but this not succeeding, it was proposed a-new to render the vicariate common betwixt the two electors, which likewise did not succeed, so that the question is still undecided.

THE rights of the vicars of the empire are fixed by the *Golden Bull*; they are to be provisors of the empire, with power to administer justice, to present to ecclesiastical benefices, to order the collection of the revenue and public money, to give the investiture of fiefs, and to receive the oaths of fidelity for, and in the name of the empress. However, they have appropriated to themselves several other rights, in virtue of the privileges which they have obtained, or by means of the customs which have been introduced. But what is not granted to the emperor, cannot be permitted to the vicars; in particular, they are prohibited from alienating or mortgaging the possessions of the empire, two things, which



which at the time of the Golden Bull, were not forbid to the emperors, by any perpetual law.

THE first right that belongs to them is the exercise of justice. As soon as the emperor is dead, the aulic council is shut up, and the vicars, each in their district, cause an edict to be published, by which they give notice, that they will administer justice to every one. Each vicar then informs a council in his court, which is called the regency of the vicariate, and which exercises the rights of the aulic council, even in cases which concern royal fiefs. But the imperial chamber, which equally depends upon the states of the empire, and whose jurisdiction extends over all *Germany*, is continued under the name of the two vicars. All dispatches which come from it are sealed with their seal, and signed by the president of the chancery, and the first secretary. The chamber of *Rotweil*, and the rest in *Franconia*, act only under the authority of the palatine, under his name and seal, because their jurisdiction does not extend over the lands of this vicariate. The right of proroguing the diets with the consent of the electors, and that of publishing decrees, ought likewise to be added to the rights of the vicars.

By the second right, which consists in presenting to ecclesiastic benefices, is ordinarily understood the right of first prayers, which the vicars of the empire may exercise, in case any benefice become vacant during the interregnum. However, as this right of first prayers has always been reserved to the emperor, and the exercise of it claimed by *John George*, elector of *Saxony*, during his vicariate\*, remained without effect by the opposition that it met with from the new emperor; and besides, as it is opposed by the treaty of *Osnaburgh*, ordains the first prayers to be regulated according to the custom of the year 1624. Some affirm, that by this right of first prayers, is meant only the right of patronage, which belongs to the emperor over the prebends of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, *Spire*, *Bamberg*, *Straßburgh*, and *Rome*. Nevertheless, in the last interregnum, as well as in others, the vicars of the empire have enjoyed the right of first prayers, which they have addressed to the chapters within the bounds of their vicariate; but indeed this right of first prayers only takes place over the prebendaries, which become vacant during the interregnum.

THE third right of the vicars of the empire, authorizes them to collect the revenue and publick money of the empire. As it is a public collection, it follows, that it must not be turned to their own advantage, but undertake it gra-

tuitously for the good of the empire, for the advantage of which they may employ this money, but are still bound to give an account of it to the new emperor.

THE fourth right, which is the power of giving the investiture of the fiefs of the empire, and to receive the oaths of fidelity, for, and in the name of the empire, suffers an exception. The fiefs of the princes, counts, and barons of the empire, are exempted from their jurisdiction of the vicars, and the investiture of these belongs only to the emperor, or king of the *Romans*.

BESIDES other rights are attributed to the vicars of the empire, of which no mention is made in the Golden Bull. For instance, 'tis said they may create nobles, legitimate bastards, grant privileges, &c. The rights are supported by particular privileges, such as those of the emperor *Rupert* granted to *Louis*, elector palatine, or upon long established customs. The power of the vicar expires upon the return of the emperor to the empire, or when a new emperor is elected. However, the presence of the new elected is requisite; for, from the death of *Maximilian I.* to the arrival of *Charles V.* the vicars continued to exercise their rights in the empire, and this is likewise confirmed by the last capitulation, which ordains, that the powers of the vicars shall continue till the emperor has signed the capitulation, against which clause, however, the other states of the empire protested. When the emperor is present, the vicars resign the empire into his hands, and give him the register of the acts which have been made during the interregnum; and the emperor is bound to approve and ratify all that they have done. The capitulation of *Charles V.* contains the ratification of what passed during the vicariate; this ratification is omitted in the capitulations of the emperors *Leopold* and *Joseph*, but it has been inserted in that of *Charles VI.*

THE vicars of the *Roman* empire, and the kingdom of *Italy*, were distinguished from the vicars whom we have mentioned. Some, even contrary to the truth of history, have attributed to the popes the right of vicariate; but it appears, that the counts of the palace of *Latran*, who were charged with defending the rights of the emperor, were the ordinary vicars of the *Roman* empire, for sometimes extraordinary vicars were established. In the time of the emperor, *Lewis of Bavaria*, the principal senators of *Rome* were called vicars, and it was them who crowned that prince. If *Benedict XII.* after having excommunicated *Louis of Bavaria*, took the title of vicar of the *Roman* empire, the decree of the diet of *Frankfort* fully derogated from that pretended right,

right. In the last interregnum, the vicars of *Germany* regulated also the affairs of *Italy*.

SEVERAL emperors established other particular vicars. *Otho III.* established *Hugh*, marquis of *Tuscany*, vicar of *Italy*: *Thomas*, count of *Savoy*, called himself the vicar of *Frederic II.* in the *Romagna*. The same emperor left in the *Marche of Italy*, count *Gevehard*, of *Saxony*, and count *Theatin*, to take care of the affairs of the empire in that province, and named the bishop of *Turin* as his vicar. In the time of *Rodolphus of Habsburg*, *Rodolphus Hohence* and *Pinzival Flise*, were created vicars of *Italy*, and *John d'Axenes*, vicar in *Tuscany*. *Adolphus of Nassau* sent *John de Gabilon* into *Tuscany*, with the commission of vicar. *Henry VII.* established vicars at *Turin*, at *Ast*, and *Padua*. *Louis of Bavaria* granted the vicariate of the city and county of *Pistoys* to *Castruccio*, and established *Otho*, of *Austria*, vicar at *Padua*. In a writing of the emperor *Sigismund*, *Burnor de Seala* is called vicar-general of *Verona*. Under the reign of *Rupert*, *Nicholas*, marquis of *Est*, entitled himself vicar for the holy *Roman* empire in the city and territory of *Modena*; and at the same time, *Francis de Carra* was vicar of the empire at *Padua*.

THE vicariate of *Milan* still continues at this day. *Matthew*, viscount of *Milan*, was established vicar of the emperor through all *Lombardy*, by *Adolphus of Nassau*; and all the people of that country were enjoined to obey him as proxy of the empire, an office confirmed by the emperors *Albert* and *Charles IV.* In the year 1373, *Charles IV.* revoked the office of vicar of *Savoy*; but in 1422, *Lewis*, duke of *Savoy*, obtained of the emperor *Sigismund*, the vicariate of the empire over all the cities, fortresses, castles, towns, dominions, and territories, which he possessed in *Piedmont*. And although in the act then made, there was no mention made of his successors, this prince, however, assumed the title of perpetual vicar of the holy *Roman* empire. *Maximilian I.* granted to *Philibert the Fine*, duke of *Savoy*, the vicariate over the bishoprick of *Lyons* and its neighbourhood; and by a privilege of *Ferdinand II.* this vicariate was extended over the other territories of *Savoy*, especially over those which, by the peace of *Ratisbon*\*, have been dismembered from the marquisate of *Montferrat*, and ceded to the house of *Savoy*. In the last century, *Charles III.* duke of *Mantua*, having taken the party of the emperor and king of *Spain*, *Ferdinand III.* gave him the title of vicar of the empire. But the duke of *Savoy* having protested against this disposition, and at the time of the election of the new emperor, having demanded

that this vicariate of *Mantua* might be suppressed, he obtained by the capitulation what he desired. The office of vicars of *Italy* consisted in representing the emperor, as well during his life as after his death; in receiving the homages of vassals, in deciding differences, and in exercising several other rights of this nature. Besides, all rights of superiority were ceded to them within the bounds of their vicariate; however, they could not exercise them as lieutenants and delegates.

THE kingdom of *Arles* has also had its vicars. Among others, mention is made of two, *Charles*, dauphin de *Vennois*, who was established vicar during his life, and the count of *Savoy*. *Charles IV.* established *Amadeus*, count of *Savoy*, vicar of the empire through all the extent of his country; but only during the good pleasure of the emperor. *Sigismund* confirmed to *Amadeus VIII.* all the rights which his predecessors had granted him. *Maximilian I.* and *Charles V.* confirmed the same vicariate; adding, that the dukes of *Savoy* ought to be true vicars of the empire, especially in the cities and dioceses of *Lyons*, *Macon*, and *Grenoble*, as far as they are subject to the empire, and under the jurisdiction of the duchy of *Savoy*; so that all the vassals of the empire should pay the homages for their fiefs in the name of the empire, and carry their appeals to the tribunal of the said duke. This same vicariate was afterwards extended to the other territories of *Savoy* by the emperor *Charles V.* *Ferdinand I.* and *Rodolphus II.* which was confirmed by the emperors *Matthias* and *Ferdinand II.* *Charles*, duke of *Burgundy*, demanded likewise to be established vicar of the empire in the territories of *Burgundy*, and offered to restore to the empire all the lands which formerly were under its dominion; but *Frederic III.* refused his demand, under the pretence that it could not be granted without the consent of the electors. Lastly, we shall observe, that by the capitulation of *Joseph*, king of the *Romans*, the guardianship of that prince was trusted to the vicars of the empire till he arrived at the age of eighteen years. Whereas, formerly, the nearest relations were chosen for guardians to the emperors and kings of the *Romans*, during their minority.

# THE HISTORY OF THE IMPERIAL CITIES.

**S**OME distinguish the cities of the empire into Free Cities, Mixt, and Municipal. They call those Free Cities which hold immediately of the empire, and which have a seat and voice in the diets; those are called Mixt Cities which have put themselves under the protection of some prince, and have neither seat nor voice in the diets, but are exempt from the jurisdiction of their protectors, to whom, nevertheless, they pay a quit-rent, and promise fidelity: lastly, the Municipal Cities are those which are entirely subject to the states.

If antiquity be searched, it will be granted that there has been Mixt Cities, as well as Imperial and Municipal Cities. The cities of *Erford*, *Brunswick*, and *Magdeburgh*, are examples of this; they did not hold immediately of the empire, and yet were not subject to any particular state. But at present the cities are only either Imperial, when they are exempt from the jurisdiction of the states, and hold of the empire; or Municipal, when they depend upon some particular state. It is thus that the cities of *Germany*, are distinguished in the records of the empire.

SOME of the Municipal towns enjoy several privileges, which they have obtained from their lords by money, or which they have preserved since the alliance of the Hans towns; of which number are the cities of *Stralsund*, *Wismar*, *Brunswick*, *Rostock*, *Hildesheim*, *Osnaburgh*, &c. altho' they enjoy many immunities.

LIKEWISE those ought not to be called Mixt Cities, which, although holding immediately of the empire, upon account of criminal jurisdiction, or some duties, yet depend upon a neighbouring prince, by virtue of a particular convention, or by the title of advocation, or imperial prefecture. As they are entirely immediate, and have a seat and voice in the diets, they are purely Imperial cities. In effect, we see even principalities and counties, which, although other states exercise

exercise several rights in them, yet are acknowledged as states purely immediate. *Cologn* and *Wetzlar*, consequently, are imperial cities; although the criminal jurisdiction be exercised in the first by the elector of *Cologn*, and in the second by the landgrave of *Darmstadt*.

THERE are cities appointed for the general affairs of the empire; for example, *Frankfort* upon the *Main* is appointed for the election of the emperor; *Aix la Chapelle* for the coronation; and *Nuremberg* for the first diet which the new emperor holds: they have a power of reversion granted to them, in case these solemn acts are done in other cities. There are also cities that have the right of convocation, that is, to demand an assembly as oft as necessity requires it; these are, *Straßburgh*, *Nuremberg*, *Frankfort*, and *Ulm*; but the first does not depend at present upon the empire. Lastly, the city of *Rutlingen*, by a privilege of the emperor *Maximilian*, enjoys the right of a general sanctuary of the empire.

THE interest of all the imperial cities, which are divided as has been seen, into those of the bench of the *Rhine*, and those of the bench of *Suabia*, consists in the peaceable enjoyment of their franchises, rights, immunities, privileges, and especially of their immediateness. They find it so much the more easy to maintain this, as the emperor has his own interest in preserving and protecting them against those who would trouble them. The emperor, in truth, considers these cities as states which support his authority, and which counterbalance that of the electors and other princes; besides, it is these cities alone which pay into the coffers of the empire the greatest part of the *Roman* months, and of the tax of the chamber of *Spire*. It is upon this account also, that this chamber follows, and seconds, upon all occasions, the intentions of the emperor, to concur with him in their protection. They themselves regulate the form of their own government. They make themselves laws, customs, and statutes, coin money, with their arms; have a right to lay upon themselves what is to supply their publick wants, and to regulate the taxes and contributions. In short, they do within themselves, and in their territories, whatever the princes of the empire can do within the extent of their states. To speak properly, they are aristocratical republics, mixt with democracy; the principal citizens compose the senate, whose authority is moderated by the tribes. Yet the city of *Nuremberg* must be excepted, which ought to be considered as a pure aristocracy. All authority there is in the hands of a certain number of patrician families who form the senate.

\* *The cities of the Bench of the Rhine.*

THE city of *Cologne* is the first and greatest of this bench, *Cologn*. as also the most constant in the *Roman* religion, having inviolably preserved the ancient doctrine of the church; here is likewise the most famous university of *Germany*.

The magistrates, at the expence of the citizens, support the fortifications and garrison; and as the particular interest of this city depends upon the continual vent which they have of commodities going up and down the *Rhine* to *Germany* and *Holland*, its principal correspondence towards the head of the *Rhine* is with the cities of *Nuremberg*, *Straßburgh*, and *Frankfort*; as that which it hath towards the mouth, is with the *United Provinces* and *Low Countries*. In the time of the *Romans*, it was called *Colonia Ubiorum*, a colony of the *Ubii*; because it was inhabited by a people called *Ubii*, who had been brought on the side of the *Rhine*, there to inhabit after having taken the oath of fidelity. It was after that called *Colonia Agrippina*, whether upon account of *Agrippa*, the great and wise captain, who had commanded the *Roman* armies towards the *Rhine*, and who was son-in-law to the emperor *Augustus*, or upon account of *Agrippina*, daughter of *Germanicus*, and mother of *Nero*, who was born in this city.

THE emperor *Otho III.* made *Cologn* an imperial city, and granted it in the year 993, at the diet of *Worms*, all the privileges which it enjoys (Z). Nevertheless; we know that *Conrad* of *Henstat*, *Engelberg* of *Valckemburg*, *Sigfrid* of *Westerburgh*, and many other archbishops have contested about its liberty, till the year 1297. But then, under the reign of the emperor *Adolphus*, the inhabitants presumed to march a body of troops against their archbishop, as far as *Woringen*, in the country of *Brabant*, there having offered him battle, and thrown the keys of their city upon the field, as the reward of the victory; they gained it, and with it their keys and

(Z) These privileges consist in this, that there is no appeal from the decisions of its magistrates, unless the action be for a sum above 3000 florins of the *Rhine*; that there is no appeal from their sentence likewise, for penalties or corporal punishments; in an entire exemption from the paying of toll by its inhabitants, those of *Doppart*, *Werden*, and *Doußburg*; and that no fortress, or redoubt, shall be built between *Rheindorff* and *Sudendorf*, upon the two banks of the *Rhine*.

their

their liberty. They celebrate the memory of this every year with a great deal of ceremony.

THE government of this city is in the hands of tribes, at the head of each of which are two tribunes; the office of consul is the chief: there are six of them, two of which are consuls regent every year. There are also particular magistrates for the civil and criminal administration. All these magistrates are changed every year. But the two syndics and two secretaries of state are during life. The militia is divided into eight battalions, which are composed each of eight companies.

Aix la  
Chapelle.

*AIX LA CHAPELLE* was so called upon account of the devotions which the emperor *Charlemain* commonly paid at the solemn feasts in the great church which he had caused to be built, and endowed to the honour of the holy virgin, in which he kept a chapel, as the emperors his successors have practised, and still practise in the places where they have their residence. We have said already that in *Latin* it was called *Aquisgranum*, upon the account of very healthful hot baths, which one *Granus* had found there, and caused to be fitted up. It has been the most magnificent of all the imperial cities; it has been called also the Royal City, because, perhaps, the Golden Bull ordains, that the emperor shall there receive the first crown. There is still preserved *Charlemain's* sword, with the sword-belt, and the book of the gospel in gold letters, which usually serve for the consecration of the emperors, as they served in the year 1658, at *Frankfort* for that of *Leopold*, and at *Augsburgh* for the consecration of *Joseph*, in 1690. The government is in the hands of the great and little senate; the first is composed of 120 persons; it judges criminal affairs, and the different interests of particular persons. The two consuls regent are at the head of that council, and collect the votes. The little senate has forty-one members; the affairs of the police, and those that concern trades and commerce are carried before it; it is also charged with the administration of the publick revenues. The duke of *Brabant* has the right of protection of the city. The duke of *Fuliers* is named burgomaster, or perpetual mayor of the burghers, and the trades name every year to the offices of consuls, senators, sheriffs, and other magistrates. The inhabitants profess some the Catholic religion, and others the Protestant, according to the treaty of the peace of *Westphalia*.

*Straßburg*. *STRASBURGH*, that is, Town of the Street, through which is the passage from *France* into *Germany*; inasmuch, as *Attila*, after having ruined the city, made a high road of it.



it. It hath been always called in Latin, *Argento ratum*, and some have also called it in German, *Silberthal*, that is, Money-Town, because the *Romans* kept their publick exchequer of the tribute there. It is the richest and most regular fortified city of *Germany*. The river *Ill*, which passes through the middle of it, divides it into two parts, which have a communication with one another by several bridges. The city also maintains a wooden bridge of piles over the *Rhine*, which brings in a great revenue for the toll, and it has a very fine magazine. As to religion, the magistrates and rectors of the university, all profess the confession of *Augsburgh*, and were formerly in possession of the cathedral church, and of all the other churches; so as that the *Catholicks* had only a small church of the commandery of *St. Anthony*, where they had the exercise of their religion. But things are altered there with regard to this, since the Most Christian king has made good his pretensions to that city, and likewise to the other states, which, like it, depend upon the *Lower Alsace*. He made himself master of it the first of *October*, 1682, by the lucky and prudent negotiation of the marquis de *Louvois*: it has been since yielded to him by the truce of 1683, and by the treaty of *Ryswick*.

**LUBECK (A)**, an imperial city, was the antient abode of *Lubeck*, the *Slavonians* and *Henetes*, and at present the chief of the hans towns, is situated in *Lower Saxony*, in *Wagria*, between the rivers *Trave*, *Sleeknis*, and *Wacknis*. This place having been seized sometimes by the duke of *Saxony*, sometimes by the king of *Denmark*, was, at last, restored to its liberty by the authority of the emperor *Frederick II.* after the *Danes* had been expelled; and thus the city was declared free and imperial in the year 1209; since then it has become elegant and rich, although it has suffered greatly by fires, and from the furious attacks of those that wanted to seize upon its liberty; and, for the better preservation of this, it keeps up its fortifications with great care. Its principal traffick is with the cities of the *Baltick-Sea*, and with the northern

(A) This city was built at the entry of the *Limbric Chersonesus* by *Adolphus*, count of *Holstein*, in the time of the emperor *Conrad III.* *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, having taken it shortly after, founded a bishoprick there, according to an inscription which is read upon the front of the castle of *Eulin*, where that bishop resided. After the death of this duke, *Lubeck* returned to the count, then fell to *Canute*, king of *Denmark*. The *Danes* after that being expelled, it became an imperial city under *Frederick II.* It is governed aristocratically, and *Hamburgh* by a meer democracy.

coun-

countries, by the means of the port which it has at the mouth of the *Trave*, commanded by a fort called *Travemunde*. The Catholics have neither a church, nor the publick exercise of their religion there. All the inhabitants of the towns and villages around follow the confession of *Augsburg*, as do also the bishop and canons of *Lubeck*. Its government is, in some manner, aristocratical; for only the principal families have the privilege of a seat in the senate; it is composed of twenty-two members; namely, four burgomasters, two syndics, and sixteen counsellors, each of which has his distinct department. Ecclesiastical affairs are determined by the consistory, which is composed of a syndick, who presides, of a superintendant, five ministers, and four counsellors. The appeal from their decisions is carried before the senate. This city manages its commerce, and its interests, so prudently with the kings of the north, and the houses of *Brunswick* and *Holstein*, that it makes itself respected by the other princes and neighbouring states, as well as by the emperor. Its principal privileges are, the having the liberty to present alternately, with the circle of *High* and *Low Saxony*, an assessor for the imperial chamber, and to judge in the last resort as far as 500 florins.

**Worms.**

**WORMS** is a pretty considerable city, of note, upon account of its antiquity, and situated on this side the *Rhine*. In the time of the *Romans*, it was known under the name of *Borbetomagus*. It was almost entirely ruined in the war of 1688. And the losses which it suffered were estimated at almost nine millions. The Catholics there are in possession of the cathedral churches, with some monasteries; but the magistrates, and the most of the citizens, are of the confession of *Augsburgh*. The senate of this city is composed of twenty-five members, thirteen of whom are perpetual. There is an appeal from their judgments to the council of the bishop; but that prelate, by an agreement with the city, must send the appeals to be laid before the imperial chamber. The elector-palatine has the right of protection of this city, which nevertheless pays homage to its bishop.

**Spire.**

**SPIRE** is a pretty large city, situated likewise on this side the *Rhine*. It is principally noted for the imperial chamber, which assembled there (B). The Catholics, as at *Worms*, are in possession of the cathedral church, with some monasteries; and the magistrates, as well as the most of the citizens, are of the confession of *Augsburg*. The government

(B) Since the war of 1688, the imperial chamber has been transferred to *Wetzlar*, as we before mentioned.

is in the hands of tribes. The bishop appoints the pretor, together with the officers of the mint and customs. The city even swears allegiance to him, yet, upon condition that he shall make no attempt upon their privileges and liberties; on his side the prelate is bound, before he makes his entry, to shew to the magistrates his bulls from *Rome*, and the emperor's patents of investiture in the original. The city had obtained from the emperor *Charles IV.* the privilege of hindering any castle, or fort, from being built within the distance of three leagues of its walls; and this privilege was confirmed to it by the emperor *Sigismund*. Yet *Philip Christoph*, elector of *Triers*, and bishop of *Spire*, caused build the fort of *Philipsburg*, without meeting with any opposition from the emperor or empire. It preserves, among other privileges, that of freedom in its commerce with *Mentz* and *Cologne*. This city, and that of *Worms*, remain in peace, or at least a neutrality, in case of war, that they may enjoy their liberties and privileges.

**FRANKFORT** is an elegant and large city (C), and well Frankfort, fortified, which the river *Main* divides it into two. The greatest retain the name of *Frankfort*, where the Golden Bull assigns the electors their place of assembling, when there is to be an election of the emperor, as was observed in the election of the emperor *Leopold* (D). Here are held two celebrated free fairs for five days, in spring, and in autumn. The other part of the city is called *Saxenhausen*, serving as a citadel for the other. They have a communication by a stone bridge over the *Main*. The government is in the hands of two senates, the first judges of important affairs; the second of the police, and of the differences which arise in commerce. The people, and artificers, are at this day excluded from these two councils. The troubles of 1616, gave occasion to the magistrates to revoke, under the imperial authority, all the rights and privileges of the tribes. The magistrates and citizens are protestants (E), and are in possession of the churches; except those of *St. Bartholomew*, of *Our Lady*, or *Lifraberg*, of *St. Leonard*, of the *Carmelites*, *Dominicans*, and *Nuns Hospitallers* of the order of *St. Anthony*,

(C) It was antiently called *Teutoburgin*, and *Hellonopolis*, which signifies, The passage of the *Franks*; because it served them for a retreat when they returned from the *Gauls*.

(D) In the city of *Frankfort*, over the gate of *Saxenhausen*,

there is an inscription in honour of the emperor *Leopold*, in which he is called *Trismegistos*, that is, Thrice most mighty.

(E) All the citizens are not Protestants: those of the confession of *Augsburg* are only the greatest number.

and

and of the *Teutonic Order*, in *Saxenhausen*, where the Catholics have their exercise. The *Calvinists* have no publick exercise of their religion there.

**Wetzlar.** *WETZLAR*, a protestant city in *Weteravia*, is situated at the confluence of the rivers *Dile* and *Lohn*. The senate is composed of twenty-four members, from which every year are chosen two burgomasters who govern the states. The provostship of the city (F) belongs to the landgrave of *Darmstadt*, and therefore he intrusts it to a mayor, who is always one of his creatures, and, in his name, presides over the justice of the place: since the war of 1688, the imperial chamber has been transferred to this place from *Spire*.

**Gelenhausen.** *GELENHAUSEN*, situated in *Weteravia*, is also a protestant city. The elector palatine, and the counts of *Hanau*, pretend to the superiority of it, having acquired the rights for 8000 florins, from *Gunter*, count of *Schwartzenburgh*; to whom the emperor, *Charles IV.* had mortgaged that city in 1349; the process is still depending between the parties before the imperial chamber (G).

**Hague-nau.** *HAGUENAU* is the first of the cities of *Alsace* depending upon the prefecture, whose tribunal was established in the same city. After the treaty of *Munster*, the king of *France*, in imitation of the landgraves of *Alsace*, his predecessors, had at first preserved this provincial council, in which his great baillie, or lieutenant presided; but as it was entirely ruined in the late war, the Most Christian King has transferred this council to *Brisac*. This city then, as well as the other nine, acknowledged the king for protector, upon the same conditions that they acknowledged the emperor, and the princes of *Austria*, in that quality, without derogating from their immediateness, by virtue of which, these ten cities pretended to remain free states of the empire. But they have submitted to the right of sovereignty, with which the king of *France* is invested, and have renounced this immediateness.

THE other nine cities are, *Colmas*, *Schlestat*, *Weissburgh*, *Landau*, *Oberhenheim*, *Kaiserberg*, *Munster*, in the valley of *St. Gregory*, *Rocheim*, and *Turchein*.

**Dortmond.** *DORTMOND* has always been an imperial city (in *Westphalia*) in the county of *Marck*; but the elector of *Brandenburg*, to whom the county belongs, at this day pretends to

(F) This dignity was given by the emperor to the house of *Nassau*, who have yielded it since to the house of *Heffe*. (G) It enjoys almost the same privileges as the city *Friedbourg*.

the

the sovereignty over it, as over a municipal town depending upon his county (H).

**FRIEDBERG**, in *Wetteravia*, is still a free state, like Fried- other imperial cities, and depends immediately upon the berg- empire (I.)

*The imperial cities of the bench of Suabia.*

**RATISBON** is called by the Germans *Regens- Ratisbon.* *burgh*, from the river *Regens*, which runs under a fine stone bridge, and throws itself into the *Danube* below the city, as the rivers *Luber* and *Nab* mix with it above the city. The *French* call it *Ratisbon* in imitation of the *Latins*; it hath formerly been subject to the kings of *Bavaria*, who made it the place of their residence; but it was declared free by the emperor *Frederic I.* which does not hinder the dukes of *Bavaria* from dividing the toll with the citizens, according to an agreement between them. These princes have also the criminal jurisdiction, for which the magistrates of the city pay them homage. It is the first city of the bench of *Suabia*, and contains at present within its walls five different free states of the empire; namely, the bishop, the abbot of *St. Emmeran*, the abbesses of the *Low* and *High Munster*, and the city. The inhabitants of *Ratisbon* have the privilege not to be cited before other tribunals, unless for actions above 400 florins. The senate is composed of seventeen members, and there is a council of ten, which is charged with the government of the state. The citizens have a right to elect a chief, who judges of the affairs of police. The Catholics have the exercise of their religion in the cathedral church, and others, and the Lutherans in three churches, which they have built.

THE magistrates and officers of the city are all Protestants; and it is to be remarked, that although there are about two and twenty Catholick churches, yet there are very few

(H) The empire hitherto has had no regard to the pretensions of that prince. The city *Dortmond* holds of the empire in fief the county of the same name. And among other privileges, enjoys the freedom from entries and tolls through the whole extent of the em-

pire. It hath an university, founded in 1543.

(I) This city enjoys great privileges granted to it by the emperor *Frederic II.* They consist in safe-conducts, in the receipt of tolls and entries, and in the rights of bridges and marches.

Catholick citizens, the magistracy not allowing the freedom of the town to be given to Catholics living there.

As this city is large, elegant, and full of magnificent houses, it has been chosen many years for the place of holding the diet, upon account of the convenience, to many neighbouring princes and states, of sending their provisions by land and water, without great expence.

Augf-  
burg.

**AUGSBURG**, or the city of *Augustus* (K), so named, because the emperor *Augustus* had established a *Roman* colony there, after having reduced it by *Germanicus*. It is very large and very magnificent; its churches and other buildings are stately; and it is embellished with several fountains, which keep the houses and streets very clean. The river *Lech* runs nigh the city, over which are two large stone bridges. The town-house is a magnificent palace, where *Ferdinand IV.* was elected king of the *Romans*, the ceremony having been performed the third of *May*, 1653, in the church of the abbey of *St. Ulrick*. The Lutherans call their confession of faith by the name of this city, because here it was composed and published. It still preserves the exercise of it as in the year 1624, at which time there were in the magistracy as many Catholics as Protestants. As to single offices, they are administered alternately by the Catholics and Protestants, I mean, a Catholic succeeds a Protestant, and a Protestant a Catholic. The citizens are for the most part merchants and artificers, especially in works of gold and silver, in which they excel; its manufactures are so esteemed, that they are exported through the whole world. And as the city is very populous, and well fortified, it endeavours to maintain itself by its own resources, living in good understanding with its neighbours, to avoid all insult.

(SINCE the year 1548, the authority of the tribes has been quite annihilated in this city, by a decree of the emperor *Charles V.* The government is in the hands of the patrician and noble families. They are distinguished into two classes; the old, who filled the offices in the year 1668,

(K) In this city the construction of two towns is admired, which raise the water, and convey it through the whole city by more than three hundred canals, which can afford a fountain to every house. The night-gate, through which there is a passage for horse and

foot, is of a very curious construction. Four or five gates open and shut after one another of their own accord, without any one putting a hand to them. Its arsenal is very fine, and its streets very neat.

when the people revolted and changed the form of government; and the modern families, who have only entered into the magistracy since the reign of *Charles V.* The senate is composed of forty-five members, who divide among themselves the whole administration of affairs. But there is another senate more numerous, consisting of 260 persons, patricians as well as plebeians, but it has the management of no affairs, and subsists only to preserve in the state a form of republick.)

It was in this city, in the year 1690, the late emperor *Joseph* was elected and crowned; when during the life of the emperor *Leopold* his father, that prince was chosen king of the *Romans*. This city is esteemed for its cleanliness, and the only one in *Germany* which approaches nearest to the cleanliness of those in *Holland*.

**NUREMBERG**, or rather *Norimberg*, has been Nurem-  
so called upon account of the hill, upon which stands berg.  
the castle, called in Latin *Castrum Noricum*, round which  
the city was begun to be built, and where the emperors formerly lodged; and here they lodge still when they pass by that city. They there preserve, as precious relics, the crown, sceptre, cloaths, buskins, and other ornaments of *Charlemain* (L), which served also the emperor *Leopold*, when he went thither after his election, to receive the homage of the city. The small river *Regnitz*, which runs through it, and those of *Rednitz* and *Schwarzach*, which pass by its walls, furnish the inhabitants, besides other advantages, with the means of making all sorts of stuffs, dyes, and other manufactures (M), and toys, which are carried and sold even in the *Indies*.

(L) These ornaments are a mitred crown, enriched with rubies, emeralds, and pearls; the dalmatic of *Charlemain*, richly embroidered; the imperial mantle powdered, with embroidered eagles, and its border thick set with large emeralds, sapphires, and topazes; the buskins covered with plates of gold; the gloves embroidered: the apple, the golden sceptre and sword. The ancient custom of the empire is, that the emperor is bound to assemble in this city the first diet that he holds after his

election and coronation.

(M) There is in *Nuremberg*, and in the neighbouring villages depending upon it, an infinite number of workmen, very ingenious in making several kinds of toys of wood, which are carried through all the fairs of *Germany*, and from thence through all *Europe*. These toys are called *Nurembergs*, and they have so great a sale, that it even exceeds description. This employment affords a livelihood to the greatest part of the inhabitants of the city, and although the prices

## History of the Imperial Cities.

THERE are certain families called patricians, which to the exclusion of the rest possess the offices of the senate, composed of forty-two persons (N), and over which two castellans, or perpetual seneschals, preside, the first of whom has his residence in the castle. These castellans assemble sometimes in the castle with five or six of the chief members, to hold a secret council (O). And as this city glories in being one of the first which embraced Lutheranism, it preserves the privilege of that in civil matters, not admitting any Catholics to the magistracy or freedom of the town. The Catholics there having the liberty only of remaining under the protection of the rest, and performing their religious worship in a commandery of *Malthe*, and this but at certain hours, not to disturb the Lutherans, who likewise assemble there, although in possession of all the other churches.

THIS city is particularly noted for its antiquity, grandeur, fortifications, its triple walls of hewn stone, its large and deep moat, its fine houses, large churches, its wide streets, always clean, and for its curious and large library, and its magazine stored with every thing proper for its defence. It likewise renders itself respected by the other cities and bailliages, which it hath acquired from the electors palatine, and other princes of the *Rodolphic* branch, either by mortgage, or by pure and simple purchase, in the *High Palatinate*; such as *Altorf*, a fine city, with an university, *Herbrouck*, *Lauf*, *Engental*, *Gravenberg*, *Hilpoltstein*, *Hohenstein*, *Leichtenau*, *Petzenstein*, *Reicheneck*, and *Welden*, which at once serve both for the support and retreat of the principal families of the city.

ITS particular interest is first to defend itself from the electors of *Bavaria*, and the princes of the *Willielmine* branch, who pretend to claim all these bailliages and cities, because they were alienated without their assent. And in the second place, to regulate the right of conduct, which the marquis of *Anspack Burgrave*, or lord of *Nuremberg*, endeavours to extend even as far as the city itself, over all persons

prices are very low, they make a very considerable profit from this traffic.

(N) Of these forty-two members, there are only thirty-four chosen from the patrician families; the other eight are taken from among the burghers, and make even in a manner a small separate body.

(O) This secret council is composed of seven principal chiefs of the republic, and for that reason is called *septemvirate*. It determines the most important affairs; and it is the depository of the precious stones of the empire, of the imperial crown, the ensigns, seals, and keys of the city.

and



and merchandize, which go out or come in. This right consists in providing for the security of the people, of the attendants baggage, and goods of those who go to *Nuremberg*, or who come there, and pass through the lands of the *Burgraviate*. This occasions it to cultivate and espouse the authority of the emperor as much as it can, against all these pretenders, who, besides the power which the imperial dignity gives him, is their neighbour by the kingdom of *Bohemia*.

*ULM* has its name from the Latin word *ulmus*, *Ulm.* that is, an elm, upon account of the great number of elms growing nigh that city. It is situated upon the *Danube*, and has a very fine stone bridge over that river, which begins at this place to be navigable (P). It is rich, populous, trading, regularly fortified, and embellished with a great number of fountains. It was formerly but a town, which *Charlemain* gave to the abbey of *Reichenaw*, and which *Lotharius H.* caused afterwards to be destroyed. But the inhabitants of the country settling there again, purchased from the abbey of *Reichenaw*, for a sum of money, their liberty and independency, and got themselves matriculated among the imperial cities; so that it has become the first of the province of *Suabia*: it keeps itself in favour not only with the emperor, but with all the other princes its neighbours. The Catholics are not very numerous there, and have only two churches, the Protestants having got possession of all the rest in the city. The senate is composed of forty-one persons, the two eldest and five of the chief of which, compose the secret council, to which the Catholics are not admitted.

(THIS city has many fine privileges: it hath the keeping of the archives of all the imperial cities of *Suabia*, it is the place of their assemblies, alternately with the city of *Spire*. Its inhabitants, like those of *Nuremberg*, cannot be cited to foreign tribunals. Its decisions are without appeal to the imperial chamber, as far as the sum of 600 florins. It can lay taxes upon the ecclesiasticks of its territory; and the empire can neither mortgage it, sell, nor alienate it.)

(P) This city, though small, possesses a great extent of territory, and forty bailliages and lordships depend upon it; its riches have been always admired, which consist in ready money; so that there is a *German* proverb, which says, that the ready money of *Ulm*, the cleanliness of *Augsburgh*, the industry of *Nuremberg*, and the arsenal of *Straßburgh*, are the most considerable things of *Germany*.

Memingen.

**MEMINGEN**, (a very ancient city of *Algau*) hath this privilege, that a citizen may join to its ordinary judges a supernumerary judge, taken from one of these cities, namely, *Augsburg, Ulm, Ravensburg, Biberach, or Kempten*, which happens when a process is to be judged in the first instance. It has also the privilege of affording a sanctuary to those who are condemned to the imperial ban. (The magistrates, who govern it, are chosen partly from the ancient families, and partly from the privileged tribes. They are all Protestant as well as the citizens.)

Kaufbeuren.

**KAUFBEUREN**, (in *Algau*) as to the publick offices, is like the city of *Augsburg*, some Catholics, some Protestants.

Esslingen.

**ESLINGEN**, owes to the emperor *Frederic II.* its liberty and privileges, among others that of not being dismembered from the empire, by sale or by mortgage. Its inhabitants cannot be called before a foreign tribunal; and no ecclesiastick can purchase land estates within the extent of its territory. The form of its government is purely democratical; its magistrates are chosen from the tribes. It is under the particular protection of the duke of *Wurtemberg* (Q), a protection not hereditary.

Reutlingen.

**REUTLINGEN**, likewise owes its liberty to the emperor *Frederic II.* and like *Esslingen*, it has voluntarily put itself under the protection of the duke of *Wurtemberg*. For acknowledgment, in time of war it ordinarily furnishes him with an aid of seventy men, and sometimes this subsidy is increased according to the occasion. The government is in the hands of a council, composed of twenty-eight members, at the head of whom are the three burgomasters, who rule each four months in the year; nevertheless, the tribunes of the people have admission into the council, where they take care of the interests of the publick: they have also the inspection of the different tribes, and of the trades-people. This city is Lutheran.

Nortlingen.

THE city of *Nortlingen* is famous upon account of two great battles fought in its neighbourhood. (It is also considerable of itself, especially for its greatness; it obtained its liberty from the emperor *Conrad*, about the year 1251. Its senate is composed of fifteen counsellors, and twelve superior judges, at the head of which are three burgomasters, who change every four months. It glories in be-

(Q) Every new year's-day the city of *Esslingen* sends the duke of *Wurtemberg* a hundred florins of gold in a green velvet purse, in acknowledgement of his protection.

ing

ing the first imperial city that embraced the doctrine of Luther.)

**DONAWERT** has been yielded to the elector of Donawert. Bavaria (R).

**DINCKENSPIEL**, (in *Suabia*) is governed as Dinkenspiel. to the offices of the city, like *Augsburg*; that is, by two burgomasters, or first consuls, the one Catholick, the other Protestant, and by four counsellors, two of whom are Catholick, and two Protestant; and in single offices, the one succeeds the other alternately. (The magistrates in all are sixteen in number, one half Catholicks, and the other Protestants. It is remarked, that within the territory of this city, are found as many lakes and ponds, as there are days in the year.)

**BIBERACH** is governed likewise as to its offices, Biberach, like the city of *Augsburgh*. According to the treaty of *Westphalia*, it ought to have as many Catholicks as Lutherans in the senate. This city was known in the year 751, under *Pepin*.

**AALÉN** is so called, upon account of the river *Aalen*, *Kocher*, which runs through it, and is in that place full of eels, which in *German* are called *Aalen*. (This city is Lutheran: anciently it was under the dominion of the kings of *Bohemia*, and had the counts of *Dettingen* for lords. These sold it to *Ebberhard*, count of *Wirtemberg* (S).) *Aalen*, as also the other cities remaining to be mentioned, endeavour to raise themselves from their ruins, to render themselves considerable, as they were before the last wars. They preserve, nevertheless, their franchises and immunities with care.

**POPFINGEN** is little worth note, unless for its Poppin privilege of being in the number of imperial cities. It is gen. Protestant.

**GINGEN** belonged formerly to the counts of *Holf-Gingen*, *senstein*, to whom the empire gave it in mortgage. It

(R) This city was put to the ban of the empire in 1607, upon account of a corpse, which the burghers of the city would not allow to be buried with the ceremonies of the *Roman* church, by which it fell into the power of the duke of *Bavaria*. The 9th of June, 1705, there was presented to the diet of *Ratisbon* a decree, by which the emperor *Joseph* restores *Donawert*

to the rank of imperial cities, and gives it a seat and voice in the diets.

(S) This small city belonged formerly to the counts of *Wirtemberg*, and was lost by *Ebberhard the Lame*, in the war which he had with the cities of *Suabia*. (The emperor *Charles* IV. against whom *Ebberhard* had revolted, declared it restored to the empire.)

hath since purchased its liberty. It follows the confession of *Augsburgh*.

Roten-  
berg.

**ROTENBERG**, or *Rotenburgh*, is one of the most ancient cities of *Germany*. It was part of the dominion of the ancient dukes of *Franconia*. After the extinction of that house, it returned to the empire. The emperor *Henry V.* made a present of it, with the dutchy of *Franconia*, to his nephew *Conrad III.* duke of *Suabia*, who took the title of duke of *Rotenburgh*. But that prince dying without issue in 1628, that city returned again to the empire. It was declared an imperial city by the emperor *Frederic I.* who established a prefect, or superior judge there; and lastly, *Charles IV.* suppressing that prefect, restored to the inhabitants their perfect liberty. Their senate consists of forty members.

Hall.

**HALL** was formerly the ordinary rendezvous for the tournaments and single combats; it had its liberty at the same time with the city *Aalen*, and upon the same occasion; that is to say, when *Ebberhard*, count of *Wurtemberg*, their lord, was put to the ban of the empire. The emperor keeps a prefect in the city, who presides at all the assemblies. Their council judges without appeal, to the sum of 400 crowns.

Rotweill.

**ROTWEILL** is chiefly remarkable for a chamber or imperial chamber, called the chamber of *Rotweill*. This chamber was not fixed anciently; it was the emperor *Conrad III.* who settled it at *Rotweill*, in reward for the city's fidelity to him, and having given him assistance against *Lotharius*. The emperor *Maximilian I.* confirmed that disposition in 1496. This chamber depends upon the emperor alone, and its jurisdiction is confined to the circles of *Austria*, *Suabia*, the *Rhine*, and *Franconia*. It does not only extend to the states and immediate members, but extends also to their subjects: it concurs also with the ordinary magistrates; and it even enjoys the right of prevention. But some states, by particular privileges, or by convention, or by virtue of prescription, are free from this jurisdiction. Of this number are the electors, the princes of the house of *Austria*, the bishops of *Bamberg*, *Wurtzburg*, and *Strasburgh*, the counts palatine, the margraves of *Brandenburgh*, the dukes of *Wurtemberg*, and several prelates, counts, imperial cities, and immediate nobles; yet there are certain affairs in which the privilege of exemption cannot take place, excepting only with regard to the electors, the princes of the house of *Austria*, the bishop of *Strasburgh*, and the duke of *Wurtemberg*.

THE

THE judge or president of this jurisdiction is appointed by the emperor; and although anciently that office was arbitrary, since the emperor *Rupert* the counts of *Sultz* possess it. In 1687, after the death of *John Louis*, the last of the counts of *Sultz*, *Mary Anne*, his daughter, wife of *Ferdinand*, prince of *Schwartzenberg*, inherited the county of *Sultz*, and her children obtained the hereditary dignity of president of this tribunal. The vice-president, who must be a count, or baron, is in the nomination of the president; the assessors are chosen partly from the senators and septemvirs of *Rotweill*, and partly from the body of the nobility; but neither of them are received, before the president and assessors already in place, have examined them.

THIS tribunal is reckoned an ordinary jurisdiction, which makes it at the death of an emperor continue its sessions under the authority of the vicariate palatine. There is an appeal from its judgments, either to the imperial chamber, or aulic council; but in case of delay, or denial of justice, nullity, or other such objections of that kind, the appeal is only to the aulic council.

THE states have often complained against this tribunal, they even demanded the entire suppression of it, at the time of the treaty of *Westphalia*; but that affair was left to the following diet. In 1653, at the diet of *Ratisbon*, it was moved again to abolish that jurisdiction; but the count of *Sultz*, and the senate of *Rotweill*, presented a memorial, in which they made appear, that that tribunal had been established in the city of *Rotweill*, as a compensation, and that the office of president had been given under the title of a fief to the counts of *Sultz*. Since that time, the electors in the capitulations obliged the emperor *Leopold* and his successors, to promise to abolish the abuses which were committed in that tribunal, as well as in the jurisdictions of the empire. In truth, the reformation of that tribunal belongs to the emperor alone; and although the decree of the diet of *Ratisbon* in the year 1532, bears that the reformation shall be made by the deputies of the imperial chamber, that ordinance was granted only with the consent of the emperor, who remitted his prerogative at the entreaty of the states.

As the city *Rotweill* is fortified, and an object of jealousy to its neighbours, especially to the duke of *Wurtemberg*, it has made an alliance with the *Swiss Cantons*, which has continued since the year 1519. The magistracy and inhabitants profess the Catholick religion.

UBERLINGEN upon the lake *Constance*, has been Uberlin-looked upon as a considerable place; its moats being cut gen.  
out

out of the rock, and of an extraordinary depth: it professes the Protestant religion. Its senate is composed of patrician and plebeian families; there is no appeal from its decisions, but to the superior tribunals of *Friburgh*, *Rotweill*, and *Ravensburgh*. It has the right of protection over the imperial city *Buchorn*.

Pfullen-  
dorff.

*PFULLENDORFF* was given to the empire in 1180, by *Itha*, daughter of the last of the counts of *Pfullen-dorff*, and wife of *Adelbert* III. count of *Haffsburgh*.

Weil.

*WEIL*, in the dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, obtained its liberty and privileges from the emperor *Frederic* II. It is famous for the battle fought there in 1688. Its religion is the Catholick.

Hailbron.

*HAILBRON*, upon the *Neckar*, has its name from the salutary springs which are found there in more than 200 fountains: it follows the confession of *Augsburg*; there is but one Catholick church, which is a commandery of the Teutonic order. This church has privileges, and serves for a sanctuary to criminals, except declared murderers. The city has the same privileges for fairs as *Frankfort*.

Bachorn.

*BUCHORN*, after the extinction of the counts of *Altorff* and *Ravensburgh*, was united to the empire. It is the staple of the merchandize, which comes from *Switzerland* into *Germany* by the lake of *Constance*.

Wangen.

*WANGEN*, in *Algau*, is famous for its woollen manufactures; it hath preserved the Catholick religion.

Gemund.

*GEMUND* (T) became an imperial city at the death of the last duke of *Suabia*. It was formerly governed by the nobles; the burghers taking the opportunity of their dissensions, seized upon the magistracy, which they have still preserved. The Catholicks alone can stand candidates for offices.

Lindau.

*LINDAU* is called the *Venice of Germany*, by reason of its situation in an island of the lake *Constance*. It has a communication with the continent by a bridge of 190 paces. The members of its senate are chosen among the nobles and tribes. It can neither be alienated nor mortgaged by the empire. The abbess of *Lindau* has great pretensions upon that city, but they never have had any effect.

Ravens-  
burgh.

*RAVENSBURGH*, in *Algau*, became an imperial city during the interregnum of the empire. Its government is divided like that of *Biberach*, among the Catholicks and Protestants.

(T) This city is called in Latin *gaudia mundi*, upon account of the many tournaments, which the lords of *Suabia* formerly celebrated there.

WIN-

**WINSHEIM**, in *Franconia*, had been mortgaged by the emperor *Sigismund*; and in consideration of having paid them off the mortgage itself, it obtained the privilege of never being alienated or mortgaged. Its religion is Protestant. The senate is composed of twenty-four members, and there is no appeal from its judgments in criminal matters.

**WIMPHEN**, anciently *Cornelia*, is situated upon the *Wim-Neckar*: it is famous for the battle fought there in 1622, between general *Tilly* and the margrave of *Baden-Durlach*. All the members of its senate are of the confession of *Augsburg*, although some of the citizens are Catholics.

**OFFENBURGH**, in *Ortnau*, owes its origin, as is pretended, to an *English* knight, called *Offen*. It hath preserved the Catholic religion; and is under the protection of the house of *Austria*.

**ZELL**, in *Ortnau*, is also Catholic, and under the Zell. protection of the house of *Austria*.

**BUCHAU**, in *Algau*, has a nunnery, and all the nuns must be countesses or baronesses; they may all marry, except the abbess.

**LEUTKIRCK**, in *Algau*. Its senate is composed of twelve members, and both the religions are professed there. kirck.

**SCHWEINFORT**, in *Suabia*. Its government is in the hands of four colleges; the first, composed of six members, is the superior tribunal; the second is also composed of six members, each of which have their department for the publick good. The third consists of twelve persons, who enter into the assemblies, to watch over the interests of the people, especially with regard to taxations. The fourth is composed of eight members, who make a kind of chamber of accounts.

**KEMPTEN** depended upon the abbots of *Kempton* till 1525, when it redeemed itself, and became an imperial city. In 1530, it embraced the Protestant religion. Its senate is composed of fifty-eight members, who have two consuls at their head.

**WEISSENBURG**, in the *Nortgau*, has been mortgaged to *Nuremberg*; it redeemed itself in 1360, and hath since preserved its liberty and privileges. The decisions of its magistrates are without appeal, as far as the sum of 300 florins.

**GINGENBACH**, in *Ortnau*, professes the Catholic religion. It has within its walls an abbey; the abbot, who is a state in the empire, is under the protection of the house of *Austria*, as well as the city.

## Of the republick of the Swifs.

THE *Swifs Cantons* being a part of *Germany*, formerly made a very considerable part of the empire; and although at present they pay put a very small submission to it, yet they acknowledge it in some measure; and demand of the emperor the confirmation of the privileges and liberties, which they only hold from their predecessors. Their state is composed not only of thirteen cantons, which are all sovereign, but also of their allies. The cantons are *Zurich*, *Berne*, *Lucerne*, *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, *Basil*, *Friburgh*, *Soleure*, *Schafhausen*, and *Appenzel*. Their allies are the abbot and city of *St. Gal*, the *Grisons*, the bishop of *Sion*, the country of *Waluis*, the cities of *Rotwel* upon the *Neckar*, of *Mulhausen* in *Sundgau*, of *Bienne*, *Geneva*, and the county of *Neufchatel*.

It must be remarked, that the cities of *Basil* and *Schafhausen* are not situated in the ancient *Swisserland*, nor are their allies, excepting the abbot of *St. Gal*, and the city *Bienne*, and that a part of the cantons of *Ury* and *Glaris* are in the *Alps*, and among the *Grisons*.

It cannot be denied, that the three cantons of *Ury*, *Schuitz*, and *Underwald*, belonged formerly to the empire, which gave them their provosts, who judged sovereignly in criminal causes; not but that they had always very large privileges, confirmed by several emperors, and particularly by *Frederic II.* upon account of the services which they had done him in his quarrels with the holy see: but that did not hinder them from acknowledging the empire; for notwithstanding the alliance which the towns of *Ury*, *Schuitz*, and *Zurich*, made between themselves in the year 1251, that is, a hundred years before the canton of *Zurich* allied itself with the three, the emperor *Rodolphus I.* failed not to give them governors, in the name of the empire; and the act of the year 1291, is still to be found, by which the same emperor confirmed their privileges, calling them people of free condition.

*ALBERT* of *Austria*, son of *Rodolphus*, declared himself a sworn enemy to their liberty, as well upon account of the hatred which he bore to *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, who had favoured it, as to encrease his dominions on that side, which made many prelates and lords, who depended immediately upon the empire, begin to acknowledge the house of *Austria*. The canons of *Ury*, *Schuitz*, and *Underwald*, not being able to bear the yoke of that house, shook it off in the year

1308,



1308, and made an alliance with one another for two years, which they changed to a perpetual one in the year 1315, after the victory which they obtained at *Morgarten* over *Leopold* of *Austria*, son of *Albert*, in the month of *December*, 1314.

THE emperor *Louis* of *Bavaria* continued to give them governors, but it was with the provision of letting them enjoy their liberty, and not alienating them from the empire. These letters are dated upon *St. John's* day, 1329, and have been confirmed by the emperors his successors in the most authentick form.

*LUCERNE* seeing itself threatened on all sides with the loss of its liberty, made an alliance with the three cantons on the *Saturday* before the feast of *St. Martin* in 1332.

*ZURICH* was formerly subject to two collegiate churches, which were within its own walls; but after the death of *Bertold*, last duke of *Zeringen*, who was provost of these churches and of the city; *Frédéric II.* received them into the protection of the empire, upon condition that it never should be alienated. It was from this, that *Richard* of *Cornwall* having been raised to the imperial throne, declared by his letters given at *Haguenaw* the 20th of *November*, 1262, that the city of *Zurich* depended immediately upon the empire, against the pretensions of *Conradin*, grandson of *Frederic II.* who affirmed, that the property of it belonged to him. Since that time, *Louis* of *Bavaria* intending to give it with the cities of *Schafshausen*, *Brizach*, *Rhinfeldt*, and *Newburgh*, to *Frederic* duke of *Austria*, in payment of the money which he had promised him, to oblige him to renounce the empire, those of *Zurich* and *Schafshausen* opposed it, and remonstrated to him, that they were so incorporated with the empire, that they could upon no account whatever be alienated from it. The dukes of *Austria* did not cease to persecute the city of *Zurich*, so that not being able to hope for assistance from the emperor *Charles IV.* it allied itself in the year 1351, with the four cantons, continuing still annexed to the empire, from whom it received its judges; till in the year 1400, it bought from the emperor *Wenceslaus* the privilege of appointing a criminal judge for itself from their body. *Ulric Zuinglius* preached the reformed religion there in the year 1419, and in the year 1514, images were taken out of their churches. Although the city of *Zurich* be the fifth in the order of the alliance, yet it holds the first rank, upon account of its greatness and wealth; it convokes the assemblies or diets, and also it is to its magistrate, that the ambassadors of foreign princes address themselves, when they demand these assemblies.

*GLARIS*

*GLARIS* was conquered by the five cantons, and honoured with their alliance in the month of *November*, 1351.

*ZUG* was besieged and taken the following year 1352, and likewise received into the alliance.

*BERNE* (U), built by *Berthold*, last duke of *Zeringhen*, was by him given and submitted to the empire under the reign of *Frederick II.* who ratified that donation of the duke in the year 1218. The civil wars which harrassed the empire after the death of *Frederick*, obliged that city to put itself under the protection of the dukes of *Savoy*; but in the year 1352, it made an alliance with the three small cantons, yet in such a manner, that those of *Zurick* and *Lucerne* were comprehended in it, seeing the three small cantons had obliged themselves to bring these two last to the assistance of the *Bernois*, if they were required; the same three cantons likewise had engaged themselves to bring the *Bernois* to the assistance of the cantons of *Zurick* and *Lucerne*.

*FRIBURGH* having been built a little time before *Berne*, by the same duke of *Zeringhen*, after his death fell into the hands of the counts of *Kyburgh*, who sold it to *Rodolphus*, king of the *Romans*; and thus it remained two hundred years under the dominion of the house of *Austria*. It did not fail in the year 1403, to make a perpetual alliance with the *Bernois*.

*SOLEURE* (X), a very antient city, and therefore called the sister of *Triers*; has been a long time an imperial city; yet so, that the bishop of *Geneva*, and some collegiate churches there enjoy the same rights, which we have said those of *Zurich* enjoy in their city; but having been oppressed by many lords, it made in the year 1551, a perpetual alliance with the *Bernois*, and friendship with the other cantons, with whom afterwards it allied itself more particularly.

(U) *Berne* is situated in a peninsula, formed by the *Aar*, and almost all built of *Asblar* stone. It was called *Berne* upon account of a bear which was taken there when they were laying the foundations: *Berne*, in *German*, signifying bears: it bears one in its arms, and always maintains one. In its

arsenal, the statue of *William Fell*, citizen of *Schuitz*, is to be seen, who, with an arrow, struck off the apple put upon his son's head by the governor *Grifler*, and by that means saved his life, which occasioned the beginning of the *Swiss* republic.

(X) *In Celtis nihil est Soloduro antiquius, unis Exceptis Treviris, quarum ego dicta soror.*

*BASIL,*

**BASIL**, the capital city of the country of the *Rauraci*, is the greatest in all *Switzerland*; it was in the number of the free cities of the empire, in consequence of great privileges which it had long before obtained of the *Roman* emperors. As it was in the neighbourhood of the *Swiss*, the better to secure their friendship, it made at once a perpetual alliance with all the cantons.

**SCHAFFHOUSEN**, anciently an abbey, has likewise been one of the free cities of the empire, after having shook off, by the authority and privileges of the emperors, the yoke of the abbot's dominion, who was lord over part of the city. But the emperor, *Louis of Bavaria*, sold it to the dukes of *Austria*, who possessed it eighty-five years; after which, the emperor *Sigismund*, having confiscated it from *Frederick*, duke of *Austria*, re-united it to the empire. Yet the princes of *Austria* having afterwards raised their pretensions to it, the city of *Schaffhausen*, seeing itself vigorously pressed by them, for its defence made an alliance at first with the cantons of *Zurick*, *Berne*, *Lucerne*, *Schuitz*, *Zug*, and *Glaris*; afterwards, being engaged in new wars, it entered into a perpetual alliance with all the cantons in the year 1501, and made the twelfth canton.

**APPENZEL** is a village which gives the name to the whole canton, and which formerly depended upon the abbot of *St. Gal*, from whom it purchased its liberty for ready money, and thus began to acknowledge the empire immediately. Afterwards it was received into the number of cantons in the year 1513.

BUT it ought to be observed, that the cantons are not equally allied with one another, nor obliged to assist one another indifferently (Z). That of *Zurick* is particularly al-

(Y) The town-house is adorned with three fine pictures; nigh the burying place of the *French* church, the famous *John Holbens* dance of the dead is to be seen. It is a picture of many figures as big as the life, of every age, and quality, which death, who leads the dance, is conducting to the tomb.

(Z) It is a mistake: the thirteen cantons compose together only one body. By the first perpetual alliance, the three first cantons are united together by a solemn act. They admitted

afterwards five other cantons into the alliance, and to the same conditions. Lastly, the five other being likewise joined to the first eight, accepted of the same conditions, they cannot any longer but make the same body, since they are allied by the same treaty. They have not needed to make a general treaty, and a relative one betwixt one canton and another, since it was sufficient for them to enter into the first, and accept of its conditions.

lied with the six first cantons, and with that of *Berne*; and consequently, they are obliged mutually to assist one another (A). The *Bernois* are particularly allied with those of *Ury*, *Schuitz*, and *Underwald*; those of *Lucerne*, with these three small cantons, and they with all the rest; the canton of *Zug* with *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, and *Lucerne*; that of *Glaris* with *Zurich*, and the three small houses.

MOREOVER the three small cantons, and that of *Glaris*, cannot make alliance with any one, without the permission of the rest.

THE rest may make new alliances provided they be not contrary to the old one.

THE cantons, formerly subject to the empire, as *Zurich*, *Berne*, *Uay*, and *Schuitz*, protest, in all their treaties, that their alliances shall not prejudice what they owe to the empire. Also those of *Zug* and *Lucerne* except in all their treaties the house of *Austria*.

WITH regard to the allies of the thirteen cantons, we will begin with the abbot and city of *St. Gal*. The abbot was formerly a very powerful prince of the empire; but although his power, since that time, has received a remarkable diminution, yet he is still very rich and considerable. He was the first ally of the cantons, and this alliance was made with four cantons in the year 1451, in the time of *Gaspard of Landberg*, fifty-seventh abbot. The city of *St. Gal*, an imperial city, imitated his example, and made one also with six cantons in the year 1454.

THE *Grisons* are divided into three leagues (B). The first called the High League, comprehends nineteen communities, as does the second, called the League of the House of

(A) If any canton was attacked by a foreign power, an assembly of all the cantons should immediately be called, who should all concur in giving that mutual assistance which they reciprocally owe another. *Etats & Delices, &c.* 1 Tom. 1. p. 319.

(B) *Burnet* says, in the first part of his *Travels into Switzerland*, that the three leagues have each their government separate; but by a confederacy like that of the *United Provinces*, or *Swiss* cantons, they make but one bo-

dy, whose affairs are treated of from time to time in a general diet composed of sixty seven votes. That the *Grisons* league sends twenty-eight, the league of the House of God, twenty-four, and that of the Ten Jurisdictions fifteen; and the general diet is held by turns in the capital of each league. From twenty to twenty years, this diet executed a chamber of justice for the examination of the nobility and magistrates, of which the people complained.

God;

God; and the third, called the League of the Ten Jurisdictions comprehends ten communities. The high league made a perpetual alliance with seven cantons in 1497, and that of the House of God assented to it in the year following. The third is not allied with the cantons, but continues to live in good intelligence and friendship with them.

THE people inhabiting from the source of the *Rhine*, to the lake of *Geneva*, are called the *Vallois*, or the *Vallerians*, and the country the *Pays de Vallois*. They have the bishop of *Syon* for their prince, who is their temporal and spiritual lord, and they are divided into seven communities, five of which made their first alliance with *Lucerne*, *Ury*, and *Underwald*, in the year 1417. But in 1475, they all made an offensive and defensive league with the *Bernois*, and renewed it a hundred years after, namely, in 1575. A long time before this renovation, that is, in the year 1533, they had made a particular alliance with the seven catholic cantons, *Lucerne*, *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, *Friburgh*, and *Soleure*, for the culture and conservation of the *Roman* religion, against those who wanted to deprive them of the exercise of it by violence.

*ROTWEIL* is an imperial city, honoured with a chamber of justice, for the neighbouring country. It made its first alliance with the *Swiss* in the year 1463, which was changed into a perpetual alliance with all the cantons in the year 1513.

*MULHAUSEN* was likewise an imperial city, situated in the *Suntgaw*; it made its first alliance with the cantons of *Berne*, *Friburgh*, and *Soleure*; and by the mediation of the *Bernois*, seven cantons took it under their protection in 1464. In the year 1506, it was received into the corporation of *Basil*; and the 19th of *January* 1515, it made an alliance with the thirteen cantons.

*BIENNE* was formerly subject to the bishop of *Basil*; it made its first alliance with *Berne* in 1303, it renewed it in 1352, and since in 1555.

*GENEVA* hath always maintained a friendship with the *Swiss*, often making treaties of alliance (C) with *Berne* and *Friburg*, for a certain time, as occasion required. But at last it made a perpetual alliance and confraternity with the *Bernois*, which they confirmed in 1536.

(C) Those of *Geneva* are allied with the *Swiss*, and particularly with the cantons of *Zurich* and *Berne*. They have a magazine well fortified, in which are kept with care, the scaling-ladders which the *Savoyards* raised against the walls of the city to surprise it the 22d of *Dec.* 1602.

THE county of *Neufchatel* is allied with the cantons of *Berne*, *Lucerne*, *Friburgh*; and *Soleure*, but more particularly with *Berne*.

BESIDES these allies, there are bailliages which are governed in common, as that of *Baden*, of which the cantons of *Zurich*, *Lucerne*, *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, and *Berne*, are lords. The same cantons, excepting that of *Berne*, are also lords of the bailliage of *Turgow*.

THE *Free Provinces*, situated upon the river *Reus*, acknowledge the cantons of *Zurich*, *Lucerne*, *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, and *Glaris*.

THE country of *Sargans* is also subject to the *Swiss*; yet it enjoys the privileges of electing its own magistrates, and administering justice in its own name.

THE *Rhental* acknowledges for lords, the cantons of *Zurich*, *Lucerne*, *Ury*, *Schuitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, and *Appenzel*, which send thither their baillies each in its turn.

THE four bailliages, which the *Swiss* call those beyond the mountains, namely, *Lugano*, *Locarne*, *Mendriz*, and *Laual-Madia*, were given to the *Swiss*, by *Maximilian Sforza*, duke of *Milan*, in the year 1513, and are subject to all the cantons, except to that of *Appenzel*, which had not then been admitted into the number of cantons.

THE city of *Bellixone* belonged formerly to the counts of *Misauch*, who sold it to the counts of *Ury*, *Schuitz*, and *Underwald*; but a duke of *Milan* took it from them in 1422; yet they got possession of it again 1500; and *Maximilian Sforza*, when he gave them the four bailliages above-named, confirmed them in the possession of *Bellixone*; which is composed of three bailliages, named *Bellixone*, *Walbrune*, and *Riviere*, and governed by the three cantons in their turn, each canton sending a bailly to each bailliage.

THE state of *Swisserland* is popular, and governed aristocratically.

WHEN any affair, concerning the common good of all the cantons, is to be deliberated upon, general assemblies are called, to which they all send their deputies, who have a deliberative voice.

IF the affairs regard only the bailliages, governed by the seven or eight first cantons, none but they send their deputies there; but if it is for the affairs of the bailliages of *Italy*, all the cantons assemble.

SINCE religion has begun to divide their affections, they begin likewise to make other particular assemblies, namely, the Protestants, which are, *Zurich*, *Berne*, *Basil*, and *Schaff-houzen*,

*housen*, and part of *Glaris* and *Appenzel*, at *Arau*; and the Catholics, sometimes at *Lucerne*, sometimes elsewhere.

THE general assemblies are ordinarily held about the middle of *June*, in the town-house of *Baden*; and it is, as has been said, the canton of *Zurich* which calls them, and there makes the first propositions.

ALTHOUGH they have an hereditary alliance with the princes of the house of *Austria*, they have one likewise with the crown of *France* (D); and as their country is so well-peopled, that if they did not dismiss their young people by sending them abroad to serve in war, they would not have within themselves sufficient to subsist them, they freely permit these crowns to make considerable levies of troops among them. By this policy they manage these foreign powers so well, that they live in peace, and enrich themselves at the expence of their neighbours (E).

(D) The *Swiss* have no hereditary alliance with *France*. The peace which they have with that crown is called hereditary, and was made in 1516. Indeed, the kings of *France*, *Louis XI.* *Charles VIII.* and *Louis XII.* made alliances with the *Swiss*; *Francis I.* made one which was to last all his life; and even three years after his death. Each king since has done the same. *Henry IV.* when renewing that alliance,

treated for himself, and for *Louis XIII.* his successor: *Louis XIV.* renewed the same alliance; and *Louis XV.* at present reigning, has continued for these several years past a pretty difficult negociation, for the renewing of the same alliance.

(E) They are so many adventurers scattered in the different courts of *Europe*. See *l'Estat. & Delices de la Suisse*. Tom. I. pag. 342. & *suiv.*

# T H E H I S T O R Y O F B O H E M I A ;

Whose King is a Prince of the Empire, first Secular  
Elector, and Chief Cup-bearer.

*The bounds  
of the  
kingdom of  
Bohemia.*

**T**HE kingdom of *Bohemia* is quite surrounded on every side with mountains and woods, as with a natural rampart, being bounded by *Moravia*, and part of *Silesia*, towards the east; towards the north, by *Lusace* and *Upper Saxony*; by *Franconia* towards the west, and by *Bavaria* towards the south. Although this country is situated in the middle of *Germany*, and its king be an elector of the empire, nevertheless, it has its particular assemblies, customs, and language different from the *Germans*. *Prague* is the capital city of this kingdom; the other cities are *Cutttenberg*, *Konigin-gretz*, *Pilsen*, *Czastlaw*, *Budweys*, *Egra*, *Glatz*, *Tabor*, and a great number of others, for they reckon more than an hundred cities; among which, there are almost forty which have the title of royal. The name *Bohemia*, in the *German* language, signifies, the home or abode of the *Boii*, a people of ancient *Gaul*, who under their leader *Segovesus*, settled in that country about 590 years before the Christian æra. These *Boii* were soon after expelled by the *Marcomanni*, a nation of the *Suevi*<sup>1</sup>, who were afterwards subdued by the *Slavi*, a people of *Scythia*<sup>m</sup>, whose language is still spoken in *Bohemia* and *Moravia*. Notwithstanding the expulsion of the *Boii*, the present inhabitants are still called *Bohemians* by foreigners, but the natives call themselves *Zechs*. At first, they were governed by dukes, but the emperor *Otho I.* conquered the duke of *Bohemia*, and reduced the province under the empire. Afterwards *Henry V.* gave the title of king to *Ladislaus*, duke of *Bohemia*; and since that time, these kings have been electors and chief cup-bearers of the empire, and

*The anti-  
ent inha-  
bitants.*

<sup>1</sup> AVENTINUS, Ann. Boiorum, l. i. p. 24.  
DUBRAV. Hist. Bohemiæ, l. i. p. 3.

<sup>m</sup> HEISS. l. 6.



the kingdom has been elective; which privileges have been confirmed by the Golden Bull. Formerly the kings of *Bohemia* received the kingdom as a fief of the empire, which ceremony was performed upon the frontiers; after which, the standards of the principalities of which it is composed, were given to them, without being torn and given to the people, as is done with the ensigns of the other fiefs of the empire. *Ferdinand I. of Austria*, having married *Anne*, sister of *Louis*, last king of *Bohemia*, who died without issue, and being elected king, that kingdom has remained ever since in his family. But the crown is conferred with some appearance of election, which right the states of that kingdom still pretend to claim, notwithstanding, by the treaty of *Westphalia*, *Bohemia* is declared hereditary in the house of *Austria*.

A. C. 1086. The kingdom is declared elective by the Golden Bull, but rendered hereditary in the house of Austria, by the treaty of Munster.

THE king of *Bohemia* is the first secular elector, and gives his opinion after the elector of *Cologne*, but he does not assist at the assembly of electors but at the election of an emperor. For these two hundred years past, the kings of *Bohemia* have not appeared at the collegiate assemblies, or even at the imperial diets. However, in 1708, the emperor caused one of his deputies, in quality of king of *Bohemia*, to enter into the college of electors at the diet of *Ratisbon* by the form of re-admission, together with the deputy of the elector of *Brunswick*. The states of *Bohemia* have never been comprehended in the government, or in the circles of the empire; they are not subject to any of its jurisdictions, nor to the Roman months, taxes, or publick contributions; and they owe nothing to the empire but what the emperor *Leopold* voluntarily imposed upon himself, which amounts to 6000 livres a year for the imperial chamber. The king pays homage to the emperor and the empire for his states as first secular elector, otherwise he has a right to exercise, through all the extent of his dominions, all authority that the royalty can give, provided he do not violate the laws of the kingdom, according to which he cannot raise contributions or taxes but at the time when the states are assembled, the appointing of which is entirely in their own power.

*BOHEMIA* was divided by the emperor *Charles IV.* into twelve provinces, in each of which he ordered two captains to be appointed every year, for the administration of the government. The same emperor caused the church of *Prague* to be erected into an archbishoprick, with this advantage, that the archbishop of *Prague* should have the prerogative that the archbishop of *Mentz* enjoyed formerly, of crowning the king of *Bohemia*. The dutchy of *Silesia*, the marquissate of *Moravia*, and that of *Lusatia*, formerly held of this crown,

## *History of Bohemia.*

250

but at present only *Moravia*, which is incorporated with the kingdom of *Bohemia*, and is in the possession of the house of *Austria*. This province draws its name from the river *Mara*, or *Maravaba*, which runs through the country from north to south, and throws itself into the *Danube*. *Moravia* has towards the north *Silesia*, *Hungary* towards the east, *Austria* towards the south, and *Bohemia* towards the west.

THE government of *Bohemia* is different from that of all other states, the affairs of the kingdom being managed by six different courts. First, the council of the regency, or the great royal council, in which presides the great judge, or burgrave of *Bohemia*; and who has under him eighteen lieutenants of the king, and other assessors. Secondly, the council, or superior chamber of justice, at which the great master of the kingdom is president. Thirdly, the chamber of fiefs. Fourthly, the new tribunal, to judge the appeals of the *German* vassals, in their differences upon account of fiefs; which court has also its president, vice-president, and assessors. Fifthly, the royal chamber of finances, which has a president and vice-president. Sixthly, the chancery, which always follows the court. Besides, every circle of *Bohemia* is governed by two bailiffs, who administer justice in their prefecture, of which there are eighteen. The states are composed of the clergy, lords, nobles, and burghers. As to *Moravia*, there is a grand bailiff who governs it in the name of the king of *Bohemia*, as margrave of *Moravia*; he is at the head of the royal council, which is composed of three assessors, and in which all is transacted in the name of the king; this province is divided into five circles, each of which has its bailiff. There are, besides, other officers of justice, who have a right of judging only at certain times, and in particular cases, where an appeal is allowed.

THE antiquities of this country are greatly wrapt up in fables, and there is no credit to be given to the authority of their history, till almost the time of the emperor *Charlemain*. The *Baii*, the first inhabitants, were expelled by the *Marcomanni*. These being greatly weakened by their wars with the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Tiberius*<sup>n</sup>, were afterwards subdued by the *Slavi*, a nation of the *Sarmatians*<sup>o</sup>, who, like the other *Scythians*, wandered from place to place with their families and cattle; and, as *Strabo* writes, even in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, lived promiscuously with the *Thracians*. Afterwards spreading themselves westward, in a few centuries they possessed *Illyricum*, *Paland*, *Moravia*, and *Bo-*

<sup>a</sup> VELLEIUS PATERCULUS. <sup>o</sup> DUARAV. Hist. Boh. l. i. p. 3.  
bemia;

*boemia*; but continuing their ancient manners, they neglected to build cities, and inhabiting the country very thinly, they minded only pasturage and the care of their flocks. As all the *Sarmatians* used the same language to distinguish themselves from the other inhabitants of the countries which they possessed, they called themselves *Slowi*, from the word *slowe*, which with them signifies speech.

THE first whom history mentions as their ruler or chief, A.C. 550. was one *Czechius*, who, having committed some remarkable murder in *Croatia*, quitted that country with his family and dependants, and went towards *Moravia* in search of a new settlement. The *Moravians* informing him, that there was a country, surrounded by the *Hercynian* forest, not very distant and but thinly inhabited, *Czechius* quitted *Moravia*, and entering *Bohemia*, found it wholly covered with wood, and possessed rather by herds of wild cattle than by men. *Czechius* settled his small colony, and taught *Czechius*, the few inhabitants he found to cultivate the lands and first ruler sowed corn; while his brother *Leches*, who had attended him from *Croatia*, went over into *Poland*, and first settled that kingdom. *Czechius* dying, the *Bohemians* continued for several years without a ruler or judge; but being now assembled in villages, their ancient popular form of government was at last found ineffectual to repress injuries and oppressions, which began to be more frequent than during their pastoral life; therefore, they chose a young man named *Croc*, remarkable for his prudent conduct. This governor restored peace and order, and supported the authority of the laws. He was succeeded by the youngest of his three daughters, *Lybussa*, who was respected for her skill in the art of divination, and governed the country alone for fourteen years; but, being pressed by her subjects to marry, she chose for her husband a country labourer, named *Premislaus*; who, being called from the plough to the dignity of a governor, carried his shoes along with him as memorials for his posterity, to prevent their being elated with the prosperity of their condition. *Premislaus* founded the city of *Prague*, and divided the people into different ranks; but his wife *Lybussa* dying, his government was disturbed by an insurrection of the women, who being used to the same exercise as the men, claimed the privilege of commanding them. Having quelled this tumult, he reigned peaceably to his death. On his deathbed, he ordered his cloak and shoes to be deposited in a religious place, and only to be shewn at the election of a governor, which last will of his has been solemnly observed, not only by the pagan princes, but even by the Christian kings.

- Nezamislus. *NEZAMISLIUS* succeeded his father with the universal consent of the people; and, after reigning twenty years, was succeeded by his son *Mnatha*, who neglected the government, and, for the three first years of his reign, addicted himself wholly to hunting of stags, boars, and other wild beasts, leaving the care of the government to a citizen of *Versovicum*, who seeing the indolence of the prince, proposed himself to the people as their governor; but failing in his attempt, he was put to death; and *Mnatha* himself died soon after of a contagious distemper.
- Vogenus. *Vogenus* succeeded his father, though then only a child. During his minority, his guardian greatly oppressed the country, for which he was afterwards put to death. *Vogenus*, after reigning twenty-eight years, left the government to his eldest son *Wenceslaus*, and *Lusatia* to his youngest son *Wratislaus*. These brothers lived in great unanimity, and gave assistance to each other against *Charlemain*, who then attacked the Saxons, *Veneds*, and *Bohemians*.
- Wencislaus I. *Wenceslaus* was succeeded by his son *Creuomyslus*, who after reigning nineteen years left the government to his son *Neclan*, who, being of a fearful and cowardly disposition, was attacked by his cousin *Ulatisslaus* from *Lusace*. *Neclan*, afraid of meeting his enemy, prevailed upon one *Siderius*, who resembled him in person, to command his troops and oppose the invaders. *Siderius*, who was of a martial spirit, willingly accepted of the command, and defeated *Ulatisslaus*, but was killed himself by some of his own men, who were envious of his honour. The weak government of *Neclan* soon after tempted a young man, *Crasniti*, to rebel; but being defeated, he fled to *Hormidurum*, king of *Moravia*, who being desirous of conquering *Bohemia*, sent him back to that kingdom at the head of a great body of men; but, being opposed by the *Bohemians*, he was entirely defeated, and killed near the town of *Czaslavia*. *Neclan*, soon after dying, was succeeded by his son *Hostiviti*, whose brother *Myssibogius* rebelled against him, because no part of the kingdom had been left to him: but an arbitration being agreed to, the province of *Gurimum* was ceded to him for his life. *Hostiviti* was soon after disturbed with another insurrection, of which *Succaslaus*, governor of *Biliaa*, was the chief; but he being defeated and taken, his feet and hands were cut off, and he himself afterwards thrown into the river of *Egra*. About this time, the duke's brother, *Myssibogius*, invaded *Moravia*, the king being then absent at the court of the emperor *Arnolphus*. *Myssibogius* having penetrated into *Moravia*, sur-

prised many of the inhabitants, and returned with many prisoners and much spoil. Having afterwards made a second irruption into *Moravia*, he was opposed by *Noslaus*, whom he defeated; but dying soon after, a peace was concluded betwixt the king of *Moravia* and his brother *Hofstivitus*.

**BORIVORIUS** succeeded upon the death of his father, and in the beginning of his reign going to *Moravia* to renew the alliance with that king, he was there converted to Christianity, and baptized with his wife *Ludruilla*, with many other *Bohemians* of his retinue. But returning to *Bohemia*, he was despised by his subjects, upon which he chose a voluntary exile in *Moravia*. In his absence, rapine and oppression prevailing in his dominions, the states recalled *Stoymirus*, a brother of *Succoslaus*, governor of *Bilina*, who had been banished to *Bavaria* thirteen years before: but he having forgot his native language, they were soon tired of him, and sent him back into *Bavaria* with some presents. Assembling again in the fields near *Prague* to chuse another prince, the favourers of *Borivorius* going secretly armed, after a warm dispute obliged the other party to consent to the recalling of their exiled prince. *Borivorius* returning to his dignity, after an absence of ten months, brought with him *Methudius*, who converted many to the Christian faith. Several churches were built, and schools erected; but the *Bohemians* objecting to the performing of the service in the Latin tongue, a language which they did not understand, *Methudius* represented this objection to pope *Nicolas the Great*, who allowed the prayers to be said in the vulgar tongue. But some years after, a bishop being sent into *Bohemia*, the Latin tongue was again ordered to be introduced into all their churches. *Borivorius* afterwards abdicating the government, his son *Spiligneus* succeeded him; but he dying in two years, his father prevailed with the states to chuse his young son *Wratisslaus*, whose education he himself directed. *Wratisslaus* afterwards married *Drahomira*, of an illustrious family, but a pretended convert to the Christian faith. By her he had two sons, who both succeeded him in their turns. He assisted the *Moravians* against the *Hungarians*, who invaded them, and dying soon after, *Drahomira* took upon her the administration of the government during the minority of her sons. She immediately discovered her hatred to the Christians, and committing the government of the city to pagan magistrates, she massacred above 300 Christians in one night; afterwards burnt their temples, and ordered them to deliver up all their arms. But *Wenceslaus*, who had been educated under his grandmother *Ludruilla*, coming to the government,

*Borivorius*  
*first Christian duke.*  
A.C. 856.

*Wratisslaus*  
I.  
A.C. 908.

*Wenceslaus*  
II.  
A.C. 916.

vernment, the Christian religion was again encouraged ; and in order to prevent disputes with his brother *Boleslaus*, who had been educated under his mother, he ceded to him all that part of *Bohemia* beyond the *Elb.* *Wenceslaus* spending much of his time in praying and fasting, one of his subjects was tempted to rebel against him, and advanced with an army towards *Prague.* *Wenceslaus*, to spare the lives of his subjects, offered to fight him in a duel in presence of the two armies. *Radislaus*, the rebel, accepted of the challenge, and both parties appearing in the field, history relates, that *Wenceslaus* being miraculously assisted from heaven, got the victory without a blow. The news of this victory reaching *Germany*, the emperor *Otho the Great* sent for *Wenceslaus* to the diet at *Worms*, where he entertained him with great respect, and offered him the title of king, which he refused ; asking only the arm of *St. Vitus*, which had been brought from *France*, and deposited in the monastery of *Corbeia*, in *Saxony.* Returning to *Prague* with this relict, *Wenceslaus* caused a church to be built for its reception, which was consecrated by *St. Wolfgang*, bishop of *Ratisbon.* His pious life excited the envy of his brother *Boleslaus*, who, with the consent of his mother, soon after murdered him, and succeeded to the government, which he administrated with great cruelty, persecuting the Christians, and obliging them to fly the kingdom. But the year following, the emperor *Otho* entering *Bohemia* with an army to revenge the death of *Wenceslaus*, he forced *Boleslaus* to submit to the following terms of peace ; namely, to use all means to expiate his guilt ; to recal the Christians ; to pay a yearly tribute of 120 chosen oxen, and 500 marks of gold ; and to pay homage to the emperor upon the same conditions with the other princes of *Germany.* *Boleslaus* was afterwards twice invaded by the *Hungarians* and *Moravians*, whom he repulsed ; and now being inclined to Christianity, refused his daughter *Dombrava* to the prince of *Poland*, unless he should first embrace the Christian religion. He likewise sent to *Rome*, desiring that a bishop might be settled in *Bohemia* ; but the division then betwixt the popes prevented his message from being attended to. His eldest son *Strachyquas* taking on the monkish habit at *Ratisbon*, he was succeeded by his second son *Boleslaus*, surnamed the Pious. He founded and endowed twenty churches, and obtained leave from pope *John IX.* to create a bishop at *Prague.* With the consent of all the priests, he appointed *Dethmarus*, a *Saxon*, bishop of *Prague*, who was succeeded by a native named *Adalbertus.* He reprovng the people severely for not abstaining from work on Sunday, and for marrying and divorcing

*Boleslaus*  
the Cruel,  
I.  
A.C. 932.

*Boleslaus*  
II. surnamed the Pious.  
A.C. 967.

forcing their wives according to their pleasure; they formed a conspiracy against him, and took possession of a mountain in the neighbourhood of *Prague*, from whence the Christians, with the assistance of the Jews, expelled them, and obliged them to remain in peace. For this service, the Jews were allowed to build a synagogue in *Prague*. *Boleslaus* afterwards being invaded by the prince of *Poland*, in return, entered that kingdom with an army, and made himself master of *Cracow*, while the *Poles* were engaged in opposing the *Russians*, who had invaded another part of their kingdom. The king of *Poland* having concluded a peace with the *Russians*, marched with his army to recover *Cracow*; but the *Bohemian* garrison being well provided, obliged the *Poles* to raise the siege.

ABOUT this time *Boleslaus* dying, he was succeeded by his son of the same name; he being of a covetous, slothful disposition, neglected to supply the garrison of *Cracovia*, by which means that city again returned to the *Poles*. *Boleslaus* being afterwards persuaded by the king of *Poland* to come to *Cracovia* to visit him, he was there perfidiously deprived of his sight, and then sent back to *Bohemia*. Finding himself unfit to govern, he resigned the kingdom to *Hiaromirius*, his eldest son. *Cohanus* of *Versovicum*, who had aspired to the government, being thus disappointed, formed the design of destroying *Jaromirius*, and having enticed him to hunt in his woods, he, with the assistance of some associates, tied the prince to a tree, after which the conspirators shot at him with their arrows. But his attendants coming up, the conspirators were interrupted and fled, whilst the prince being loosed from the tree, was found miraculously cured of all his wounds. *Cohanus*, the chief conspirator, flying into *Poland*, there declared that he had killed *Jaromirius*; upon which information, the king of *Poland* immediately raised an army, and entered *Bohemia*, where he burnt and destroyed the villages and castles, and at last made himself master of *Prague*; while *Hiaromirius* retired to his castle of *Wisegrade*. *Udalricus*, his brother, who was then with the emperor *Henry*, privately left that court, came to *Bohemia*, and assembling some forces, recovered the city of *Prague*; but, being ambitious of the government, which he thought he had a right to upon account of his conquest, he put out his brother's eyes, and kept him prisoner.

*UDALRICUS* having taken upon himself the government, fell in love with a young country-woman, who was washing cloaths at the side of a river, when he was returning from hunting. Having married her, he had by her next year a son

*Boleslaus*  
III. the  
*Blind*.  
A.C. 999.  
*Hiaromirius*.  
A. C.  
1012.

*Udalricus*  
A. C.  
1027.

Bretislaus,  
A. C.  
1043.

son named *Bretislaus*; but the joy occasioned by his birth, was interrupted with the news of another invasion from the king of *Poland*, who had advanced to *Glatz*. The *Poles* having sat down before that town, were obliged to raise the siege upon account of a contagious distemper that had attacked their army. About this time, *Udalricus* repenting of what he had done to his brother, by the mediation of the bishop was reconciled to him, and afterwards governed the kingdom conjointly with him. *Bretislaus*, being now come of age, was created marquis of *Moravia* by his father, and taking the government of that province, he repulsed the *Poles* who invaded it, and took so many prisoners, that he sold them by hundreds to the *Hungarians*. Afterwards going to *Ratisbon*, under pretence of visiting the relics of *St. Wolfgang*, he carried off *Futha*, the daughter of the emperor *Otho*, who was placed there in a nunnery. To revenge this rape, *Henry II.* marched into *Bohemia*; but before any hostilities commenced, the contending parties were reconciled by the mediation of *Futha*, who, soon after, was delivered of a son who was called *Spitigneus*. *Bretislaus* being absent assisting the emperor in his wars against the *Hungarians*, *Udalricus* his father died, upon whose death he succeeded to the government in conjunction with his uncle *Hiaromirius*. The *Poles* at this time being without a king, *Bretislaus* thought it a proper opportunity to revenge the injuries done to his grandfather, and entering *Poland* with an army, took *Cracow*, and likewise made himself master of the castle of *Sydeca*, whither the nobility had fled. Having taken several other towns, a great number of prisoners, and much spoil, he returned to *Bohemia*, but was soon informed that the emperor *Henry* was preparing to invade him with two armies, one from *Saxony*, and the other, commanded by himself, from the mountains of *Bavaria*. *Bretislaus* sent *Procopius* to oppose the *Saxons*, and watched the motions of the emperor himself, who, trusting to the number of his troops, and marching without any discipline, was surprised by *Bretislaus* before he had got out of the woods. The *Saxons* had better success on the other side of the kingdom, for they returned with much spoil, without having an engagement with the *Bohemians*, for which *Procopius* was put to death. The emperor *Henry*, to revenge his late disgrace, again entered *Bohemia* with an army, laid siege to *Prague*, and obliged *Bretislaus* to sue for peace, which he obtained upon condition of giving homage to the emperor, and paying 1500 pounds of silver. *Bretislaus* afterwards defeated the *Hungarian* robbers that ravaged *Moravia*, and concluded a perpetual peace with *Casimirus*, king of *Poland*.



*Poland.* He left five sons, the eldest of whom, *Spiligneus*, inherited *Bohemia*, and *Moravia* was divided among the four youngest.

*SPILIGNEUS* succeeded to the government immediately, *Spiligne-* and by an edict ordered all the *Germans* to depart the kingdom us II. within three days, not excepting his own mother, who afterwards married *Peter*, king of *Hungary*. Hearing, likewise, that his conduct was blamed in *Moravia*, he marched into that country, and took his brothers, *Conrad* and *Otho*, prisoners; but their elder brother *Wratislaus* flying into *Hungary*, there married *Adelheid*, the king's sister, which *Spiligneus* being informed of, he was reconciled to his brother, fearing lest the king of *Hungary* should espouse his quarrel.

A. C.  
1055.

*Spiligneus* dying, was succeeded by his brother *Wratislaus*, who divided *Moravia* betwixt his brothers *Conrad* and *Otho*, his youngest brother *Jaromirius* being designed to succeed to the bishoprick of *Prague*. The *Poles*, about this time, preparing to invade *Bohemia*, *Wratislaus* assembled an army at *Glatz*; but his wife *Adelheid* being dead, he concluded a peace by marrying *Suatava*, the king's sister, and ended all disputes about *Silesia*, which was entirely ceded to *Bohemia*. A dispute soon after arising betwixt the emperor *Henry* and his son, *Wratislaus* assisted the emperor, and defeated *Leopold*, marquis of *Austria*, who had invaded *Moravia*. But *Henry*, the emperor's son, having taken his father prisoner, shut him up in prison, where he died, and succeeded himself to the imperial throne. Soon after holding a diet at *Mentz*, and considering the great possessions of *Wratislaus*, he declared him king of *Bohemia*; and as a favour to *Jaromirius*, now called *Gerard*, bishop of *Prague*, he joined *Olmütz* to that bishoprick. The inhabitants of *Lusace* threatening a rebellion, he sent his eldest son *Bretislaus* to quell them, who defeated them in several skirmishes; but afterwards refusing obedience to his father, he was banished to *Pannonia*, and his younger brother *Conrad* succeeded to the kingdom, but enjoyed it only seven months. Upon his death, the states assembling continued for some doubtful, whether they should recal *Bretislaus* from his banishment, or confer the kingdom upon the sons of *Conrad*; but *Bretislaus* approaching the frontiers, they sent deputies to him with an offer of the crown. *Bretislaus* arriving at *Prague*, made himself very popular, and married *Lucretia*, daughter of the palatine of the *Rhine*. Afterwards he published an edict against sorcery and witchcraft, which again began to prevail in the kingdom; and the *Poles* having taken possession of *Silesia*, he recovered that province from them, and enriched his exchequer by the confiscated estates

Wratif-  
laus II.  
A. C.  
1061.

Created  
king of  
Bohemia.  
A. C.  
1086.

Conrad I.  
A. C.  
1092.  
Bretislaus.  
A. C.  
1093.

- estates of many of the lords who had favoured the *Polish* invasion. He likewise seized upon the riches of the Jews, and having defeated the sons of *Conrad*, who from *Austria* made incursions into *Moravia*, he afterwards received the investiture of his states from the emperor at *Ratisbon*, but was soon after killed by an arrow when he was hunting. *Borivorius*, his brother, succeeded him, and met with great disturbance in the beginning of his reign from *Udalricus*, the son of his eldest brother *Conrad*, whom he had set free from his imprisonment in the castle of *Glatz*. *Udalricus* was no sooner forced to submit, than *Suatoplucus* his cousin, pretended to the kingdom, whose faction prevailing, *Borivorius* was forced to fly to *Poland*, and from thence to the emperor; but he had no redress, his competitor being settled in the government with the consent of the states. *Suatoplucus* afterwards attending the emperor in his wars in *Hungary*, was assassinated by a traitor in his camp. *Uladislaus*, third son of *Wratislaus*, succeeded his cousin; but going to receive the investiture of the crown from the emperor, his exiled brother *Borivorius* privately entered *Prague*, and assumed the government. Being informed of this, *Uladislaus* returned from his journey, and, after some skirmishes, the dispute was referred to the decision of the emperor, who determined in favour of *Uladislaus*. Soon after *Sobiefflaus*, his youngest brother, pretended to the crown, and with the assistance of the *Poles* invaded the kingdom; but the two brothers being reconciled by their mother, *Lusace* was ceded to *Sobiefflaus*, and *Borivorius* was likewise called to a partnership of the throne; but shewing a partiality to the *Germans*, he was afterwards obliged to fly into *Hungary*. *Uladislaus* dying, left three sons, but his youngest brother *Sobiefflaus* succeeded to the crown. His cousin *Otho* complaining to the emperor *Lotharius* of the injury done him by the *Bohemians*, that emperor marched at the head of a powerful army into *Bohemia*, where he was defeated by *Sobiefflaus*; and *Otho* the competitor dying, a peace was concluded, and *Sobiefflaus* assisting the emperor against *Bavaria*, *Lotharius* confirmed *Lusace* to the duke's son, and was guarantee of a peace between *Sobiefflaus* and the king of *Poland*. After the death of *Lotharius*, *Conrad* having got himself fixed in the imperial throne, by the assistance of *Sobiefflaus* and other princes of *Germany*, he, at the desire of *Sobiefflaus*, gave the investiture of *Bohemia* to *Uladislaus*, eldest son of his late brother. *Uladislaus*, succeeding his uncle, was soon disturbed in his government by *Conrad*, who pretended to the crown; but the emperor marching to the assistance of *Uladislaus*, *Conrad* was defeated, and afterwards being reconciled
- Borivorius* II.  
A. C.  
1100.
- Suatoplucus*.  
A. C.  
1107.
- Uladislaus* I.  
A. C.  
1109.
- Sobiefflaus*.  
A. C.  
1125.
- Uladislaus* II.  
A. C.  
1140.

conciled to the emperor, went to the Holy Land against the Turks.

ABOUT this time, *Henry*, bishop of *Olmütz*, went to *Rome* to complain of the irregularities daily committed by the priests, and returned with a legate of pope *Eugenius III.* having full power to enquire into, and redress the abuses. *Frederic Barbarossa* being elected emperor, and going to *Rome* to be crowned, he left *Uladislaus* as a vicar of the empire in his absence; afterwards inviting him to his marriage, he crowned him king of *Bohemia*; for which favour *Uladislaus* attended the emperor into *Lombardy*, and assisted at the king of *Milan*. Upon his return from *Lombardy*, he brought *Bohemia*. an *Italian* architect with him, by whose direction a bridge of twenty-four arches was built over the river *Muldaw*. The city of *Milan* again rebelling, *Uladislaus* sent assistance to the emperor, under the command of his son *Frederic* and his brother *Theobald*; and when they returned, he retired into a monastery, and resigned the government to his son *Frederic*, who, not obtaining the investiture of the emperor, was obliged to go into banishment in *Pannonia*, while *Udalricus*, on whom the emperor confirmed the kingdom, resigned it to his elder brother *Sobieslaus*; but he soon displeasing the emperor, *Frederic* again recovered his dignity. *Frederic* soon after going to the diet at *Ratisbon*, *Sobieslaus* in his absence endeavoured to recover the kingdom, and twice defeated him in his return; but by the assistance of the inhabitants of *Prague*, *Frederic* at last entirely routed him. The emperor soon after summoning *Frederic* to another diet at *Ratisbon*, in his absence another pretender seized the government; but the emperor giving him the investiture of the kingdom, sent him back with a sufficient force to expel his rival *Conrad*, who afterwards went to the Holy Land. Upon his return, *Frederic* dying, he was elected king; but going soon after to *Naples* to assist the emperor in the siege of that city, he died there of a contagious distemper. Upon his death, two relations, *Wenceslaus* and *Premislaus*, disputed the crown: *Wenceslaus* was favoured by the inhabitants of *Prague*, but fearing the power of his rival, he went to beg the assistance of the emperor, and in his return was taken prisoner by the marquis of *Lusace*. *Premislaus* then seized the government, but being summoned by the emperor to give an account of his usurpation, he left *Bohemia*, and retired into *Moravia*. The states afterwards chose their bishop *Henry* for their king, who administrated the government with great prudence; but desiring to resign upon account of his age, *Premislaus* returned from *Moravia* with his brother *Uladislaus*, in order to seize

Frederic.

A. C.

1175.

Conrad II.

A. C.

1190.

Henry.

A. C.

1193.

seize

Uladif-  
laus.

A. C.  
1196.

Premif-  
laus

A. C.  
1196.

feize the government ; but the people, from their affection to *Henry*, defeated the invaders, took *Uladiflaus* prisoner, whom they confined, and obliged *Premislaus* to fly ; but *Henry* again assembling the states, resigned the government into their hands, and retired to *Egra*, where he died. Upon his death, the states took *Uladiflaus* from his prison, and declared him king. His elder brother *Premislaus*, who was reduced to be an assistant to some masons at *Ratisbon*, hearing of his promotion, returned immediately to *Prague*, where an agreement was concluded betwixt them, *Premislaus* being put in possession of the kingdom, and resigning *Moravia* to his brother. Soon after, at the persuasion of the king of *France*, he declared for *Philip*, who was then disputing the imperial dignity with *Otho* ; however, he quickly changed his party, and favoured *Otho's* cause so zealously, that he got the name of *Otbischgar*, turned afterwards by the *Bohemians* to *Othogar*. He again embraced the party of *Philip*, who gave his daughter *Cunegunda* in marriage to his son *Wenceslaus*, and at last obtained the quiet possession of the empire. He being assassinated at *Bamberg*, and *Otho* succeeding to the empire, *Premislaus* was again reconciled to him, and promised him 300 men to attend him during his expedition to *Rome* to receive the imperial crown. The new emperor having a rupture with the court of *Rome*, was excommunicated by the pope, who prevailed with the electors to chuse *Frederic II.* at whose election *Premislaus* was present, and obtained from him the privilege of being absent from the diets of the empire, unless when they were held at *Bamberg*, *Nuremberg*, or *Ratisbon*, and an exemption from paying any taxes. Towards towards the end of his long reign, he caused his son *Wenceslaus* to be crowned, in order to secure the succession to his family, and soon after died at *Prague*.

Wences-  
laus IV.

A. C.  
1123.

*WENCESLAUS* was surnamed *Othogar*, and in the beginning of his reign was engaged in repelling an invasion of the *Austrians*, who ravaged *Moravia*, but were defeated by the *Bohemians* under the command of *Premislaus*, the king's son. Soon after, he gave assistance to the marquis of *Brandenburgh* against the bishops of *Magdeburgh* and *Halberstadt* ; but having oppressed his subjects with heavy taxes to support his great profusion, he raised a general disaffection to his government ; so that, at the instigation of the nobles, his own son *Premislaus* rebelled against him. This rebellion, however, was soon quelled ; for *Wenceslaus* marching against the rebels, entirely defeated them, and took his son prisoner. Not long after, he had a more formidable enemy to contend with ;

with; for the *Thucari* or *Thattari*, a people of *Scythia*, had left their own country, to the number of 500,000; and after overrunning *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and part of *Russia*; invaded *Moravia*, and besieged *Olmütz*. He marched with an army to the relief of the city, and in some skirmishes with the barbarians having killed one of their generals, they thought proper to raise the siege, to evacuate his dominions, and to march into *Hungary*.

*WENCESLAUS* dying, his son *Premislaus* succeeded to the kingdom, and took the name of *Othogar*. After settling his affairs in *Bohemia*, he went to take possession of *Austria*, where he had been chosen duke upon the death of *Frederic*, the last of the *Austrian* line. While he continued in that duchy, he purchased from *Udalricus*, duke of *Carinthia*, a part of *Carinthia*, all *Stiria*, and the port of *Naon*, in the *Adriatic*. Marching afterwards to oppose the *Prussians*, who had declared war against the Christians, he defeated them in several engagements; upon which success, many of those people consented to abandon Paganism, and two of their chiefs were baptized. Having established his government in *Prussia*, and built *Königsberg*, he returned with his army to *Stiria* to repel an invasion of the *Hungarians*. He at first agreed to a truce with the invaders, which they basely violated, and hoping to surprize him, attacked his camp in the night, but they were repulsed with loss, and entirely defeated. Upon the news of this victory, the cities of *Verona*, *Feltri*, and *Trevise*, sent an embassy to him, desiring his protection. After his return to *Bohemia*, he received an offer of the imperial crown, which he is said disdainfully to have rejected, which refusal in the end proved his ruin; for *Rodolphus*, count of *Hapsburgh*, who had formerly been great marshal of his court, having been elected, he in disdain refused to do him homage, and to take the investiture of his states from him. At last, he found the necessity of complying, and according to the custom, on his knees, delivered five standards to the emperor for the five fiefs which he possessed. But *Rodolphus* only returning him two, and keeping those for *Carinthia*, *Austria*, and *Stiria*, which he alleged he had no right to, a war ensued, in which *Othogar* lost his life.

*WENCESLAUS* succeeded his father *Othogar*, and being Wenceslaus V. only eight years of age, was put under the guardianship of his uncle the marquis of *Brandenburgh*. In his fifteenth year he was declared of age, and soon after married *Judith*, the emperor's daughter. As the kingdom of *Poland* about this time was torn to pieces by the factions of the nobles, *Wenceslaus* obtained possession of the provinces of *Sandomir* and

Othogar.  
A. C.  
1255.

A. C.  
1278.

*Cracow*; and *Premislaus*, who was some time after chosen king of *Poland*, being killed immediately after by the marquis of *Brandenburgh*, in an engagement in *Pomerania*, he succeeded him in that kingdom. After his coronation at *Cracow*, he left the administration of the government of *Poland* to a viceroy, and returned to *Bohemia*, when he proposed to commit the laws of the kingdom to writing; for which purpose he sent for one *Gotius*, a celebrated lawyer, from *Orvieto*, in *Italy*; but his design, for what reason is uncertain, was opposed by the states. About the same time, he received an offer of the crown of *Hungary*; but not chusing to go himself into that kingdom, he sent his young son thither, who was also chosen king. Soon after, hearing that his son only enjoyed the title without any authority, while the nobles by their factions harassed the kingdom, he recalled him to *Bohemia*, and not long after his return, died at *Prague*.

Wenceslaus VI.

A. C.  
1308.

*WENCESLAUS* succeeded to the kingdom in the sixteenth year of his age. He entirely neglected the administration of government, and spent his time wholly in rioting and feasting. He married *Viola*, the daughter of one of his nobles, and gave his sister *Anne* in marriage to *Henry* duke of *Carinthia*. Being, after much entreaty, prevailed upon to go into *Poland* to take possession of that kingdom, he gave orders for assembling an army, and in the mean time proceeded to *Olmütz*, where he was assassinated in his chamber, after he had reigned only one year. As he was the last of the male descendants of the first duke *Premislaus*, *Henry* duke of *Carinthia*, who had married his sister *Anne*, was proposed as a successor. A faction of the nobles however proposed *Rodolphus*, the son of the emperor, who was acknowledged as king by a numerous party; but while his father was reducing the malecontents, he died, and left the succession to his competitor *Henry*, who, after a short reign of three years, was expelled from the kingdom for his bad government, and obliged to retire to his hereditary dominions.

Rodolphus.

A. C.  
1306.

Henry.

A. C.  
1307.

John.

A. C.  
1310.

His successor was *John*, the son of the emperor *Henry* VII. of the family of *Luxemburgh*, who had married *Elizabeth*, the youngest sister of *Wenceslaus*. He received the crown by a formal deputation of the states, and after a dispute for some time with his competitor, he at last obtained quiet possession of the kingdom. As the dispute about the succession had given great opportunities to robbers and banditti, the king's first care was to repress them, and to establish good order in his dominions. During his father's expedition to *Italy* for the imperial crown, he was appointed vicar of

of the empire, when he occasioned some murmuring amongst his subjects, by the encouragement he gave to the *Germans*. To quiet the discontents, he sent back the *Germans*, and gave their places to *Bohemians*, who were quickly found to be more oppressive than the foreigners had been. *John* punished the oppressors in an exemplary manner, and soon after gave assistance to the emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* against his competitor *Frederic*, set up in opposition to him by the popes, who had excommunicated and deposed him, because he refused to submit to their usurpations. Some years after, the inhabitants of *Brescia*, being oppressed by another faction in *Italy*, begged assistance of *John*, who marched into that kingdom, and made himself master of several places. The emperor, jealous of his power, and offended with him for taking part in the disputes in *Italy*, persuaded the dukes of *Saxony* and *Austria* to attack his dominions during his absence. This unexpected invasion obliged him to leave the care of his army in *Italy* to his son *Charles*, and to return to *Bohemia*. He quickly repulsed the invaders, while the young prince *Charles*, who was then only in the sixteenth year of his age, gained a signal victory over the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines* in *Lombardy*. *John*, the following year, returned to *Italy*, where he spent the whole summer in reducing the revolted cities. Finding the war very expensive, he divided his conquests among some *Italians*, who had continued faithful to him, and sending his son *Charles* to *Bohemia*, he himself went to the county of *Luxemburgh*, to carry on a war against the duke of *Brabant*. From *Luxemburgh* a few years after, he returned to *Bohemia* with his new queen *Beatrice*, daughter of the duke of *Bourbon*, and being jealous of the authority of his son *Charles*, he deprived him of all command. Soon after, he marched against his son-in-law *Otho* duke of *Austria*, who, with the emperor, had made a partition of the territories of the duke of *Carinthia*, which, by a former treaty, should have been left to the king of *Bohemia*'s second son *John*. On account of this succession, a new war was raised in *Bavaria*, *Austria*, *Carinthia*, and *Tyrol*, in which likewise the *Veronese*, and some other *Italian* states, engaged as auxiliaries to the emperor. Towards the end of *September*, an accommodation was concluded, when the king of *Bohemia* consented to allow his son-in-law *Otho* to retain the duchy of *Carinthia*. Immediately after the conclusion of this treaty, he undertook an unsuccessful expedition into *Prussia* against the *Lithuanians*; from whence, without visiting his kingdom of *Bohemia*, he returned to *Luxemburgh*. Soon after, he took a journey to *Montpelier*.

in *France*, in expectation that the fine air would cure him of a distemper in his eyes; but becoming quite blind, he returned from thence with his son *Charles* to *Avignon*, where he had a conference with pope *Benedict XII.* and afterwards returned to *France*. The year after, he again visited *Bohemia*, which kingdom he resigned to his son *Charles*, and receiving from him 5000 crowns, he again went to *France*. After an absence of two years, he visited his son at *Prague*, and went with him and several other *German* princes upon an expedition into *Prussia*, which again proved unsuccessful, by the mildness of the winter, which prevented the rivers from being passable. A few years after, the emperor, with the king of *Hungary*, the duke of *Austria*, the king of *Poland*, the marquis of *Misnia*, and the duke of *Schweidnitz*, formed a league against him, and the king of *Poland* began hostilities by attacking *Sear*, a city of the duke of *Opavia*. *John* marched with great dispatch to the relief of the place, and having obliged the *Poles* to retreat, he besieged *Gracow*, and compelled the king to agree to a peace, in which the rest of his allies were comprehended. After the conclusion of this peace, *John* went with his son *Charles* to *Clement VI.* at *Avignon*, where he entered into a negociation for procuring the imperial crown for *Charles*. The pope having obtained several promises from *Charles*, all tending to the advancement of the power of the *Roman* see, he published a Bull, deposing *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and ordering the electors to chuse *Charles*, marquis of *Moravia*. *John*, having thus procured the imperial dignity for his son, proceeded with him to *France* to the assistance of *Philip* against the *English*, where he was slain in the famous battle of *Cressy* <sup>n</sup>.

Charles  
IV. em-  
peror.

A. C.

1347.

*CHARLES* succeeding his father, created his brother *John* marquis of *Moravia*, caused an university to be erected in *Prague*, upon the same plan with that of *Paris*, and prevailed with *Clement VI.* to erect the see of *Prague* into an archbishopric. As the marquis of *Brandenburgh*, the son of the late emperor, in defence of his father's right, had attacked *Bohemia*, *Charles* declared war against him, and raised up another competitor for the electorate, who was at first greatly favoured by the people. The marquis at length, finding himself unable to support the war, came to an accommodation with the emperor, who allowed him to resign his electorate to his brother. *Charles* afterwards visited the free cities of *Germany*, and married *Anne*, daughter of the count palatine of the *Rhine*. The year following, he went to *Rome*,

<sup>n</sup> CAROLI, in vita sua.

where



where he and his empress were crowned. In his return, he brought with him to *Prague* from *Ticino*, the relicts of *St. Vitus*, patron of *Bohemia*. He likewise enlarged and beautified his capital, by adding what is called the new city, in which he founded the college of *Carlsheim*. He recovered a great many of the royal castles, which his father had mortgaged, adorned that of *Wissegrad*, built several monasteries and churches, which he furnished with relicts, and by the assistance of learned men, reduced the laws of the kingdom to writing, which are still extant, under the name of *Caroline* constitutions\*. He generally resided in *Bohemia*, and was more intent upon establishing his family than the administration of the empire. By several peaceable acquisitions, he greatly enlarged his hereditary dominions, and caused his son *Wenceslaus* to be crowned king in the second year of his age. Not long after, he marched with an army to the relief of *Strasburgh*, which was besieged by 40,000 *Lithuanians*, by some called *Anglis*, and having obliged the enemy to raise the siege, he pursued them as far as *Colman*, and entirely dispersed their mutinous army. He then disbanded his troops, and made a progress through the cities of the *Rhine* and *Lower Saxony*, and going into *Holland*, he there concluded an alliance betwixt his son *Wenceslaus* and *Joanna*, the earl's daughter. After the conclusion of this alliance, he prevailed with the electors to chuse *Wenceslaus* king of the *Romans*, though he was then only in the sixteenth year of his age. Returning afterwards to *Bohemia*, he endeavoured to join the *Moldavi* to the *Danube*; but dying before he could compleat his design, he recommended the execution of it to his son.

*WENCESLAUS*, upon succeeding to the crown, abandoned himself to dissoluteness and luxury. Neglecting all care of the government, he spent his time among public prostitutes, and being besides of a cruel and savage disposition, he was generally attended with the executioner, who frequently rode upon the same horse with himself. By his barbarity and cruelty, he became odious to his subjects, who seized him, and threw him into the common prison, where he continued several months; but obtaining leave to come out to bathe himself, he deceived his guards, prevailed on a woman, who was likewise bathing, to ferry him over the *Muldaw*, and escaping naked with his naked attendant to one of his castles near *Prague*, he there married his deliverer, as his first wife was lately dead. He was, the following year, seized a second time, and kept a prisoner privately at *Vienna*, his brother

\* *Bohemia Pia* Anaz Sylv. Hist. Boh.

• *Idem* *ibid.*

A. C.  
1409.

*Sigismund*, who in right of his wife enjoyed the crown of *Hungary*, coming from thence to succeed him in the throne. In the mean time, *Wenceslaus* escaping by means of a poor fisherman from *Vienna*, returned to *Wissegrad*, and took possession of his kingdom. About this time, pope *Boniface* having published a bull for holding a jubile at *Rome*, *Wenceslaus* obtained the privilege of celebrating one at *Prague*, where great numbers assembled, out of devotion, to the relics, and to have the pardon of their sins. *John Hufs*, a celebrated preacher, having lately had some disputes with the *Germans* in the university, about the succession to a benefice, exclaimed greatly against the indulgences of the pope; and being seconded by one *Jerome*, a professor of the university, their discourses made a great impression on the people, who openly espoused their doctrines, and had several skirmishes in the city with those who adhered to the tenets of the *Romish* church. The archbishop, not being able to prevail with *Wenceslaus* to concern himself in the disturbances which were every day encreasing, went to ask the assistance of *Sigismund*, king of *Hungary*. He died on his journey, and his successor *Albicus*, who was addicted wholly to avarice, neglected entirely all care of religion; so that *Hufs*, who by the former archbishop had been banished from *Prague*, now returned to the city, and preached publicly with great boldness against the indulgences of the pope. *Wenceslaus*, in the mean time, was deposed from the imperial dignity, at which news he expressed great joy, as he thought himself thereby more at leisure to indulge in riot and excess. His successor in the empire was *Robert*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, who enjoyed the imperial dignity ten years, and was succeeded by *Sigismund*, king of *Hungary*. The disturbances still continuing in *Bohemia* on account of religion, the emperor, three years after his election, assembled a general council at *Constance*, for the reformation of the church, and granted a safe-conduct to *John Hufs* and *Jerome* of *Prague* to appear before that assembly. Notwithstanding this safe-conduct, and although they defended their doctrines with great eloquence and strength of argument, they were both condemned and burnt as heretics. This act of injustice only served to increase the troubles in *Bohemia*; for their disciples, upon the news of their martyrdom, assembled to the number of 30,000, and in the first place resolved to solemnize the day of their death annually. They then spread 300 tables in the open fields, where they took the communion in both kinds, according to their doctrine, and proceeding afterwards through the whole kingdom, pillaged and destroyed all the churches and monasteries,

teries, which in *Bohemia* were remarkable for their grandeur and riches. In *Prague* they plundered the palace of the archbishop, and going from thence to the chief square, they seized the magistrates of the city, and threw them from the windows upon the pikes and spears of those who stood below. *Wenceslaus* was at length roused by the violence of the tumult, and making enquiry after the chief of the rioters, his cup-bearer imprudently told him, that he knew the tumult would happen three days before. The king, enraged at this speech, seized the cup-bearer, and threw him at his feet, and attempted to stab him with a dagger; but he himself in the mean time was seized with an apoplexy, of which he died a few days after <sup>1</sup>.

WHEN *Wenceslaus* died, his brother *Sigismund* was at war with the *Turks*, and delayed coming to *Prague* for some time, till he had secured *Hungary* from the infidels. The *Hussites*, in the mean time, under the command of *John Zisca*, made themselves masters of *Pilsen*, and after a dispute of five days, got possession of the lower town of *Prague*, and of the bridge over the *Muldaw*. Before *Sigismund* entered the kingdom, they sent deputies to him, desiring liberty of conscience: he received them at *Brin* in *Moravia*; but instead of granting their request, he only declared, that he intended to govern the kingdom as his father had done. He proceeded from thence to *Breslaw* in *Silesia*, to punish the authors of an insurrection in that capital, and imprudently left the *Hussites* to strengthen themselves in *Bohemia*. As the emperor's answer to their deputies gave them no room to hope for a toleration of their new opinions, they took possession of *Prague*, *Pilsen*, and several other places, and fortified a mountain, which they called *Tabor*, and made their principal retreat. *Sigismund*, in the mean time, had assembled an army of *Germans* and *Hungarians*, and entering *Bohemia*, laid siege to *Prague*. However, he only made himself master of the castle of *Wissegrad*, where he was crowned; for though he assaulted the city several times, and continued before it two months, he was obliged to retire with considerable loss. The *Taborites*, after many successful campaigns, and desperate engagements, not only made themselves masters of *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, but likewise carried their victorious arms into *Saxony*, *Austria*, and other provinces of *Germany*. *Sigismund*, finding it impossible to reduce them by arms, had recourse to a secret negotiation with their renowned, though blind leader, *John Zisca*, to whom he offered the government.

<sup>1</sup> *Iidem* ut supra. DUBRAY. Hist. Bohem.

A. C.  
1431.

of the kingdom, and a large sum of money, if he would acknowledge him as king, and oblige the cities to swear allegiance to him. *Zisca* died while he was on his journey towards the place appointed for the confederates. Upon his death, his followers separated under different leaders, one party chusing *Procopius*, a priest, for their commander, and the other not thinking any one person worthy to succeed *Zisca*, called themselves orphans, and trusted the command to a select few. Both parties soon after joining under the command of *Procopius*, they defeated the Saxons at *Austria*, killing upwards of 12,000 of their men. They afterwards marched into *Austria*, where they entirely routed 100,000 Germans, who intended to have invaded *Bohemia*. After this victory, they defeated the marquis of *Misnia*, near *Leipsic*, ravaged *Lusace* and *Silesia*, and obliged several free cities of Germany to purchase their security with money. Their arms being every where victorious, cardinal *Julian* proposed to admit their priests to the council of *Basil*, and to allow them free liberty of dispute. *Procopius* accordingly repaired thither with 300 armed gentlemen, and after several conferences, obtained leave of the council to communicate under both kings. In his absence, the nobles, who had adhered to his party, entered into a resolution to restore peace to their country, and to deliver themselves from their arbitrary leader. Upon his return, an engagement happened betwixt the two parties, when he with the greatest part of his followers were killed. The nobles, not contented with victory, published an edict, desiring all those who had fought under *Procopius*, to assemble in the barns, where they should be enrolled for a new expedition. Upon the publication of this edict, many thousands of the *Taborites* assembled in the barns, where they were immediately enclosed and burnt, by which stratagem peace was at length restored, the tenets of the *Hussites* nevertheless prevailing almost through the whole kingdom. During these transactions, *Sigismund* had been at *Rome* to receive the imperial crown, and had returned to *Ulm*. Hearing of the entire defeat of the *Taborites*, he repaired to *Ratisbon*, where he was saluted king by the deputies of the nobles, and also by *Coepchus* and *Rochezana*, as representatives of the *Hussites*. The king confirmed the grant of the council of *Basil*, which allowed them the use of the cup in the communion; and having agreed to several other private articles, he was received into *Prague* with great solemnity and rejoicing, after a ruinous war of sixteen years, occasioned by his breach of faith to *John Huss* and *Jerome of Prague*.

*Prague.* He died the year following, having appointed his son-in-law *Albert of Austria*, his successor.

UPON the death of *Sigismund*, *Albert* was immediately crowned in *Hungary*, and soon after elected emperor at *Frankfort*. The *Hussites* in *Bohemia* rejected *Albert*, and chose *Casimir*, the brother of the king of *Poland*, who entered *Bohemia* at the head of an army, and was put in possession of the city of *Tabor*. *Albert*, however, was supported by the Catholics, and having defeated his rival, obtained quiet possession of the kingdom. He afterwards went to *Hungary* to oppose the *Turks*; where he died of a surfeit in the second year of his reign.

Soon after the death of *Albert*, his wife was delivered of a son, named *Ladislaws*, whom she put under the guardianship of his uncle *Frederic*, who, upon the death of her husband, was chosen emperor. After some difficulty, the states of *Bohemia* chose him for their king, appointing two nobles to have the administration of the government during his minority. The two regents were *Meynard* and *Ptasco*, the one a *Hussite*, and the other a Catholic. *Ptasco* soon after died, and the *Hussites*, to prevent *Meynard* from enjoying the whole power, declared *George Podiebrad* one of the prefecture, and admitted him into *Prague*, which was the head of their sect. He there surprised and imprisoned *Meynard*, settled the senate by his own authority, and having raised a considerable army, he obliged the provinces to acknowledge him as sole governor. The *Austrians*, being dissatisfied with the administration of the emperor, prevailed upon the young *Ladislaws* to assume the reins of government. Soon after, he received an embassy to the same purpose from the *Bohemians*, and upon his journey thither, the nobles met him at the confines, and offered him with the usual oath taken by their kings, and then presented the articles of their liberties, which he promised to observe. At his entry into the city of *Prague*, *Rochezana*, the chief of the *Hussite* priests, with his followers, saluted him, but were very coldly received by the king. He refused the archbishopric of *Prague* to *Rochezana*, and after his coronation, he went with the governor *George*, in whom he put great confidence, to *Silesia*, and from thence to *Vienna*. He returned to *Prague* a few years after to celebrate his marriage with *Magdalene*, daughter of *Charles VII.* king of *France*; but while the bride was on her journey, he died of a cholic, occasioned by eating turnips, in the eighteenth year of his age.

THERE never appeared so many candidates for the crown of *Bohemia* as at this time ; for besides the emperor, the two dukes of *Austria*, *Albert* and *Sigismund*, *Cosmirus* king of *Poland*, *William* duke of *Saxony*, the king of *France* proposed one of his sons as a candidate, offering to pay all the debts of the kingdom, to recover at his own expence all those countries that had been alienated from the crown, and to raise no taxes of any kind for seven years. But *Rochesana*, before the states went to the senate-house, assembled them in the church, where, in a long sermon, he represented the necessity of chusing a king of their own nation, who understood the constitution of the kingdom, and would defend the privileges they had obtained at the council of *Basil*. This discourse had such an effect upon their minds, that *George Podiebrad*, even before they entered the senate-house, was unanimously saluted king. Pope *Calixtus* consenting to his coronation, *George* took the usual oath of obeying the holy Roman church, of protecting and defending it, and of doing his utmost to recal his subjects from their errors and heresies. The consent of the pope procured him the allegiance of the greatest number of his subjects, and all the cities of *Moravia* opened their gates to him, except *Iglavia*, which he besieged for four months. *Moravia* at last submitted ; but *Silesia* and *Lusatia* still refused to acknowledge *George* as king, and many cities in both these provinces fortified themselves against him as an usurper and a heretic. In order to lessen their opposition, *George* sent an ambassador to *Rome* to renew his obedience, and to demand the ratification of the compactata of the council of *Basil*. The pope received his obedience, but instead of confirming the compactata, he sent two nuncios to *Bohemia* to explain them, but with secret orders, if possible, to abolish them. *George* suspecting, or being informed of the secret orders given to the nuncios, would not allow them to speak on the subject of the compactata, but calling an assembly of the states, reproached the pope for offering to violate the decrees of the council of *Basil*, and asked of them if they would assist him in defending the liberties of the nation. Being answered in the affirmative by his faction, he accused *Fantinus* the nuncio, that he had opposed the ratification of the compactata at *Rome*, and immediately ordered him to be imprisoned. Pope *Pius II.* being informed of these proceedings, summoned *George* to appear at *Rome* ; but he dying soon after his succession, *Paul II.* absolved the inhabitants of *Silesia* from their allegiance to *George*, and gave the kingdom of  
Bohem

*Bohemia* to *Matthias*, king of *Hungary*, who had married his daughter; but was now taught that no faith was to be kept with those who did not keep their faith with God and the church. *George*, though abandoned by *Moravia* and *Silesia*, and a great many of the nobles, who all took the part of *Matthias*, yet defended his kingdom a long time with great fortitude. At last, pitying the calamities which the nation suffered, he offered to fight his competitor in a single combat, but the conditions he proposed were objected to by *Matthias*. He died soon after, when the states assembled at *Cuthna* to elect a new king.

THOUGH the faction of *Matthias* was very powerful, yet *Uladislaus*, the majority of the states elected *Uladislaus*, the son of *Caslaus*. *Jimir*, king of *Poland*, who, soon after, received the investiture from the emperor. When *Matthias* understood that he was rejected, he invaded *Bohemia*, and ravaged the country; but *Uladislaus*, assisted by the *Babemians*, obliged him to retire. The year following, having received succours from his father, he recovered *Silesia*, and obliged *Matthias* to sue for a truce, which was agreed to for two years. *Uladislaus*, however, was not acceptable to the *Hussites*, and, upon his return to *Prague*, he was frequently in danger of his life by the tumults of the citizens, who publickly reviled him on account of his religion, and attacked his palace in a seditious manner. To avoid these tumults, he went to *Moravia*, where he concluded a peace with the king of *Hungary*, who with the sons of *Podiebrad*, was suspected of having privately excited the disturbances in *Prague*. *Matthias* dying of an apoplexy soon after, *Uladislaus* married his widow *Beatrice*, and with her took possession of *Hungary*; though he was at first opposed by his brother *Albert*, who was favoured by a party in that kingdom. After he had secured the quiet possession of his new crown, he divorced *Beatrice*, and married *Anna*, daughter of a duke of *Gascony*; and afterwards signalized himself in opposing *Bajazet II.* emperor of the *Turks*. During his absence from *Bohemia*, the disturbances in *Prague* greatly increased, and the *Hussites* at last created a bishop of their own sect. The king, after defeating the *Turks* in *Hungary*, returned to *Prague*, where, by his authority, he composed, in a great measure, the disputes about religion, and sent for learned men from *Italy*, in order to restore the university to its former lustre. About this time he had a daughter born to him, who was called *Anne*, and two years afterwards his wife was delivered of a son, named *Lewis*, who was crowned by the *Hungarians* while an infant. He was also crowned in *Bohemia*, which kingdom, on account of the factions

factions and different sects, still continued a scene of disorder and confusion. *Uladislaus*, after settling governors in *Bohemia*, with a supreme authority, went with his children to *Buda*, where he died soon after in the forty-fifth year of his reign over the *Bohemians*, and the twenty-third over the *Hungarians*.

Lewis.  
1516.

UPON the death of *Uladislaus*, the states of *Hungary* assembled at *Pesthum*, and declared his son of age and fit to govern, though he was not then quite eleven years old. The care of the government, however, was committed to *Stephen Bathoreus*, under the title of palatine of the kingdom. *Lewis* afterwards went into *Bohemia*, where the animosities of the parties subsiding, he was received with universal joy. About this time, sultan *Saliman* was defeated by the *Persians*, with the loss of 100,000 men. In order to appease the murmurs of his subjects, who threatened to depose him, he promised to repair his late losses by conquests from the *Hungarians*; and soon after surprised and took *Belgrade*, and marched with a powerful army into the kingdom. *Lewis* was then returned to *Buda*, where he was preparing to celebrate his nuptials, and was spending his time in feasting and entertainments. The loss of *Belgrade* alarmed the nation, and an inconsiderable army was assembled in haste; with which the king engaged the *Turks* at *Mohatz*, where he was entirely defeated and drowned in the *Danube* in his flight. After the death of *Lewis*, his dominions fell to *Ferdinand*, archduke of *Austria*, infant of *Spain*, and afterwards emperor, who had married *Anne*, the only daughter of *Uladislaus*. Both the empire, and the kingdom of *Bohemia*, have ever since continued in the *Austrian* family.

A. C.  
1527.



# THE HISTORY OF THE Electorate of SAXONY.

**T**HIS duchy and electorate takes its name from the ancient nation of the Saxons, which once possessed a great part of Germany; it is bounded on the east by *Lusace*, on the north by the margraviate of *Brandenburgh*, on the west by the principality of *Anhalt*, and on the south by *Misnia*. The duke, who is the sixth elector of the empire, besides this province, possesses *Misnia*, a part of *Thuringen*, and the marquissate of the *Higher* and *Lower Lusace*, which formerly made a part of *Bohemia*, a part of the county of *Mansfield*, and the abbey and territory of *Quedlemburg*.

THE air in *Saxony* is cold and sharp, but it is likewise very clear and healthful; the country does not produce wine, but yields abundance of corn; and in the mountains of *Misnia* there are several mines of silver, copper, and lead. The Saxons are large and robust, have very good natural parts, and are reckoned to have the mildest and most agreeable conversation of any in *Germany*. They eat much, chiefly of salt-flesh, and are addicted to excessive drinking. The gentlemen value themselves much upon their nobility, and almost never contract alliances with persons of an inferior rank. If any of them, not regarding the nobility of his blood, marries the daughter of a plebeian, whose wealth might be of service to his family, he is the object of a great deal of scorn, and they call him, in contempt, *Pepper-bag*. The matter even goes farther; for if a noble shall disgrace himself by an under-match, he runs the risk of being destroyed by the other gentlemen.

WITH regard to religion, only *Lutherism* and *Calvinism* were formerly allowed; but since the elector *Augustus* embraced the *Roman* religion, in order to his being elected king of *Poland*, the free exercise of that profession has been permitted; nevertheless, it is not the prevailing religion, *Lutheranism* is the most universal, and all the ecclesiastick possessions are in the hands of *Lutheran* lords. The language

of the common people is a mixture of *German* and *Slavonian*; but the people of distinction in this province talk the *German* language more pure than in any other part of the empire, and besides, they almost all understand the *French* or *Italian*.

*WITTEMBERG* is the capital city of the duchy of *Saxony*, well fortified upon the *Elbe*. The inhabitants of this city have a great veneration for the church in which *Luther* and *Melanchton* are interred, and value themselves for being the first who embraced this doctrine in their university, which is the most famous of all the protestant universities of *Germany*. The elector of *Saxony* ordinarily resides at *Dresden* upon the *Elbe*, in *Misnia*; which is a magnificent city, and strongly fortified. His palace and arsenal are the admiration of strangers, the one for the beauty and magnificence of its buildings and the richness of its furniture; and the other for the prodigious quantity of cannon and other arms. Other considerable cities belonging to the elector, are, *Pitska*, in *Bohemia*; *Bautzen*, the principal city of *Lusatia*; *Coningstein*, a strong fortress upon the *Elbe*, with an arsenal upon the frontiers of *Bohemia*; *Pirna*, a fine city upon the *Elbe*, in *Misnia*, defended by a castle called *Sonnestein*; *Torgau*, a strong city and castle upon the *Elbe* in *Misnia*; *Missin*, formerly a bishop's seat, at present an electoral city; *Leipsick*, a fine large trading city in *Misnia*, celebrated for the purity of the *German* language spoke there, and for three free fairs which are kept there every year. It is defended by *Pleissburgh*, a strong castle, and pretends to be a free and imperial city; but this privilege is disputed by the elector of *Saxony*. *Freiberg*, a large and strong city, is likewise in *Misnia*; here is the burying-place of the princes of the electoral house of *Saxony*. The four cities and bailliages, sequestered from the archbishoprick of *Magdebourg* by the peace of *Prague*, and afterwards by that of *Westphalia*, for the advantage of the elector of *Saxony*, are *Dama*, *Gutterbeck*, *Duerfurt*, and *Bork*, more considerable for their revenue than for their situation and beauty.

THE elector administers justice in the last instance in all his states, without appeal to the aulick chamber of the emperor, or to the imperial chamber of *Weizlar*. With regard to the lands and possessions that have been given to the younger sons of this family, the elector still retains the right of arms, protection, and superiority over these lands. This division was made about the year 1656, by the elector of *Saxony*, *John George I.* in favour of four of his children; namely, *John George II.* who succeeded him in the electorate,

*Au-*

*Augustus, Christian, and Maurice.* He gave *Augustus*, as his inheritance, the administrature of *Magdeburgh*, and a part of the lands that depend upon the house of *Saxony* in *Thuringia*, with three other bailliages. Duke *Christian* had the administration of the bishopric of *Merſburgh*, *Lower Luſace*, with three bailliages. Duke *Maurice* had all the poſſeſſions of his father in the *Voightland*, and in the county of *Henneberg*, with the biſhoprick of *Naumberg*, of which he was administrator. As all theſe brothers married, and had ſeveral children, this diviſion ſtill continues.

THE rights of the elector as grand marſhal of the empire *The privileges are very conſiderable.* At the election of the emperor, and *leges of the* when the emperor holds his court, the elector of *Saxony* carries the naked ſword before his imperial majeſty. *Wenceslaus*, duke of *Brabant*, indeed diſputed this right; but the emperor *Sigifmond* confirmed it to the electors of *Saxony* by a particular decree. In the diets and aſſemblies of the empire, eſpecially at the election of an emperor, he has the right of regulating the lodgings of the princes and deputies, and to make decrees with regard to the proviſions, that victuals may not be wanting in the place, and that they may be procured at a reaſonable rate. He publiſhes the day of the aſſembly after it has been appointed by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*; and, in the abſence of the ambaffador of the elector of *Mentz*, it belongs to him to regulate the aſſemblies; he pretends to have the right of putting a ſeal upon the effects of the miniſters who die during the holding of the diet, but this privilege is conteſted with him. He exerciſes all theſe rights, either by himſelf when he is preſent, or when he is abſent by the miniſters of the count of *Pappenheim* his vicar. In all military expeditions, where the emperor is preſent in perſon, the elector of *Saxony* pretends to the right of carrying the grand ſtandard of the empire, and of diſpoſing of the ſecond ſtandard; and the count of *Pappenheim* pretends to the ſame right in the abſence of the elector, and when the emperor is not in the army in perſon. The juriſdiction of the grand marſhal extended formerly to the games in the camp. It was not permitted unto any one to play unleſs under the ſtandard of the marſhal, and from this aroſe a certain revenue. But when the emperor *Sigifmond* prohibited playing in the camps, to indemnify the marſhal for the loſs he ſuffered by this prohibition, 200 florins were aſſigned him upon the city of *Nordlingen*, with part of the tax paid by the Jews of *Nuremberg*, which revenue the count of *Pappenheim* at preſent enjoys. He hath alſo the right of protection of the trumpeters and players upon fifes and other muſical inſtru-

instruments of war; so that even the electoral society of trumpeters of *Saxony* pretends to have an universal jurisdiction in causes concerning that art, although the marshals of the court claim the determination of these causes in the other states of the empire. If the see of *Mentz* be vacant, or the envoy of that elector be absent, the elector of *Saxony* pretends to preside in the diets; but this privilege is disputed with him by the electors of *Triers* and *Cologne*. The direction of the evangelic states, which he has often claimed in the diets of the empire, is likewise disputed with him. In quality of elector, he is the director and chief of the circle of *Upper Saxony*, and vicar of the empire when it is vacant. As margrave of *Misnia*, he is grand huntsman of the empire, a title conferred upon him by the emperor *Leopold*; and as margrave of *Lusace*, he has a right to ennobel. The principal of his hereditary officers, is the hereditary marshal of *Lafer*, who exercises that office in the acts of ceremony, and in the provincial diets.

The anti-ent inhabitants of Saxony.

THE part of *Germany* anciently called *Saxony* extended from the river *Eydor*, which divides *Denmark* from *Germany*, through *Westphalia*, almost as far as the *Lower Rhine*; on the west it had the *German ocean*, from *Hamburg* to *Friesland*, and it extended eastward almost as far as *Prussia*; thro' *Mecklenburg*, and part of *Pomerania*, continued in the possession of the *Wandales*, or *Sclavi*. The inhabitants, called *Saxons*, are supposed by some to be descended of the *Macedonians*; but others, with more probability, affirm, that they are the antient *Catli*, described by *Tacitus*; but whether these were the sons of *Sacæ*, a people of *Scythia*, cannot be determined by any authority of history. For the first 300 years after Christ, there is no mention of the *Saxons* in *Roman* authors; but *Danish* historians make mention of the *Saxons* in their annals sixty years before the Christian æra, and relate the wars betwixt the two nations, upon account of *Futland*, or the *Cimbric Chersonese*. *Eutropius* and *Orosius*, the first of the *Roman* authors that mention the *Saxons*, relate, that *Chaurasius* had orders to protect the *Belgic* and *Armoëtic* coasts from the invasions of the *Franks* and *Saxons*, they being early remarkable for their expeditions upon the *German* or *British* sea.

A.C. 350.

THE whole nation of the *Saxons* was governed by twelve chieftains, who were chosen annually; these elected one from among themselves, who was their chief judge, but had no further authority. When they had wars, they chose a

king, whose authority remained while the war continued, but at the conclusion of the peace he returned to his former station\*. The first of the *Saxon* kings mentioned in history is *Harderick*. *Anserick*, his successor, began to drive the *Thuringi* out of the duchy of *Bremen*, and the adjacent country near the mouth of the *Elbe*. Not long after, the *Saxons* extended themselves towards the *Oder*, and likewise drove the *Thuringi* from the countries called *Brunswick* and *Luneburgh*. About the beginning of the fourth century they made themselves known by their incursions upon the *Gallick* coast, and by land extended their dominions very much towards the west, which afterwards produced continual wars between them and the *Franks*. *Hengist*, who is reckoned the fourteenth of their kings, about the middle of the fifth century, went into *England* with a large colony, and established a *Saxon* government in that kingdom. In the beginning of the sixth century, *Theodoric*, king of *Austrasia*, called the *Saxons* to assist him against the *Thuringi*, and by their assistance, the whole kingdom of *Thuringia* was conquered, and divided between the *Saxons* and the *Franks*, the river *Unstrut* being appointed the common boundary. It having been the fashion, for a century or two past, for the *German* nations to emigrate, part of the *Suevi* and *Wandals* having settled in *Portugal*, *Spain*, and *Africa*, the *Franks* in *Gallia*, the *Saxons* in *Britain*, the *Burgundians* in the province of that name, the *Longobards*, another *German* nation, invaded *Pannonia*, and from thence being invited into *Italy*, they were joined by 20,000 *Saxons*, and took possession of *Lombardy*. But the *Longobards* settling themselves in the best part of *Italy*, and refusing to admit the *Saxons* to the same privileges with themselves, these people returned to their former habitations, which were now possessed by the *Suevi* and other nations. The *Saxons*, refusing any accommodation with these new inhabitants, a war ensued, which continued for some time, to the mutual destruction of both parties, so that at last they agreed to inhabit together†. The *Franks*, who had settled in *Gaul*, after many disputes with the *Saxons* about the province of *Thuringen*, at last obliged them to continue quiet and pay a tribute; but the *Vandals* invading that part of *Thuringia* subject to the *Franks*, they offered to release the *Saxons* from their tribute, upon condition that they expelled the *Vandals*. After their expulsion there still continued disputes between the *Franks* and the *Saxons* about the

\* Idem ibid. l. ii. c. 2.

† MEIBOM. Rer. Ger. Scrip. v. i. p. 222, and 223. Saxonii Krantzii, l. i. c. 29.

province of *Thuringen*; and the *Franks*, having been converted to Christianity, began to hate the *Saxons*, who still continued idolaters, and were averse to Christianity, because it was the religion of the *Franks*. *Charles Martel*, who was high steward to the *French* king, at this time having defeated the *Saracens*, who invaded the southern provinces of *France*, resolved to oblige the *Saxons* to forsake their idolatry, and declared war against them, but they were not reduced but by his grandson *Charlemain*<sup>u</sup>. *Pepin* the father of *Charles the*

A.C. 753. *Great*, having put his king *Childeric III.* into a convent, was declared king of *France* himself by the pope, and marched

A.C. 772. with a great army into *Saxony*. Having defeated the *Saxons*, he obliged them to pay a yearly tribute of an hundred stone horses. *Charlemain* succeeding his father, and being not only king of *France*, but emperor of *Germany*, resolved in a diet at *Worms* to continue the war against the *Saxons*, till they embraced the Christian religion. Entering their province, he took the city *Ebresburg* in *Westphalia*, destroyed their chief idol *Irminsula*, and received many hostages; but going afterwards to *Italy* against the *Longobards*, the *Saxons*, under the command of *Wittekind* their king, again recovered *Ebresburg*, and defeated the *Franks*. *Charlemain* returning from *Italy*, defeated the *Saxons*, and obliged *Wittekind* to fly into *Denmark*; but finding himself at last unable to resist the arms of *Charlemain*, after losing seventeen battles, he accepted of the conditions offered him by the emperor, and was baptized

A.C. 785. with his whole family by *Lullo*, bishop of *Mentz*<sup>x</sup>. The sovereignty of some provinces was left to him, and *Charles the Great* changed the black horse, which he wore in his escutcheon, into a white one, retained at this day by the house of *Brunswick*<sup>y</sup>. The *Saxons* were not quite reduced by the submission of *Wittekind*, but continued the war several years after; *Charles* defeated them in many battles, and transporting many thousands of them to *Flanders*, *Brabant*, and others countries, they were at last subdued in 804, after a calamitous war of thirty years.

A.C. 807. *WITTEKIND*, in his old age, made war against the *Suevi*, or *Suabians*, but was not able to bear the fatigues of the war. He was suffocated in his armour by the great heat, and buried at *Angria*, or *Anglia*, in *Westphalia*<sup>z</sup>. His son *Wigbert* brought *Hildesheim* into the form of a city, and made a journey to *Rome* out of devotion. His great grandson, *Ludolph*, enlarged the territories that had been left to his forefathers.

<sup>u</sup> Idem ibid. l. i. c. 33. <sup>x</sup> Idem ibid. l. ii. c. 13. <sup>y</sup> Idem ibid. l. ii. c. 24. <sup>z</sup> Idem ibid.

*Bruno* II. eldest son of *Ludolph* <sup>a</sup>, built the city of *Brünswick*; *Daneward*, the second son, built a castle in the city, which is called *Danewerderode*; and the youngest son, *Otho*, founded the convent of *St. Michael* at *Lunebourg*. After the death of *Lewis* IV. *Otho* was elected emperor, but declined that dignity upon account of his great age. *Otho*'s son, *Henry*, surnamed *the Fowler*, built the cities of *Goslar* and *Quedlinburgh*, and on the death of *Conrad*, the princes of the empire elected him emperor; *Conrad* himself, upon his death-bed, desiring his brother to carry the imperial ensigns to *Henry*, the succession to the empire being more in the appointment of the deceased at this time, than in the will of the electors. *Henry*, in order to secure the frontiers of the empire against foreign irruptions, appointed margraves, or governors of frontiers in *Sleswick*, *Brandenburg*, *Misnia*, and *Lusace*; as *Charlemain* had done in *Austria* and *Moravia*. He likewise founded several cities, and caused fortify many others, and ordered the youth to be exercised in arms, that they might be more expert in repelling invasions. He appointed his son *Otho* to succeed him, who, upon account of his many exploits, was surnamed *The Great*. He converted the *Danes* to Christianity, and left *Saxony* and the imperial dignity to his son *Otho*, surnamed *Rufus*, who was succeeded by his son *Otho* III. surnamed *Mirabilia Mundi*.

A.C. 912.

A.C. 919.  
Henry the  
Fowler,  
emperor.A.C. 936.  
Otho I.  
surnamed  
the Great,  
emperor.

*OTHO* the First, having great wars to maintain in *Italy*, which obliged him to be absent from *Germany* sometimes for several years; gave that part of *Saxony*, next to the *Danes*, and the *Heneti* or *Sclavi*, to *Herman Billung*, one of the ministers of his court, in order that he might repell the invasions of the barbarians. Being pleased with his conduct, he afterwards gave it to him as an hereditary fief, with the title of duke of *Saxony* <sup>b</sup>; the emperor still reserving the greatest part of *Saxony* to his own family. The posterity of *Herman* enjoyed this dignity for 146 years; but the male issue became extinct in *Magnus*, great grandson of *Berno*, eldest son of the first duke, who succeeded his father in 988. *Berno* dying in 1003, was succeeded by his son *Bernhard*, who left the duchy to his son *Ordulphus*, and upon his death his son *Magnus* succeeded him. *Magnus* dying in 1106, left only two daughters, the eldest of whom was married to *Henry the Black*, duke of *Bavaria*, of the *Guelphick* race, in whose right he ought to have inherited the duchy of *Saxony*; but the emperor *Henry* V. favouring *Lotharius*, count of *Supplinburgh*,

A.C. 960.  
Herman  
Billung,  
first duke  
of Saxony.A.C. 1106.  
Lotharius  
count of  
Supplin-  
burgh  
made duke  
of Saxony.

<sup>a</sup> Idem ibid. l. ii. c. 31.  
v. iii. p. 37.

<sup>b</sup> MEIBOM. Rer. Ger. Script.

who, in right of his wife, inherited another division of *Saxony* on the *Weſer*, conferred likewise on him the duchy of *Saxony* on the *Elbe*. But this disposition kept the duchy of *Saxony* only during one generation out of the family of *Magnus*, his grandson, *Henry*, surnamed *the Proud*, son of *Henry the Black*, again succeeding to *Saxony*, in right of his wife *Gertrand*, only daughter and heiress of *Lotharius*, who was now become emperor.

Henry the Proud, as duke of *Bavaria*, possessed all the countries from *Verona* in *Italy* northward to the *Danube*, and from *Lower Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carniola*, westward, to the borders of *Franconia*; afterwards commanding the emperor's army in *Italy*, he conquered *Tuscany*, and several other provinces which the emperor *Lotharius* his father-in-law ceded to him; and soon after he resigned to him the duchy of *Saxony* on the *Elbe*, and *Saxony* on the *Weſer*; which northern dominion *Henry* extended as far as *Lubeck*, by conquests from the *Polabi*, a race of *Veneds*. *Lotharius* dying the year following, declared *Henry* his successor, and left him the imperial ensigns. But *Conrad*, who had disputed the empire with *Lotharius* for five years, being now elected emperor, obliged *Henry* to deliver up the regalia; but afterwards *Henry* refusing to quit some of his possessions, at the emperor's desire he was put to the ban of the empire; *Conrad* giving *Bavaria* to his brother, the margrave of *Austria*, and *Saxony* to *Albert the Bear*, of the house of *Anhalt*. Notwithstanding this decree of the empire, many of *Henry's* subjects remained faithful to him, by whose assistance he still kept possession of great part of *Saxony*; but an accommodation being proposed at *Quedlinburgh*, *Henry* was poisoned there in the 40th year of his age.

A. C.  
1137.

A. C.  
1139. Henry the Lion, duke of Saxony. *HENRY the Lion* succeeded his father when he was but ten years of age, and his uncle *Guelph VII.* taking the administration of his states, concluded a peace with the emperor, by which *Henry the Lion* was reinstated in *Saxony*, and *Albert the Bear* should possess the margraviate of *Brandenburgh*; but *Henry's* mother marrying the margrave of *Austria*, the dukedom of *Bavaria* was confirmed to him. *Henry*, afterwards assisting the emperor *Frederic Barbarossa* in *Italy*, gained the favour of that emperor, by whose means he recovered *Bavaria*; but afterwards falling under the displeasure of *Frederick*, he was put to the ban of the empire, and deprived of all his states except *Brunswick* and *Luneburgh*, which still continue to his descendants. That part of *Saxony*, which

\* See the History of the electorate of Hanover.



came afterwards to be called the electorate of *Saxony*, was given to *Bernhard* of the house of *Anhalt*<sup>a</sup>.

**BERNARD III.** was the youngest son of *Albert the Bear*, A. C. count of *Ascania*, descended of a very ancient *Saxon* family, 1180. and related to *Wittekind*, the last king of the *Saxons*. *Bernard* dying in 1212, left by his wife *Jutha*, daughter of *Canut* king of *Denmark*, *Albert*, who succeeded him in the III. duke of *Saxony*. electorate, and *Henry* the old, author of the house of *Anhalt*.

**ALBERT I.** died in 1260, and had by his wife *Helena*, *Albert I.* daughter of the emperor *Otho IV.* *Albert II.* who succeeded him, and *John* the author of the house of *Saxe Lawenburg*.

**ALBERT II.** died in 1311, having had by his wife *Agnes*, *Albert II.* daughter of the emperor *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, *Rodolphus*, who succeeded him.

**RODOLPHUS I.** died in 1356, and left by his first wife *Judith*, daughter of *Otho*, margrave of *Brandenburg*, *Rodolphus I.* *Rodolphus* his successor; and by his second marriage with *Cunegunda* of *Poland*, he left *Wenceslaus*.

**RODOLPHUS II.** enjoyed the electorate twenty-three *Rodolphus II.* years, and leaving no male children, his brother *Wenceslaus* succeeded him.

**WENCESLAUS** died in 1383, leaving by his wife *Cecilia*, *Wenceslaus* daughter of *Francis*, marquis of *Carara*, *Rodolphus* and *Albert*.

**RODOLPHUS III.** enjoyed the electorate thirty-five *Rodolphus III.* years, and dying without children, his brother *Albert* succeeded him, and died in 1422, without leaving any posterity.

AFTER the death of *Albert III.* the succession was disputed by the dukes of *Saxe Lawenburgh*, the counts palatine, and the margraves of *Brandenburg*; but the emperor *Sigismund* deprived the dukes of *Saxe Lawenburg* of their right, preferable to the claim of the others, because they had not demanded the investiture soon enough, and gave the investiture of the electorate to *Frederick the Warrior*, landgrave of *Thuringen*, and margrave of *Misnia*.

**FREDERIC the Warlike**, chief of the modern electors of *Saxony*, is descended, according to some, from *Wittekind the Great*; but we shall only mention that *Conrad*, count of *Frederic* *Weißen*, obtained of the emperor *Lotharius II.* *Misnia* and the *War-Lusace*, which he left at his death in 1156, to his sons; like. namely, *Misnia* to *Otho* his eldest, and *Lusace* to *Dieteric* the youngest. *Otho* had a son named *Dieteric*, who bought

<sup>a</sup> MEIBOM. Rer. Ger. Script. v. iii. p. 343. See also the history of the electorate of Hanover.

*Lusace* from the emperor *Otho IV.* and married *Judith*, the daughter of *Herman*, landgrave of *Hesse* and *Thuringen*. Her brother *Henry* being killed at the siege of *Ulm*, and leaving no issue, the sons of *Judith* disputed the succession with the posterity of *Sophia*, who was daughter of *Louis*, brother to the deceased *Henry*, and had married the duke of *Brabant*. An accommodation being agreed to, *Henry*, son of *Sophia*, had the landgraviate of *Hesse*, and *Thuringen* was ceded to *Henry*, margrave of *Misnia*, surnamed the illustrious, son of *Dieteric* and *Judith*, who re-united in his person the landgraviate of *Thuringen*, and the margraviate of *Misnia* and *Lusace*. His son *Albert* married *Margaret*, daughter of the emperor *Frederick II.* who brought him the county of *Altemberg*, and the lordship of *Plaisi*. He had a son *Frederic*, who lived in 1308, who likewise had a son named *Frederic the Grave*, who was elected king of the *Romans*, but yielded his rights to *Charles IV.* He acquired the county of *Weimar*, and his son *Frederic the Valiant* had by his wife the principality of *Coburgh*. This last was father of *Frederic the Warlike*, first elector of *Saxony*, of the family of the margraves of *Misnia*. *Frederic* the elector, left by his wife *Catharine*, daughter of *Henry* duke of *Brunswick*, *Frederick*, who succeeded him, and *William*, who left issue, besides two daughters who were married to the landgrave of *Hesse*, and the elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Frederic  
II. the  
Pacific.  
A. C.  
1428.

*FREDERIC*, surnamed the *Pacific*, married *Margaret* daughter of *Ernest*, duke of *Austria*, and sister to the emperor *Frederic III.* by whom he had two sons, who survived him, namely, *Ernest* the author of the *Ernestine* branch, and *Albert the Courageous*, author of the *Albertine* branch. He had likewise four daughters, two of whom were abbesses, and the other two married to *Lewis the Rich*, duke of *Bavaria*, and *Albert* margrave of *Brandenburgh*.

Ernest.  
A. C.  
1464.

*ERNEST* married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Albert III.* duke of *Bavaria*, by whom he had *Frederic* his successor; *Albert*, or according to some *Ernest*, archbishop of *Mentz*; *Ernest*, or *Albert*, archbishop of *Magdebourg*; *John*, surnamed the *Constant*; *Christina*, married to the king of *Denmark*, and *Margaret*, married to *Henry*, duke of *Brunswick*.

Frederic  
the Wise.  
A. C.  
1486.

*FREDERIC the Wise* would never marry. The emperor *Maximilian I.* chose him for president of his council, and vicar-general of the empire. After the death of that emperor, the imperial crown was offered to him, but he refused it, and gave his vote for *Charles V.* whom he caused to be elected on certain conditions, in order to secure the liberty of *Germany*. From thence arises that capi-

capitulation which all the emperors have since been obliged to swear to before their election. This wife prince was one of the first protectors of *Luther*, and was succeeded by his brother *John*.

*JOHN*, surnamed the *Constant*, was the fourth son of *John the Ernest*, and was equally zealous as his brother for the establishment of *Lutheranism*. This prince married first; *Sophia*, daughter of *Magnus*, duke of *Mecklinburg*, by whom he had *John Frederic*, who succeeded him. By his second wife *Margaret*, daughter of *Woldemar*, prince of *Anhalt*, he had *John-Ernest*, who died without children; *Mary*, married to *Philip* duke of *Pomerania*, and *Margaret*, who died at the age of nineteen.

*JOHN Frederic*, surnamed the *Magnanimous*, was one of the principal supports of the protestant religion, and chief of the *Smalkaldic* league, which brought upon him the hatred of the emperor *Charles V.* which was still increased by his opposition to the election of *Ferdinand*, as king of the *Romans*. He maintained great wars against this emperor; but having lost the battle of *Mulberg*, where he was made prisoner, he was deprived by that emperor of his electorate, and the greatest part of his states, which were given to his cousin *Maurice*, son of *Albert the Courageous*. He consented to his deprivation before his death, contenting himself with the counties of *Altemburg*, *Sachsenburg*, *Hisenberg*, &c. with the title of elector till his death. His sons also subscribed this resignation, and made a family pact of mutual succession with their cousins at *Naumburg*.

*MAURICE*, to whom the emperor *Ferdinand* gave the electorate after the battle of *Mulberg*, was cousin-german to the last elector, *Albert* the younger son of *Frederic the Pacific* being his grandfather. *Albert* was governor of *Friseland*, and married *Zedena*, daughter of *George Podiebrad*, king of *Bohemia*, by whom he had, among other children, *Henry the Pious*, who, upon his return to the Holy Land, and *Compostella* in *Galicia*, introduced *Lutheranism* into his country. He married *Catharine*, daughter of *Magnus* duke of *Mecklinburg*, by whom he had two sons, *Maurice* and *Augustus*, and three daughters. *Maurice* the elector, married *Agnes*, daughter of *Philip*, landgrave of *Hesse*, but leaving no male issue, his brother succeeded him.

*AUGUSTUS*, surnamed the *Pious*, married first, *Anne*, daughter of *Christian III.* king of *Denmark*, by whom he had eight sons, who all died infants, except the *VIth Christian* who succeeded him; he had besides six daughters. His second

*John the Constant.*  
A. C.  
1525.

A. C.  
1532.

*Maurice.*  
A. C.  
1547.

*Augustus the Pious.*  
A. C.  
1553.

cond wife was *Agnes Hedwige*, daughter of *Joachim Erne*, prince of *Anhalt*.

**Christian I.** *CHRISTIAN I.* embraced Calvinism, and introduced that profession into *Saxony*. He married *Sophia*, daughter of *John George*, elector of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had *Christian II.* who succeeded him; *John George*, who continued the family; *Augustus* who died without posterity; *Sophia*, married to the duke of *Pomerania*; *Dorothy*, abbess of *Quedlinburgh*, and two other daughters that died infants.

**Christian II.** *CHRISTIAN II.* being a minor when his father died, was under the guardianship of the duke of *Weimar*, grandson of *John Frederic*, the last elector of the *Ernestine* line, who administered the government for ten years, and again introduced Lutheranism into *Saxony*; *Christian* married *Hedwige*, daughter of *Frederic II.* king of *Denmark*, but leaving no children, his brother *John George* succeeded him.

**John George I.** *JOHN George I.* married first *Sybylla*, daughter of *Frederic*, duke of *Wirtemberg*, who died without children. His second wife was *Margaret Sybylla*, daughter of *Albert Frederick*, margrave of *Brandenburgh*, and duke of *Prussia*, by whom he had *John George*, who succeeded him; *Augustus*, administrator of *Magdeburg*; *Christian*, administrator of *Mersburgh*; *Maurice*, administrator of *Naumburg*; besides three other sons who died infants, and three daughters, namely, *Sophia Eleonora*, married to *George II.* landgrave of *Hesse Darmstadt*; *Mary Elizabeth*, married to *Frederic*, duke of *Holstein Gottorp*; and *Magdalene Sybylla* married first, *Christian I.* prince of *Denmark*, and next to *Frederic William II.* duke of *Saxe Altenberg*.

**John George II.** *JOHN George II.* married *Magdalene Sybylla*, daughter of *Christian*, margrave of *Brandenburg Culmbach*, by whom he had *George* his successor, and *Ertmuth Sophia*, married to *Christian Ernest*, margrave of *Brandenburgh Anspach*.

**John George III.** *JOHN George III.* was declared grand huntsman of the empire by the emperor *Leopold*, in 1662. He signalized himself, on many occasions, during the different wars of the empire, against the *French* and *Turks*, especially at the raising of the siege of *Vienna*. He married *Anne Sophia*, daughter to *Frederick III.* king of *Denmark*, by whom he had *John George*, and *Frederic Augustus*, who both succeeded him in their turns.

**John George IV.** *JOHN George IV.* enjoyed the electorate only three years. He signalized himself in the war upon the *Rhine*, and in *Hungary* against the *Turks*; and married *Eleonora Ertmuth-Louisa*, widow of *John Frederic*, margrave of *Brandenburgh Anspach*, and daughter of *John George*, duke of *Saxe Eisenach*;

ach; but he died of the small-pox at *Dresden*, without leaving any issue.

*FREDERIC Augustus* succeeded to the electorate upon *Frederic* the death of his brother *John George*. He attached himself greatly to the interests of the house of *Austria*, and in his youth he continued a long time at the court of *Vienna*, where he became a particular friend of *Joseph*, king of the *Romans*, afterwards emperor. He signalized himself in the wars in *Hungary* against the *Turks*, and afterwards commanded the imperial army upon the *Rhine*. He was elected king of *Poland* by the credit and solicitations of the house of *Austria*, and having abjured *Lutheranism*, and made profession of the Catholic religion, he was crowned at *Cracovia* by the bishop of *Cujavia*. Having entered into an alliance with the king of *Denmark*, and czar of *Muscovy*, against *Charles XII.* king of *Sweden*, that prince invaded *Poland* and *Saxony*, and obliged him to renounce the crown of *Poland* in favour of *Stanislaus*. But the king of *Sweden* being afterwards entirely defeated at *Pultowa* by the *Muscovites*, *Augustus* again entered *Poland*, notwithstanding his renunciation, and by the assistance of the *Saxons*, recovered the kingdom. His reign was afterwards disturbed by intestine troubles, which were at last accommodated by the mediation of the czar of *Muscovy*. By his queen *Christina Everhardina*, of *Brandenburgh Bareith*, who died in the protestant religion in which she was educated, he had only one son named *Frederic Augustus*, who succeeded him.

A. C.  
1694-

*FREDERIC Augustus* made profession of the Catholic religion at *Bologna* in *Italy*, in 1712; but he kept this change a secret till the year 1717, when being at *Vienna*, at the emperor's court, he declared publicly that he was a Catholic, and assisted at the mass celebrated by the pope's nuncio. The emperor made him a knight of the Golden Fleece, and the king his father having named him president of his privy-council, and committed to him the general direction of all affairs within and without the kingdom, without any exception; he took his seat in that quality in the privy-council at *Varsovia* in 1726, and began from that time to give audience to foreign ministers and to those of the court. He succeeded to the electoral dignity, and the hereditary possessions of his house by the death of his father, and to the crown of *Poland*, after an interregnum of two years. He married at *Vienna*, *Mary-Josepha-Benedicta-Antoinetta-Theresa-Xavier-Philippina*, archduchess of *Austria*, eldest daughter of the late emperor *Joseph*, by whom he has *Frederic-Christian-Gregory-George-Francis-Leopold*, born at *Dresden*, the 5th of

II.  
A. C.  
1733-

Sep-

September, 1722. *Mary-Amelia-Christina-Frances-Xavier-Flora-Walpurga*, born at *Dresden*, the 24th of November, 1724. *Mary-Margaret-Frances-Xavier*, born at *Dresden*, the 12th of September, 1727. *Anne-Mary-Angelica-Xavier*, born at *Dresden*, the 29th of August, 1728. *Augustus-Albert-Francis-Xavier-Bennet*, born at *Dresden*, the 25th of August, 1730; and *Mary-Josepha-Carolina-Eleonora-Frances-Xavier*, born at *Dresden*, on the 4th of November, 1731.

---

### History of the Electorate of Bavaria.

The anti-  
ent extent  
of this  
duchy.

THIS duchy was formerly a kingdom, which extended from the mountains of *Franconia*, to the frontiers of *Hungary*, and the *Adriatic Gulph*. It comprehended the country of *Tirol*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, *Austria*, and other states, which, since that time have fallen to different princes. So that what at present is called *Bavaria*, is only composed of the dominions comprehended under the modern division of *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*. Although these two provinces have sometimes been augmented, and sometimes diminished by intestine wars; however, they consist of twelve counties, which formerly sufficed to make a duchy, according to the laws of *Franconia*. This country is watered by five navigable rivers, besides several smaller ones, and sixteen lakes. It contains thirty-five good cities, of which *Munich* is the capital, 94 towns, 720 castles, 4700 villages, 8 great abbeys, 75 cloisters, or monasteries, besides those of the Mendicants. It is bounded towards the east by *Bohemia* and *Austria*, towards the west by *Suabia*, by *Franconia* towards the north, and by *Tirol* towards the south. But the duke of *Bavaria* is not absolute master of all this country, for within its bounds are situated many free cities, among which is *Ratisbon*, and several lordships both ecclesiastical and secular.

*MUNICH*, the ordinary residence of the dukes of *Bavaria*, is a pretty large and populous city, *Henry the Lion*, of the house of *Brunswick*, caused build it of the ruins of the monastery of *Schefflaer*, from whence it was called *Munich*. Others refer its origin to duke *Otho*, who called it *Munchen*, from the head of a monk that was found in the foundations. It is near a very fine salt spring, which, at a small expence, is converted into fine white salt. The emperor, *Louis* of *Bavaria*,

*Bavaria*, gave it very large privileges, and *John*, duke of *Bavaria*, made it the capital of his dominions. The cities in *Bavaria*, most remarkable for their fortifications, are chiefly *Ingolstadt*, *Donawert*, *Landshut*, *Freiberg*, *Straubingen*, *Wilshausen*, *Wasserberg*, *Eling*, *Rain*, the castle of *Burkhausen*, *Branau*, *Scherting*, &c.

*BAVARIA* is divided into four great bailliages, which are called governments; namely, *Munich*, *Landshut*, *Straubing*, and *Burkhausen*; where justice is administered to the people which depend upon each bailliage; the appeals from these courts are carried before the sovereign council of the duke. As to the *Upper Palatinate*, which, by the last treaties of *Westphalia*, has been united to *Bavaria*, it is a duchy which comprehends several counties, cities, towns, and villages; the chief city is *Amberg*, which is the seat of the courts of justice for the whole province, and is situated upon the river *Vils*. Below *Amberg*, upon the same river, is *Waldeg*, a very strong castle, and the city of *Rotemburgh*, with a citadel strongly fortified. On the other side of this province is *Chamb*, the chief city of the county of the same name, belonging likewise to the duke of *Bavaria*.

BESIDES the duchy of *Bavaria* and the *Upper Palatinate*, the duke possesses the landgraviate of *Leichtenberg*, which fell to him by the death of *Maximilian Adam*, last landgrave of that name, in consequence of family pacts, made betwixt the house of *Bavaria* and that of *Leichtenberg*, for their mutual succession. He possesses likewise the county of *Kaag*, since the year 1567, when that county fell to him by the death of *Ladislaus*, the last count of that name. There is likewise family pacts of mutual succession established betwixt the house of *Bavaria*, and the palatine of the *Rhine*. The inhabitants in this country are strong and laborious, and exercise themselves in shooting with rifled muskets at a mark, or elevated pole, in order to render themselves more expert at arms in time of war.

ALL historians agree, that this house is one of the most ancient of *Germany*. The counts of *Scheyren*, whose castle is at present a cloyster, gave them the name. At that place are shewn the tombs of more than twenty-six lords of *Scheyren*. The emperor, *Otho I.* established as counts palatine of *Bavaria*, and landgraves of *Scheyren*, *Arnolph* and *Herman*, sons of *Arnolph*, brother of the duke *Berchtold*, of *Carinthia*, marquis of the country upon the *Ens*. The emperor *Otho I.* after the death of *Berchtold*, instead of giving *Bavaria* to *Henry* his son, gave it to duke *Henry* his brother, who had married *Judith*, sister of *Arnolph* and *Herman*. This duke

Henry

*Henry of Bavaria*, had by his marriage *Henry Hezillon*, who was succeeded by his son *Henry*, afterwards chosen emperor, under the name of *Henry II.* This emperor having no children by *Saint Cunigond* his wife, *Bavaria* passed again to the family of *Franconia*, and afterwards to that of *Suabia*, under *Henry IV.* who possessed it till the year 1071, when this last emperor gave that country to count *Wolf* or *Guelph*, of *Ravensburgh* in *Suabia*. To this *Guelph*, who died in the island of *Cyprus*, succeeded his son *Guelph II.* and to him his brother the duke *Henry IX.* who was succeeded by his son *Henry the Proud*, who had married the only daughter of the emperor *Lotharius*, and who, after the death of his father-in-law, became also duke of *Saxony*. But refusing to deliver up the imperial ornaments of his father-in-law, to the emperor *Conrad III.* duke of *Suabia*, or to acknowledge him for emperor, he was put to the ban of the empire, and lost his states. After whose death, the emperor *Conrad* made his brother *Leopold* marquis of *Austria*, and duke of *Bavaria*, who dying without issue, was succeeded by his brother *Henry XI.* whom the emperor *Fredric I.* made duke of *Austria*, joining together the two countries above and below the *Enn*, and declaring them free and independent of the jurisdiction of *Bavaria*. The same emperor *Frederic I.* gave *Bavaria*, thus dismembered, with *Saxony*, to *Henry the Lion*, son of *Henry the Proud*. But *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, afterwards losing the favour of the same emperor, was put to the ban of the empire, and lost all his possessions, except *Brunswick* and *Lunenburgh*, which still remain to his descendants. The duchy of *Bavaria* was given by the emperor to *Otho*, the landgrave of *Wittelsbach*\*, count palatine of the house of *Bavaria*, so that *Bavaria* returned again to its ancient princes and hereditary lords. It is from the time of this *Otho*, that the castle of *Scheyren* was changed into a monastery, where his body is interred.

\* 1180.

Otho I.  
Louis I.  
Otho the  
Illustrious.

Louis II.

*OTH O I.* called *the Grand*, was succeeded by his son *Louis I.* who destroyed *Wittelsbach*, because his cousin, who resided there, had killed the emperor *Philip*. His son *Otho the Illustrious* received the investiture of the palatinate of the *Rhine* from the emperor *Frederic II.* on account of his marriage with *Agnes*, grand-daughter of *Henry the Lion*. *Otho the Illustrious* died in 1245, and divided his possessions between his two sons *Louis II.* and *Henry*. *Louis* succeeded to the palatinate of the *Rhine* and the electorate, and *Henry* to the duchy of *Bavaria*; but his issue failing in the third generation, *Bavaria* returned to the issue of the eldest son. *Louis II.* called *the Severe*, because he put his wife to death upon a false



false suspicion of adultery, had by his second wife, the daughter of the emperor *Rodolphus I.* two sons, *Rodolphus* and *Lewis*. These two sons are the chiefs of two great families which remain to this day in *Germany*. From *Rodolphus* the eldest are descended the counts palatine of the *Rhine*, and from *Louis* the youngest son, who became emperor, descend the present electors of *Bavaria*; for *Louis*, surviving all the posterity of his uncle *Henry*, took possession of *Bavaria*, notwithstanding the pretensions of his elder brother *Rodolphus*. *Louis* becoming emperor, his brother *Rodolphus* declared against him, but was obliged to fly to *England*, where he died; nevertheless *Louis* gave the *Upper Palatinate* and *Ambora*, with their dependencies, to *Adolphus*, the son of *Rodolphus*, having made an agreement with him at *Pavia*, by which the electoral dignity was to be enjoyed alternately by both houses; but soon after, the emperor *Charles IV.* having published the *Golden Bull*, which orders the eldest sons of the electors to succeed to their fathers, that agreement never took effect, and the counts palatine have ever since possessed the electoral dignity. *Louis* was succeeded by his second son, *Stephen* of *Landshut*, called *the Old*, who married first, *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Frederic* of *Arragon*, king of *Sicily*, by whom he had no children: his second wife was *Margaret*, daughter of *John*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, of whom he had, *Stephen II.* *Frederic*, of whom the branch of the dukes of *Bavaria Landshut* are descended; *John*, the author of the dukes of *Bavaria Munich*, and *Elizabeth*, married to *Otho the Hardy*, duke of *Austria*.

*JOHN* duke of *Bavaria*, called *the Pacific*, third son of *Stephen*, had *Munich* for his share of his father's possessions, and married *Catharine*, daughter of *Muinhard II.* count of *Goritia*, prince of *Carinthia*, by whom he had *Ernest*, *Sophia* married to the emperor *Wenceslaus*; *William* duke of *Bavaria*, called *the defender of the council of Basil*.

*ERNEST*, eldest son of *John*, had a great share in the favour of the emperor *Sigismond*, whom he assisted in his war against the *Hussites*. He married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Barnaby*, prince of *Milan*, by whom he had *Albert* and *Beatrice*.

*ALBERT III.* called *the Pious*, duke of *Bavaria Munich*, *Albert* succeeded his father in 1438. He is called the third of that name, although in his branch there was not another prince *Albert* before him, but because there was two of that name in the other branches, who had likewise the title of dukes of *Bavaria*. He was elected king of *Bohemia*, but refused that crown. By his second wife *Anne*, daughter of *Erric* duke

duke of *Brunswick Grubenhagen*, *John*, *Sigismund*, *Albert*, and other children. *John* and *Sigismund* governed their states together for several years, but both dying without issue, their brother *Albert* succeeded to the whole of *Bavaria*.

Albert  
IV.

*ALBERT IV.* called *the Wise*, succeeding his brothers in 1501, entered into a war for the succession of the branches of *Ingolstadt* and *Landshut*, which *George the Rich* his cousin had left to *Robert the Virtuous* his son-in-law. Being assisted by the emperor *Frederic III.* whose daughter he had married, and *Robert* being dead, an agreement was made with his sons, to whom was yielded *Nuburgh* upon the *Danube*. *Albert* married *Cunigunda* of *Austria*, by whom he had *William IV.* *Lewis*, *Ernest*, *Sidonia*, *Sybylla*, *Sabina*, *Susanna*.

William  
IV.

A. C.  
1508.

*WILLIAM IV.* called *the Constant*, succeeded his father, and was one of the chiefs of the Catholic league made at *Nuremberg* against the Lutherans. He married *Mary Jacqueline*, daughter of *Philip* marquis of *Baden*, of whom he had *Theodon*, who died young, *Albert William*, who likewise died when a child; and *Mathilda*, who married the marquis of *Baden*.

Albert V. *ALBERT V.* called *the Magnanimous*, duke of *Bavaria*, the Mag- &c. was greatly attached to the house of *Austria*, and intro-  
nanimous. duced into his family the privilege of birthright; in consequence of which his eldest son succeeded him, without making any division of his states with his brothers, as had been done formerly. He married *Anne* of *Austria*, daughter of the emperor *Ferdinand I.* by whom he had *Charles*, who died an infant; *William*; *Ferdinand*, of whom the counts of *Wirtemberg* are descended; *Frederic*, who died an infant; *Ernest*, who became archbishop and elector of *Cologne*; *Mary Maximilian*, who died without alliance; and *Mary*, who married *Charles* archduke of *Austria*.

William  
V.

*WILLIAM V.* called *the Young*, duke of *Bavaria*, &c. knight of the golden fleece, has given the name of *Willhelmine* to the branch of *Bavaria*. He married *Reny*, daughter of *Francis* duke of *Lorraine*, by whom he had, besides other children, *Maximilian Philip*, afterwards bishop of *Ratisbon*, and cardinal; *Ferdinand*, who succeeded his uncle in the archbishopric of *Cologne*, &c. without being a priest; *Albert*, the author of the branch of *Leuchtemberg*; *William* left the government of his states to his son *Maximilian*, and retired into the solitude of the *Chartreuse*, near *Ratisbon*, where he lived thirty years, and died in 1626, aged seventy-six years.

Maximi-  
lian the  
first elector.

*MAXIMILIAN I.* called *the Solomon*, born in 1573, supported the interests of the house of *Austria* in *Germany*, as an acknowledgment of which service, the emperor bestowed upon

upon him in 1623, the electorate of the *Upper Palatinate*, of which *Fredéric the Constant*, elected king of *Bohemia*, had been deprived. He married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Charles III.* duke of *Lorraine*, who died without issue; his second wife was *Mary Anne*, daughter of the emperor *Ferdinand II.* by whom he had two sons, *Ferdinand*, *Mary* his eldest, and *Maximilian Philip*, who died in 1705, aged sixty-seven, without any children.

**FERDINAND-Mary-Francis-Ignatius-Wolfgang** succeeded his father in all his states. He was a prince of great prudence and wisdom, who truly understood his own interests, and was extremely beloved by his subjects, and maintained a perfect neutrality during the wars betwixt *Germany* and *France*. He died suddenly in his forty-fourth year, soon after the conclusion of the peace at *Nimeguen*, leaving by his wife *Henrietta Adelaide*, daughter of the duke of *Savoy*, among other children, *Maximilian-Mary*, and *Mary-Anne-Victoire*, married to the dauphin of *France*, only son of *Lewis XIV.*

**MAXIMILIAN-Mary-Emanuel, &c. II.** was brought up under the care of his uncle; when he became master of his own actions, he gave himself up wholly to the service of the emperor *Leopold*, and greatly distinguished himself in *Hungary*, where he commanded the emperor's army for some campaigns, and expended each year a million of crowns in supporting his troops. In 1689, he was present at the siege of *Mentz*; the year following he commanded the imperial army on the *Rhine*, and was afterwards made governor of the *Spanish Netherlands* by the king of *Spain*, which government he enjoyed during that king's life. But in the war of the succession of *Spain*, refusing to engage with the emperor *Leopold*, he and his brother the elector of *Cologne*, were put to the ban of the empire, and deprived of their states, by the sole authority of the emperor, in which they were again re-established by the peace of *Baden*. He died in 1726, leaving by his second wife *Theresa Cunegund*, daughter of *John Sobieski*, king of *Poland*, *Charles Albert* the present elector; *Philip-Maurice*, &c. elected bishop of *Paderborn*, but died at *Rome* on the day of his election; *Ferdinand-Mary*, who married *Leopoldine-Elizabeth*, daughter of the count palatine of the *Rhine*, by whom he has several children. The elector by his first wife *Mary-Anne*, daughter of *Leopold*, had three sons, who all died in their childhood.

## The History of the Palatine Electorate.

*The origin  
of the name  
of this  
principa-  
lity.*

THE country that was given to the elector palatine, by the execution of the treaties of *Westphalia*, is called the *Lower Palatinate*. It draws its name from the office of count palatine, which the emperor conferred upon those who in his name administered justice in the empire. There were two, one towards the *Rhine*, under whose jurisdiction was *Franconia* and the neighbouring provinces; the other in *Saxony*, and the other countries subject to the *Saxon* law. Upon these two offices of count palatine of the *Rhine*, and count palatine of *Saxony*, are founded the two vicariates of the empire, which the elector of *Bavaria*, or the elector palatine, and the elector of *Saxony*, exercise each in his provinces during an interregnum of the empire by the death of the emperor or otherwise.

*The terri-  
tories of  
the electo-  
rate.*

WHEN the counts palatine of the *Rhine* began to execute their office, they neither possessed on that river, lands, cities, nor castles; but having by degrees made great acquisitions by marriages, purchases, agreements, imperial donations, or otherwise, they have at length formed a very considerable principality. So that besides several fiefs, situated between *Coblentz* and *Andernach*, and in the country of *Juliers*, which hold of him, and besides the duchies of *Neuburgh*, *Sultzbach*, *Deuxponts*, and others, which are dependent upon them, the elector palatine possesses other duchies and counties, and several bailliages of a considerable revenue, such as *Lindesfelt*, *Stronberg*, *Landeck*, *Altenstadt*, *Morbach*, *Newstadt* upon the *Hurt*, *Federsheim*, *Sintzheim*, *Germerheim*, *Aitzheim*, *Oppenheim*, and others.

WITH regard to the cities, *Heidelberg*, which is the chief, is famous for its ancient academy, and for its castle, where the princes of the branch of *Simmeren* ordinarily resided. There was formerly in the castle a library of great repute, which count *Tilly*, after the taking of *Heidelberg*, caused to be removed, in order to send it to the pope, and it is at present one of the greatest ornaments of the vatican. *Manheim* is a city newly built, and fortified at the confluence of the *Necker* and the *Rhine*. *Caub* is a little city, with its castle of *Gudenfels* upon the *Rhine*, opposite to which is a castle, named *Pfaltz*, in the middle of the *Rhine*, from whence some pretend, without foundation, that the title of *Pfaltzgrave*, or count palatine, is derived. The city *Delsburgh* has

a fine castle upon the *Necker*. As to the city *Franckendal*, which was formerly the best fortified of all the *Lower Palatinate*, the elector *Frederic III.* in the year 1576, appointed it as a place of retreat to the families of the reformed religion, which were driven from the *Spanish Netherlands*. His successors giving the same privilege to the other cities of their principality, and the rigour of the edicts still augmenting against the reformed in the *Low Countries*, the cities of the electorate became very populous, and consequently very rich.

THE electors palatine and their subjects at length entirely separating from the Roman church, forgot not to dispose of the possessions of the ecclesiastics to their own advantage; and exercising their privilege of conducting people and merchandize, which pass or repass through their territories, they extended this right even into the neighbouring archbishoprics and countries, in virtue of an imperial privilege, and have likewise asserted their right of wildfang or propriety over strangers or strollers that happen to possess or inhabit any houses within the extent of these neighbouring countries, claiming them as their proper subjects. By these means and other impositions, the elector palatine has raised his revenue very considerably. As his country is exposed on the other side of the *Rhine*, to the discretion of the imperial garrison in *Philipsburgh*, and on this side the *Rhine*, to the garrisons of *French* troops that are in the neighbouring places, he has no small difficulty to manage his interests with these two great powers.

THE people of the *Palatinate* are the most civilized and polite of any in *Germany*; they are open and complaisant to strangers: as to their religion, they became Lutherans under the government of *Frederic II.* *Frederic III.* afterwards introduced Calvinism, and the duke of *Neuburgh*, who was a Roman Catholic, succeeding to the electorate, those of that persuasion were again countenanced, and the Protestants deprived of many privileges they enjoyed under former electors, which has occasioned great numbers of them to quit the country, some retiring into *Holland*, and others transporting themselves to the *British colonies in America*.

THE elector palatine is at this day only the eighth in the electoral college, although the *Golden Bull* assigns him the fifth rank. This alteration was made by the peace of *Westphalia*. He has a right to carry the emperor's crown at his coronation, and he has for deputy-officer, the count of *Zinzendorf*. He has the title of judge of the emperor, but for a long time past he has not exercised that right. He has like-

wife lost the right of convoking the electors to the election. There is a difference betwixt him and the elector of *Bavaria* upon account of the vicariate of the empire in the countries of the *Rhine*, *Suabia*, and *Franconia*. According to an ancient custom, he has a right to create nobles. He enjoys the right of wildfang, by which the lord is master of the body of all those who are not born in lawful marriage. He appropriates to himself all new islands that are formed in the *Rhine*. He is director of the circle of the *Lower Rhine*, and upon account of his principality of *Simmeren*, he is director of the circle of the *Upper Rhine*, together with the bishop of *Worms*, and of the circle of *Westphalia*, together with the king of *Prussia*, upon account of the duchy of *Juliers*. He has likewise three voices in the college of princes for the principalities of *Lautern*, *Simmeren*, and *Neuburgh*.

THE antiquity of this family is the same with that of *Bavaria*, it being the elder branch, and descended of *Rodolphus*, eldest son of *Louis the Old*, or *the Severe*, the second elector palatine of the house of *Wittelsbach*. *Rodolphus* married *Mathilda*, daughter of the emperor *Adolphus*, and did his utmost to accommodate the difference which that prince had with his competitor *Albert of Austria*; but not succeeding, he followed the party of his father-in-law, who was killed at the battle of *Spires* in 1298. *Rodolphus* afterwards giving his vote for the emperor *Frederic III.* while the other electors had chosen his brother *Louis* for the emperor, he thereby exposed himself to the resentment of his brother, and not believing himself safe, he retired into *England*, where he died \*, leaving by his wife three sons, who succeeded him, and one daughter. *Adolphus*, his eldest son, succeeded him, and was called *the Simple*, because he ceded the *Lower Bavaria* to the emperor *Louis* his uncle, and resigned the electorate to his brothers. *Rodolphus II.* succeeded him, but died in his forty-fifth year, leaving only one daughter, and was succeeded by his brother *Robert*, who founded the university of *Heidelberg* \*; but he dying without issue, the electorate returned again to the posterity of *Adolphus*. *Robert II.* only son of *Adolphus*, succeeded his uncle *Robert*, and joined to the electorate the duchy of *Deux-ponts*, *Hornbach*, and other dominions; and left by his wife *Beatrice*, daughter of the king of *Aragon* and *Sicily*, one son and two daughters. *Robert III.* surnamed *the Short*, and *the Debonaire*, succeeded his father, and was elected emperor in 1400. *Louis III.* surnamed *the Bearded*, *the Debonaire*, and *the Blind*, succeeded his father, and was vicar of the empire during his absence. He afterwards appeared at the council of *Constance*,

Louis the  
Severe,  
son of  
Otho the  
Illustrious.

Rodol-  
phus I.

\* 1313.

Adolphus.

Rodol-  
phus II.

Robert I.

\* 1346.

Robert II.

Robert  
III.

Louis III.

of which he was declared protector during the absence of the emperor *Sigismund*, who charged him to guard pope *John XXII.* after he had been deposed by that council. He likewise powerfully assisted the Teutonic knights, and sent troops to *Anthony of Lorrain*, prince of *Vaudemont*; afterwards he made the voyage of the Holy Land, and became blind towards the end of his days. He was succeeded by his eldest son *Louis*, called the *Pious*, and the *Merciful*, who, Louis IV during his youth, was under the guardianship of *Otho*, his A. C. uncle. He had two wives, but had only one son by his 1438: second marriage, born after his death, during whose minority, he was succeeded in the electorate by his brother *Fre-* Frederic *deric the Victorious*, who enjoyed that dignity upon the con- I. dition of his remaining a bachelor; but he marrying, his nephew and pupil succeeded him. *Philip I:* called the *Inge-* Philip I: *nious*, and the *Posthumous*, succeeded his uncle, and was engaged in a cruel war against *Albert IV.* duke of *Bavaria*; for the succession of *George the Rich*, duke of *Lower Bavaria*; but he concluded a peace, and died in 1508, leaving by his wife *Margaret*, daughter of *Louis*, duke of *Lower Bavaria*; *Louis*, who died without issue, *Philip* bishop of *Frisingen* and Louis V: *Naumburg*, *Robert*, *Frederic*, and other children. *Louis* *V.* his eldest son, enjoyed the electorate thirty-six years, but leaving no issue, his brother *Frederic* succeeded him. His brother *Robert the Virtuous* had a great dispute for the succession of his father-in-law *George the Rich*, of *Bavaria Landshut*, who had appointed him his heir, and having refused the advantageous offers of *Maximilian I.* who interested himself for *Albert II.* his son-in-law, his father *Philip* supporting his interests, and assisted by the *Bohemians*, opposed the emperor, and was put to the ban of the empire. *Robert* had the misfortune to fall into the hands of the emperor, with his wife and eldest son, who poisoned them \*, and the \* 1504: following year made an accommodation with the survivors. *Robert*, besides the son that died with him, had *Otho Henry*; who succeeded his uncle, and *Philip the Warrior*, who died without alliance. *Frederic II.* called the *Wise*, succeeded Frederic his eldest brother *Louis*, to the prejudice of the children of II. his elder brother *Robert*. He embraced Lutheranism, which A. C. he established in his states, and engaged in the Protestant 1508: league of *Smalcald*; but was obliged to ask pardon of the emperor, and died without children, after having enjoyed the electorate forty-eight years. *Otho Henry*, called the *Mag-* Otho *nanimous*, son of *Robert*, succeeded his uncle *Frederic*, and Henry: was re-established by the emperor *Maximilian I.* in that part A. C. of *Bavaria* which the elector palatine, and the other princes 1550:

of the same branch, possess at this day. He embraced Lutheranism, which his uncle *Frederic* had introduced into his states, and dying without children, the electorate, which had continued hitherto in the direct line from *Otho the Illustrious*, fell to *Frederic* of the branch of *Simmeren*, cousin to *Otho Henry* in the fourth degree.

Frederic  
III.

A. C.

1559.

*FREDERIC III.* was descended of *Robert* the emperor, and eighth elector, by his fourth son *Stephen*, who inherited from his father the lands of *Simmeren* and *Deuxponts*. *Stephen* left *Frederic* and several other children. *Frederic* had three sons and three daughters, and was succeeded by his eldest son *John*, who was grandfather to *Frederic III.* elector. *Frederic III.* called *the Pious*, duke of *Bavaria*, duke of *Simmeren*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, and elector, was eldest son of *John II.* duke of *Simmeren*. Having succeeded his cousin *Otho Henry* in the electorate, he continued for some time to encourage Lutheranism, but afterwards he became a zealous follower of Calvinism. He, for two years, sent powerful assistance to the Hugonots of *France*, who were then in arms in defence of their religion, and was succeeded by his second son *Louis*. *Louis*, surnamed *the Easy*, having succeeded his father, expelled the Calvinists from his states, and obliged his subjects to profess Lutheranism. He loved men of learning, and was always fond of peace. He had several sons, but none survived him but *Frederic*.

Louis VI.

A. C.

1576.

*Frederic IV.* called *the Sincere*, was, during his minority, under the guardianship of *John Casimir*, his uncle, who received the order of the garter from *Elizabeth* queen of *England*. When he came of age, he again established Calvinism, which he himself embraced, and died of the gout, leaving by *Charlotte* of *Bourbon Montpelier*, his third wife, several sons, of whom *Frederic* the eldest succeeded him. *Frederic V.* called *the Patient*, and *the Constant*, was elected king of *Bohemia* in 1619, put to the ban of the empire two years after, and deprived of his states and the electorate, which were given to *Maximilian* duke of *Bavaria*. After the loss of the battle of *Weisemberg*, his affairs being ruined, he was obliged to fly into *Holland* with his family, where he lived several years, and died afterwards at *Mentz*, in the thirty-seventh year of his age, without recovering his electorate. He left by his wife *Elizabeth*, daughter of king *James I.* of *England*, seven children, namely, *Charles Louis*, *Robert* duke of *Cumberland*, master of the horse, and vice-admiral of *England*, &c. *Maurice*, who was lost at sea in a voyage to *America*; *Edward*, who died a Catholic at *Paris*; *Gustavus Adolphus*; *Elizabeth*, a very learned princess, who died a Protestant abbess of *Her-*

Frederic  
IV.

A. C.

1583.

Frederic  
V.

A. C.

1610.

worden,



worden, in *Westphalia*; *Louisa Hollandina*, who became a Roman Catholic, and died in *France*, abbess of *Maubuisson*; *Henrietta Mary* married to *Sigismund Ragotski*, duke of *Montgatz*; *Sophia*, married to *Ernest Augustus*, duke of *Hanover*, afterwards elector. It was this princess which the parliament of *England* declared first in succession to the crown of *England*, after the death of king *William*, the princess of *Denmark* and their issue, in preference to five elder branches that were Roman Catholic.

**CHARLES** *Louis*, eldest surviving son of *Frederic*, was Charles re-established in the *Lower Palatinate*, and created the eighth Louis. elector at the treaty of *Westphalia*, under the title of arch-treasurer of the empire. He married *Charlotta*, daughter of *William V.* landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*, by whom he had *Charles*, 1648. who succeeded him, and *Elizabeth Charlotta*, who became a Catholic, and married *Philip*, duke of *Orleans*, only brother of *Louis XIV.* by whom she had issue.

**CHARLES** was born the 31st of *March*, 1651, married *Charles Wilhelmina Ernestina*, daughter of *Frederic III.* king of *Denmark*, and died in 1683, without children. By his death, the electorate passed to the branch of *Newburgh*, descended still of the *Rodolphus* line, from *Robert III.* the emperor, by his second son *Stephen*, who was likewise the author of the last branch which had possessed the electorate. II. A. C. 1680.

**STEPHEN**, fourth son of *Robert* the emperor, had six sons, the two eldest of whom succeeded to his states, and continued the family in two distinct branches; the four youngest became ecclesiasticks. *Frederic*, his eldest son, inherited *Simmeren* and *Veldents*, and *Louis*, his second, inherited *Deuxponts*, which he left to his third son *Alexander*, called the *Lame*. *Alexander* was succeeded by his eldest son *Louis II.* who embraced Lutheranism, and served *Charles V.* against *France*. *Wolfgang*, only son of *Louis II.* succeeded his father in his states, and left the duchy of *Newburgh*, to his eldest son *Philip Louis*, who was succeeded in this duchy by his eldest son *Wolfgang William*. This prince maintained a war of thirty years with the elector of *Brandenburg* for the succession of *Cleves*, which dispute was at last terminated by a provisional division, whereby he was put in possession of the duchies of *Juliers* and *Bergue*, and the lordship of *Ravenstein*. He married *Magdalene*, daughter of *William V.* duke of *Bavaria*, by whose persuasion he turned Catholic, and left an only son, *Philip William*, who succeeded to the electorate after the death of *Charles II.* who was his relation in the male line from the seventh to the ninth degree. He had used great endeavours some years before to be elected king of

*Philip William*  
A. C.  
1685.

*Poland,*

John William.

A. C.  
1690.

Charles Philip.

A. C.  
1716.

*Poland*; but did not succeed. Before *Leopold* became his son-in-law, he was greatly attached to *France*, but after that alliance, he was wholly devoted to the emperor; towards the end of his days his country was invaded and ravaged by the armies of *France*. He died at *Vienna*, in the 75th year of his age, and was succeeded by his eldest son *John William*, who died without issue by either of his wives, and left the electorate to his brother *Charles Philip*, who, three years after his father's succession to the electorate, quitted the benefices which he enjoyed; and the cross of the knight of *Malta*, and was named governor of *Tyrol*. His first wife was *Louisa Charlotte*; widow of *Louis*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, by whom he had *Sophia Augusta*, who was married to *Joseph Charles*, prince of *Sultzbach*. The elector's second wife was *Theresa Catharine*, daughter of *Joseph Charles*, prince *Lubomirski* in *Poland*, by whom he had *Anne-Elisabeth-Theophile-Felicita*, born at *Innspruck*, 1709.

### Of the Archduchy of Austria.

The hereditary dominions of Austria.

BESIDES the kingdom of *Bohemia*; and the marquise of *Moravia*, the house of *Austria* possesses in *Germany* what are called its hereditary countries; namely, the archduchy of *Austria*, the duchies of *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the counties of *Habsburgh*, *Tirol*, *Kyburgh*, and *Goritia*, the *Brigaw*, and other principalities.

*AUSTRIA* is one of the principal provinces of the empire towards the east, and it is from this situation that it has its name, *Oost-ryck* in *German*, signifying the eastern country. It is bounded on the north by *Moravia*, on the east by *Hungary*, on the south by *Stiria*, and on the west by *Bavaria*. It is divided into upper and lower; *Lower Austria* is situated on the north side of the *Danube*, and *Upper Austria* on the south side of that river. *Vienna*, the capital of the country, is in *Upper Austria*, and the other most remarkable cities in the province are *Krems*, *Lintz*, *Steira*, *Ens*, *Neustadt*, *Weidhoven*, *Melcka*, *Ipsia*, *Gemunda*, &c. The country is very fertile, and has a great many mines, especially of sulphur. The rivers besides the *Danube*, are the *Teja*, the *Kamps*, the *Laythe*, &c. In the ninth and tenth centuries, *Austria* was

the frontier of the empire against the incursions of the barbarians, and especially of the *Hungarians*. The emperor, *Henry the Fowler*, seeing it was of great importance to settle some person in *Austria*, who might oppose these irruptions, invested *Leopold*, surnamed the *Illustrious*, descended of the antient dukes of *Suabia*, with that country. *Otho I.* erected *Austria* into a marquisate, in favour of his brother-in-law *Leopold*, whose descendant *Henry II.* was created duke of *Austria* by the emperor *Frederic Barbarossa*<sup>1</sup>. His posterity becoming extinct in 1240, the states of the country, in order to defend themselves from the incursions of the *Bavarians* and *Hungarians*, resolved to put themselves under the protection of *Henry*, marquis of *Misnia*; but *Othogar II.* king of *Bohemia*, being likewise invited by a party in the duchy, took possession of it, alledging not only the invitation of the states, but the right of his wife, heiress of *Frederic* the last duke. The emperor *Rodolphus I.* pretending a right to that duchy, refused to give *Othogar* the investiture of it, and afterwards killing him in a battle, procured the duchy of *Austria* to his family<sup>2</sup>. From this *Rodolphus*, the present house of *Austria* descended, which has rendered itself so famous and so powerful for these 400 years past, and which has given fourteen emperors to *Germany*, and six kings to *Spain*. Since this conquest, the descendants of *Rodolphus* have laid aside the title of *Hapsburg*, and taken that of *Austria*.

To render *Austria* the most considerable principality of *The pri-Germany*, the emperor, *Frederic the Pacific*, erected it into *vileges be* an archduchy for his son *Maximilian*, who was afterwards *longing to* emperor, with these privileges; that they shall be judged to *the arch-* have obtained the investiture of their states, if they do not *duchy.* receive it after having demanded it three times; that if they *A. C.* receive it from the emperor, or the imperial ambassadors, *1477.* they are to be on horseback, clad in a royal mantle, having in their hand a staff of command, and upon their head a ducal crown of two points, and surmounted with a cross, like that of the imperial crown. The archduke is born privy councillor of the emperor, and his states cannot be put to the ban of the empire. All attempts against his person are punished as crimes of leige-majesty, in the same manner as those against the kings of the *Romans* or electors. He dared not be challenged to single combat. It is in his choice to assist at the assemblies or to be absent, and he has the privilege of being exempt from contributions and publick taxes.

<sup>1</sup> MEIB. Rer. Ger. Script. v. i. p. 270.  
Bohem. l. xvii. p. 143.

<sup>2</sup> DUBRAY. hist.

excepting twelve soldiers, which he is obliged to maintain in Hungary against the Turk for one month. He has rank immediately after the electors, and exercises justice in his states without appeal, in virtue of a privilege granted by *Charles V.* His subjects even cannot be summoned out of his province upon account of law-suits, or to give witness, or to receive the investiture of fiefs. Any lands of the empire may be alienated in his favour, even those that are feudal; and he has a right to create counts, barons, gentlemen, poets, and notaries. In the succession to his states, the right of birth takes place, and failing males, the females succeed according to the lineal right; and if no heir be found, they may dispose of their lands as they please.

GENEALOGISTS are greatly divided concerning the ancestors of *Rodolphus I.* the author of the present house of Austria; some deriving them from the Trojan horse, others from *Charlemain*. Others say, that their true origin ought to be drawn from the counts of *Alsace*; *Rabothon*, brother of *Werner*, bishop of *Straßburgh*, in 1070, being progenitor, in the eighth degree, to *Albert the Wise*, father of *Rodolphus*.

**RODOLPHUS**, count of *Habsburgh*, duke of *Austria* and *Stiria*, and emperor, had two wives, *Anne*, daughter of *Albert*, count of *Hockberg*; and *Agnes*, daughter of *Otho*, count of *Burgundy*. From his first wife he had several children, and married seven of his daughters to seven of the greatest princes of *Germany*. *Rodolphus*, one of his sons, was created duke of *Suabia*, and married *Agnes*, daughter of *Otho*, king of *Bohemia*, by whom he had a son named *John*, who became a monk. *Albert*, the eldest son of the emperor *Rodolphus*, received *Austria* and *Stiria* from his father, and was afterwards called *Albert of Austria*. He married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Mainhard*, count of *Tyrol*, and duke of *Carinthia*; and after his father's death expected to be chosen emperor, as all the secular electors were his brothers-in-law; but the archbishop of *Mentz* prevailed with them to chuse *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, his relation. *Adolphus* afterwards being deposed, *Albert* killed him in a battle, and was elected emperor at *Frankfort*, and was afterwards killed by the duke of *Suabia* as he had passed the *Rhine*, in order to go into *Bohemia*, which kingdom he wanted to conquer for one of his sons. *Albert* had by his wife *Elizabeth* twenty-one children, of whom *Frederic*, *Otho*, *Henry*, and *Albert* succeeded him in their turns. *Frederic* the eldest leaving no sons, was succeeded by his other brothers, and they leaving no male issue were succeeded by their youngest brother *Albert*.

**ALBERT II.** duke of *Austria*, surnamed the *Wise*, was at first an ecclesiastic, but seeing all his brothers dead, without male children, he quitted that profession, and married *Jean*, the daughter of *Ulric*, count of *Ferretta*, by whom he had four sons and three daughters. *Rodolphus*, who died without children, **Albert III.** who succeeded him, *Leopold* and *Frederic*.

Albert II.  
A. C.  
1340.

**ALBERT III.** by some called the *Astrologer*, possessed *Stiria* and *Austria*, but he was obliged to yield *Stiria*, with a part of *Carinthia*, and the march of *Treviso*, to his brother *Leopold*. He re-established the university of *Vienna* in *Austria*, and built the fortress of *Luxembourg*; but his too great earnestness for the exercise of hunting, brought on a distemper which occasioned his death. By his second wife *Beatrice*, daughter of *Frederick*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, he had a son named *Albert*, who succeeded him.

Albert III.  
A. C.  
1358.

**ALBERT IV.** called the *Patient*, was a very mild and pious prince, and likewise very skilful in architecture and sculpture. He respected learned men and ecclesiastics; but being obliged to take arms against *Jesselin*, marquis of *Moravia*, he died of poison during that war. By his first wife *Jean*, daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Bavaria*, he left one son, named *Albert*, who succeeded him.

Albert IV.  
A. C.  
1394.

**ALBERT II.** as emperor, and **V.** as archduke of *Austria*, was surnamed the *Magnanimous*, and succeeded his father when he was only ten years of age. He gave great assistance to the emperor *Sigismund* in his wars with the *Hussites*, and obliged the *Moravians* to quit their party, and promise to submit to a general council. For these services *Sigismund* gave him his only daughter *Elizabeth*, and after the death of that emperor, he succeeded to the kingdoms of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, and was likewise chosen emperor, but died soon after of a bloody flux in *Hungary*; occasioned by eating melons. His son *Ladislaus*, born after his death, was chosen king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in his cradle, but died without children.

Albert V.  
emperor.  
A. C.  
1404.  
  
Ladislaus.  
A. C.  
1400.

By the death of *Ladislaus*, the succession of the house of *Austria* fell to his cousins. *Leopold*, the third son of *Albert the Pious*, among his other children, left *Ernest*, whose eldest surviving son, named *Frederic*, was elected emperor upon the death of *Albert V.* and succeeded to the *Austrian* possessions by the death of *Ladislaus*. *Frederic* married *Eleonore*, daughter of *Edward*, king of *Poland*, by whom he had, among other children, *Maximilian* who succeeded him.

A. C.  
1458.

**MAXIMILIAN** having been chosen king of the *Romans* during the life of the emperor his father, succeeded him in the empire.

Maximilian.  
emperor.

A. C.  
1493.

empire. He married the richest heiress of *Europe*, *Mary* the daughter of *Charles the Hardy*, duke of *Burgundy*, by whom he had, among other children, *Philip*, who married *Jean*, daughter and heiress of *Ferdinand V.* king of *Arragon*, *Granada*, and *Sicily*; and of *Isabella*, queen of *Castile*, and *Leon*, by whom he enjoyed the crown of *Spain*, and left two sons, *Charles* and *Ferdinand*. He died before his father, leaving the kingdom of *Spain*, then greatly enriched by its acquisitions in *America*, to his son *Charles*.

Charles V.  
emperor.

A. C.  
1519.

*CHARLES V.* took possession of the states of *Spain* in 1517, and was two years after elected emperor; after a reign of thirty-eight years, he abdicated the empire in favour of his brother *Ferdinand*, and left the *Spanish* monarchy, with all its dominions, in *Europe* and *America*, to his son *Philip*, retiring himself into a monastery at *Esstramadura*. He married *Isabella*, daughter of the king of *Portugal*, by whom he had *Philip*, and two daughters. *Philip* continued the *Austrian* line in *Spain* for several generations; but it became extinct by the death of *Charles II.* of *Spain*, who left no children.

Ferdinand  
I. emperor.

A. C.  
1556.

*FERDINAND I.* second son of *Philip*, is the chief of the branch of the house of *Austria* in *Germany*. His brother *Charles V.* resigned to him in 1550, all his hereditary possessions in *Germany*, caused him to be elected king of the *Romans* the year following, and quitted the empire in his favour in the year 1556. *Ferdinand* married *Anne*, the daughter of *Ladislaus*, king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, by whom he had *Maximilian*, who succeeded him, *Ferdinand*, count of *Tyrol*, marquis of *Burgaw*; *John*, who died young; and *Charles*, archduke of *Gratz*, besides eleven daughters.

Maximilian II.  
emperor.

A. C.  
1564.

*MAXIMILIAN II.* eldest son of *Ferdinand*, was elected king of the *Romans* two years before his father's death. He married his cousin *Mary*, daughter of the emperor *Charles V.* by whom he had several sons, seven of whom survived him; namely, *Rodolphus*, who succeeded him; *Ernest*, governor of the *Low-Countries*; *Matthias*, *Maximilian*, grand master of the *Teutonic* order; *Albert*, prince of the *Low-Countries*; *Wenceslaus*. His daughters were *Anne*, who married *Philip II.* king of *Spain*; *Elizabeth* married to *Charles IX.* king of *France*; *Margaret*, who became a nun; and three others who died young.

Rodolphus II.  
emperor.

A. C.  
1577.

*RODOLPHUS* succeeded to the empire after the death of his father, having been elected king of the *Romans* two years before; after a weak reign of thirty-five years he left his hereditary possessions to his brother *Matthias*.

**MATTHIAS**, after the death of his brother, was chosen Matthias emperor, which dignity he enjoyed seven years, leaving no issue by his wife *Anne*, daughter of *Ferdinand* his cousin. By his death, the hereditary possessions of *Austria* fell to *Ferdinand II.* grandson of the emperor *Ferdinand I.* by his fourth son *Charles*, archduke of *Gratz*. A. C. 1612.

**FERDINAND II.** was adopted by the emperor *Matthias*, *Ferdinand* who caused him to be elected king of *Bohemia* in 1617, and II. emperor of *Hungary* the year following. He was chosen emperor upon the death of *Matthias*, and married, first, *Mary-Anne*, daughter of the duke of *Bavaria*, by whom he had *John Charles*, who died young; *Ferdinand*, who succeeded him; *Leopold William*, who became bishop of *Passau*, *Strasbourg*, *Halberstadt*, *Olmütz*, and *Breslaw*, master of the Teutonic order, and abbot of *Mourbach*, governor of the *Low-Countries*; *Christina*, who died young; *Mary-Anne*, married to the elector of *Bavaria* her uncle; *Cecilia Reng*, married to *Ladislaus*, king of *Poland*. *Ferdinand*, by his second wife *Eleonora*, daughter of *Vincent I.* duke of *Mantua*, had no children. A. C. 1619.

**FERDINAND III.** was elected emperor after the death of his father. He married *Mary-Anne*, daughter of *Philip III.* king of *Spain*, by whom he had *Ferdinand Francis*, chosen king of the *Romans*, in 1653, but who died the year following. *Philip Augustus*, and *Maximilian Thomas*, who died in their infancy; *Leopold Ignatius* who succeeded him; *Mary Anne*, married to *Philip IV.* king of *Spain*, and *Mary* who died an infant. By his second wife *Mary Leopoldine*, daughter of his uncle the archduke of *Inspruck*; *Ferdinand* had *Ferdinand-Charles-Joseph*, bishop of *Passau*, &c. By his third wife he had *Eleonora Mary*, married to the king of *Poland*, *Michael Wiefnowiski*; and afterwards to *Charles Leopold*, duke of *Lorraine*; *Mary-Anne-Josepha*, married to *John William*, duke of *Neuburgh*, afterwards elector palatine. A. C. 1637.

**LEOPOLD**, after the death of his father, was elected Leopold, emperor, though he was only eighteen years of age. He married first *Margaret Theresa*, daughter of *Philip IV.* king of *Spain*, by whom he had *Mary-Antonietta-Josepha*, married to *Maximilian Emanuel*, elector of *Bavaria*. By his second wife *Claude Felicita*, daughter of *Ferdinand Charles*, archduke of *Inspruck*, two daughters who died infants. His third wife was *Eleonore-Magdalene-Theresa*, daughter of the duke of *Neuburgh*, by whom he had *Joseph-Jacob-Ignatius*, who succeeded him; *Charles-Francis-Joseph*, *Mary-Anne-Josepha*, married to *John* the king of *Portugal*, and some others who died unmarried. A. C. 1658.

Joseph,  
emperor.  
A. C.  
1705.

JOSEPH was declared hereditary king of *Hungary* in 1687, being then but nine years of age; he was chosen king of the *Romans* three years after, and succeeded to the empire upon the death of his father. He married *Willemina Amelia*, the daughter of *John Frederick*, duke of *Hanover*, by whom he had two daughters, *Mary Josepha*, married to *Frederick Augustus*, electoral prince of *Saxony*; and *Mary Amelia*, married to *Charles*, &c. electoral prince of *Bavaria*.

Charles  
VI. empe-  
ror.  
A. C.  
1711.

CHARLES VI. was chosen emperor at *Frankfort*, after the death of his elder brother, who left no male issue. He married *Elisabeth Christina*, daughter of *Lewis Rodolphus*, of *Brunswick Wolfenbuttel*, she having abjured Lutheranism to embrace the *Roman Catholic* religion. By her he had four children, two of whom only survived him, namely, *Mary Theresa-Walburg-Amelia-Christina*, born the 13th of *March*, 1717, the present empress of *Germany*; and *Mary-Anne-Eleonore-Wilhelmina-Josepha*, born the 4th of *September* 1718.

### The History of the Electorate of Hanover.

The terri-  
tories of  
this electo-  
rate.

THOUGH the house of *Hanover* be the last that has been raised to the electoral dignity, yet for nobleness and antiquity of family it may vie with any in *Germany*. It is likewise very considerable for the extent of its territories, which are at present the duchy of *Calenberg*, in which are *Hanover*, *Calenberg*, *Hamelen*, *Neustadt*, *Göttingen*, &c. the duchy of *Grubenhagen*, the county of *Diepholt*, the county of *Haga*, in the bishoprick of *Hildesheim*, the bailliages of *Coldingen*, *Luther*, *Badenburgh*, and *Westerhoven*, with the right of protection of the city *Hildesheim*, and the county of *Danneberg*, ceded by the dukes of *Wolfenbuttle* to the dukes of *Luneburgh*, as an equivalent for their pretensions upon the city of *Brunswick*. The elector possesses likewise the county of *Delmenhorst*, and the duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, sold by the king of *Denmark* in 1715; he is also in possession of the duchy of *Saxe Lawemburgh*, till the conclusion of the difference among the princes pretending to the succession: the right of possessing alternatively the bishoprick of *Osnabruck*, belongs solely to the electoral branch; but if it shall happen to fail, the dukes of *Wolfenbuttle* are to enjoy the same right.



IN consideration of the great services which *Ernest Augustus*, duke of *Brunswick Hanover*, gave to the emperor *Augustus*, *Leopold*, in his wars against *Louis XIV.* that emperor conferred the dignity of an elector, of the holy *Roman* empire upon him and his heirs male, of which he received the investiture from *Leopold* on the 19th of *December* 1692. This new creation met with great opposition, both in the electoral-college, and the college of princes; but at last, by a conclusion of the three colleges on the 30th of *January* 1708, it was unanimously determined that the electoral dignity should be confirmed to the duke of *Hanover* and his heirs male; but it was added, that if, while that electoral dignity subsisted, the palatine electorate should happen to fall into the hands of a protestant prince, the first catholic elector should have a supernumerary vote. This conclusion being easily agreed to by the emperor, the duke of *Hanover* was introduced into the electoral college on the 12th of *September* the same year.

THE princes of this house have their seat in the college of princes immediately after those of the electoral houses, each branch having a vote. The elector, besides his seat in the electoral college, was invested with the office of arch-standard-bearer of the empire; but this being disputed with him by the duke of *Wirtemberg*, the elector palatine having obtained the office of arch-steward, yielded that of arch-treasurer to the elector of *Hanover*, who was confirmed in this dignity by a decree of the diet of the 13th of *January* 1710. For the administration of the government, the elector has a council of state, a council of war, the court of justice, the chancery, the justice of the court, and a consistory. But for making new laws, or establishing new taxes, the consent of the states, which are composed of the nobility, clergy, and burghers, is necessary.

THE antiquity of this family is carried down by genealogists to the times of the first kings of *Rome*, but with very little authority; however, it is certain, that the house of *Brunswick* may be lineally deduced from *Cajus Aetius*, a noble *Roman*, who lived in the antient city of *Este*, or *Atteste*<sup>b</sup>, in that part of *Italy*, which is called the *Venetian Lombardy*. His son, of the same name, signalizing himself at the battle of *Verona*, fought between the *Wisigoths* and *Romans*, the emperor *Honorius* conferred upon him the dignities of *Quaestor vis*, *Decurio*, and senator of *Rome*; afterwards, he became prince of *Este*, in 402. *Aurelius Aetius* succeeded him;

The antiquity of the house of *Brunswick*.

<sup>b</sup> TACIT. l. iiii. PLINY, l. iii. c. 19.

- and *Tiberius*, the son of *Aurelius*, acquired *Montefelico*, *Vicenza*, and *Feltri*, and built the city of *Ferrara*. His son *Alphorifius* lost his life at the great battle of *Lodi*, against *Odoucer*, king of *Heruli*, who dethroned the last emperor of the west. He was succeeded by *Maximus*, to whom succeeded *Bonifacius*, who lost his life in an engagement with the *Ostrogoths*. *Valerianus* his son, was sent by *Narfes*, in the 14th year of his age, to guard a passage over the river *Po*, against *Totilas*; but the *Longobards* afterwards invading *Italy*; he lost his life fighting against these barbarians; *Gundelbardus*, his second son, who succeeded him, was called the right hand of *Dagobert I.* king of the *Franks*. To him succeeded *Heribertus*, whose son *Ernestus*, at the head of a *Venetian* army, relieved *Ravenna*, and defeated the king of the *Longobards* at *Rimini*. The *Longobards* afterwards besieging *Ravenna*, *Ernest* defended the place three years, till an arrow from the enemy's camp killed him. Upon whose death the city soon surrendered to the *Longobards*, who, by this conquest put an end to the exarchate of the *Greek* emperors.

*CHARLES the Great*, king of the *Franks*, afterwards emperor, made *Henry*, son of *Ernest*, prince of *Trevifo*; and erected the principality of *Este* into a margraviate; from which time the family was honoured with the title of margraves. *Henry* assisted the emperor in subduing *Desiderius*, the last king of the *Longobards*, and afterwards lost his life in a tumult at *Trevifo*. His son *Berengarius* who, succeeded him, was greatly in confidence of *Lewis the Debonaire*, and had frequently the command of his armies; he died the same year with the emperor, and left three sons, the youngest of which, *Otho*, continued the family. This margrave acquired the city and territory of *Comachio*, as a reward for his own, and his father's services, done to the imperial crown; which is evident by the emperor's grant, yet to be seen among the records of the house of *Este*. *Otho* had several sons, but none of them continued the family long, except the youngest, *Sigfried* or *Sigbert*, who left a lasting posterity, and added *Lucca* and *Parma* to the states of the family of *Este*. His son *Azo*, or *Astius II.* augmented his possessions with *Placentia* and *Reggio*, and became vicar of the empire in *Italy*. He assisted the emperor *Otho I.* in his wars against the *Bohemians*, the *Slavi*; and the *Vandals*; and defeated *Berengarius*, who, at the instigation of the court of *Rome*, set up for emperor, or king of *Italy*. This margrave having two sons, the greatest part of his states went to his eldest, *Theobald*, whose issue failed with his granddaughter *Mathildis*, who was possessed of *Ferrara*, *Mantua*, *Lucca*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Placentia*.

*centia, Pisa, Spoleto, Ancona, and Tuscany*; which states were after her death usurped by the see of *Rome*.

*ALBERT Azo's* second son continued the family, and was possessed of the margraviate of *Este*, with *Milan* and *Genoa*; he married the sister of the emperor *Otho II.* who augmented his states with ten castles in *Lombardy*, and the city of *Friburgh* in *Germany*. His third son named *Hugo Aëtius* succeeded him, and being threatened by the emperor *Henry II.* because his father *Albert* had prevented *Henry's* father from being emperor; *Hugo* used all his interest to ruin the emperor's power in *Italy*, and being joined by most of the nobility in *Lombardy*, got one *Arduinus* elected king at *Pavia*. *Henry* coming into *Italy* with an army defeated *Arduinus*, and took *Hugo* prisoner; but, instead of punishing him, he generously restored him to whatever he formerly possessed. *Hugo*, to shew himself worthy of the emperor's clemency, made it afterwards the whole study of his life to promote his service. *Hugo* left three sons, the youngest of which, named *Azo IV.* continued the family; by his bravery, the city of *Milan*, which had revolted from the emperor *Henry III.* was subdued, and tranquillity restored. But the emperor was no sooner returned to *Germany*, than the papal party prevailing, despoiled *Azo* of his states; upon which he repaired to the court of the emperor, and was soon after re-instated in his dominions, which *Henry III.* considerably augmented. *Azo* married *Cunegunda*, daughter of *Guelph III.* duke of *Bavaria* and *Carinthia*, and her brother dying without issue, her son *Guelph* succeeded to all the states of her family.

IN *Guelph V.* duke of *Bavaria*, surnamed the *Valiant*, the blood of the two antient families of the *Aëtii* or *Este*, and of the *Guelphs* was united. *Henry IV.* who, though a minor, was then emperor, and inherited the duchy of *Upper Bavaria*, but the *Bavarians*, disliking his government, revolted, and chose one *Otho*, a *Saxon* prince for their duke. *Guelph V.* married his daughter; but the emperor having put *Otho* to the ban of the empire, and expelled him, *Guelph*, out of compliment to the emperor, divorced *Otho's* daughter, and being in high esteem with *Henry IV.* he received from him the investiture of the whole duchy of *Bavaria*, of which before he had a considerable part in right of his mother. Towards the end of his life, the pope, *Urban II.* having prevailed with the Christian princes to undertake an expedition for the recovery of the Holy Land, *Guelph V.* engaged to join in the crusade. After the conquest of *Jerusalem*, he left the Holy Land, but in his return home died near *Paphos*, in the island of *Cyprus*, and his remains were transported to the

A. C.  
1056.

the convent of *Weingarten* in *Suabia*. He left two sons, *Guelph VI.* and *Henry*, who both succeeded him in their turns. *Guelph VI.* married *Mathildis*, the richest heiress of her time, but died without issue.

A. C.  
1120.

*HENRY*, surnamed the *Black*, succeeded his brother, and married *Wulfhild*, the eldest daughter and heiress of *Magnus*, the last duke of *Saxony* of the *Bulling* race, by his right the duchy of *Saxony* on the *Elbe*, should have fallen to his son. But the emperor *Henry V.* disposed of it in favour of *Lotharius*, count of *Supplinburg*, afterwards his successor on the imperial throne. This emperor *Lotharius* had only one daughter, named *Gertraut*, who married *Henry*, surnamed the *Proud*, son of *Henry the Black*. When *Henry the Proud* succeeded his father, the boundaries of possessions were towards the south, *Verona* in *Italy*, towards the north, the *Danube*, towards the east, the *Lower Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carniola*, and towards the west, the borders of *Franconia*, the territory where the city *Ulm* is situated, and the lake of *Constance* in *Suabia*, which possessions were equal to a considerable kingdom. *Lotharius*, his father-in-law, being engaged in a war with *Roger*, king of *Sicily*, whom an antipope had likewise declared king of *Naples*; *Henry* commanded the emperor's army, and deprived *Roger* of almost all *Naples*. In these wars, *Tuscany*, and several other provinces in *Italy*, being conquered from those who sided with the antipope, the emperor *Lotharius* bestowed them upon *Henry* his son-in-law.

A. C.  
1136.

He afterwards ceded to him the whole duchy of *Saxony*, which *Henry* extended towards the north, as far as where *Lubeck* is now situated, by conquering from the *Polabi*, a race of *Veneds*, the country called *Saxe Lawemburg*. *Lotharius* dying the year following, declared him his successor, and sent him the crown, scepter, sword, and other insignia of the empire.

A. C.  
1138.

A diet was to be held at *Mentz* on *Whitsuntide*, to chuse an emperor in the room of *Lotharius*; but *Conrad*, duke of *Suabia*, fearing that the majority might be for *Henry*, anticipated the term, and assembled his friends at *Coblentz*, where he got himself elected emperor, and was crowned by the pope's legate at *Aix la Chapelle*. *Henry*, and his brother, surprized at this irregular proceeding, protested against *Conrad's* election, and refused to deliver up the insignia of the empire, at *Bamberg*, where a diet was appointed for this purpose. *Conrad* did all in his power to move the princes of the empire against *Henry*, by representing him as a stranger in *Germany*, and that his great grandfather had been the first that settled there, and concluding, that the interest *Henry* had in *Italy* and *Germany* was so formidable, that the constitution of the *Germanick* body

body would be in danger, in case the princes of the empire favoured his cause. His brother, who was present, vindicated *Henry* and himself to the satisfaction of the whole assembly. Upon these debates the diet was dissolved, and another appointed at *Ratisbon*, where greater disputes were expected. But *Henry*, being prevailed upon by the promises of *Conrad*, acknowledged him as emperor, and delivered up the insignia. *Conrad*, soon after increasing his demands, and desiring *Henry* to give up *Nuremberg*, and several territories in *Italy*, *Henry*, finding himself deceived, refused to take the investiture of his states from *Conrad*, and being summoned to appear at the diet of *Augsburgh*, came thither with a large army. *Conrad* was so much terrified, that he fled in the night-time, with his domesticks and a few friends; and afterwards assembling the princes of the empire at *Wurtzburg*, he represented to them that it was not lawful for a prince of the empire to possess two duchies, and since *Henry* had acquired *Saxony* when *Bavaria* was already in his possession, he thought proper that this prince should be obliged to give up *Saxony*, and in case of refusal lose both duchies. *Henry* refusing to give up the least part of his possessions, the arguments of *Conrad* prevailed with the princes, and a decree passed, *nemine contradicente*, by which he was put to the ban of the empire. The proclamation of the ban had such an unexpected effect, that *Henry* was entirely deserted, and no more than four of his servants remained with him. *Conrad* gave *Bavaria* to his brother *Leopold*, margrave of *Austria*, and *Saxony* to *Albert* of the house of *Anhalt*; but *Henry*, in a great many engagements, having defeated the competitors, the emperor agreed to a cessation of hostilities, and the city of *Quedlinburgh* was appointed for a place of congress. *Henry*, repairing thither, was poisoned, in the fortieth year of his age, before any thing was concluded upon.

*Henry*, surnamed the *Lion*, on account of his valour, succeeded his father, and was only ten years of age when he was poisoned. His uncle took upon him the guardianship, and acquitted himself with great fidelity, and obtained of *Conrad* that *Henry* should keep *Saxony*, and *Albert*, of the house of *Anhalt*, be contented with the margraviate of *Brandenburgh*; but *Henry the Lion's* mother marrying the margrave of *Austria*, the possession of the duchy of *Bavaria* was confirmed to him by the emperor. After this marriage, peace seemed to be re-established in *Germany*, and *Conrad*, with 6000 cavalry, marched into the east against the *Saracens*. A much greater number having assembled to serve against the *Saracens* than was required, *Henry the Lion* led

A. C.  
1139.

these against the *Veneds*, and defeating them in several engagements, their king *Niclotus* offered to embrace the Christian religion, in consideration of which a peace was made, and part of his dominions restored to him.

*HENRY the Lion*, having finished this war, and being now come of age, kept the greatest part of the army in his service, and marched against the margrave of *Austria* his stepfather, to re-conquer the duchy of *Bavaria*. The margrave applying to the emperor, who was now returned from the Holy Land, a scheme was laid to stir up the city of *Brunswic* against *Henry* in his absence; but he, having secured the city, disposed his troops for pushing the war. Meanwhile, the emperor *Conrad* dying, *Frederic*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, was, by both parties, unanimously elected emperor in his stead; after which election, a truce followed between *Henry* and his stepfather. The emperor going to *Rome* to be crowned by the pope, *Henry* accompanied him; the *Romans* attempting to oppose the public entry of *Frederic* into *Rome*, a skirmish ensued; and *Frederic* being surrounded by the *Romans*, *Henry* rushed into the midst of the enemy, and rescued the emperor, already lying under the horses feet. In consideration of this service, he yielded to *Henry* the right of founding bishoprics in the countries conquered from the *Veneds*, and being returned to *Germany*, he obliged the margrave of *Austria* to give up *Bavaria* to *Henry*, for which he received the country now called *Upper Austria* as an equivalent, which was erected into a duchy, with several singular privileges annexed to it. In the same year, the last count of *Lauenrode* dying, *Henry* incorporated this county, and the city of *Hanover* on the *Leine*, with his dominions, and enlarged *Hanover*. The emperor made him likewise a present of the large possessions of count *Uto*, situated upon the *Hartz*, and the year following the city of *Lubec* was annexed to his dominions. *Henry* marching afterwards with the emperor into *Lombardy*, *Niclotus*, king of the *Veneds*, took up arms against him in his absence; but being soon defeated and killed at *Mecklenburg*, his sons submitted and swore allegiance to *Henry*. These princes afterwards revolting, *Henry* was engaged several years in war in *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburg*, but at last entirely routed these heathens, and peopled their country with *Saxons* and *Frieslanders*. About this time the Greek emperor, *Emanuel I.* sent an embassy to *Brunswic*.

A. C.  
1164.

THE great honour and glory *Henry* was arrived at, raised him many invidious enemies. *Christian*, count of *Oldenburg*, at the head of a great number of *Frieslanders*, seized the city of *Bremen*, and all the places on the *Weser* that belonged to *Henry*.

*Henry the Lion*, while *Wickman*, archbishop of *Magdeburgh*, marched his troops to join those of *Hildesheim*, in order to fall upon the county of *Brunswic*; but *Henry* defeated them both, and by the mediation of the emperor, a peace was concluded. The same year he married *Mathilda*, daughter of *Henry II.* king of *England*, having divorced his former wife some years before, upon account of their consanguinity. *Henry* had, at this time likewise, a war with the king of *Denmark*, but peace being established, *Canutus*, the king's son, married *Gertraut*, *Henry's* daughter. *Henry*, out of devotion, having made a journey to the Holy Land, upon his return his uncle resolving to retire from the world, left by will all his possessions to his nephew, reserving only a yearly pension to himself, which he spent at *Memmingen*, in *Suabia*. *Henry* being remiss in paying the pension, *Guelph*, at the emperor's intreaty, altered his will, and bequeathed his dominions to him. Nevertheless, *Lombardy* again revolting, *Henry* went to the assistance of the emperor, though he did not serve him so warmly as before; but hearing the *Veneds* again made incursions into his states in *Germany*, he left *Lombardy* to defend his own territories.

A. C.  
1168.

THE emperor being obliged to make a peace with the pope and the *Italians*, laid the blame of the bad success upon *Henry*, and summoned him to appear at the next diet. Upon this decline of the emperor's favour, *Henry's* states were invaded by several enemies, and he himself was soon after put to the ban of the empire; in consequence of which sentence, all his enemies seized what lay most convenient for them, and nothing remained but *Brunswic* and *Luneburgh*. *Henry*, after opposing his enemies for two years, found himself obliged to submit, and appearing at the diet of *Erfurt*, he threw himself at the emperor's feet; but all the conditions he could receive was to banish himself for three years. *Henry* chose *England* for the place of his exile, where his wife was delivered of her youngest son *William Longaspatha*. After the expiration of the term of banishment, *Henry* again returned to *Germany*; but by a decree of the diet at *Goslar*, he was obliged to banish himself for other three years. Upon this sentence he returned to *England*, while the emperor, and many princes of *Germany*, had set out on an expedition to the Holy Land. In his absence, his enemies violating the truce that had been agreed upon, he returned to *Germany*, and recovered some of his territories; but the emperor *Henry IV.* son of *Barbarossa*, marching against him, obliged him to submit to very hard conditions, and give his son a hostage for the performance of them. Afterwards, a reconciliation

A. C.  
1180.

was proposed between the emperor and the duke; but *Henry* falling from his horse as he was riding to the place of interview, he was carried back to *Brunswic*, where he soon after died in the sixty-sixth year of his age. He was modest and grave, of an extraordinary genius, he had a strong body, and his person was very graceful. Some years before his death, several of his enemies sought his friendship again, and he was proposed as a candidate for the imperial throne, when *Henry* lay sick in *Italy*.

*HENRY the Lion* left three sons, *Henry the Long*, who possessed the greatest part of his paternal estates, and survived his other two brothers, but died without male issue. His second son *Otho*, after many disputes, at last obtained the imperial dignity, but died likewise without issue. His third son, *William*, surnamed *Longsword*, continued the family. He was born at *Winchester*, during the time of his father's exile in *England*, and was afterwards one of the hostages for king *Richard of England*, who was treacherously detained a prisoner by *Leopold*, duke of *Austria*, upon his return from the Holy Land. *William* married *Helena*, daughter of *Woldemar*, king of *Denmark*, by whom he left one son named *Otho*.

Otho the  
• Infant,  
first duke  
of Brunf-  
wic.

*OTHO* was surnamed the *Infant*, being but six years of age when his father died. He was early engaged in warlike expeditions, having assisted his uncle *Woldemar*, king of *Denmark*, against the count of *Holfstein*, and the *Lubeckers*. In the same year his uncle, *Henry the Long*, died without male issue. By his death, his paternal estates should have fell to *Otho*; but *Henry* having sold *Brunswic* to the emperor *Frederic II*. *Otho* marched against *Brunswic*, and drove out the imperial garrison. After the conquest of *Brunswic*, *Otho* employed his troops in recovering the rest of his dominions, and revived his claim to the county of *Stade*, which the archbishop refused to restore to him; whereupon *Otho* marched against him, and defeated him in several engagements, but thought not proper, at that time, to make himself master of the county. During these transactions, the emperor, *Frederic II*. had been absent in the Holy Land, but returning to *Germany*, he celebrated his nuptials with his third wife *Isabella*, daughter of *John*, king of *England*, at *Mentz*, where a diet at the same time was appointed to be held. *Isabella*, being *Otho's* relation, interceded with the emperor to have him restored to the states that had been taken from his ancestors. *Frederic* delayed to comply with this request; but as a recompence for *Otho's* services during his absence in the Holy Land, he created him duke of *Brunswic* and *Luneburgh*, whereof the diploma is still extant, which declares



declares them inheritable by both sexes. From this time the titles of duke of *Saxony*, and duke of *Bavaria*, have no more been used in his family. *Brunswic* and *Luneburg*, at that time, comprehended the country of *Luneburg*, containing the principality of *Zelle*, and the cities of *Luneburg*, *Hanover*, *Giffhorn*; the country of *Brunswic* containing the principality of *Wolfenbittel*, and the cities and castles of *Brunswic*, *Brimrode*, *Assenburg*, *Sconingen*, *Ferzen*, *Kichtenberg*, *Geberbagen*, and *Slauffenburg*; besides the country between the mountain *Deister*, and the river *Leine*. The country of *Gotingen*, with the county of *Norheim*, and the lordship of *Plesse*; and lastly, the country on the *Werra* and *Wefer*, containing several cities and castles. *Otho* now resumed the war against the archbishop of *Bremen*, and forced him to yield up some lordships which he incorporated with his dominions; and, after the conclusion of the peace, he made an expedition into *Prussia*, to the assistance of the knights of the Teutonic order.

A. C.  
1239.

*FREDERIC II.* being excommunicated by the pope, *Henry*, landgrave of *Thuringen*, succeeded him; but he dying two years after, the princes of the empire chose *William*, count of *Holland* and *Zealand*, emperor against *Frederic*. *William* married *Otho's* daughter, and was supported by him in his new dignity. Next year *Otho* was taken ill on his return from the diet at *Frankfort*, and died soon after.

*OTHO* left four sons, the two youngest of which became bishops; and *Albert* the eldest, surnamed the *Great*, succeeded to his father's estates. After governing seventeen years, he made a partition with his second brother *John*, and ceded *Lunenburgh* to him. During the first twenty-three years of his government, *Germany* was involved in troubles occasioned by the long inter-regnum; but the dominions of the house of *Brunswic* and *Luneburg* were free from these disorders, and *Albert* was at leisure to assist the king of *Bohemia* against *Bela IV.* king of *Hungary*. After his return from this expedition, he took the castle of *Assenburg*, and punished the family for having represented his coat of arms in a disrespectful manner; and the house of *Wolfenbittel* slighting his authority, *Albert* went before the castle, took it, and ordered it to be razed. While *Albert* was employed in reducing these rebellious subjects, *Conrad*, count of *Eberstein*, another of his vassals, entered into an alliance with *Gerhard*, archbishop of *Mentz*, against him; and in order to divert *Albert* from the siege of *Assenburgh*, he invaded the country of *Gotingen*, destroying all with fire and sword; but being taken prisoner, *Albert* ordered him to be hanged by the feet, and the arch-

A. C.  
1252:  
Albert the  
Great,

bishop he kept prisoner a twelvemonth, and obliged him to pay 8000 marks of silver for his ransom.

THE cities of *Hamelin* and *Eimbec* soon after voluntarily subjected themselves to *Albert*, and disputes arising between the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Sleswic*, he went to the assistance of the young king, and by his assistance a peace was concluded. Going afterwards with the king and his mother to *Denmark*, he restored tranquillity to that kingdom, which he found torn in pieces by domestic dissensions. *Albert* having been a widower for a considerable time, without any issue, he went to *England*, where he married *Adelheid*, sister of *Otho*, margrave of *Montferrat*, and obtained at the same time of the king, a grant for the city of *Hamburg* to trade with that kingdom. Five years afterwards, he acquired the city and territory of *Grubenhagen*, which, with the acquisitions made to it, came to be called a principality, and, as such, in latter times, obtained a vote at the diets of the empire. *Albert* died soon after, and left behind him six sons, three of whom entered into the Teutonic order, and the other three made a partition of his states; *Henry* at *Grubenhagen*, *Albert* at *Gottingen*, and *William* at *Brunswic*.

**Albert the Grosz.** ALBERT, surnamed the *Grosz*, second son of *Albert the Great*, succeeded to his brother *William*, who died before him, without leaving issue; and thus united, in his person, the lines of *Gottingen* and *Brunswic*. *Albert the Grosz* died in 1318, and left seven sons behind him, four of whom were ecclesiastics, and the other three divided his states between them. *Otho* resided at *Brunswic*, *Ernest* at *Gottingen*, and *Magnus*, after the demise of *Otho*, kept his residence at *Brunswic*.

**Magnus I.** OTHO dying without male issue, his states fell to his two brothers; and *Brunswic* happening to the share of *Magnus*, he fixt his residence at that city. He is surnamed by some the *Meek*, and by others the *Pious*, on account of his singular piety. He married *Sepbia*, or *Agnes*, daughter of the margrave of *Brandenburgh*, and by her he had three sons, *Louis*, *Magnus*, and *Albert*, which last became archbishop of *Bremen*.

**Magnus II. surnamed Torquatus.** MAGNUS II. succeeded to part of his father's possessions, and his elder brother *Lewis* dying without issue, he likewise enjoyed his states. He engaged in a war with *Gerhard* II. bishop of *Hildesheim*, which proved unfortunate to him, for being taken prisoner, he was obliged to sell the margraviate of *Misnia*, and three lordships, to raise money for his ransom. But two years afterwards he entered into family pacts with *Eric* II. then duke of *Saxe Lauenburgh*, by which it was agreed,

agreed, that upon extinction of either of the houses, the surviving family should succeed the other in its possessions. *Magnus* finished his days in a miserable manner, being run through the body by a common foldier belonging to *Otho*, count of *Schaumburg*, with whom he had a personal dispute. He left four sons, *Frederic*, *Bernhard*, *Henry*, and *Otho*: *Otho* got the archbishopric of *Bremen*, and *Frederic* the eldest was elected emperor; but setting out for *Brunswic* after the election, he was basely murdered at the instigation of the archbishop of *Mentz*.

THE emperor *Frederic* was succeeded by his brothers, *Henry* *Bernard*. and *Bernhard*, who ruled jointly for nine years, after which they made a partition. *Brunswic* fell to *Bernhard's* share, and *Luneburg* to *Henry*. Some years after their families exchanged their dominions; *Henry's* posterity kept *Brunswic*, and *Luneburg* became the property of *Bernhard*, and his heirs. *Bernhard* besides bought the county of *Hamburg* from its last possessor, and joined the city of *Ultzen* to the duchy of *Luneburgh*; he also demolished the castle of *Klozac*. The military art being much improved in his time by the late invention of fire-arms, besides the cannon of common size, he caused an extraordinary one to be cast at *Brunswic*, which was called *Faule Mette*. This remarkable piece is still preserved in the arsenal of that city, it weighs nine tons, discharges a ball of above six hundred weight, and requires fifty-two pounds of powder at one loading. *Bernhard* died in the year 1434, and left by his wife *Margaret*, daughter of the elector of *Saxony*, two sons, *Otho* and *Frederic*, surnamed the *Pious*, both of whom succeeded him in their turns. *Otho* dying without issue, *Frederic* succeeded him.

*FREDERIC*, of the house of *Luneburg*, was surnamed *Frederic*, the *Pious*, on account of his exemplary life. In his time the city of *Luneburg* being greatly in debt, intreated the prelates and the other clergy that received rents from the salt-pits of that city, to give up for some years part of these rents. The clergy refusing to comply, and the city insisting upon it, complaints were carried before the pope; and *Frederic*, partly on this account, and partly moved by devotion, made a journey to *Rome*, and took upon him to solicit in behalf of the city: but his efforts were without success, sentence being given in favour of the prelates, which for a long time after occasioned great commotions in the city of *Luneburgh*. *Frederic* having a natural propensity to great and good actions, assisted the citizens of *Munster*, who disagreed with the chapter of that see about the election of a bishop. He commanded their little army against the archbishop, who attacked

A. C.  
1450.

Otho the  
Magnani-  
mous.

tacked him before all his troops had assembled, and took him prisoner. *Frederic* continued for some time in captivity, and was obliged to give a considerable sum of money to redeem himself. Some years after he resolved to retire from the world, and having founded a convent in *Zelle*, he fixed his abode there, giving up the government of his states to his eldest son *Berhard II.* then bishop of *Hildesheim*. *Bernard* dying before him, his youngest son *Otho* succeeded, and he likewise departing this life before his father, and leaving a son under age, *Frederic* was obliged to quit the convent, and resume the government of his states, which he held for seven years after the death of his two sons. He married *Magdalene*, daughter of *Frederic I.* elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Henry the  
Younger.

*HENRY the Younger*, the eldest son of *Otho the Magnanimous*, was only three years of age at his father's death, and succeeded to the government in his eleventh year, by the death of his grandfather *Frederic*. His mother kept the administration till he came of age. At that time *Francis*, count of *Diepholt*, offered to hold his county as a fief from him, and to become his vassal, which was complied with, and hereby, after the extinction of that family, the county of *Diepholt* devolved to the house of *Luneburg*. Towards the end of his government, *Henry* brought himself into great distress by becoming the ally of the bishop of *Hildesheim*, who, from an ambitious view, made war upon *Eric I.* and his nephew, of the line of *Wolfenbittel*. The war having continued, for some time, with great calamity to the poor people on both sides, a truce was at last agreed to between the contending parties, and the dispute was left to the decision of the new emperor *Charles V.* The bishop appearing at diet at *Worms*, was ordered to forbear hostilities, and wait the decision of the emperor, being threatened with the ban of the empire in case he refused to comply. The bishop, thinking it for his interest, continued the war, and ridiculed the intimation; whereupon the ban of the empire was declared against him and his ally *Henry of Luneburg*. In consequence of this declaration, the bishop was stripped of all his possessions, except the city of *Hildesheim*, and three other fortresses; the difference was finally left to the decision of the electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony*, and *Brandenburgh*, and each party kept what it had taken during the troubles. *Henry of Luneburg* was no sooner informed that the ban was proclaimed against him, but to prevent the effects of it, he divested himself of all his possessions, gave them up to his sons, and retired to *France*. He resided there for six years, after which he returned to *Germany*, and died at *Winbushen*,

two years after the ban was repealed. His wife was *Margaret*, daughter of the elector of Saxony, by whom he had *Otho*, *Ernest*, and *Francis*.

AT the time that *Henry*, of the line of *Lüneburg*, was put to the ban of the empire, *Otho*, as his eldest son, should have had the chief government of the duchy of *Lüneburg*; but he contenting himself with *Harburgh*, ceded his right to *Ernest*, whilst *Francis*, the youngest brother, kept his residence at *Giffhorn*. *Ernest* was educated under the inspection of his uncle, *Frederic the Wise*, elector of Saxony, who sent him early to the university of *Wittenberg*, where he not only made great progress in learning, but had an opportunity of conversing with *Luther*, who, at that time, began to discover his sentiments about the hierarchy, and the doctrines of the see of *Rome*. From *Wittenberg* he went to *Paris*, where he was in great esteem with *Francis I.* then king of *France*, and after having acquired at that court such accomplishments, as were to be met with no where else in those days, he returned to his native country, when the ban was proclaimed against his father, and succeeded to his states at the time that the tenets of *Luther* began to interest all Germany.

Ernest the  
Confessor.  
A. C.  
1521.

*LUTHER*, having for two years exclaimed against the errors of the church, was hearkened to by several of the princes of the empire, and the emperor *Maximilian I.* was so far from being persuaded to proceed against him, that he used to say, that did the clergy lead pious lives, there would be no necessity for *Luther's* reforming. His successor, *Charles V.* being of a different disposition, violent measures were followed, and *Luther* was excommunicated, which proved the greatest fault pope *Leo X.* ever committed; for his pretended infallibility not permitting him to retract, *Luther* was thereby drove to despair. The year following, the emperor summoned *Luther* to appear at the diet of *Worms*, and *Ernest* being then just returned from *France*, went thither with his two brothers, where with them he concerted the preparatives that were necessary to introduce a reformation in the circle of *Lower Saxony*, as his uncle, *Frederic the Wise*, elector of Saxony, was doing in *Upper Saxony*. *Ernest* shewed uncommon prudence and moderation in carrying on his undertaking, publicly declaring to his subjects, that his intention was by no means to force their consciences, but only to afford them an opportunity to examine the merits of the doctrine in debate, and to determine accordingly. The clergy, not relishing these proceedings of *Ernest*, solicited his father *Henry* to return from *France*, hoping, that his presence would

be a hindrance to the reformation; but here they missed their aim, for though he came back to his native country, he was prevailed upon by his sons, not to interfere in the business of the reformation; whereby *Ernest* was left at liberty to pursue the scheme he had formed, of gradually abolishing the errors and abuses that had crept into the church. For this end, he cheerfully exerted himself with an uncommon share of application and constancy, and generously sent learned men to preach the gospel in the county of *Hoya, East-Friesland*, and other parts of *Germany*. His great zeal for the cause of the reformation, and the many difficulties to which he exposed himself on that account, justly acquired him the title of Confessor.

A. C.  
1529.

THE pope, and his adherents, being, by this time, fully sensible of the danger they were threatened with from the reformation, thought of means to stop its progress. With this view it was insisted upon by them, at the diet of *Spires*, that the ban declared against *Luther* should be put in execution, and that all those that followed his doctrine should be comprised in it. But when the emperor was on the point of gratifying their desire, *John the Constant*, then elector of *Saxony*, *Philip the Magnanimous*, landgrave of *Hesse*, *Ernest the Confessor*, his brother *Francis*, and other members of the empire, protested against it with so much steadiness and resolution, that *Charles* determined to use moderation for the present. Next year, the princes, encouragers of a reformation in the church, who were now distinguished by the name of Protestants, presented their confession of faith to the diet of *Augsburg*; but not being able to obtain free liberty of conscience, they returned home, and afterwards, upon account of their common danger, solemnly entered into an union at *Smalkald*. *Ernest the Confessor* was one of the parties concerned in this union, which subsisted for fifteen years, during which time each party kept the other in suspense.

A. C.  
1535.

*ERNEST* was not only engaged in opposing the arbitrary proceedings of the emperor and popish princes, but likewise sent a body of troops against the peasants, who had made an insurrection in several parts of *Germany*, refusing to pay obedience to their superiors; and laying waste whole countries, and murdering their masters in a most barbarous manner. His example being followed by other princes, the rebels were at last subdued, though not till after 100,000 of them had been killed during the commotion. Soon after an insurrection broke out of a more dangerous nature, threatening the subversion of all civil government. It was owing to a particular sect of Anabaptists, who after the reduction of the  
pea-

peasants, attempted to settle in *Upper Germany*; but the magistrates of *Strasbourg*, and other cities, expelling them, they retired to *Holland* and *Westphalia*: being likewise driven from *Holland*, the whole swarm settled at *Munster*, where they deposed the magistrates, and afterwards formed a government of their own. *Ernest* being solicited by the bishop of *Munster* to assist in reducing them, marched against the city with the other princes of the house of *Brunswic*, and took it by storm, after it had been the scene of a bloody tragedy for near two years.

1546.

*ERNEST*, after a life spent with unwearied application to promote the welfare of his subjects, died in his 48th year; leaving four sons, whereof the second was killed in the battle of *Sivershausen*; the eldest, *Francis Otho*, succeeded him; and, after his death, the two youngest, *Henry* and *William*, founded two new lines, which subsist to this day, and are called the houses of *Brunswic Wolfenbuttel*, and of *Brunswic Luneburg*. *Ernest* has obtained the character of a pious, steady, and valiant prince. Notwithstanding the cares and toils of government, he employed a great part of his time in study, and inspecting the education of his children; he took great delight to see his subjects instructed in the Protestant religion, for which purpose he ordered frequent visitations to be made in the different dioceses. He likewise admitted into his presence, and patiently heard, such of his subjects as desired personally to make their suits known to him, living up to the sense of his emblem, which was a burning candle, with this inscription, *Aliis inserviundo, meipsum consumo*; I serve others, and thereby consume myself.

1532.

A. C.

THE sons of *Ernest* being all under age at his death, the states of the principality of *Zelle*, took upon them the administration of the regency. During that time, *Frederic* lost his life in the battle near *Sivershausen*. *Francis Otho*, who as the elder brother, came to the government of his father's possessions in 1555, died four years after, leaving his dominions to his two younger brothers, *Henry* and *William*, who agreed to govern jointly, which they continued to do for ten years with great unanimity and friendship. During this joint government, *Frederic II.* king of *Denmark*, with the assistance of the dukes of *Holstein*, commenced a war against a people called the *Deithmarses*, inhabiting a country situated on the *German* ocean, between the *Elbe* and the *Eider*, and formerly conquered by *Henry the Lion*. The king of *Denmark* having killed 3000 of them in a battle, the rest fled to the marshes, and by the mediation of *Henry* and *William*, who set aside their own interests, a peace was concluded and

*William*,  
of the  
house of  
Lune-  
burgh.

rati-

ratified in the open field, by which the *Deithmarses* surrendered themselves, and their country was incorporated into the duchy of *Holstein*.

SOME years after, *Henry* having taken a resolution to live a quiet life, resigned his share of the government to his brother *William*, reserving no more to himself than the counties of *Danneberg* and *Luchow*, with their dependencies. *William* thus enjoyed a larger share of his father's dominions than he expected, and afterwards succeeded to the castles and bailiwicks of *Hoya*, *Menburg*, *Liebenau*, and *Bruchhausen*, by the death of the last count of *Hoya*; on the demise likewise of *Frederic*, last count of *Diepholt*, that county, as a fief of the house of *Luneburgh*, devolved entire to him, with its dependencies. *William*, after he came to the sole government of his states, caused the sum of the Protestant doctrines to be reduced into a body and published, ordering, that every clergyman within his dominions should swear at his ordination to conform himself to its contents. He died in 1592, leaving seven sons, the four eldest of whom succeeded him by turns. He was much beloved by his subjects; and high encomiums have been bestowed upon him by authors, on account of his knowledge and learning.

George.  
A. C.  
1592.

*ERNEST*, *Christian*, *Augustus*, *Frederic*, *Magnus*, *George*, and *John*, the seven sons of *Ernest the Confessor*, being resolved to keep up the splendor of their house, came to an agreement among themselves not to divide their paternal inheritance; determining that only one should marry, and that the elder brother should have the sole regency over the *Luneburgh* dominions, and be succeeded by the eldest that should survive him. They kept to this brotherly agreement with great exactness, which so new and uncommon thing, reaching the ear of the grand seignior *Achmet* I. he expressed great surprise, saying, *It was worth a man's while to undertake a journey on purpose, to be an eye-witness of this wonderful unanimity*. The seven brothers, according to their agreement, having drawn lots to determine who should marry, the happy lot fell upon *George*, the sixth brother, who thereupon entered the married state, and continued the family. By his marriage *George* secured the government to his posterity; but he died before the regency fell to himself.

*GEORGE*, so early as in the 9th year of his age, was sent with his brother *Magnus* to the university of *Fena*; when he had finished his studies he learned the art military under prince *Maurice of Nassau*, who, at that time, defended the liberties of the new republic of *Holland* against *Spain*. He afterwards went upon his travels into *France*, *England*, and *Italy*,



*Italy*, and when returned, he served *Christian IV.* king of *Denmark*, in his war against *Charles IX.* king of *Sweden*. In the beginning of the war of thirty years, he espoused the party of the emperor *Ferdinand II.* and would have kept steady to the same interest, had not the imperial general seized upon the principality of *Calenberg*, and exacted large sums from its inhabitants. These hostile proceedings induced the house of *Luneburgh* to league itself with *Gustavus Adolphus*. *George* recovered *Calenberg*, and defeated the imperial generals in several engagements, in consequence of which, many cities and fortresses fell into their hands, amongst which was *Hildesheim*, which he afterwards retained. The peace of *Prague* being concluded between the emperor and the elector of *Saxony*, he declared himself in favour of that treaty, and rejected the offers of the *Swedes*; upon which they committed some hostilities against him. *George* being afterwards fully convinced of the emperor's ambitious views, again sided with the *Swedes*, and drove the imperialists out of the fortress of *Steinbruc*, and having taken several other places, he sat down before the fortress of *Wolfenbittel*. Here was a period put to his warlike exploits; for while he was present at a banquet at *Hildesheim* with general *Banier*, a monk administered poisoned wine to several of the chiefs that were assembled there, and though he drank but little of it, yet it had so fatal an effect upon him, that from that time, his strength visibly abated, and soon after, a fever put an end to his life. He left by his wife *Anne-Eleanor*, daughter of *Louis V.* landgrave of *Hesse-Darmstadt*, four sons, *Christian-Louis*, *George-William*, *John-Frederic*, and *Ernest-Augustus*. The three eldest dying without male-issue, the principalities were re-united by the posterity of the youngest brother.

A. C.  
1641.

*ERNEST AUGUSTUS*, the youngest son of *George* above-mentioned, was but twelve years old at the time of his father's decease. As he discovered a very early inclination to learning, he was sent to the university of *Marpurg*, where he went through his studies, and was complimented with the rectorship of the university. He improved his knowledge afterwards by travelling into *Holland*, *England*, *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. The alternate succession in the bishopric of *Osnabrugh* being granted to the houses of *Brunswic-Wolfenbittel*, and *Brunswic-Luneburgh*, by the treaty of *Westphalia*, *Ernest-Augustus* succeeded to this bishopric after the death of the cardinal, who then possessed it; and fixing his residence in that city, he there built a fine palace at his own charge. His court, like that of the elector of *Mentz*, was called  
aula

Ernest-Augustus,  
the first  
elector.

*aula laboriosa*, on account of the share he had in all the public transactions of his time.

HE concurred in bringing the bishop of *Munster* to relinquish the war against the *Dutch*, and was instrumental in terminating the differences of the house of *Brunswic-Wolfenbuttel* with this bishop, about the protectorship of the city *Hoxter*. When *Louis XIV.* invaded *Holland*, he accepted of a neutrality, but nevertheless used all his dexterity to free *Westphalia* from the *French* troops. *Louis XIV.* afterwards carrying his arms into *Franch Compté*, the empire declared war against *France*; and *Ernest Augustus* joining the grand alliance, took the field himself, and made a campaign on the *Rhine* and on the *Moselle*. The year following, he acted in the *Netherlands* with the prince of *Orange*, who commanded the allied army. Here he assisted at the siege of *Maestricht*, and carried on an attack himself on the side of the *Meuse*. About the time of the conclusion of the peace at *Nimeguen*, the principality of *Calenberg* devolving to him by the death of *John Frederic* his brother, he appointed a regency at *Osnabruc*, and translated his residence to *Hanover*. Here he established the right of primogeniture in the house of *Brunswic-Luneburgh*, abolishing the pernicious custom that had hitherto prevailed in his house, of dividing the dominions belonging to it.

A. C.  
1680.

A. C.  
1688.

THE death of the elector palatine affording *Louis XIV.* another pretence for invading the empire, a new alliance was formed against him, to which *Ernest Augustus* acceded, and recalled his ambassador from *Paris*. He joined the auxiliary army on the *Moselle* with 8000 men, and proposed to relieve *Philipsburgh*; but it being too late, he secured *Coblentz* and *Frankfort*, and leaving 4000 of his troops on the *Rhine*, under the command of his eldest son *George Lewis*, he returned with the rest to his dominions. Next campaign he marched a body of 8000 men to the *Netherlands*, but while they were on their march, the *French* having passed the *Rhine*, and entered *Suabia*, the emperor entreated *Ernest Augustus* to join the confederate army on the *Rhine*, which enabled the allies to make themselves masters of *Mentz*. The following year, he had a body of 11,000 men in the *Netherlands*, under the command of his eldest son *George Lewis*, who behaved with great bravery at the unfortunate battle of *Fleury*. The war still continuing, the emperor desired *Ernest* to send reinforcements to the armies: accordingly, he augmented the forces he had in *Hungary* with 5000 men, and sent another body of 8000 to the *Netherlands*.

IN consideration of these services, *Leopold* proposed to the college of princes at *Ratisbon*, that he thought the house of *Brunswic* worthy of a place in the electoral college, which declaration of the emperor was agreed to by a majority of votes, and a resolution was accordingly drawn up, declaring him worthy of the electoral dignity. Against this resolve the college of princes immediately entered a protest; however, the emperor, the same year, gave the solemn investiture of the electoral dignity to the plenipotentiary of *Ernest Augustus*. The opposing princes again protested, declaring the investiture null, and contrary to the Golden Bull. Several assemblies were held upon this affair at *Goslar* and *Nuremberg*, and the opposition had almost proceeded to an open rupture, when *Ernest* dying in 1698, the dispute was omitted, on account of the new war that threatened the empire. *Ernest Augustus* was an active and laborious prince, and assiduous in the administration of justice. He married *Sophia*, daughter of *Frederic*, elector palatine and king of *Bohemia*, and of *Elizabeth*, daughter of *James I.* king of *England*, by whom he had six sons and one daughter. *George Lewis*, the eldest, succeeded him. *Frederic-Augustus*, the second, was slain in an action against the *Turks* in *Transylvania*; as was also the fourth, *Charles-Philip*, in a battle with the *Turks* and *Tartars* the same year; *Maximilian-William* died as field-marshal-general of the imperial army; *Christian*, the fifth son, on returning from an engagement with the *French* near *Ulm*, was drowned in the *Danube*; and the youngest, *Ernest Augustus*, became bishop of *Osnabruc*. *Sophia Charlotta*, the only daughter of his electoral highness, was married to *Frederic I.* king of *Prussia*.

A. C.  
1692.A. C.  
1698.

*GEORGE-Lewis*, eldest son of the elector *Ernest-Augustus*, was born in the year 1660. His father had him early initiated in the liberal arts, and in all the sciences necessary for a prince. When he was but fifteen years old, he attended his father and the duke of *Zelle* his uncle to the army on the *Moselle*, and was present in all the dangers they exposed themselves to in the battle near *Triers*, and in the siege of that place. The emperor *Leopold*, highly pleased with these proofs of his valour and intrepidity, congratulated him by a letter on the honour he had acquired in this campaign. He followed his father in the next campaigns in the *Netherlands*, where he assisted at the siege of *Maastricht* and *Charleroy*. The peace being concluded next year at *Nimwegen*, some time after, *Louis XIV.* with a view to engage the elector *Ernest* in his interest, proposed a match between *George-Louis* and a daughter of the duke of *Orleans*, but some

George-  
Lewis.  
A. C.  
1698.

over-

overtures of a marriage between *George Louis* and the princess *Anne*, second daughter of the duke of *York*, were more acceptable; for this purpose, the prince came over to *England*, where he was extremely well received by the whole court. However, his stay was but short in *England*, his father having concluded a match for him with his cousin-german *Sophia-Dorothy*, only daughter of the duke of *Zelle*. The marriage was celebrated with great solemnity in 1682, and heaven blessed it the year following with a prince, named *George-Augustus*, the late king of *Great Britain*.

SCARCE two years after this alliance, *George-Louis* engaged to assist the emperor in his war against the *Turks*, and the three following campaigns he signalized his valour in *Hungary*, especially at the siege of *Buda*, which the imperialists took by storm. Afterwards, on the breaking out of the second war between the empire and *Louis XIV.* his father acceding to the grand alliance, he commanded the *Luneburgh* troops at the siege of *Mentz* and *Bonn*, and signalized his valour in all the campaigns till the conclusion of the peace at *Ryswick*. The year following, his father dying, he wholly applied himself to the government of his dominions; but the peace of the *North* being disturbed by the death of the king of *Sweden*, and the dispute between the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Holstein*, the elector, to prevent the flame from spreading, marched to the assistance of the duke of *Holstein*, as guarantee of the treaty of *Altena*, and obliged the *Danes* to raise the siege of *Tonningen*. Whilst these things were doing, the king of *Sweden* having entered *Zealand*, and bombarded *Copenhagen*, the king of *Denmark* was obliged to conclude a peace to the satisfaction of the duke of *Holstein*.

THIS year the duke of *Gloucester*, the only surviving issue of princess *Anne's* thirteen children, dying, king *William* earnestly recommended to the parliament of *England* to regulate the succession of their crown. In consequence of which recommendation, an act of settlement was made the year following, by which the electress *Sophia* was declared next in succession to the crown of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, after king *William* and the princess *Anne* of *Denmark*, and in default of their issue: which act, sealed with the great seal of *England*, was carried to *Hanover* by the earl of *Macclesfield*.

A. C. 1702. A NEW war breaking out betwixt the emperor and the king of *France*, with regard to the succession of the crown of *Spain*, *George-Louis* and his uncle the duke of *Zelle*, became auxiliaries of the emperor, and the grand alliance being formed, the elector marched a body of troops into the country

country of the house of *Wolfsenbittel*, whose princes had made an engagement with *France*, and by taking several of their towns, forced them to quit that alliance. A few years after, *George-William*, duke of *Zelle*, yielded to fate, by whose decease the elector re-united all the dominions of the house of *Luneburgh*, the subjects of his uncle having some years before taken the oath of allegiance to him.

AFTER the memorable battle of *Hochstedt* or *Blenheim*, the military affairs of the empire not being managed to the content of the allies, the command of the army was given to the elector, and he accordingly arrived at *Philipsburgh* on the 13th of *September*, and soon after put a stop to the ravages of the *French* in the circles of *Suabia* and *Franconia*. Hearing they had seven regiments of horse and dragoons in a camp at *Offenburg*, he sent count *Merci* with a detachment to surprise the enemy. He succeeded in his enterprise, and brought away four standards, 150 prisoners, 1300 horses, with the loss of only two lieutenants, and thirty men. The duke of *Marlborough*, leaving the army in *Flanders* about the beginning of *October*, met the elector *George* and the elector of *Mentz* at *Frankfort*, where they concerted the operations for the next campaign. The elector returning to the army, the *French* began to repass the *Rhine*, and go into winter quarters, while the allies employed themselves in carrying a line from *Daxlant* to *Etlingen*. The diet of *Ratisbon* made some vigorous decrees for reinforcing the army against the next campaign; nevertheless, the army of the allies was very weak on the *Rhine*, and the elector was obliged to keep himself on the defensive. The year following, likewise, but half the number of men proposed assembled in the field, by which neglect, the designed invasion of *Upper Alsace* and *Franché Compté*, was prevented.

THE elector being thus disappointed of succours during three campaigns, by the remissness of the empire, resigned the command of the army; but left his troops both in *Flanders* and on the *Rhine*. About this time, the bishop and chapter of *Hildesheim* oppressing their Protestant subjects, and notwithstanding the representations of the elector, refusing to redress their grievances, he, as a chief party concerned in former conventions, ordered a detachment of dragoons to enter the bishopric, who making themselves masters of the city of *Hildesheim*, the fortress of *Peina*, and three bailiwicks, the chapter at last consented to give sufficient security for the Protestants.

THE empire at last concluding this long war with *France* by a peace at *Rasbdat* and *Baden*, *Louis XIV.* formally acknowledged. Q

A. C.  
1707.

A. C.  
1710.

A. C.  
1714.

know-

A. C.  
1727.

knowledge the electoral dignity in the house of *Luneburgh*, as he had the year before by the treaty of *Utrecht* owned the succession to the *British* realms, as it was limited by acts of parliament in favour of the princess *Sophia* and her issue. This princess lived not to enjoy the crown destined for her, but died this year of an apoplectic fit, when she had almost completed the eighty-fourth year of her age. Her death was followed a few weeks after, by that of her majesty queen *Anne*, who leaving no issue, the elector *George* was proclaimed on the first of *August*, the day of her death, at the usual places, and with the usual ceremonies, king, of *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Ireland*, &c. As soon as his majesty received the news of the queen's death, and of this proclamation, he expressed his intention to set out for *England*, where he soon after arrived. After reigning almost thirteen years over that kingdom, he died at the palace of *Osnaburgh*, on his way to *Hanover*, in the sixty-eighth year of his age, leaving behind him an only son, *George-Augustus*, late king of *Great Britain*. He was a prince eminently endowed with talents for governing, and besides blessed with a soul capable of tasting the pleasures of social intercourse, disdaining pride, but at the same time maintaining his dignity.

### The Line of Brunswic-Wolfenbittel.

A. C.  
1546.

Henry.

OF the three sons of *Ernest the Confessor* that survived him, *Otho*, the eldest, dying without issue, the dominions of the family fell to the two youngest brothers *Henry* and *William*, who both left posterity. The descendants of *William* founded the line of *Luneburgh*, and *Henry*, the elder brother, is the author of the present house of *Wolfenbittel*. *Henry* governed his father's states jointly with his brother for ten years, and afterwards chusing a retired life, he resigned the government to his brother, and reserved only to himself the counties of *Daneberg* and *Luchow*, with their dependencies. He died in 1598, leaving three sons, *Julius-Ernest*, *Francis*, and *Augustus*.

Augustus.

*JULIUS-Ernest* dying without issue, and *Francis* being drowned in passing a river, *Augustus* succeeded; and besides the counties abovementioned, he inherited the principality of *Wolfenbittel* with the lordship of *Wustrow*. He established his

his residence at *Hitzaker*, where his love to learning induced him to collect a library consisting of 80,000 volumes, and which at present amounts to above 116,000 volumes, besides 2000 select manuscripts. This valuable collection, after his succeeding *Frederic-Ulric*, was removed to *Wolfenbittel*, where it is open to all comers during the greatest part of the week days. He wrote several tracts, which remain as monuments of his labour and erudition. He died in 1666, leaving three sons, *Rudolph-Augustus*, *Antony-Ulric*, and *Ferdinand-Albert*.

*FERDINAND-Albert*, his youngest son, continued the family; he married *Christiana*, daughter of *Frederic*, of *Hesse-Cassel*, of whom he had *Sophia-Eleanora*, *Augustus-Ferdinand*, *Ferdinand-Albert*, *Ferdinand-Christian*, and *Ernest-Ferdinand*, twins, and *Henry-Ferdinand*. He died in 1687, and his son *Ferdinand-Albert* continued the family.

*FERDINAND-Albert II.* married *Anthonetta-Amelia*, of *Brandenburg*, of whom he had fourteen children; namely, *Charles* the present duke of *Wolfenbittel*, born the first of *August*, 1713; *Anthony-Ulric*, *Elisabeth-Christina*, *Lewis-Ernest*, *Augustus*, *Ferdinand*, *Louisa-Amalia*, *Sophia-Anthonetta*, *Albert*, *Christine-Caroline-Louisa*, *Theresia-Natalia*, *Juliana-Maria*, *Frederic-William*, *Frederic-Francis*. He died in 1735.

## The History of the Electorate of Brandenburg.

THE electorate, though formerly first in order, was deprived of that rank by the emperor *Charles IV.*; but the extent of its territories, and the number of its inhabitants, render it still one of the most considerable. Besides its ancient hereditary dominions of the marquisate of *Brandenburg*, the duchy of *Cleves*, the counties of *Mark* and *Ravensberg*, and the dukedom of *Prussia*, erected into a kingdom in the beginning of this century, it is at present possessed of several great provinces, adjudged to it by the treaties of *Westphalia*, in compensation for that part of *Pomerania* which was ceded to the crown of *Sweden*. These provinces are the duchy of *Magdeburgh*, the principality of *Halberstadt*, the principality of *Minden*, and farther *Pomerania*. The province of *Silesia*

Branden-  
burgh.

has likewise been lately ceded to this house, by a treaty concluded betwixt the empress and the present king of *Prussia*. The electors have been possessed of part of *Brandenburgh*, from the earliest accounts of history; and after many conquests and purchases, they have now the dominion of the whole country, which is divided into the old march, *Pregnitz*, the middle march, the march *Ukraine*, and the old march. *Brandenburgh* is the capital of the marquissate, from whence the electors have their title. It is a rich and populous city, situated upon the river *Havel*, and was formerly the principal place of the idolatry of the *Vandals*, where they sacrificed to two superior divinities. But *Berlin*, upon the same river, is the ordinary residence of the elector, having been greatly augmented by the numbers of *French* protestants, who resorted to it upon the repeal of the edict of *Nantes*.

The duchy  
of Cleves,  
and coun-  
ties of  
Mark and  
Ravens-  
berg.

THE elector of *Brandenburgh*, and the duke of *Newburgh*, having both pretended to the succession of *Cleves*, *Juliers*, and *Bergues*, made a provisional division of these states, till it should be determined who was the right heir to the whole; the last duke, who died without issue, having prohibited by his will any division of his estates. By this provisional division, the elector of *Brandenburgh* enjoys the duchy of *Cleves*, and the counties of *Mark* and *Ravensberg*.

1519.  
Prussia.  
1700.

*PRUSSIA* likewise is become hereditary to the house of *Brandenburgh*, though formerly it belonged to a grand master of the Teutonic order, these knights having, after a long war, subdued the antient heathen inhabitants, in order to convert them to Christianity. By a long course of oppression, they obliged their subjects to surrender themselves to the king of *Poland*, who entering *Prussia* with an army, vindicated the rights of the people. After a thirteen years war, between the knights of the order and the king of *Poland*, a peace was concluded, by which that part of *Prussia*, on the nigher side of the *Vistula*, was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland*; and the grand master of the order paid homage for what remained to the conquerors. Afterwards, *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, grand master of the order, refusing to pay homage, declared war against *Poland*, but finding himself unequal, he abandoned the interests of the order, went to *Craecovia*, and swearing allegiance to the king of *Poland*, received the investiture of the province to himself, and his lawful heirs male, failing of whom it was to be re-united to *Poland*. Afterwards the emperor *Leopold* erected *Prussia* into a kingdom, in consideration of the assistance which the elector gave him



in his wars with *France*. The capital of this kingdom is *Königsberg*, a large trading city, with a fine harbour at the mouth of the river *Inſtet*, which falls into the gulph of *Friſchaff*, on one ſide of which is the fort of *Pilau*, and on the other that of *Memel*.

THE duchy of *Magdeburgh* is a conſiderable ſtate, ſituated upon the *Elbe*. It was formerly an archbiſhopric, but ſince the death of *Auguſtus*, duke of *Saxony*, in 1680, it hath remained hereditary to the elector of *Brandenburg*, under the title of a duchy, and under this quality he hath a ſeat and voice on the bench of ſecular princes.

THE principality of *Halberſtadt* was formerly a biſhoprick, Halberſtadt of the foundation of *Charlemagne*; it is at preſent ſecularized ſtadt. with the fourth part of the canons, and a part of the county of *Höhenſtein*, all for the advantage of the elector of *Brandenburg*. Its prince is entitled to a ſeat and voice in the diets and deputations, as well as at the aſſemblies of the ſtates of the circle of *Lower Saxony*, of which it is one of the principal members. The capital of this principality is *Halberſtadt*, ſituated upon the river *Holtzheim*.

THE biſhopric of *Minden* has likewiſe been ſecularized by the peace of *Weſtphalia*, in favour of the elector of *Brandenburg*. The capital of this principality is *Minden*, upon the *Weſer*, but the courts of juſtice are held at *Paterſhagus*. 1464.

The ſucceſſion of *Pomerania* having been confirmed by the Farther emperor to the elector *Frederic II.* ſurnamed *Irontooth*; in *Pomerania* virtue of a treaty concluded between the elector and the dukes of *Pomerania*, by which if their line ſhould become extinct, *Pomerania* was to fall to the electorate, the ſucceſſion became open in 1637, by the death of *Bogislas XIV.* who left no male children. The *Swedes*, at that time, poſſeſſing not only the cities and fortified places, but all the country of the duchy of *Pomerania*, the elector could not then take poſſeſſion of that principality. So that the war ſtill continuing in *Germany* till the general pacification of *Weſtphalia*, the ſucceſſion of *Pomerania* was ſo regulated by that treaty, that the elector was obliged to content himſelf with the further part of that duchy, the other part being left to *Sweden*, with a perpetual power of ſucceeding to the reſt of the duchy, failing male princes of *Brandenburg*. After the determination of the ſucceſſion, the elector eſtabliſhed the principal ſeat of juſtice at *Sturgard*.

In all his different eſtates, which extend more than 300 leagues, almoſt the whole breadth of *Germany*, the elector cauſes juſtice to be adminiſtered according to the uſe and cuſtom of each country; and all appeals are carried before the

1568.

sovereign court residing near the prince, to be judged in the last instance; for his subjects cannot appeal from his final decrees, which is a right confirmed not only by the Golden Bull, but by a special concession granted to the elector by the emperor *Maximilian II.*

THE elector, and the greatest part of his subjects, profess the protestant religion, but in the countries of *Cleves*, and the *Mark*, the *Roman* Catholics have preserved their churches, with the liberty of the publick exercise of their religion.

THE elector is arch-chamberlain of the empire, in which quality he carries the sceptre at the coronation of the emperor, and when the emperor holds his court. His prerogatives consist in having the first prayers in the chapters depending upon his states; to judge sovereignly, and without appeal, through the whole extent of his electorate; which right the emperor *Leopold* extended to the hereditary states of this electorate. The emperor *Frederic III.* in 1456, granted him the power to establish new taxes, or to augment old ones, according to his pleasure; but this privilege is disputed. In quality of the duke of *Magdeburgh*, he concurs in the direction of the circle of *Lower Saxony*, and as duke of *Cleves*, he concurs in that of the circle of *Westphalia*. In the diets, besides his electoral vote, he has five voices in the college of princes, upon account of *Magdeburgh*, farther *Pomerania*, *Halberstadt*, *Minden*, and *Camin*. He has likewise several voices in the college of counts; and lastly, by a very antient agreement, he has the reversion of the duchy of *Mecklenburg*.

The anti-  
ent inha-  
bitants of  
Branden-  
burgh.

927.

THE most antient inhabitants of *Brandenburgh* were the *Suevi*\*, who were expelled by the *Vandales*, the *Hendets*, the *Saxons*, and the *Franks*. These were with difficulty subdued by *Charlemagne*, but at last, the emperor, *Henry the Fowler*, established margraves, or governors of the frontiers, in that country, to rule the barbarous people, who were inclined to revolt. *Sigefroy*, brother-in-law to the above emperor *Henry*, was the first margrave of *Brandenburgh*, under whose administration the bishopricks of *Brandenburgh* and *Havelberg* were established by *Otho I.* From this *Sigefroy* to the succession of the princes of the house of *Hohenzollern*, from which the present elector is descended, there are reckoned eight different families who have been margraves of *Brandenburgh*; namely, the family of the *Saxons*, of *Walbeck*, *Staden*, *Plantzck*, *Anhalt*, *Bavaria*, *Luxemburgh*, and *Misnia*;

\* Mem. de BRANDEN. p. 5. CLUVERII. Geog. l. iii. c. 3.

to these that of *Hohenzollern* succeeded, which continues to this day.

THE margraves of the four first races had continual wars with the kings of the *Vandals*, and other barbarous people. *Albert*, surnamed the *Bear*, the first prince of the *Anhaltine* race, by his power secured his country from their ravages. He was made margrave by the emperor *Conrad III.* and afterwards raised to the dignity of an elector by *Frederic Barossa*, about the year 1100. Some years afterwards the king of the *Vandals* dying without issue, left the middle *March* by his last will to the elector, who was besides possessed of the old *March*, *Upper Saxony*, the country of *Anhalt*, and part of *Lusace*. History makes no mention of the descendants of this race, only 'tis certain, that this line became extinct in 1332, by the death of *Woldemar II.* The electorate being devolved to the empire, *Louis* of *Bavaria*, the emperor, gave it to his son *Louis*, who was the first of the sixth race. *Louis* the *Roman* succeeded his brother, and as he died likewise without children, his third brother *Otho* succeeded him. This prince was so pusillanimous, that he sold the electorate to the emperor *Charles IV.* of the house of *Luxemburgh*, for 200,000 florins of gold. *Charles IV.* gave the *March* to his son *Wenceslaus*, to whom *Sigismund* succeeded; this elector, having need of money, sold the new *March* to the knights of the *Teutonic* order. *Josse* succeeded *Sigismund*, and aspiring to the empire, he sold the electorate to *William*, duke of *Misnia*, who possessed it only one year, the emperor *Sigismund* buying it from him.

THE next family that succeeded to the electorate was that of *Hohenzollern*, the original of which, like that of many others, is hid in the darkness of antiquity. *Tassillon* is the count of *Hohenzollern* known in history; he lived about the year 800. His descendants were *Danes*, *Rodolph I.* *Otho*, *Wolfgang*, *Frederic I.* *Frederic II.* *Frederic III.* *Rodolph II.* whose obscure lives are not known. *Conrad*, who lived about the year 1200, is the first of the family whom history mentions, as burgrave of *Nuremberg*. His successors were *Frederic I.* *Conrad II.* *Frederic II.* *Frederic III.* *John I.* *Frederic IV.* *Conrad IV.* *John II.* *Albert VI.* *Frederic V.* his nephew, declared prince of the empire at the diet of *Nuremberg* by the emperor *Charles IV.* *Frederic VI.* his son, succeeded his father as burgrave of *Nuremberg*, and in the year 1417, received the investiture of the country of *Brandenburg*, at the diet of *Constance*, from the hands of the emperor *Sigismund*, who, two years before, had conferred upon him the dignity

of elector, and arch-chamberlain of the holy *Roman* empire.

Frederic I. *FREDERIC*, the first elector of the house of *Hohenzollern*, upon his investiture, found himself possessed of the old and middle *March*, but that the dukes of *Pomerania* had usurped the *March* *Ukrain*; he declared war upon them, and defeating them at *Angermund*, re-united the *March* to his province. The new *March* having been sold to the knights of the Teutonic order by the elector *Sigismund*, of the house of *Luxemburgh*, the elector *Sigismund*, extending his views of grandeur, took possession of *Saxony*, which electorate was vacant by the death of the last elector of the *Anhaltine* branch. The emperor, who did not approve of this acquisition, gave the investiture of *Saxony* to the duke of *Misnia*, upon which *Frederic* I. desisted voluntarily from his conquests. The elector made a division of his estates by his will; his eldest son, surnamed the *Alchymist*, was deprived of his rights by his father, who left him only the *Voightland*, and his crucible. His second son *Frederic*, had the electorate; *Albert*, surnamed the *Achilles*, had the duchies of *Franconia*; and *Frederic*, surnamed the *Fat*, had the old *March*, but his death re-united that province to the electorate. *Frederic* I. dying in 1440, his second son succeeded him according to his will.

Frederic  
II. sur-  
named I-  
rontooth.

*FREDERIC* II. surnamed *Irontooth*, upon account of his strength, may likewise be called *Magnanimous*, because he refused the crown of *Bohemia*, which the pope offered him, having excommunicated *George Podiebrad*; and declared likewise that he would not accept of the crown of *Poland*, but after the refusal of *Casimir*, brother of the last king *Ladislaus*. This grandeur of soul of the elector procured him the confidence of his people, and the estates of *Lower Lusace* gave themselves to him by inclination. *George Podiebrad*, who was king of *Bohemia*, to prevent that province, which was a fief of his kingdom, from passing under the dominion of *Frederic* II. made war upon him in *Lusace*, and in the *March*. These two princes concluded a treaty afterwards at *Guben*, by which *Cotbus*, *Peitz*, *Sommerfeld*, *Bobersberg*, *Storgaw*, and *Besskaw*, were ceded in propriety to the elector, by the crown of *Bohemia*. *Frederic* afterwards redeemed the new *March* from the Teutonic order, and *Otho* III. the last duke of *Stetin*, happening to die, he entered into a war with the duke of *Wolgast* about the succession. This affair was afterwards settled by a treaty, by which the duke of *Wolgast* indeed possessed the duchy of *Stetin*, but it became feudatory to the elector, and *Pomerania* rendered him a provisional homage. The elector likewise re-united the county

1462.

1464.

county of *Wernigerode* to the *March*, as a vacant fief, and took the titles of duke of *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, *Vandalia*, *Schwerin*, and *Rostock*, upon which he had a right of reversion. Having no children, he abdicated the electorate in favour of his brother *Albert*, surnamed *Achilles*, reserving only a moderate pension of 6000 florins, upon which he lived as a philosopher till the year 1471, when he died loaded with infirmities.

*ALBERT* was surnamed *Achilles*, and *Ulysses* upon account *Albert*, of his prudence and valour. He was fifty-seven years of age, surnamed when his brother yielded the government to him. When he *Achilles*. was burgrave of *Nuremberg*, he made war upon *Lewis du Barbu*, duke of *Bavaria*, and took him prisoner; he likewise gained eight battles against the people of *Nuremberg*, who disputed his title of burgraviate, and took possession of the city *Greiffenberg*, as *Alexander* did that of the capital of the *Oxidrace*, leaping from the top of the walls alone into the city, where he defended himself till his troops, having forced the gates, came to his assistance. *Albert*, being greatly in the confidence of the emperor *Frederic III.* governed almost the whole empire, and commanded the imperial armies against *Louis the Rich*, duke of *Bavaria*, and against *Charles the Hardy*, duke of *Burgundy*, who laid siege to *Nuis*, in the electorate of *Cologn*. Having negotiated a peace with these princes, he acquired the surname of *Ulysses*, having always deserved that of *Achilles*, both upon account of his valour at the head of the troops which he commanded, and for having carried away the prize at seventeen tournaments, which were fashionable sports in those days<sup>1</sup>. *Albert*, having succeeded his brother, re-united his possessions of *Franconia* to the electorate, and made a treaty of confraternity with the houses of *Saxony* and *Hesse*, which regulated the succession of their estates, in case any of their lines should become extinct. The same year he settled the succession among his sons, giving the electorate to his eldest son *John*; to the second *Bareith*, and to the youngest *Anspach*; and soon after, abdicated in favour of his son *John*. His daughter *Barbe*, married *Henry*, duke of *Glogaw* and *Crossen*, and brought the last duchy into the house of *Brandenburgh*, in consequence of her contract of marriage, which bore, that in case her husband died without children, the elector should have a right to raise annually 50,000 ducats upon the duchy of *Crossen*. Duke *Henry* dying without issue, *John*, the elector, put himself in possession of the city of *Crossen*, and maintained that acquisition.

1473.

<sup>1</sup> Mem. de BRANDEN. p. 20.

THE third son of *Albert the Achilles, Frederic the Old*, margrave of *Anspach*, was the grandfather of that *George Frederic* who received the duchy of *Jagendorff* from the king of *Bohemia*. This *George Frederic* made a contract with the dukes of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor*, and promised him as an equivalent the sum of 130,000 florins, which was never paid.

John, the  
Cicero.

'Tis said, the surname of *Cicero* was given to this elector, upon account of his natural eloquence, he having reconciled three kings, who disputed the succession of *Silesia*; namely, *Ladislav* of *Bohemia*, *Casimir* of *Poland*, and *Matthias* of *Hungary*. *John the Cicero*, and the elector of *Saxony*, entered *Silesia* at the head of 6000 horse, and declared themselves enemies to that king who should refuse the peace which they offered. The kings coming to a treaty, by the mediation of the electors, *Silesia* and *Lusace* were divided between the kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*. There is need of other proofs of the eloquence of *John* than the above example, for here the 6000 horse seem to have been the strongest argument. *John the Cicero* had a new war to maintain against the duke of *Sagan*, who formed pretensions upon the duchy of *Crossen*; having engaged with him near that city, he defeated him and took him prisoner. After governing twenty years, he died in the year 1499, leaving two sons, the eldest of which, *Joachim*, succeeded to the electorate; and the second, named *Albert*, became elector of *Mentz*, and archbishop of *Magdeburgh*. It was this elector who founded the university of *Frankfort* upon the *Oder*.

1498.  
Joachim I.  
surnamed  
Nestor.

*JOACHIM* was only sixteen years of age when he became elector. The county of *Ruppin* having become vacant by the death of *Wickmann*, count of *Linclaw*, the elector reunited that fief to the *March*. He died in 1532, leaving two sons; namely, *Joachim*, who succeeded him, and the margrave *Jahn*, to whom he left the new *Marche*, *Crossen*, *Sternberg*, and *Storkaw*.

Joachim  
II.

*JOACHIM* having inherited the electorate of his father, embraced the doctrine of *Luther* in 1539. It is not known what was the principal motive of his changing his religion, but it is certain, that the courtiers, and the bishop of *Brandenburgh*, followed his example. He acquired by the communion under both kinds, the bishopricks of *Brandenburgh*, *Havelberg*, and *Lebus*, which he incorporated into this *March*. And whilst the war of religion desolated *Saxony*, and the neighbouring countries, he maintained his electorate in peace, having declined to enter into the union which the protestants concluded at *Smalcalde*. The emperor *Charles V.* who had put himself at the head of the Catholics, having

1535.

made

made use of the equivocation of a safe-conduct to seize the landgrave of *Hesse*, who, with the elector of *Saxony*, had commanded the protestants; *Joachim*, who had been guarantee of the safe-conduct, enraged at this breach of faith, drew his sword against the duke of *Alka*, the emperor's ambassador at *Berlin*; and would have, by his death, revenged the injury committed by his master, had not those who were present prevented him. The ruinous war of religion was at last concluded by the peace of *Passau* and *Augsburgh*; but the elector of *Saxony* was deposed, and his electorate given to prince *Maurice*, of the *Albertine* line. However, *Joachim* did not agree to the *Interim* which the emperor published.

THE elector of *Brandenburgh*, and the new elector of *Saxony* were charged by the emperor to lay siege to *Magdeburgh*, which surrendered after a defence of fourteen months. The archbishop of *Magdeburgh* dying, the canons elected in his place *Frederic*, bishop of *Havelberg*, second son of the elector *Joachim*; and, after his death, the elector had credit enough to cause *Sigismond*, his third son, to be elected, who was a protestant. Soon after the peace of religion, the elector caused fortify *Spandaw*, whilst his brother *John* the margrave fortified *Custrin*, the emperor *Charles V.* then making it fashionable to fortify places, by giving the example at *Ghent*, *Antwerp*, and *Milan*.

*JOACHIM II.* obtained of his brother-in-law *Sigismond-Augustus*, king of *Poland*, the right of succeeding to *Albert-Frederic*, of *Brandenburgh*, duke of *Prussia*, in case he should die without heirs; and he engaged to assist *Poland* with a certain number of troops whenever she should be attacked. The reign of this prince was quiet and peaceable, the manners of the country beginning to be a little more polished, yet not without a mixture of disguised barbarity, mistaken for magnificence, and a formal ceremony instead of real politeness. 'Tis related in history, that *Joachim II.* when he married *Sophia*, the daughter of the king of *Poland*, out of a heroick gallantry, went to bed to his young spouse on his wedding-night, with all his armour on. This elector is accused of pushing his liberality to a degree of prodigality, and exceeding his predecessors in luxury and vain pomp. He died in 1571.

*JOHN-George* inherited the electorate by the death of *John*-his father, and the new *March* from his uncle the margrave *George-John*. It is to be remarked, that one of his wives was a princess of *Lignitz*, named *Sophia*. During his government, the branch of the margraves of *Bareith* and *Anspach* becoming extinct, he divided that succession between his two younger

younger sons; *Christian* the oldest of the two having *Bareith*, and *Ernest* having *Anspach*. His reign was pacific, and he died in 1598.

Joachim-Frederic.

*JOACHIM-Frederic* was fifty-two years of age when he succeeded to the government. During the life of his father he enjoyed the bishopricks of *Magdeburgh*, *Havelberg*, and *Lebus*. When he succeeded to the electorate, he resigned the archbishoprick of *Magdeburgh*, in favour of his son *Christian-William*. He administered *Prussia* during the madness of duke *Albert-Frederic*, and recovered the succession of the duchy of *Jagersdorff*, which he gave to one of his sons, named *John-George*, as a reparation for the bishoprick of *Strasburg*, which he had been obliged to renounce, it being usual, in these times, for successions to be often divided and re-united. *Joachim-Frederic* was the first prince who established a council of state; and considering likewise the necessity of providing for the education of youth, he founded the college of *Joachimthal*, where an hundred and twenty persons are educated, and maintained according to the institution. This college was afterwards transferred to *Berlin* by the grand elector. The poverty of the country, and the great want of money, obliged this elector to publish sumptuary laws. He died in 1608, aged sixty-three years.

John-Sigismund

*JOHN-Sigismund* married at *Koningsberg*, *Anne*, the only daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Prussia*, heiress of that duchy, and of the succession of *Cleves*. This succession, which consisted of the countries of *Juliers*, *Berg*, *Cleves*, the *Marck*, *Ravensberg*, and *Ravensstein*, was too tempting not to excite the ambition of all those who hoped to share in it. Before we speak of the rights of the elector of *Brandenburgh*, and the dukes of *Neuburgh*, it is proper to explain the pretensions of *Saxony*. The emperor *Maximilian* had given the

succeeded to  
the coun-  
tries of Ju-  
liers, Berg,  
&c.

reversion of this succession to the princes of the two lines of *Saxony*, namely, the *Ernestine* and *Albertine*; failing all heirs male and female of the dukes of *Cleves*: for the patents which *George William* obtained of the emperor prove, that females had a right to inherit that fief. *John-Frederic*, the last elector of *Saxony*, of the *Ernestine* house, married *Sybilla*, daughter of *John III.* duke of *Juliers*. *William*, duke of *Cleves*, son of this duke of *Juliers*, married the niece of the emperor *Charles V.* This marriage, joined to the resentment the emperor had against *Frederic* of *Saxony*, who was one of the members of the *Smalcaldick* league, influenced him to confirm to *John-William*, the right which he had of disposing of the succession in favour of his daughters, failing male children. The son of this duke dying without chil-

dren,



children, the succession fell to the sisters. The eldest, named *Mary Eleonore* had married to the duke of *Prussia*, *Albert-Frederic*. The second, *Anne*, was married to the prince palatine of *Neuburgh*. The third, *Magdalene*, was wife of the count palatine of *Deuxpoints*. The fourth, *Sybilla*, was married to a prince of *Austria*, count of *Bargaw*; these four princesses and their children pretended to the succession. *Mary-Eleonore*, wife of *Albert of Prussia*, founded her rights upon her contract of marriage, which bore in express terms, that if her brother died without children, she and her posterity should inherit the six duchies, in virtue of the fundamental agreements, by which the eldest daughters have the right of succession. The duke of *Prussia* engaged to pay 200,000 florins of gold to his wife's sisters, in lieu of all their pretensions. *Eleonore* being dead, her daughter *Anne*, wife of the elector *John-Sigismund*, inherited the rights of her mother, which was the point of dispute. *Anne*, duchess of *Neuburgh*, founded her pretensions upon this, that as her sister *Mary-Eleonore* was dead, she succeeded to her rights, and became of course the eldest of the other sisters, and nearest relation to her deceased brother, as *Anne* of *Brandenburgh* was only his niece; but these pretensions were contrary to the agreements of the family, and the contract of marriage of *Mary-Eleonore*.

1418.

1496.

THE two younger sisters of duke *John William*, did not demand the entire possession, they proposed only to dismember it. But what rendered null the right of the three younger sisters, was, that in their contract of marriage they had renounced all their rights whilst there was any children of their eldest sister alive. The elector *John-Sigismund*, and *Wolfgang William*, duke of *Newburgh*, were to take joint possession of the disputed estates; in the mean time, reserving to themselves their respective rights. What contributed to this agreement, was, that the emperor *Rodolph* wanted to take possession of this inheritance, under a pretence of sequestration, till the dispute should be legally decided. The archduke *Leopold* was preparing to take possession of it, but the Protestant princes opposed him, and formed a celebrated alliance, which is called the Union; to counterbalance the Union, the Roman Catholics made a like treaty at *Wartzburch*, which they called the League. The elector had endeavoured an accommodation with the duke of *Neuburgh*, but at an interview which they had, in the heat of the dispute, *John-Sigismund* gave the duke a blow, which embroiled matters anew.

ALBERT,

**ALBERT**, duke of *Prussia*, and father-in-law of *John Sigismund*, having the misfortune to become a lunatic, *Joachim-Frederic* had administrated *Prussia* during his life; after his death, *Albert* still continuing in the same melancholy condition, *John Sigismund* afterwards charged himself with the same care, and received, from the king of *Poland*, the investiture of *Prussia* for himself and descendants, which the elector was the third investiture that had been given to the electoral house. This country was called antiently *Borussia*; investiture *Bo*, signifying near, *Russia* the river *Russe*, which is a branch of *Prussia*. of the *Niemen*, at present called the *Memel*. *Prussia* was originally inhabited by the *Bohemians*, *Sarmates*, *Russians*, and *Veneds*, all idolatrous nations; adoring gods of the lake, woods, and the rivers, and even serpents and elks, without any temples; worshipping only under oaks, and sacrificing to their false gods their enemies taken in war. *St. Adelbert* 1000. was the first that preached Christianity to these people, from whom he received the crown of martyrdom. They were afterwards invaded by three successive kings of *Poland*, in order to convert them to Christianity, but these warlike people, in return, ravaged *Masovia* and *Cujavia*. *Conrad*, duke of *Cujavia*, called in to his assistance the knights of the Teutonic order from Germany. *Herman de Saltza*, who *of Prussia*, was then grand master, entered *Prussia*, and by the assistance and its first of the *Livonian* knights established the four bishopricks of inhabitants. *Oulm*, *Pomesan*, *Ermeland*, and *Sameland*. This war, which the order made against the *Prussians*, continued fifty years before they established themselves; and afterwards they were engaged in wars with the king of *Poland*, and sometimes with the dukes of *Pomerania*, who were jealous of their establishment. From these knights most of the present noble families of *Prussia* are descended. 1450.

UNDER the grand master *Conrad of Erlichhausen*, the cities of *Dantzick*, *Thorn*, and *Elbing*, having suffered greatly by the oppression of the order, declared to them, that being weary of obeying them, they had surrendered themselves to *Casimir*, son of the king of *Poland*. This concession was followed by a war betwixt the knights and the king of *Poland*, which, after continuing thirteen years, was concluded by a treaty, by which all *Prussia*, on the nigher side of the river *Vistula*, was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland*, and called *Royal Prussia*, but further *Prussia* was left to the order, upon the condition of their paying homage for it to the conquerors. Some of the masters of the order observed this condition; but *Frederic*, duke of *Saxony*, master of the order, being promised assistance from the emperor and German princes,

princes, refused to pay homage to *Poland*. Afterwards finding himself unequal for the war which threatened him from *Poland*, he left the province and went into *Germany*. After his death, *Albert of Brandenburg*, who was the great grandchild of *Albert the Achilles*, being chosen grand-master of the order, and refusing to acknowledge *Poland* as superior to the fief, in consequence of the desire of the emperor and the pope, he was immediately engaged in a war with that kingdom, which for some time he supported with vigour; but finding himself unable to withstand the forces of *Poland*, and being offered the fief as a personal inheritance, he abandoned the interests of the order, and concluded a peace with *Sigismund*, who created him duke of *Prussia*, and gave him the further province as an hereditary fief of *Poland*. *Albert* having thus renounced the Teutonic order, and likewise the Roman Catholick religion, afterwards had a war to maintain against *Eric*, duke of *Brunswick*, and commander of *Memel*. *Eric* entered *Prussia*, at the head of 12000 men; but *Albert* stopt him upon the banks of the *Vistula*. As nothing remarkable happened, and the banks of the rivers were covered with soldiers, who employed themselves in gathering nuts, this expedition was called the War of Nuts. To the first duke *Albert*, his son *Frederic-Albert* succeeded, and received the investiture of the duchy from the king *Sigismund-Augustus*; in which the envoy of the elector *Joachim II.* had part. It is this *Albert-Frederic*, who married *Mary-Eleonore*, daughter of *John William*, and sister of the last duke of *Cleves*. *John-Sigismund* being son-in-law and tutor of this duke of *Prussia*, by his death was put in full possession of that duchy. The elector who had become protestant to please his new subjects, feeling the approaches of age, and finding himself loaded with infirmities, resigned the government to his son *George-William*, and died soon after.

1525

1618

DURING the unhappy government of *George-William*, who succeeded his father in 1619, the electorate suffered the most miserable calamities, being desolated by the war of thirty years, the devastations of which are not to this day quite repaired, and having at its head a prince incapable of governing, who had chosen a minister, a traitor to his country, and besides the armies of friends and enemies, who harraided the whole country, suffering under a contagious and malignant distemper, which destroyed the poor remains of their fury. Misfortune seemed not only to attend the elector, but likewise to persecute all his relations. The unhappy *Frederic V.* the elector palatine, whose sister he had married, though elected and crowned king of *Bohemia*, was put to the ban of the

succeeds to  
the electo-  
rate.

the empire by the emperor *Ferdinand II.* deprived of his electorate, and entirely defeated at *Weisenburg*. The duke of *Jagerndorff*, uncle of the elector, was dispossessed of his country, because he embraced the party of *Frederic V.* His second uncle likewise was deposed and put to the ban of the empire, for having entered into the league of *Lavenburgh*, and having made an alliance with the king of *Denmark*.

THE war of thirty years had begun in 1618, upon account of the revolt of the *Bohemians*, who had chosen *Frederic V.* elector palatine, for their king. Though the greatest part of *Germany* was afterwards concerned in this war, we shall only relate those events which directly regard the history of this electorate. The truce betwixt the *Hollanders* and *Spaniards* being now expired, the duchy of *Cleves*, where both these nations had troops, immediately became the theatre of war. The *Spaniards* forced the garrison of *Juliers*, which the *Hollanders* held for the elector, and likewise made themselves masters of *Cleves* and *Lipstadt*. However, some years afterwards, the *Hollanders* drove the *Spaniards* from the country of *Cleves*, and retook some cities for the elector; and soon after, the *Spaniards*, by an accommodation, evacuated the provinces of the elector, and put garrisons into the towns belonging to the duke of *Newburgh*, while the *Hollanders* garrisoned those of *George-William*. This accommodation continuing only for a few years, in 1635, the war began again in those provinces with more violence than before, and during the whole government of the elector, the provinces of this succession were a prey to the *Spaniards* and *Hollanders*, who took possession of posts, surpris'd cities, and alternately gained and lost advantages without performing any thing of consequence, the exactions of the officers, and the plundering of the soldiers, being, at that time, the chief part of the art of war.

THE elector-palatine being put to the ban of the empire, the electors of *Brandenburgh* and *Saxony* interceded with the emperor for their colleague, and their intercessions having no effect, they refused to acknowledge the elector *Maximilian*, duke of *Bavaria*, whom *Ferdinand II.* had raised to that dignity, to the prejudice of the palatine house, and against the laws of the empire; for according to the *Golden Bull*, the emperor has no right to degrade an elector, or put him to the ban of the empire, without the unanimous consent of the whole diet in a full assembly.

THE despotic government of the emperor, at this time, alarmed the protestants, who were interested in maintaining the free exercise of their religion, and keeping possession of the

the ecclesiastic estates which they had secularised; the dukes of *Luneburgh, Holstein, and Mecklenburgh*, and the king of *Denmark*, concluded a league at *Lavenburg*. The emperor *The emperor* taking umbrage at this league, and thinking it below him to use the means of negotiation with the parties engaged, he sent *Tilly*, at the head of 12000 men, into the circle of *Lower Saxony*, while *Wallenstein* marched with another body of *Austrians* towards the bishopricks of *Magdeburgh* and *Halberstadt*. *Tilly*, having pillaged the city of *Hall*, though it surrendered to him without resistance, the states of *Lower-Saxony*, astonished at these hostilities, requested an accommodation with the emperor; but these propositions did not hinder *Tilly* and *Wallenstein* to seize the country of *Halberstadt* and *Magdeburgh*. The troops of the administrator, and the king of *Denmark*, who had entered *Lower Saxony* to oppose the Imperialists, being defeated, they retired into the march of *Brandenburgh*, which they pillaged. At the same time, another body of *Danes* being defeated by *Tilly*, near *Huter*, the elector *George William* thought proper to comply with the desire of the emperor, and acknowledge the new dignity of *Maximilian* of *Bavaria*, the imperial troops being then quartered in *Brandenburgh, Rathenau, Havelburgh, and Perleburgh*.

THE Danish general, having assembled the remains of his army, entered the *Marches* without the leave of the elector; but the Imperialists detaching 7000 men, to whom the elector added 800, the *Danes* were forced to retire. By this weak assistance which the elector then gave, it clearly appears, that he had but very few forces on foot. The Imperialists making an advantage of their successes, put garrisons into all *Pomerania*; the emperor, under a pretence of defending the empire from the *Swedes*, who claimed a right to *Pomerania*, designed secretly to take possession of that duchy; although, in virtue of a treaty, the succession was to fall to the elector *George William*, by the death of duke *Bogislaus*, who had no issue. *Stralsund*, after having maintained a long siege from the imperial general *Wallenstein*, concluded an alliance with *Gustavus Adolphus*, king of *Sweden*, and received a Swedish garrison of 9000 men.

IN the mean time, the emperor, elated with the success of his generals in *Germany*, and believing it a favourable opportunity to humble the Protestant princes, and suppress the new religion, published his famous edict of *Restitution*, by which he enjoined the Protestant princes to restore to the church those possessions which they had seized upon since the transaction of *Passau*. This edict, by which the most part

of the princes would have lost considerable estates, and the house of *Brandenburgh* would have been deprived of the bishopricks of *Brandenburgh*, *Havelburgh*, and *Lebus*, was a new signal for the protestants to arm against the Catholics. These divisions in *Germany* determined *Gustavus Adolphus* to declare war against the emperor. Having defeated the king of *Poland*, who had formed pretensions to the crown of *Sweden*, he concluded a truce with him for twenty-six years, in which the elector was included, and afterwards published a manifesto against the emperor, complaining, that he had given assistance to the king of *Poland*; that he had deposed his ally, the duke of *Mecklenburgh*; and that he had used violence against the city of *Stralsund*, which was in alliance with him.

and raise  
great con-  
tributions  
in the  
marches of  
Branden-  
burgh.

WHILE the *Swedes* were preparing to invade *Germany*, *Wallenstein*, who had taken his quarters in *Brandenburgh*, raised most exorbitant sums in the *Marches*, having no regard to the elector, who, though he was in friendship with the emperor, and complained to him, yet was not relieved. It is reported, that the regiments of *Pappenheim* and *St. Julian*, who were quartered in the middle *March*, raised 300,000 crowns in that province within six months.

*Gustavus Adolphus*  
enters Ger-  
many,

AT length, *Gustavus Adolphus* entered *Germany*, and made a descent upon the island of *Rugen*, from whence by the assistance of his garrison at *Stralsund*, he dislodged the Imperialists. Upon the approach of the *Swedes*, the emperor gave orders to the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh* to prepare provisions and ammunition for his troops; assuring them; that, in consideration of this service, he would modify with regard to them his edict of Restitution. While the diet of *Ratisbon* was deliberating upon the means of delivering *Germany* from so many evils, and especially from the invasion of the *Swedes*; *Gustavus Adolphus* took possession of all *Pomerania*, and having put a garrison in *Stetin*, obliged the Imperial general to retire through the *New March* towards *Frankfort* upon the *Oder*. *Gustavus* having thus conquered *Pomerania*, made a treaty with the duke *Bogislaus*, in which it was stipulated, that if any one should dispute the succession of *Pomerania* with the elector of *Brandenburgh*, after the death of the duke, or if *Sweden* was not entirely indemnified for the expences of the war, that province should remain in sequestration in the hands of *Gustavus Adolphus*.

and takes  
possession of  
Pomera-  
nia.

THE Protestants, encouraged by the approach of the king of *Sweden*, held an assembly at *Leipsick*, where they deliberated upon their interests. The city of *Magdeburgh* had already made an alliance with *Gustavus*, and granted him a pas-  
sage

age of its bridge upon the *Elbe*. In consequence of this assistance, it had driven the Imperialists from the open country; but *Tilly* returned at the head of his army, and began the famous blockade of that city. The electors of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony*, disapproving of the conduct of *Magdeburgh*, resolved to continue attached to the emperor, and upon the first approach of the *Swedes*, the elector ordered some works of earth to be thrown up before the gates of *Berlin*; and not having time to assemble the *arriere-ban*, he ordered the citizens to mount guard upon the ramparts, where he had placed some cannon. Meanwhile *Gustavus* crossed the *March*, and hastened to the assistance of the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, and designing to engage all the Protestants in his interests, he published every where, that he was come into *Germany* only with the intention of delivering the princes from the yoke of the emperor, and especially to defend the liberty of religion. The *Swedes* making a progress in *Mecklenburgh*, *Tilly* left some troops to continue the blockade of *Magdeburgh*, and marched with his forces to *Frankfort* on the *Oder*, where having joined the other Imperial general, they afterwards marched through the electorate to attack the *Swedes*. But *Gustavus* quitting *Mecklenburgh*, passed the *Oder*, and took *Frankfort*, where he found a great deal of artillery; afterwards taking *Crossen*, he marched quickly towards *Berlin*, in order to assist *Magdeburgh*. The elector fortifies Berlin.

WHEN *Gustavus Adolphus* arrived at *Copenick*, he demanded of the elector the fortresses of *Spandaw* and *Custrin*, under pretence of securing his retreat; but in reality, with the intention of forcing *George William* into his interests. The elector, at first astonished at the demand, was at a loss how to reply; but consulting with his ministers, it was at last resolved to invite the king of *Sweden* to come to *Berlin*. *Gustavus Adolphus* entered that capital with an escort of 1000 foot, and four pieces of cannon, 200 *Swedes* mounted guard in the castle of *Berlin*, and the rest of the troops were lodged with the citizens; next day, the whole *Swedish* army encamped at the gates of the city, and the elector, now in the power of the king, was obliged to consent to what he desired. The *Swedish* troops, which possessed the fortresses of *Custrin* and *Spandaw*, took the oath of fidelity to the elector, and the king promised to deliver up the places, when the imperial troops had evacuated the country. *Gustavus* afterwards advancing beyond *Potsdam*, the Imperialists, who were in *Brandenburg* and *Rathenau*, retired towards their army that was besieging *Magdeburgh*. The elector of *Saxony* refusing the *Swedes* a passage over the bridge of the *Elbe* at Gustavus Adolphus demands the fortresses of Spandaw and Custrin, and enters Berlin.

*Wittenberg*, *Gustavus* was hindered from assisting the city of *Magdeburgh* as he designed.

THIS unhappy city, being at last taken by surprize, suffered all the miseries that an enraged enemy could inflict, all *Germany* deploring the fate of the city, and exclaiming against the cruelty of the Imperial soldiers. After the loss of *Magdeburgh*, *Gustavus Adolphus* returned again to *Berlin*, and encamped before the city, severely blaming the electors of *Brandenburgh* and *Saxony*. The elector, repairing to the *Swedish* camp, appeased the king by granting him all his demands. When the elector returned to *Berlin*, the *Swedish* army saluted him with a triple discharge of their cannon; but as the pieces were loaded with balls, and directed towards the town, a great many houses and roofs were damaged. Next day the *Swedish* army past the *Spree*, and marched through the city.

The elector  
joins the  
party of  
the Swedes

THE elector of *Saxony*, observing the prosperity of the *Swedish* arms, forsook the party of the emperor, and gave the example to all the protestant princes. The *Swedes* then restored to the elector *Spandaw* and *Custrin*, and entering the *Old March*, encamped at *Werben*, situated at the confluence of the *Havel* and the *Elbe*. *Tilly* marching to join *Pappenheim*, who was now shut up in *Magdeburgh*, advanced towards the camp of the king of *Sweden*, who hearing of his march, surprised his avant guard, and cut three regiments to pieces. The Imperialists, finding it impossible to force the *Swedish* camp, marched towards *Halle*, with the intention of forcing *Leipsic*, and oblige the elector of *Saxony* to quit the party of the *Swedes*. *Gustavus Adolphus* penetrating his design, quitted his camp at *Werben*, passed the *Elbe* at *Wittenburgh*, and being joined by the *Saxons* at *Duben*, fell upon the Imperialists, whom he totally defeated, taking all their artillery, among which there were a great many pieces with the arms of *Brandenburgh*, *Saxony*, and *Laneburgh*, which the Imperialists had appropriated to themselves.

AFTER this battle, *Gustavus Adolphus* became the arbiter of *Germany*, and penetrated as far as the *Danube*, while *Banier*, at the head of another body of *Swedes*, drove the Imperialists from the bishopricks of *Magdeburgh* and *Halberstadt*, and established in that country a government in the name of his master. The emperor, from the bad success of his arms, being now become more moderate, made use of a softer stile, in order to detach the electors of *Brandenburgh* and *Saxony* from the party of *Sweden*; but these electors now consulted their own interest more than the emperors. The elector of *Brandenburgh*, though he equally dreaded the Imperialists and the *Swedes*, yet thought it at present the most advanta-

geous



geous for his states to attach himself to the fortune of *Gustavus Adolphus*, which seemed then so well established; the elector therefore sent some small assistance to the Saxons, who, in *Silesia*, pursued a body of Imperialists, commanded by *Balthasar de Maradas*.

THE emperor, irritated at the refusal of the two electors, and still more at the irruption they made in *Silesia*, sent *Wallenstein*, at the head of a strong army to take possession of the two electorates. *Wallenstein*, being joined by *Pappenheim* from *Westphalia*, entered *Saxony*, and took *Leipsic*, *Naumburg*, *Merseburgh*, *Halle*, and *Giebichenstein*. The king of *Sweden*, who was then in *Bavaria*, returned to the assistance of *Lower Saxony*, and engaging the Imperialists at *Lutzen*, gained an entire victory, but with the loss of his life. After his death, the Swedes drove the Imperialists from *Lower Saxony*, and recovered all the cities which *Wallenstein* had taken. *Wallenstein* and *Galas* afterwards entering *Silesia*, the elector sent 3000 horse, and 5000 foot, as an assistance to *Arnim*, who commanded the Saxon troops in that province, and likewise assembled the arriere-ban through all his states; but as he wanted funds to maintain his troops, he never assembled forces sufficient to oppose his enemies. *Wallenstein* advancing in *Silesia* with an army of 45,000 men, surprised a party of 800 Swedes at *Steinau*, and sent parties to ravage *Pomerania*, and the electoral march, and summoned the city of *Berlin* to send him the keys of its gates. *Arnim* and *Banier* marching to cover *Berlin* with their army, the Imperial general retired from *Silesia*, leaving garrisons in *Frankfort*, and some other towns. Though the elector was then at the head of an army of 20,000 men, yet there was scarcely a sixth part of them his own troops.

WHILE *Banier* directed the military operations of *Sweden*, *Oxenstiern* was the soul of their negotiations. He having concluded an alliance, in the name of *Sweden*, with several circles of the empire at *Heilbron*, proposed another alliance with the circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*. This alliance was afterwards concluded at *Halberstadt*, and the electors of *Brandenburgh* and *Saxony* became the principal members. This minister having concluded these two alliances, and seeing the *Swedish* arms every where triumphant in *Germany*, thought his interest so well established, that he proposed in the assembly at *Frankfort* on the *Main*, that to indemnify *Sweden* for the expences of the war which it had made for the Protestant princes, the empire should cede *Pomerania* to that crown after the death of the last duke.

1635.  
The elector  
concludes a  
peace with  
the empe-  
ror.

THE elector of *Brandenburg* was extremely offended with this proposition of *Oxenfeirn*, as it tended to frustrate his rights upon *Pomerania*. But at this time, the archduke *Ferdinand*, and the cardinal-infant, happening to gain a complete victory over the *Swedes* at *Nordlingen*, the electors, who before began to waver, now entirely forsook their party, and concluded a peace with the emperor at *Prague*, by which the emperor promised to the elector of *Brandenburg* to support his rights upon *Pomerania*, and not to claim any more the goods of the church which he possessed: besides, he confirmed the settlements of confraternity between the houses of *Brandenburg*, *Saxony*, and *Hesse*.

The  
Swedes  
ravage  
Branden-  
burgh,

NOTWITHSTANDING this peace, *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburgh*, and the *Old March*, still continued to feel the troubles of war; for the Imperialists and the *Saxons* possessed all the banks of the *Elbe* and the *Havel*; nevertheless, the *Swedes* made irruptions into the country as far as *Oranienburg*. *Banier*, to remove the seat of the war from *Pomerania*, assembled his army at *Rathenau*, and marched towards *Magdeburgh*, to relieve the *Swedish* garrison, which was greatly pressed by the Imperialists, but *Magdeburgh* at last surrendering, he came back to the *March*, where *Wrangel* joined him with a reinforcement of 8000 men, after which junction, he surprised and took *Brandenburg* and *Rathenau*, where there were imperial garrisons. Thus the unhappy electorate became a prey to the strongest party; the cities, situated upon the *Havel*, being in less than six weeks twice pillaged by the *Swedes* and once by the Imperialists. It being the misfortune of the time, that success never entirely declared for one party, those who were now depressed soon became unexpectedly superiors, and the superiors experienced misfortune in their turn. The *Swedes*, in consequence of their reinforcement, gained a victory over the Imperialists and *Saxons* at *Wistock*, after which they over-ran the *March*, and *Wrangel* entering *Berlin*, left five companies in garrison, and made a new demand of the fortresses from the elector. *George-William*, who was retired to *Peixt*, answered him, that he committed himself to the discretion of the *Swedes*; but that the Imperialists were in possession of these places, so that he could not dispose of them. *Wrangel* having received this answer, took up his winter-quarters in the *New March*.

AT this time died *Ferdinand II.* and his son *Ferdinand III.* succeeded him, as though that throne had been hereditary. Likewise *Bogislaus*, whose family had possessed *Pomerania* for 700 years, died during these troubles, and with him his house was extinct. The *Swedish* armies then possessed of *Pome-*  
rania,

rania, and even of the states of *Brandenburgh*, prevented the elector from making good his rights upon the duchy; he contented himself with sending a trumpet to the states of *Pomerania*, ordering them to treat the *Swedes* as enemies. In the mean while, *Klitzing*, at the head of the *Saxons*, delivered the *March*, and the banks of the *Havel* from the *Swedes*; the war being now carried into *Pomerania*, where the Imperialists were joined by 3000 *Hungarians*. This province had the same fate with the *Marches*, being taken and retaken, burnt and ruined. The *Swedes*, afterwards receiving fresh assistance, forced the Imperialists to retire as far as *Bohemia*, and appeared for the fourth time before the gates of *Berlin*. The elector, to revenge the evils which the electorate suffered from the *Swedes*, ordered 4000 *Prussians* to enter *Livonia*, where they made some devastation; but neglecting to take possession of any cities, they quickly abandoned their conquests, and their expedition became of no service. The *Swedes* made the *Marches* feel the losses which they suffered in *Livonia*, and their commander at *Berlin* blocked up *Spandaw* and *Custrin*, where the elector had retired with his fugitive court.

and appear  
before the  
gates at  
Berlin.

THE states of *Pomerania*, who were then sitting, received the deputies of the elector, who likewise sent envoys to the diet at *Ratisbon* for the duchies of *Wolgast* and *Stetin*; and as the states of *Prussia* were to be held this year at *Koningsburgh*, *George William* repaired thither to solicit the payment of some subsidies; but he died the 3d of *December*, leaving to his son *Frederic William*, a desolated country in possession of his enemies, allies that could not be depended upon, few troops, and almost no resources of supplies.

*FREDERIC-William* was born at *Berlin*, the 6th of *February* 1620; his education was that of a hero, being brought William, up in the camp of *Frederic-Henry*, prince of *Orange*. *Schwart* the grand *zenburgh*, the minister of *George William*, being secretly in the interest of the emperor, and knowing the transcendent genius of the young prince, removed him early from the court of his father, and kept him in *Holland* as much as he could, fearing the presence of such a penetrating inspector, who would have narrowly examined his actions. However, the young prince sometimes waited upon his father, notwithstanding the endeavours of the minister, and went with the elector in his last journey to *Prussia*, where, by his father's death, he succeeded to his estates.

*FREDERIC-William* was twenty years of age when he came to the government; but the *Marches* of the electorate were then almost wholly in the possession of the *Swedes*, who

had made the country a frightful desert. The duchies of the succession of *Cleves* were a prey to the *Spaniards* and *Hollanders*, who raised excessive contributions upon them, and pillaged them under pretence of defending them. *Prussia*, which *Gustavus Adolphus* had seized upon some time before, had not yet recovered the miseries of war; thus was he a prince without being in possession of his provinces, an elector without the power, and an ally without friends. With all these disadvantages *Frederic-William* began his government, but, by the wisdom and prudence of his conduct, he at length recalled prosperity and peace. He began with establishing order in his finances, and proportioning his expence to his income, and dismissed those ministers whose mal-administration chiefly contributed to the misfortunes of the people. The count of *Schwartzzenburgh*, who had been governor of the *March*, president of the council, great chamberlain, and grand commander of *Malta*, voluntarily resigned his employments, and retired to *Vienna*, where he died that same year; his son, who had been elected coadjutor of the order, and commandery of *Malta*, was not acknowledged by the elector, who besides, ordered him to restore all the bailliages to the state which his father had appropriated. After the death of the count at *Vienna*, the elector sent the baron of *Borgsdorff* to *Spandaw* and *Custrin*, to put his seal to the effects of the deceased; but the commanders of these forts refused to obey him, under pretence that they had taken the oath of fidelity to the emperor. *Borgsdorff* seemed satisfied with this answer, but observing *Rochau*, the commander of *Spandaw*, he took him prisoner one day when he came out of the fortrefs. The emperor ordering the head of this rebellious subject to be struck off, by this example intimidated the commanders of the other places.

Receives  
the investiture of  
Prussia  
from the  
king of  
Poland.

THE elector, though he could not succeed to the duchies of the succession of *Cleves*, because the difference among the pretenders was not yet decided, yet he received the investiture of *Prussia* personally from the king of *Poland*, upon condition of paying an annual tribute of 100,000 florins, and not making truce or peace with the enemies of that crown; his envoy likewise received the investiture of the electorate from the emperor *Ferdinand III.* These formalities being over, the elector thought of recovering his provinces from those who had usurped them; he concluded a truce for twenty years with the *Swedes*, who evacuated the greatest part of his estates; he likewise paid 140,000 crowns to the *Swedish* garrisons, which still possessed some of his towns; he concluded likewise a treaty with the *Hessians*, who delivered up a

part

part of the country of *Cleves* which they were in possession of, and he obtained of the *Hollanders* the evacuation of some other cities.

THE powers of *Europe* now wearied with the war, which became every day more destructive, began equally to desire a peace. The cities of *Osnaburgh* and *Munster* being chosen as the most proper places for the negotiation, the conferences were opened in the year 1645, but by reason of the multiplicity of matters, they were not concluded till two years after. *France*, which had espoused the interests of *Sweden*, demanded, that *Pomerania* should be ceded to that kingdom, as an indemnification for the expences which the war had cost *Gustavus Adolphus* and his successors. Although the empire, and the elector refused to give up *Pomerania*, it was at last agreed to yield to the *Swedes*, *Hither Pomerania*, with the isles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, and some other cities; in equivalent for which cession, the bishopricks of *Halberstadt*, *Min-* *Is put in possession of*  
*den*, and *Camin*, were secularized in favour of the elector, of *Farther*  
which he was put in possession, with the lordships of *Hoch-* *nia by the*  
*stein* and *Reichenstein*; he received likewise the reversion of *treaty of*  
the archbishop of *Magdeburgh*. This treaty, which serves *Westphalia.*  
as a basis to all the possessions and rights of the *German* 1648.  
princes, being published, the elector, the following year, concluded a new treaty with the *Swedes* for the regulation of limits, and for the acquittal of some debts, of which *Sweden* would only pay a fourth; next year the electorate, *Pomerania*, and the duchies of *Cleves* were entirely evacuated by the *Swedes* and *Dutch*.

SOON after the conclusion of the peace, the dukes of *Newburgh* vigorously persecuting the Protestants of the duchies of *Julers* and *Berg*, *Frederic-William* declared himself their protector, and sent general *Spar* with some troops into the territories of the duke, at the same time, proposing an accommodation by the mediation of the *Dutch*. An agreement being concluded, the order of possessions was regulated according to the treaty of *Westphalia*, and the liberty of conscience by former treaties.

ABOUT this time, *Charles-Gustavus*, prince of *Deuxponts*, *Charles-*  
succeeding to the crown of *Sweden*, by the abdication of *Gustavus*  
queen *Christiana*, made great preparations of war, with declares  
design to oblige the king of *Poland* to renounce the preten- war a-  
sions which that crown formed upon the crown of *Sweden*, gainst Po-  
and likewise to deliver up *Livonia* to the *Swedes*. The truce land, and  
betwixt these two kingdoms being near expired, *Charles* demands of  
demanded of the elector the ports of *Pillau* and *Memel*, pre the elector  
tending that his designs were only against *Russia*. The elec- the ports of  
tor *Memel*.

tor rejected his demand with disdain, but added, that if his real intention was to invade *Russia*, he would assist him in that war with a body of 8000 men, the elector being desirous to stop the progress of the *Muscovites* in *Poland*, to prevent them from approaching his frontiers. Having thus defeated the demand of the *Swedes*, he informed *Poland* of the danger which threatened their republic, but at the same time refused to engage as a party in the war.

DESIRING to secure the tranquillity of his provinces, he concluded a defensive alliance with the states of *Holland* for eight years. He courted the friendship of *Cromwel*, endeavoured to make an alliance with *Louis XIV.* and even flattered the pride of *Ferdinand III.* from whom he only received vain promises, that emperor being then employed in augmenting his troops, which the elector observing, followed his example. *Charles Gustavus*, desiring to signalize the beginning of his reign with some warlike expedition, did not wait for the expiration of the truce with *Poland*, but ordering a body of *Swedes*, under the command of general *Wittenburgh*, to advance through the *New March*, without asking leave, towards the frontiers of *Poland*, he invaded that kingdom, and quickly made himself master of two palatinates. As the greatest efforts of the war were towards the frontiers of *Prussia*, the elector marched thither at the head of his troops, to be in readiness to execute those measures which he should find necessary, and concluded a defensive alliance with the states of *Polish Prussia*.

The elector concludes a treaty with the Swedes at Koningsburgh.

THE *Swedes* having made great progress in *Poland*, took up their winter-quarters in the neighbourhood of *Koningsburgh*, and making several advantageous offers to the elector, he attached himself to their fortune, and concluded a treaty with that crown at *Koningsburgh*, by which he acknowledged himself a vassal of *Sweden*, and promised to do homage to that crown for ducal *Prussia*, upon condition that the bishopric of *Warmie* were secularized in his favour. To strengthen his party, he entered into an alliance with *Louis XIV.* who guaranteed his provinces, upon the *Rhine* and the *Weser*. The elector afterwards changing his treaty with *Sweden* into an offensive alliance, marched by *Mazovia*, and joined the *Swedish* army at the confluence of the *Bog* and the *Vistula*. The allies passing the *Bog*, at the same time that the king of *Poland* passed the *Vistula* at *Warsowia*, there was now no obstacle that separated the two armies. The ministers of *France*, jealous of the encreasing power of the *Swedes*, went often betwixt the two camps to endeavour an accommodation; but the *Poles*, who were more than double the number

ber of the enemy, rejected all terms of agreement. The allies afterwards attacking them in their camp, entirely routed them after several engagements, and next day made themselves masters of *Warsovia*. The king of *Poland*, in order to force the elector to abandon the party of the *Swedes*, ordered a body of *Tartars* to ravage ducal *Prussia*; and the emperor and the *Danes*, to prevent the *Swedes* from becoming masters of *Poland*, concluded an alliance with that crown, and earnestly pressed the elector to quit the party of the *Swedes*. *Frederic-William*, foreseeing that the emperor and the king of *Denmark* could oblige him to abandon the party of *Charles-Gustavus*, by invading his states in *Germany*, concluded a peace with the *Poles* at *Velau*, by which that kingdom acknowledged the entire sovereignty of *Prussia*, and ceded to the elector the bailliages of *Lauenburgh* and *Butau*, which important treaty was confirmed at *Braumsburgh*. By this peace, the ancient connections of the elector with *Sweden* and *France* being broken, he thought proper to secure the friendship of other powers, and concluded an alliance with the emperor and the king of *Denmark*.

He concludes a treaty with Poland, by which the sovereignty of Prussia is acknowledged.

MEANWHILE the king of *Sweden*, irritated at the proceedings of the king of *Denmark*, invaded *Zealand*, by marching his army over the ice, which sudden irruption obliged that king to conclude a peace at *Roschild*; but the *Swedes* were no sooner retired, than he solicited the assistance of the emperor and the elector. *Charles*, being informed of these proceedings, embarked his troops that were in *Holstein*, and sailed towards *Zealand*, with a design of besieging *Copenhagen*; *Frederic-William*, who had promised assistance to the king of *Denmark*, leaving *Berlin* at the head of his cavalry, and 3000 Imperialists, he forced the *Swedes* that remained in *Holstein* to retire beyond the *Eider*, and put a garrison of his own troops into *Gottorp*, and after having drove the *Swedes* from the isle of *Aland*, he put his troops into winter-quarters in *Jutland*. The year following, he opened the campaign with the taking of *Fredericksode*, and the island of *Fione*; but failed in his enterprise upon the isle of *Fuynen*. Returning afterwards from *Jutland* to oppose *Wrangel*, in *Pomerania*, he took *Warnemund*, *Tripssee*, and *Demmin*.

In the midst of these troubles and confusions, *Charles-Gustavus* dying in the flower of his age, and *John-Casimir* abdicating the crown of *Poland*, the animosities ceased on both sides, and each party sincerely desiring peace, the conferences were opened at the abbey of *Oliva*, near *Dantzick*. By this treaty, the sovereignty of *Prussia* was acknowledged and guaranteed to the elector; the other powers agreed to settle their

their possessions on the same footing they were before the beginning of the war.

*The states  
of Prussia  
refuse to  
submit to  
the elector.*

THE states of *Prussia* submitted with reluctance to the treaty of *Braunsburgh*; they pretended that *Poland* had no right to dispose of their liberty; a gentleman, named *Rady*, more seditious than the rest, was seized; and the first motions of the revolt being appeased, the elector received in person the homage of the *Prussians* at *Koningsburgh*. The tranquillity which followed, gave the elector an opportunity of turning his attention to the welfare of his people; he raised again the walls of his cities which had been destroyed, encouraged the cultivation of the country, and the peopling of villages, and by his care and application recovered the provinces from the state of desolation, to which the war had reduced them. Receiving likewise the eventual homage of the archbishoprick of *Magdeburgh*, he put a garrison into that capital, and re-united to his dominions the lordship of *Registain*, which was a fief of the principality of *Halberstadt*, maintaining his rights against the pretensions of the duke

*The elector  
sends assistance  
to the emperor  
against the  
Turks.*

of *Brunswick*. The elector did not confine his cares to the private concerns of his electorate, but sent 2000 men to the assistance of the emperor, who was attacked by the *Turks* in *Hungary*, and assisted the king of *Poland* in his war against the infidels; by his mediation likewise, the sons of the duke of *Luneburgh* came to an accommodation with regard to their paternal inheritance. The elector likewise settled the difference with the duke of *Newburgh* relating to the succession of *Cleves*, concluded a defensive alliance with *Sweden*, and entered into a quadruple alliance at the *Hague* with the king of *Denmark*, the republic of *Holland*, and the duke of *Brunswick*.

*LOUIS XIV.* who about this time took the reins of government into his own hand, invaded *Spanish Flanders* in right of his wife, who pretended to be sole heir, and desiring to secure the neutrality of the elector, sent an ambassador to *Berlin*, who prevailed with him not to take any part in the war. The states of *Holland*, averse to the neighbourhood of the *French*, protected the *Spaniards* from the enterprizes of the king of *France*; and to stop the progress of his arms, concluded the triple alliance at the *Hague*, with *England* and *Sweden*. *Louis XIV.* irritated at the states of *Holland*, for presuming to form alliances to oppose his ambitious views, concluded a peace with *Spain*, and resolving to make the *Dutch* feel the effects of his resentment, solicited the elector to join him in that war. But *Frederic-William* refusing the offers of *France*, concluded a treaty with the United Provinces,



by which he engaged to furnish them with 20,000 men, one half of whom were to be paid by the states; soon after, the emperor *Leopold* acceded to this alliance, the contracting parties promising not to make a separate peace with their enemies.

THE elector, immediately raising his troops, marched to *Halberstadt*, where *Montecuculi* joined him with 10000 Imperialists; after which junction, they advanced towards *Westphalia*. Upon the news of their approach, *Turenne* quitted *Holland* at the head of 30,000 French, and taking some towns in the country of *Cleves* marched to oppose the allies. The elector, though desirous of engaging *Turenne*, was prevented by *Montecuculi*, who would not consent to it, having secret orders not to act offensively. Being thus obliged to conform to the intentions of the emperor, he marched towards *Frankfort* on the *Main*, which obliged *Turenne* to repass the *Rhine*, and freed the Dutch from 30,000 enemies. The Imperialists still continuing to oppose any active measures of the elector, he took up his winter-quarters in *Westphalia*, while *Turenne* made himself master of the duchies of *Cleves* and *March*, and advanced towards the *Weser*. During the course of this campaign, *Frederic-William* had a signal occasion of testifying his generosity. A Frenchman, named *Villeneuve* in *Turenne's* camp, offered to the elector to assassinate his general. Far from hearkening to his offer, he had an abhorrence of his villainy, and informed *Turenne* that he might guard against the traitor.

THE *Hollanders* neglecting to pay the subsidies for which they had engaged, the emperor and *Spain* not having heartily declared against *France*, and all the provinces which the elector possessed in *Westphalia* being lost; all these reasons, joined to his own weakness, disposed *Frederic-William* to make an accommodation with *France*. The peace was concluded at *Wissen*, and all his provinces were restored to him, except the cities of *Retz* and *Wesel*, which the French kept till the peace should be concluded with *Holland*. The elector promised not to assist the Dutch, reserving, nevertheless, the liberty of defending the empire in case it were attacked; all the attempts which he made to dispose the king of *France* to comprehend the *Hollanders* in the peace were useless; however, the French having weakened their army by putting garrisons into too many places, and *Montecuculi* having joined the prince of *Orange*, they were obliged to evacuate the provinces of *Holland*. *Turenne* afterwards marching into *Franch Comte*, and from thence into the *Palatinate*, ravaged the whole country, in order to oblige the Germanick body to serve empire.

Louis XIV. attacks the empire.

serve a neutrality, while he ruined the United Province. The miseries which the *Palatinate* suffered, awakened the princes of *Germany*, and the emperor having made an alliance with *Spain* and *Holland*, *Frederic-William* engaged to lead 16,000 men to the assistance of the empire. The beginning of the campaign was unsuccessful for the allies both in *Flanders* and upon the *Rhine*, where *Turenne* had defeated the imperial generals, *Caprara* and *Bournonville*.

THE elector passed the *Rhine* at *Straßburgh*, and joined *Bournonville* a few days after his defeat; the imperial army by this reinforcement, being upwards of 50,000 men; the elector pressed *Bournonville* to hazard an engagement, but he would not consent to it; so that *Turenne* was allowed to retire without being attacked. *Turenne*, afterwards receiving a reinforcement of 10,000 men from *Flanders*, surprised the imperial quarters, and took a regiment of the elector's troops prisoners. The elector after being thus surprised, passed the *Rhine* at *Straßburgh*, and took up his winter-quarters in *Franconia*.

The elector joins the imperial army on the Rhine.

The Swedes invade Pomerania,

THE *French* desirous to free themselves from a dangerous enemy upon the *Rhine*, prevailed with the *Swedes* to create a diversion for the elector in his own territories; and *Wrangel* entering the marches of *Brandenburgh* with a *Swedish* army, though at first he observed an exact discipline, declaring that he would evacuate the country when the elector should make his peace with *France*; yet he soon began to use hostilities, taking possession of several towns in the electorate, and ravaging the country. The elector, who was then in winter-quarters in *Franconia*, complained of this invasion to the diet of *Ratisbon*, and soon after leaving his winter-quarters, marched towards *Magdeburgh*, where he arrived on the 11th of *June*, without the knowledge of the *Swedes*, there being no posts at that time in *Germany*. Immediately upon his arrival, he shut the gates of that fortress, using all possible precautions to conceal the knowledge of his approach from the enemy. Towards the evening, his army passed the *Elbe*, and arrived next night at the gates of *Rathenau*, where he surprised a *Swedish* regiment that was in garrison, and not waiting for the arrival of his infantry, who were not yet come up, he marched with his cavalry directly to *Naven*, to post himself between the *Swedes* who were in *Brandenburgh*, and those who were in *Havelburgh*. But the *Swedes* by this time, knowing of his arrival, had quitted *Brandenburgh*, and marched to *Febrbellin*, where the garrison of *Havelburgh* was to join them. Notwithstanding the elector had only 5600 horse, and twelve pieces of cannon, without any infantry,

try, and the *Swedes* had ten regiments of foot, and 800  
goons in their camp, he immediately resolved to attack  
him. On the 18th of *June*, the prince of *Homburgh* be-  
sent with 1600 horse to reconnoitre the *Swedish* camp,  
only engaged the enemy, which would have been fatal to  
him, had not the elector quickly marched to his assistance  
with the rest of his troops. After an obstinate engagement,  
the *Swedes* were entirely defeated, leaving 3000 dead upon *but are de-*  
the field, and a great number of officers; those who saved *seated by*  
themselves fled to *Fehrbellin*, breaking down the bridge be- *the elector*  
hind them. In this action, one of the masters of the horse at *Fehr-*  
*bergh* observing, that the *Swedes* by their firing remarked the white bellin.  
horse upon which the elector was mounted, prevailed with  
the elector to exchange him with his, under pretence of fur-  
nishing him with a better horse, and the exchange was hardly  
performed when the faithful domestic was killed.

GENERAL *Dorffing* arriving with the infantry, the elector  
pursued the *Swedes* the next day, took a great many prisoners,  
and recovered great part of the spoil in their baggage. The  
*Swedish* army being now reduced to 4000 men, retired by  
*Ruppin* and *Wistlock* into the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*; and  
being declared enemies of the empire, for having attacked  
the *Germanic* body in one of its members; the elector, as-  
sisted by the emperor and the *Danes*, attacked the *Swedes* in  
*Pomerania*, where he took the city of *Wolgast*, and made  
himself master of the isle of *Wollin*, and the three principal  
passages of the *Pene*.

THE *Swedes*, by this invasion, having drawn upon them-  
selves many enemies; namely, the empire, *Denmark*, and  
*Holland*, made some propositions of peace to the elector, in  
order to separate him from his allies. But *Frederic-William*,  
far from entering into any negotiation, put himself at the  
head of his troops, and took *Anclam*, and afterwards blocked  
up *Stetin*. The *Swedes*, though they had this year defeated the  
*Danes* at *Lunden*, in *Scania*, yet were very unsuccessful in  
*Pomerania*, the elector taking several places, and at last forc-  
ing *Stetin*, the capital of the province, to surrender. While  
the elector was thus making conquests in *Pomerania*, the  
contending powers in *Flanders*, and on the *Rhine*, wearied  
with the war against *France*, agreed to the negotiations of  
peace, which was concluded at *Nimeguen* betwixt *France* and  
the empire.

THE elector, hoping to retain his conquests, refused to  
be comprehended in the peace, so that the war still con-  
tinued in *Pomerania*; the *Swedes*, losing the island of *Rugen*,  
and the cities of *Stralsund* and *Gripswald*. Nevertheless, the  
*Swedes*,

A. C.  
1677.

The  
Swedes  
invade  
Prussia  
from Li-  
vonia.

A. C.  
1679.

Swedes, hoping to oblige the elector to evacuate *Pomerania* invaded *Prussia* with 16,000 men from *Livonia*, and advancing in the country, they burnt the suburbs of *Memel*, took *Tilse* and *Insterburgh*. The elector, to oppose the invaders, left *Berlin* on the 10th of *January*, and passed *Vistula* on the 15th, at the head of 9000 men, preceded by the terror of his name, which was now become formidable to the Swedes. The Swedes, retiring at his approach, were greatly harrassed by his troops in their march, losing almost one half their army, who were either made prisoners, or killed by peasants, who had joined the van of the elector's troops. The elector, continuing his march, arrived at the *Frischke* and drew his army over that gulph upon the ice, and likewise passing the gulph of *Courland* in the same manner, arrived on the 19th of *January* with his infantry within 20 miles of *Tilse*, where the Swedes had their quarters. The same day his general, *Tresenfeldt*, defeated two regiments of the enemy near *Splitter*; and the Swedes, who were in great numbers, abandoned that place, and retired towards *Courland*; the elector ordering general *Gortz* to pursue their rear, he entirely defeated them, and returned with much booty, and a great number of prisoners; of the 16,000 Swedes, who entered *Prussia*, scarce 3000 returning to *Livonia*.

But are re-  
pulsed by  
the elector.

The  
French  
enter the  
duchy of  
Cleves,  
and oblige  
the elector  
to conclude  
a peace  
with Swe-  
den.

THIS expedition was hardly over, when *Louis XIV.* to oblige the elector to an accommodation with the king of *Sweden*, his ally, ordered general *Calvo* to enter the duchy of *Cleves* with 30,000 *French*, requiring the elector to resign all his conquests, and insisting upon the entire re-establishment of the Swedes in all that they possessed before the war. *Frederic-William*, being now abandoned by the emperor, and receiving only denials from the *Dutch*, who were far from fulfilling their guarantee, resolved at length upon an accommodation, and sent the baron *Meinder* to the court of *France*, then at *St. Germain*; where, after a great many difficulties, the following conditions were agreed to; namely, that the treaty of *Westphalia* should serve for a basis to the peace; the elector should have the property of the customs in all the ports of *Further Pomerania*, with the cities of *Camin*, *Gartz*, *Greiffenburgh*, and *Wildenbruck*; he consented on his side to give up to the Swedes all that he had conquered from them, and give no assistance to the king of *Denmark*, upon condition that *France* delivered up his provinces in *Westphalia*, and paid him 300,000 ducats, as an indemnification of the damages committed by *Crequi* in his states.

THE peace of *St. Germain* terminated the military exploits of *Frederic-William*, his last years being pacifick, and passing  
over

over with less external glory, yet his great genius manifested itself even in all the actions of his life; being equally admirable at the head of his armies, where he appeared as the deliverer of his country; and at the head of his council, where he administered justice to his people. This prince was not only esteemed in *Europe*, but likewise received an ambassador from *Murad Geray*, cham of the *Tartars*, his friendship being courted by these eastern people.

THE king of *Spain* having delayed to pay him the subsidies which he had stipulated during the war; he sent nine small vessels, which he employed in the *Baltick*, towards the coast of *Guiney*, and seized a large *Spanish* man of war, which was afterwards brought into the port of *Koningsburgh*. About this time, likewise, he entered into the possession of the duchy of *Magdeburg*, which was incorporated for ever into the electorate of *Brandenburgh*; and having the imperial commission as director of the circle of *Westphalia*, to protect the states of *East Friesland*, he settled the disputes betwixt them and their prince, who they complained had made some encroachment upon their privileges; and as he had the eventual succession of that principality, he took this opportunity of putting a garrison into *Gritzel*, and established a company of merchants at *Emden*, who traded to *Guiney*, and built the fort of *Grand Fredericksburgh* in that country.

A. C.  
1680:

A Spanish  
man of  
war car-  
ried into  
Konings-  
burgh.

THE *French* having surprised *Strasburgh*, a free city of the empire, and taken possession of several other cities and lordships of the empire, under pretence of their being antient fiefs depending upon those provinces which had been ceded to them at the peace of *Nimeguen*, the empire, which at this time was exhausted by the long war; contented itself with remonstrating against these proceedings by memorials; but the elector, who was not comprehended in the peace of *Nimeguen*, refused to sign these writings, but concluded an alliance with the elector of *Saxony*, and the duke of *Hanover*, for the support of the peace of *Westphalia* and *St. Germain*. The elector likewise made an alliance with the circles of *Lower Saxony* and *Westphalia* for their common defence; in which it was stipulated, that the princes who should assemble the confederate troops, should draw contributions from the neighbouring states.

A. C.  
1684:

LOUIS XIV. not only troubled the repose of *Europe*, but he disturbed his own kingdom by the revocation of the famous French edict of *Nantes*, denying the Protestants the free exercise of their religion, and compelling them, by violent means, to embrace the Roman catholic faith. This persecution obliged thousands of Protestants to leave the kingdom, and seek for

liberty and peace in other nations. Twenty thousand of them established themselves in the states of the elector, and by their industry repaired the desolation caused by the war of thirty years, introducing many arts and manufactures that had never before been known in the electorate. The elector, by the protection which he gave these persecuted Protestants, disobliging the king of *France*, and losing the annual subsidy which had been paid him by *Louis XIV.* since the peace of *St. Germain*. contracted new alliances with the emperor, and sent 8000 men to serve in his armies against the *Turks* in *Hungary*; in recompence for which service, the emperor yielded to the elector, the circle of *Schwibus* in *Silesia*, in form of an equivalent for all his rights in that province.

The death  
of the elec-  
tor.

A. C.  
1688.

His cha-  
racter.

THE death of the elector palatine, afforded *Louis XIV.* another pretence for disturbing the repose of the empire; and, under the appearance of supporting the rights of the duchess of *Orleans*, the late elector's daughter, he prepared to invade the Palatinate, which obliged the circles of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and the *Lower Rhine*, to make an alliance of mutual defence at *Augsburgh*. The elector, at that time, likewise, a second time, granted his protection to the city of *Hamburg*, which the king of *Denmark* besieged in person; and he acted also as mediator in the difference betwixt the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Holstein*, with regard to the entire sovereignty of his duchies, which the king of *Sweden* had procured to him at the peace of *Roschild*. Death prevented the elector from having the satisfaction of concluding this accommodation; the gout, which for a long time had attacked him, now degenerating into a dropsy, carried him off on the 28th of *April*. Two days before his end, he assembled his council, and having assisted at their deliberations, he thanked his ministers for their faithful services, and exhorted them to serve his son with the same attachment; after which, he addressed himself to the electoral prince, explained to him the duties of a good prince, and made a short analysis to him of the state in which he left his affairs; he strongly recommended to him to assist the prince of *Orange* in the expedition upon *England*, which he was at that time making preparations for, and insisted above all upon his loving and protecting the people which he was about to govern. *Frederic-William* had all the qualifications that make a great man, and Providence gave him great opportunities of displaying them; from his early youth he gave great proofs of prudence and wisdom, and through his whole life, testified himself a great politician, and a humane and good prince.

prince. He had two wives, *Henrietta of Orange*, mother of *Frederic III.* who succeeded him; and *Dorothy of Holstein*, mother of the margraves *Philip, Albert, and Lewis*, and of the princesses *Elizabeth, Sophia, and Mary-Amelia*.

*FREDERIC III.* was born at *Konigsburgh* in *Prussia*, on the 22d of *July* 1637. Having early lost his mother, in his youth he met with great trouble and vexation from his step-mother the electrice *Dorothy*, she having found means of alienating the affections of *Frederic-William* from this son of the first marriage, who was weak, deformed, and whose education had been greatly neglected. *Frederic* married *Elizabeth Henrietta*, daughter of *William VI.* landgrave of *Hesse*; and after the death of that princess, remarried with *Sophia-Charlotta*, daughter of the duke of *Hanover*, *Ernestus-Augustus*, and sister of *George*, who was afterwards king of *England*. Upon the death of his father, he succeeded to the government, although 'tis affirmed that the elector his father, by the solicitations of the electrice *Dorothy*, had made a will, by which he divided all the acquisitions which he had made, during his government, among the children of the second marriage. The *Austrian* party made great use of this testament to alienate the new elector from *France*, the emperor engaging to annul this paternal disposition, upon condition that *Frederic III.* restored to him the circle of *Schwibus*.

*FREDERIC III.* was no sooner come to the government than *Louis XIV.* declared war against the empire; and supporting his manifesto by arms, in one campaign made himself master of almost the whole course of the *Rhine*. The elector, who had conceived an aversion to the *French*, because they seemed to be the favourites of his step-mother, engaged warmly in the war against *Louis XIV.* and sent a considerable body of troops to the *Upper Rhine*; afterwards taking the command in person, he besieged *Bonn*, where, after the taking of *Mentz*, the allies joined him, and preventing *Boufflers* from assisting the garrison, the governor surrendered on the 12th of *October*. The following campaign, likewise, the elector sent considerable succours to the allies.

THE prince of *Orange*, who was now in possession of the crown of *England*, took the command of the allied army in *Flanders*, and having an interview with the elector, he prevailed with him to send 15,000 men to join the army in *Flanders*, whilst the emperor obtained from him a considerable assistance against the infidels in *Hungary*.

THOUGH *Frederic* had no direct interest in these wars, yet as he was naturally fond of pomp and show, and as his

Frederic  
III.first king  
of Prussia.

A. C.

1679.

1684.

1688.

A. C.

1689.

Engages in  
a grand  
alliance  
against  
France.

and yields  
the circle  
of Schwib-  
bus to the  
emperor.

ambition was awakened by the new acquisitions of grandeur of the prince of *Orange* and the duke of *Hanover*; he used all politic means to court the favour of the emperor, that he might succeed to a plan of aggrandizement which he had formed for himself. As his weakness would not allow him to aggrandize himself at the expence of his neighbours equally powerful with himself, he resolved to procure the grandeur of a title, which, by the external magnificence and pomp that attended it, might flatter his ambition. Having fixed his plan, he employed all his politics to bring it to maturity; and as the good dispositions of the emperor, would, in a great measure, procure the suffrages of the whole *Germanic* body, the elector granted him the circle of *Schwibus*, contenting himself with the reversion of the principality of *Friesland*, and the barony of *Limburgh*. Upon the same principles likewise of prejudicing the emperor in his favour, his troops served in the Imperial armies in *Flanders*, upon the *Rhine*, and in *Hungary*, not venturing to pursue his design abruptly, he waited for the opportunity of a favourable conjuncture.

Czar Peter  
arrives  
at Berlin.

A. C.  
1698.

WHILE *Europe* was torn to pieces by violent wars, after the example of his father, he accommodated the difference with regard to succession, between the dukes of *Mecklenburgh Schwerin* and *Strelitz*. He likewise founded the university of *Halle*, which he furnished with able professors, and built several fine sluices upon the river *Salle*, to render it more navigable. About this time also, he received at *Berlin* the *Muscovite* ambassador, who had in his retinue the czar *Peter Alexiowitz*, that young prince having left his own kingdom with the noble design of instructing himself, in order to civilize his people.

General  
peace con-  
cluded at  
Ryswick.

*FRANCE* being, by this time, quite exhausted, by reason of the long and destructive wars which it had maintained, *Louis XIV.* having formed another scheme of ambition; namely, to procure the succession of the *Spanish* monarchy to the house of *Bourbon*; he gave up all his conquests, and concluded a peace with the allies at *Ryswick*. While in the north, *Augustus*, duke of *Saxony*, obtained the crown of *Poland* by a second election, this new king, exhausted by his liberalities, sold to *Frederic III.* the advowson of the abbey of *Quedlenburgh*, *Petersburg*, and *Halle*. The kingdom of *Poland*, soon after this election, being disturbed by intestine dissensions, the elector, taking advantage of these troubles, seized upon *Elbing*, to reimburse himself for a sum of money which the republic of *Poland* owed him. An accommodation being afterwards agreed to, the *Poles*, as a security for the



the money, gave him a crown and jewels of *Russia*, which are still preserved at *Koningsburgh*; after which the elector evacuated the city, and preserved, with the consent of the republic, the possession of the territory of *Elbing*.

IN the beginning of this century, *Europe* was again involved in war, upon account of the dispute betwixt the emperor and the *French* king, about the succession to the *Spanish* monarchy. *Frederic III.* who was then at peace, took the part of the grand alliance, of which king *William* was the soul, and the archduke of *Austria* the pretence. All the offers which *France* made to him to detach him from the allies were in vain. As he hoped that this conjuncture would open the road to the royalty at which his ambition aimed, he warmly espoused the cause of the emperor, and at *Vienna* negotiated the treaty that concerned his grandeur. By this treaty, the emperor engaged to acknowledge *Frederic III.* as king of *Prussia*, upon condition that he furnished an assistance of 10,000 men, at his own expence, during the whole course of this war, maintained a company of the garrison of *Philipsburgh*, and should be always in concert with the emperor in all the affairs of the empire; that his royalty should not alter any thing of the obligations of his states in *Germany*; that he should renounce the subsidy which the house of *Austria* owed him; and that he should give his vote for the election of the male children of the emperor *Joseph*, unless weighty and indispensable reasons obliged the electors to chuse an emperor of another house.

THIS treaty being signed and ratified, *Rome* exclaimed against it, the republic of *Poland* was silent, the *Teutonic* order protested against the act, and renewed their ancient claim to *Prussia*; the king of *England*, who only sought for enemies against *France*, and had need of the assistance of the elector in the grand alliance, was one of the first who acknowledged him, and was followed by *Augustus*, king of *Poland*. *Denmark*, who only feared and envied *Sweden*, made no objection; and *Charles XII.* who, at that time was engaged in a difficult war, thought not proper to dispute about a title to augment the number of his enemies. The coronation was solemnized the following year; the king, whom we shall henceforth call *Frederic I.* repairing to *Prussia*, where he instituted, in memory of this event, the order of knights of the Black Eagle. Likewise at the pressing solicitations of his queen, *Sophia Charlotte*, he established a Royal Academy of Sciences at *Berlin*, of which *Leibnitz* was the chief.

WHILE the king was employed at *Berlin* in celebrating feasts and diversions, *Charles XII.* who had obliged the king

A. C.  
1700.

The elector engages with the emperor in the war against France; and acquires the title of king of Prussia.

A Royal Academy of Sciences established at Berlin,

of *Denmark* to conclude a peace, defeated the *Saxons* at the passage of the *Duna*, and obliged them to retire towards the frontiers of *Prussia*. These transactions greatly alarmed *Frederic I.* As the greatest part of his troops served in the Imperial armies, he was afraid lest the war in his neighbourhood should disturb his new kingdom; but *Charles XII.* at the intercession of the emperor, and the maritime powers, promised to observe a neutrality as to *Prussia*.

A. C. 1702. *The king succeeds to part of the estates of the prince of Orange,* THE king having raised 8000 new troops sent them into *Flanders* to reinforce the allied army, and repaired himself into the country of *Cleves*, to recover the inheritance of *William of Orange*, king of *England*. The rights of *Frederic I.* were founded upon the testament of *Frederic Henry of Orange*, who had settled his estates, in case of the extinction of males, upon his daughter, the wife of the grand elector. King *William* had left a testament quite opposite in favour of prince *Frisan of Nassau*, of which the states-generals were executors. The estates of the succession consisted in the principality of *Orange and Meurs*, and the different lordships situated in *Holland and Zealand*. *Frederic I.* threatened to withdraw his troops, if justice was not done him, a provisional accommodation was regulated, by which the inheritance was divided into two equal parts. *Louis XIV.* having put the prince of *Conti* in possession of *Orange*, the king was greatly offended, and augmenting his army, declared war against *France*, because the army of *Boufflers* had committed some excesses in the country of *Cleves*.

A. C. 1703. *and concludes a defensive alliance with Charles XII. of Sweden.* WHILE the war of the succession continued, the *Prussian* troops maintained with glory the reputation they had acquired under the grand elector; they took *Keiserwert* near the *Rhine*, and in the action where *Villars* surprised and defeated *Stirheim*, the prince of *Anhalt* made a fine retreat with the 8000 *Prussians* which he commanded. *Charles XII.* having now driven the *Saxons* out of *Poland*, and dethroned *Augustus*, *Frederic I.* to secure the tranquillity of his provinces, concluded a defensive alliance with that king, who had a victorious army in his neighbourhood, and put strong garrisons into all his towns in *Prussia*.

A. C. 1704. THE earl of *Marlborough* having led the allied army into *Suabia*, to deliver the empire from the *French*, the elector sent a new reinforcement to his army, which body of troops had a considerable share in gaining the victory of *Blenheim*; by which battle the *French* lost *Bavaria* and *Suabia*. The earl of *Marlborough*, after this glorious campaign, repairing to *Berlin*, easily penetrated the character of *Frederic I.* He was full of submission and complaisance to the king, and artfully

fully flattering his vanity, he was officious to present him with the ewer, when he rose from the table. *Frederic* could not resist him, and granted to the flatteries of the courtier, what he would have perhaps refused to the merit of the great general. The fruit of this negotiation was, that prince *Anhalt* marched into *Italy* at the head of 8000 men.

THE court of *Frederic* was soon after disturbed by the death of the excellent princess *Sophia Charlotte*. She died in the bosom of her family at *Hanover*; and recommended the learned whom she had protected, and those arts which she had cultivated, to the protection of her husband the elector. She was a princess of distinguished merit, who joined all the charms of her sex, to the graces of a brilliant wit and solid understanding. A. C. 1705. His queen Charlotte dies.

THE forces which the king had sent into *Italy* were defeated at *Casano* with prince *Eugene*; but the loss at *Casano* was soon forgot by the gaining of the famous battle of *Turin*, in which the *Prussians* had a principal part, for which brave prince *Eugene* complimented the king. During the course of this war, *Frederic I.* made some pacific acquisitions, he bought the county of *Tecklenburgh* in *Westphalia*; and madam *de Nemours*, who was in possession of the principality of *Neufchatel*, happening to die, the council of state of that principality adjudged the sovereignty to the king, as heir to the prince of *Orange*, which determination was afterwards confirmed by the treaty of *Utrecht*. The king acquires the principality of Neufchatel.

A POPULAR sedition having disturbed the city of *Ham-  
burgh*, *Frederic I.* sent 4000 men to support the prerogatives of the sheriffs and syndicks. He likewise, by stopping the merchandize of the city of *Cologne* upon the *Rhine*, and at *Wesel*, and threatening to prohibit the Roman catholic worship in his territories, obliged that city to acknowledge their error, the populace having forced the doors of the *Prussian* resident, because he had a Protestant chapel in his house.

AFTER a long course of victories, *Charles XII.* being defeated at *Pultowa*, *Augustus*, who saw his antagonist ruined, thought himself disengaged from the treaty of *Alt Ramstadt*, and had a conference at *Berlin* with the king of *Denmark* and *Frederic I.* in consequence of which *Augustus* again entered *Poland* with an army, while the king of *Denmark* attacked the *Swedes* in *Scania*. But *Frederic I.* could not be moved to engage in the war. He made a journey to *Koningsburgh*, where he obtained of the czar, who came thither to establish the young duke of *Courland* in his possessions, upon condition that he married the niece of *Peter Alexiowitz*. Upon his return to *Berlin*, he was informed of the reputa-  
tion

tion of his troops, who distinguished themselves in *Flanders* and in *Italy*.

IN *Pomerania*, the *Swedes* seeming to threaten to enter *Saxony*, the king proposed to maintain an army of neutrality, to prevent the war from entering his own territories; while in the south *France* renewed the negotiations of peace at *Gertrudenburg*, and in the preliminaries engaged to acknowledge the royalty of *Prussia*, and the sovereignty of *Neufchatel*: but the war continuing, the *Prussians* were employed in this campaign under the prince of *Anhalt* at the sieges of *Aire* and *Douay*, which they took; and the king then declared that he would not restore the city of *Guelldre*, where he had a garrison, till the *Spaniards* paid him the subsidies which they owed him. By the peace he preserved the possession of that city.

A. C. 1710. *The plague ravages Prussia.* THE passage, and the neighbourhood, of so many armies brought the plague this year into *Prussia*, and the famine which began to be severely felt, augmented the violence of that contagion. The king, who was ignorant of one part of the evil, spent his revenues in magnificence and luxury, while 200,000 souls perished, partly for want, and partly by the distemper. The prince-royal, astonished at the want of feeling in his father towards the *Prussians*, earnestly pressed the counts of *Wartenburgh* and *Witgenstein*, directors of the finances, to buy corn for the subsistence of the poor people who were starving; but these ministers being inflexible, the prince resolved to ruin them, by means of a young courtier, who often played at chess with the king, who dropt so many insinuations against the ministers, and which he took all opportunities of repeating, that at last *Witgenstein* was sent to the fortress of *Spandaw*, and *Wartenburgh* banished.

WHILE the allies exhausted their strength in reducing the power of *France*, the emperor *Joseph* died; and the empire elected in his place the archduke *Charles*, who was then blocked up in *Barcelona*. This change in the empire opened a way to a general pacification; the *English*, being now weary of their vast expences, were disposed to enter into a negotiation at *Utrecht*. Meanwhile, the king, who likewise desired to terminate the difference with regard to the succession of *Orange* by a definitive treaty, repaired to the country of *Cleves* to regulate that affair with the prince of *Friseland*; but that unhappy prince was drowned in passing *Maerdick* on his way to the *Hague*.

A. C. 1712. THE allies, following the example of the *English*, began to think seriously of peace, the emperor alone desiring to continue the war. But these pacific sentiments of the South had

no influence upon the North ; the king of *Denmark* entered the duchy of *Bremen*; and took *Staden*. The czar, and the king of *Poland*, endeavoured to make a descent upon the island of *Rugen*, but were prevented by the *Swedes* ; they were likewise disappointed at *Stralsund*, and the *Saxons* and *Danes* were defeated at *Gadesbuck* by *Steinbock*.

*FREDERIC I.* though desirous of reconciling the con-<sup>The king</sup>tending parties, to prevent the storm from falling upon his <sup>dies.</sup>own states, yet was prevented by death, from seeing the conclusion of the peace. He died in the beginning of the year 1713, of a slow disease which had attacked him for a long time. He had three wives ; the first was a princess of *Hesse*, of whom he had a daughter, married to the hereditary prince of *Hesse*, afterwards king of *Sweden* ; his second wife *Sophia Charlotte*, of *Hanover*, bore *Frederic-William*, who succeeded him ; and he divorced his third wife, who was a princess of *Mecklenburgb*, upon account of madness. His person was <sup>His cha-</sup>little and deformed, with an air of haughtiness ; he had a <sup>rafter.</sup>very common aspect, his soul was flexible to all the impressions that were given him ; and those who had once gained a certain ascendant over him, had the power of animating or calming his spirit. Being more attached to that splendor which dazzles, than to the useful, or what is solid, he confounded vain shew with true grandeur. But he is worthy of praise for having always preserved his states in peace, while those of his neighbours were ravaged by war ; for having a heart naturally good, and for having never violated his conjugal fidelity.

UNDER the reign of *Frederic I.* the new colonies, which <sup>The im-</sup>the grand elector had established, arrived at a flourishing <sup>provements</sup>state, and by their industry enriched their protector. His <sup>during his</sup>court was numerous and brilliant, and abounded in money <sup>reign.</sup>by means of foreign subsidies. Luxury appeared in his liveries, clothes, tables, equipages, and buildings. The king had in his service two of the most ingenious architects in *Europe*, and a sculptor as perfect in his art as the two first. The fine arts now began to flourish in *Berlin*, an academy of painters being founded ; and afterwards, by the solicitation of queen *Sophia Charlotte*, a Royal Academy of Sciences. This princess thought it not unworthy of a queen to esteem a philosopher ; and as those who have received from heaven enlightened souls are elevated to an equality with sovereigns, she admitted *Leibnitz* into her familiarity, and proposed him as capable alone to lay the foundations of this new academy. He appointed four classes, one for *Physic* and *Medicine*, another for *Mathematics*, the third for the *Languages* and *Anti-*

Antiquities of *Germany*, and the last for the Oriental Languages and Antiquities. The king likewise founded at *Berlin* an academy for young people of condition upon the model of that of *Luneville*, but unfortunately it did not long subsist.

UNDER *Frederic-William*, the second king, the form of the state was entirely changed, the court was dismissed, and the great pensions were reduced; many people that had once kept coaches, now went a foot, which gave the public occasion to say, that the king had restored the impotent to the use of their limbs. The king likewise, by a severe proclamation, prohibited the exportation of wool, and established a magazine at *Lagerhaus*, from which wool might be furnished to poor manufacturers. He gave also rewards and immunities to those who settled in his cities; he built the city *Potsdam*, which he also peopled, for then it hardly had four hundred inhabitants, whereas, at present it has more than 20,000. During these alterations, the luxury, magnificence, and pleasures of the former reign disappeared; the spirit of economy was introduced through all the states, among the rich as well as the poor.

Of the an-  
tient and  
modern go-  
vernment  
of Bran-  
denburgh.

A. C.  
1420.

THE antient government of *Brandenburgh* when it was pagan, was in the hands of the Druids; their princes being properly generals of the nation, were called *Fursten*, that is, Conductors. The first emperors of *Germany*, who subdued these barbarians, appointed margraves, or governors of the frontiers, to rule these warlike people; but the authority of these governors was not very absolute, the inhabitants being still possessed of a great deal of liberty, and even refused homage to the first burgraves of *Nuremburgh*, who were established in the *Marche*. The great families were possessed of strong castles, surrounded with moats, and made war upon one another, without regarding the laws and government. Although the elector *Frederic I.* subdued them, the states still remained masters of the government; they granted subsidies, regulated the taxes, and fixed the number of the troops, which were only raised in great extremities; they were consulted upon the measures proper to be taken for the defence of the country, and it was by their advice that the laws were administered. Under *Joachim II.* the credit of the states was so powerful, that they redeemed some bailliages upon which the prince had contracted debts, upon condition that neither he, nor his successors, should henceforth borrow upon them or alienate them; the elector consulted them upon all his affairs, and even promised to undertake nothing without their consent. The states wrote to *Charles V.* and ob-

ob-

observed to him, that they did not think it proper that the elector should appear at the diet of the empire; upon which *Joachim II.* laid aside the journey. *George-William* consulted the states for the last time, to know if they thought it proper that the elector should make an alliance with the *Swedes*, by putting his towns into their hands; or if he ought to follow the party of the emperor. Afterwards *Schwaritzenburg*, the minister, having all power with a weak prince, centered in his person the whole power of the sovereign and the states. He imposed contributions by his own authority, and there remained no more to the states of that power which they had never abused, than the merit of a blind submission to the orders of a court.

A. C.  
1631.

THE electors had no other council than the states till the reign of *Joachim-Frederic*; this prince formed a council composed of the minister of justice, and the minister of the finances, and of him who had the charge of the affairs of the empire, and the marshal of the court. From this council, where a stadtholder presided, all decrees in the last instance proceeded, likewise all order civil and military; and when a journey, or war, obliged the elector to leave his states, this council exercised the functions of the sovereignty. The power of the first minister and council becoming enormous, the elector, *Frederic-William*, appointed to each of his ministers their separate department, and established in each province two counsellors, to regulate and give account of affairs; and residing, during the first years of his government, at *Koningsburgh*, he provided the council which he left at *Berlin*, with ample instructions relative to the time and circumstances in which he then was. Things remained on this footing during the reign of *Frederic I.* but with this difference, that he let himself be governed wholly by his ministers. *Frederic-William II.* changed the whole form of the government; he limited the power of the ministers, he regulated the finances which were in great disorder, and he established in each province a college of justice, and a college of finances, subordinate to the ministers. He declared all the fiefs freehold for a certain annual rent, which the proprietaries paid to the state; it was he, in a word, who gave the state the most advantageous form, and established the government with the greatest wisdom.

A. C.  
1725.

# H I S T O R Y

## O F

### M E C K L E N B U R G H.

*History of  
Walachia,*

**W**ANDALIA was a large country beyond the *Elbe*, and included the kingdom of the *Abodrites*, or *Abodriti*, part of which formed the country that is now called *Mecklenburgh*. We shall omit the very distant accounts given us by *Marchallus Thurius* of this district, because the pretended antiquity of them is so remote, that it is impossible to conceive, considering the extreme ignorance of the age, how they could have been transmitted to posterity. The manners of the people were probably the same with those of the *Scythians* their ancestors, and the *Germans*, of whom we have given copious accounts in the preceding parts of this history; and we shall therefore, take it up so late as the period of our Saviour's birth, when it is by no means improbable that the natives might have some knowledge of letters, by means of the great number of illustrious *Romans*, who, upon the fall of their republic, either retired or were banished thither.

*and of the  
Vandals  
who in-  
vaded Ita-  
ly.*

**STRUNIC** was then the leader of the *Vandals*; and he made a naval descent upon the dominions of *Frotho*, the third king of *Denmark*, who had been always considered as the lord paramount of *Wandalia*, and whose general, *Eric*, defeated the *Wandalian* fleet. Not content with this, by *Frotho's* orders, he invaded *Strunic's* dominions, put him to death, and laid his country waste. *Frotho*, dreading the resentment of the *Vandals*, whom he knew to be a warlike and restless people, decoyed them into his armies under pretence of employing them and giving them preferment, and put great numbers of them to death. After this, they, with the *Marcomanni*, the *Quadi*, and many other northern nations, attacked the *Roman* garrisons, about the year 166<sup>m</sup>. The events of that war, which brought *Rome* almost to destruction, have been already related in the *Antient History*, and it was not without the greatest difficulty, that the *Romans*, under the emperor *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, after they had defeated his general near *Aquileia*, where he lost

See Vol. XV. of the *Antient History*, p. 217, 218.



above 20,000 men, again reduced them to subjection. The *Vandals* remained some time after this unmolested by the *Romans*, but had many contests with the kings of *Denmark*, some of whom being powerful princes, renewed their claim of tribute from the *Vandals*, which, about the year 261, he made good, their leader, a king of the *Vandals*, being then *Alberic* the First. By this time, the *Vandals* were greatly esteemed in the *Roman*, and all other armies for their courage, and became the terror of all Europe, as may be seen in numerous passages of our Antient History \*. They served even in the armies of *Zenobia*, queen of *Palmyra*, and in the struggles which they made for their independency, they sometimes brought the *Roman* empire to the brink of destruction. The emperor *Aurelian* having often experienced their valour to his cost, that he might disunite their force, assigned to them lands in *Great Britain*, and other provinces of his empire, which they joyfully accepted of. Their own countries were at once uncultivated and over-stocked with natives, and wherever they were settled, they behaved themselves as brave and faithful subjects of the empire.

ABOUT the year of Christ 340, we find the nation of the *Successors* *Vandals* governed by *Wismar*, who had succeeded *Alberic*. of their Under him they invaded *Jutland* in *Denmark*; but they were princes at last defeated by *Siward*, the king of that country. The successor of *Wismar* was *Meiceslaus*. About the year 341, they renewed their incursions into *Denmark*, where they proved victorious over *Siward*, and took *Jarmerci* his son, and his two daughters. The prince they confined, and the princesses were sold at public sale, while the *Vandals* made themselves masters of all *Cimbria*. The *Danish* monarchy was, at this time, reduced to a low pass by the *Swedes* on the one hand, and the *Vandals* on the other. *Jarmerci* continued still in confinement, and though obliged to work as a slave, he discovered so many noble qualities, that he became *Wismar*'s chief favourite. Not being able however to forget his high rank, and finding himself closely watched, he, and one *Gunne*, another *Danish* prisoner, took an opportunity, of a great festival, to murder their guards whom they had made drunk, together with the queen of the *Vandals*, and with the utmost difficulty they escaped to *Denmark* \*, where *Jarmerci* peaceably ascended the throne.

His first care was to reduce the *Swedes*, and then driv- *Reign of* ing the *Vandals* out of *Cimbria*, he restored *Denmark* to its *Jarmerci* former lustre. He then invaded *Wandalia* itself, where he

\* 1b. Vol. XV.

• See Vol. XXXII. p. 64.

is said to have been guilty of many cruelties, and forced the *Vandals* to renew their annual tribute. Marching to other wars, the *Vandals* massacred the troops whom he had left to bridle them, for which they were afterwards severely punished by *Farmerci*, who defeated them in repeated battles. The *Vandals* for some years after this remained in peace, till becoming too populous for the limits of their country, in the reign of the emperor *Honorius*, about the year 405, they joined the *Goths*, and their other barbarous neighbours, and broke like a torrent into the empire. The king of the *Vandals*, at that time, was named *Radagaisus*, or *Radagaisis*. He, probably, was no other than the leader whom they had chosen to head their expedition, which they intended to be a migration into *Italy*, where they were to settle with their wives and children. The number of fighting men under *Radagaisis*, exclusive of their families, is said to have been 200,000; and the emperor found himself unable to stop their march, though the famous *Stiticho* commanded his armies<sup>p</sup>. *Radagaisis* advanced as far as *Tuscany* without opposition, and laying siege to *Florence*, he was defeated<sup>q</sup>, taken, and put to death with his sons, while the few *Vandals* who escaped the sword were publicly sold, and reduced to the most wretched slavery.

The Van-  
dals de-  
feated.

It was not long before the *Vandals* under *Godegisles*, another of their leaders, being invited, as some conjecture by *Stiticho* himself, underhand, or as others say, being pressed by famine, invaded *Gaul*; but 20,000 of them were cut off by the *Franks*, who were then the subjects or allies of the empire. It is thought that those incursions were greatly favoured, not only by the intrigues of the several candidates for the empire, but by such of the *Romans* who were still pagans, as the *Vandals* themselves were. Being joined by the *Alans*, and other barbarous nations, they repulsed the *Franks*, but were subdued by *Constantine*, who, notwithstanding, suffered them to remain in *Gaul*, from whence they were driven by the *Gauls* themselves about the year 410. The name of their king at this time is said to have been *Gundericus*; and he and his followers remained for nineteen years in *Spain*, from whence they went over to *Africa*.

By those frequent migrations into the finest countries of *Europe*, the country of *Wandalia* lay uncultivated and unpeopled, and especially the lands of the *Abrodites*, and the *Heruli*, which now form the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, and the county of *Schwerin*. The *Wendi*, or *Venedi*, being

<sup>p</sup> See Vol. XXXVI. p. 9.

<sup>q</sup> Ibid. ibid.

passed on the north side of the *Vistula* by the *Goths*, passed that river, and seized, without opposition, upon the eastern parts of *Wandalia*; and the inhabitants of the whole, about the year 613, were blended together under the denomination of *Sclavonians*, by king *Vijilans III.* As the inhabitants of *Mecklenburgh* had then no connection with the *Romans*, we know but little of their history at this period. It appears, that notwithstanding the general name by which they were distinguished, their sects, or tribes, particularly the *Abodrites*, still retained among themselves their antient appellations; but, after various struggles, in which they were blended sometimes with the *Saxons*, and sometimes with the *Sclavonians*, they were obliged to receive the yoke of *Pepin* Submit to and *Charlemagne*, kings of *France*, under whom they were *Pepin and* protected, and enjoyed some respite from the depredations of *Charlemagne*. *magne.*

*ARIBERT* was king of the *Abodrites* in the year 779, when *Charlemagne*, that bloody enthusiast for the conversion of infidels, undertook to render them Christians. This attempt was the more practicable, as they had been always attached to him and his family, and after presiding in person at one of their diets, where he introduced several very useful regulations, he prevailed with them to admit into their country, missionaries, who were to instruct them in the Christian religion. His zeal was crossed by *Wittikind*, duke of *Saxony*, who publicly declared, that to render *Saxons* Christians was making them slaves. To enforce this doctrine, he raised a great army, and invaded the country of the *Abodrites*. The reader may consult other parts of this work for the events of the wars that followed between those two great princes. It is sufficient here to say, that *Charles* protected the *Abodrites*, and defeated *Wittikind*. Soon after, the *Abodrites* were invaded by the *Wilsis*, a part of the *Sclavonians* settled near the *Baltic* sea; but they too were chastised by *Charles*, and their country was plundered. About this time, *Charles* held frequent diets with the northern nations, from motives partly of religion and partly of policy; and at one of them, in the year 794, the king of the *Abodrites*, who was nearly related to the emperor by marriage, attended, which was so much resented by the heathen *Saxons*, that they murdered him on his return homewards. This assassination was severely resented by *Charles*, who revenged it upon the whole nation, by putting many thousands of them to death.

History of  
the Abodrites ;

It is not easy to ascertain the rules of succession at this time among those barbarians ; though they seem to have been indetermined, yet they generally kept in the same line of blood when the descendants were fit to govern. The *Abodrites*, on this occasion, were so grateful to *Charles*, that they made him the compliment of, desiring him to name the successor to their late king, and he gave them one *Thrasco*. Unhappily for the *Abodrites*, they could not always enjoy the powerful protection of *Charles*, as his extensive dominions often obliged him to march to other parts of *Europe*. No sooner did he leave the north, after raising *Thrasco* to the chieftainship of the *Abodrites*, than they were exposed to two enemies, the *Saxons* and *Godfrey* king of *Denmark*, who demanded from them a renewal of their tribute, which he rated at the payment of an hundred white horses at the accession of every new king of *Denmark*. The *Abodrites*, though pressed at the same time by the *Saxons*, had now forgot that their ancestors ever had been tributaries, and depending on the all-powerful protection of the emperor, they entered into an offensive war with *Godfrey*. But *Charles* was at too great a distance to give them succour, and *Godfrey*, invading their country, defeated their forces, and drove *Thrasco* from his throne. They substituted in his stead one *Godalaike*, who again made head against *Godfrey*, but his army was routed and himself slain ; and the *Dane* at last, thought at the vast expence of the best blood of his country, succeeded in obliging the greatest part of the *Abodrites* to receive him as their lord paramount, and to pay him tribute.

who are  
protected  
by Charles-  
magne,

*CHARLES* was, at that time, in the more southern parts of *Europe*. The events we have recited touched his ambition, as well as religion ; and he sent his son *Pepin* with an army to chastise the *Abodrites*, who had recognized the sovereignty of the *Dane*, which he did in a most signal manner. *Godfrey* (F) saw himself unable to resist the Imperial arms, and sought to enter into a treaty with *Charles*. The demands of the latter were, that the *Dane* should give up all manner of sovereignty over the *Abodrites*, and solemnly promise never again to molest the vassals of the empire or its allies. Those

(F) This prince, in the foregoing part of this work, is called *Gotrick*, as the *Abodrites* are called *Abaros* ; and several other variations of the same kind may be observed. This is owing to our being obliged

to accommodate the spelling of every proper name to that of the historians of the country under which it is mentioned. The Danish *Gotrick* therefore is the German *Godfrey*.

terms were rejected by *Godfrey*, who pretended that the *Abodrites* had given him the first provocation. Hostilities again commenced, and *Charles* put *Thrasco*, who had remained at his court ever since his expulsion, at the head of an army, which at first was successful, but was afterwards defeated, and *Thrasco* himself was killed by the *Danes*. *Charles* then raised one *Sclaomer* to the throne of the *Abodrites*, who continued for several years in peace, till they were required by *Lewis the Debonnair*, son and successor of *Charles*, to assist *Harold* in his dispute with *Regner* for the crown of *Denmark*. The *Abodrites* raised an army, and being joined by the *Saxons*, they entered *Jutland*, after many repeated disappointments, by favour of the ice. The *Danish* princes equipped a fleet, with a good number of land-forces aboard, which watched the invaders so closely, that they were obliged to return home, without doing any thing material but wasting part of the country.

THE successors of *Charles the Great*, being by no means and his equal to him, either in power or abilities, soon lost the dependence of the *Abodrites* upon their crown. *Sclaömer* thought himself ill-treated by *Lewis*, in obliging him to embark so deep as he had done in *Harold's* quarrel, while *Louis* declared *Cendragne*, the son of *Thrasco*, who had lost his life in the Imperial service to be *Sclaömer's* associate in the government of the *Abodrites*. *Sclaömer* upon this, called in the *Danes* to assist him in maintaining his dignity; but he was defeated, and being taken prisoner, he was carried to *Aix la Chapelle*, where the emperor commuted the sentence of death that had been passed upon him for his rebellion, into that of banishment\*. Some *German* historians, of the greatest credit, inform us, that in *October* 826, the emperor held a diet at *Ingelheim*, to enquire into the dispositions of his feudatory princes; and that finding cause to suspect the fidelity of *Cendragne*, he detained him; but sent commissaries into his country, to learn how his subjects stood affected towards him. A report being made in his favour, *Cendragne* was dismissed to his government, but not before he had given hostages for his good behaviour.

AFTER this, the *Abodrites* appear to have lived in peace for some years; but two causes concurred in breaking in upon their tranquillity. The first was the dislike they had to their dependence upon the emperor; the second was, their attachment to paganism and their hatred of Christianity. The divisions among the descendants of *Charlemagne* had now

\* History of the Empire by HEISS.

weakened the empire ; and the *Abodrites* were guilty of many rebellions, which were as often suppressed. In such cases they commonly purchased their pardon, by promising to admit Christian missionaries into their country. The emperor, *Henry I.* the greatest prince of his time, had their conversion so much at heart, that, after subduing them, he employed the bishop of *Holstein* to convert them. The prelate, we are told, succeeded in making the king a Christian, but the bulk of his subjects still continued gross idolaters. It appears, that at this time, the *Abodrites* were a very considerable people, for the emperor was obliged to station a general officer, under the name of a marquis, at *Brandenburgh*, that he might repel the occasional incursions of the *Abodrites* upon that territory. The reigns of the three succeeding emperors were disturbed by the insurrections, or, as they are called by the Imperial historians, rebellions, of the *Abodrites*. But as the particulars contain neither variety, instruction, nor entertainment, all we can say, is, that the *Abodrites*, who, probably had no writers among them, are represented by the historians of the contrary party, as having been always defeated, tho' they still continued to hold obstinately out against Christianity. It is true, that some of their princes, from political motives, occasionally conformed to that religion, for we are told, that about the year 986, their king *Mistevojus I.* and his wife, were both of them Christians, but both of them afterwards apostatized.

*Their first  
Christian  
king.*

*MISTEVOJUS* was succeeded by his son *Meiclaus II.* who married the king of *Hungary's* daughter, and his sister was the wife of *Boleslaus I.* king of *Poland*. *Mistevojus II.* succeeded his father *Meiclaus*, and was the first real Christian king of the *Abodrites*. His first wife, upon that account, was nearly related to the emperor *Otho*, but his second wife, who was a *Saxon* princess, brought him back to paganism, though it was not long before he abjured it ; upon which his subjects dethroned, and drove him into exile, where he was murdered by his unnatural wife. A kind of anarchy prevailed among the *Abodrites* after this. The two sons of the last *Mistevojus*, the youngest of whom, *Udo*, had succeeded him, were killed by the *Saxons* ; and his son *Gothescale* relapsed into idolatry, chiefly, as it was thought, with a view of raising an army among his own subjects, to revenge his father's death ; and after various conflicts and incursions into *Saxony*, he was taken prisoner by that duke ; but in consideration of his great qualities was released. Upon his return to his dominions, he found that his subjects had raised another prince to his throne, upon which he fled to *Denmark*, where

where he married the daughter of *Sweno*, the Christian king of *Denmark*, and abjured paganism. By the assistance of his father-in law, he recovered his dominions, but his attachment to Christianity, and his affection for the *Danes*, soon procured him to be assassinated; and the *Abodrites* invading *Denmark*, were guilty of the most dreadful inhumanities against the inhabitants, especially of *Sleswick*, which they took by surprize.

*HENRY* *Gothescale's* son, when very young, escaping the hands of his father's murderers, was carried into *Denmark*; king of the and, by the assistance of that king, he mounted the throne Abo- of the *Abodrites*. As the northern nations in those days were drites. much given to acts of piracy, *Henry*, about the year 1097, sheltered two *Danish* outlaws, who had been guilty of vast enormities of that kind; and when *Eric* demanded *Henry* to give them up, he flatly refused to comply. *Eric*, upon this raised a powerful fleet and army, and besieged *Julinum*, formerly the capital of *Wandalia*, and having taken it, he put the pirates, and all the *Danish* outlaws to death. It is said, that since this siege, *Julinum* has never recovered its lustre, and perpetual wars were carried on between the *Danes* and the *Abodrites* during the remainder of *Eric's* reign. In the mean while, *Henry* attacked the isle of *Rugen*, subdued it, and married the widow of its king, whom he killed. After *Eric's* death, *Henry* made a demand upon *Nicholas* his successor, of some places, the property of which had devolved upon him, in right of his mother *Sigritha*, who was sister to *Nicholas*. *Henry* meeting with a denial, he entered into alliances with his neighbours, invaded *Denmark*, and ravaged *Sleswick*, where he had a private correspondence with *Elif* its governor. This traitor advised his master to move to the relief of his country with a fleet and an army, promising to join him with a large force, which *Nicholas* complied with; but being disappointed by *Elif*, *Henry* fell upon the *Danes*, who were destitute of cavalry, and gave them a total defeat. *His wars,*

THOUGH *Nicholas* removed *Elif* from his government and agreed for his treachery, yet he could not prevent *Henry* from besieging *Sleswick* the capital itself, which owed its preservation Canute only to the valour of its inhabitants; for they forced *Henry* the Dane to raise the siege. *Nicholas* then made his nephew *Canute* duke, or governor of *Sleswick*, that he by his great valour and accomplishments might defend so important a province. *Canute* before he entered upon hostilities, offered to come to an agreement with *Henry*, provided the latter would repair the ravages he had committed. *Henry*, instead of complying,

ing, vowed an irreconcilable enmity to the *Danes*, unless he was put in possession of the places he claimed; and his defiance being mingled with some insulting expressions, *Canute*, that very evening, set out with an army to besiege him in a castle where he resided, and before which he appeared at break of day. *Henry*, who had no idea of such an expedition, was unprovided of all the means of defence, and with the utmost difficulty saved himself from falling into the enemy's hands by swimming cross a river, upon which *Canute* took and plundered the castle, and returned to *Sleswick*. *Henry* lost no time in raising an army to oppose *Canute's* progress; but it was completely defeated, and he was obliged to fly to *Lubec*, leaving the rest of his country to the mercy of *Canute*.

*HENRY*, moved by the distresses of his people, applied in his turn for peace; and the behaviour both of *Canute* and him on this occasion, gives us the most exalted idea of their virtues. No sooner were *Henry's* proposals intimated to *Canute*, than the latter, being determined as much as possible to abridge the negotiations, resolved to have a personal conference with his antagonist, and set out for *Lubec* with no more than twenty attendants, where his magnanimous confidence inspired the like sentiments into *Henry*. They immediately embraced one another, as if they had always been friends; and they agreed, that *Canute* should pay a sum of money equivalent to *Henry's* demands, and that a lasting amity should ensue; which engagement the king of *Denmark* equitably discharged, without putting *Canute* to any expence. This happened about the year 1127; but, from the complexion of the negotiation, we are apt to conjecture, that one of the terms of the agreement was, that *Canute* should succeed *Henry* in the kingdom of the *Abodrites*, to which he nominated him his heir, he having no children that were of an age for government. On this occasion, the emperor *Lothair II.* was applied to, as being head of the empire, who readily confirmed the destination.

UPON the death of *Henry*, or, perhaps, before *Canute* mounted the throne of the *Abodrites*, (being at the same time duke of *Sleswick*, by which he was a vassal to the king of *Denmark*) a war breaking out between the latter, and *Wratisslaus*, duke of *Sclavonia*, *Canute* was summoned to the assistance of the *Danes*, and *Wratisslaus*, discovering a ready inclination for peace, he ventured himself on board the king of *Denmark's* ship, where he was detained prisoner. *Canute*, hearing of this, remonstrated so strongly to his *Danish* majesty upon so dishonourable a proceeding, that he thanked his

who becomes king of the Abodrites.



his nephew for the regard he had shewn to his honour, and released *Wratislaus*. *Canute's* noble sentiments upon this, and many other, occasions, procured him great numbers of enemies at the *Danish* court; among whom was *Magnus*, the king's son, who was afraid lest *Canute*, on account of his extraordinary virtues, should be nominated to the succession of *Denmark*. One of the chief charges urged against him was his having subjected to the emperor the kingdom of the *Abodrites*, which had formerly been tributary to that of *Denmark*; and his performing all acts of royalty independent of *Denmark*. *Nicholas* was at last induced, by the representations of his son, to have a very bad opinion of *Canute*. The latter was all this while intent upon the duties of a good king and subject. He chastised the pirates who had infested the coasts of the *Abodrites*; he reduced some rebellious provinces which had revolted from *Denmark* to *Sweden*, and then he repaired to the *Danish* court, where he soon perceived that a strong party had been formed for his destruction. For some time *Canute* was powerfully befriended by the queen, whose favourite niece he had married; but, upon her death, *Nicholas* summoned him before a general assembly, where he appeared as *Canute's* accuser. The charge against the latter, was, that of ambition and affectation of popularity, and his presuming to wear in public the ornaments and attendants that were due only to independent sovereigns. *Canute* appeared in the assembly, on his defence, with the greatest firmness and dignity, but, at the same time, with the utmost respect to his king and benefactor, and pleaded his own cause with so much eloquence, that he was not only acquitted by the assembly, but again received into the most cordial friendship of the king, and, seemingly, of his son likewise.

*He is persecuted at the court of Denmark,*

THE latter, however, hated *Canute* more than ever, and invited him to a feast of reconciliation, where he apologized for his unjust suspicions; and informed *Canute*, that being determined to enter upon a crusade, he intended to leave his wife and children under his protection. *Canute* had some intimations from his wife *Ingeburge*, that these professions were fallacious; but still disdaining all suspicion, he was prevailed upon by *Magnus*, on pretext of some very important private business he had to communicate, to give him the meeting in a wood, where he was treacherously assassinated by *Magnus*, and some ruffians whom he had concealed there for the purpose. The famous *Ingeburge* was then pregnant with a son, of whom she was delivered, and who afterwards mounted the throne of the *Abodrites*, by the name of *Waldemar*.

demar; but the subjects of *Canute* were equally grieved and enraged at the loss of their prince, the most amiable of any in his age or country. *Canute* had left two bastard brothers, *Harold* and *Eric*, who took upon themselves, but from very different views, the guardianship of the young prince and his kingdom; and to animate the people the more to revenge, they publicly exposed the bloody cloaths in which *Canute* had been murderd; so that in a short time they assembled a great army who chose *Eric* for their general.

*His death  
revenged.*

HE had many virtues, and sincerely wished to revenge his brother's death, but *Harold* was ambitious and designing, and aspired to the throne, and the greatest inveteracy subsisted between the two brothers. The formidable army, however, under *Eric*, struck terror into *Nicholas*, who still sat upon the throne of *Denmark*, and who not only disowned the assassination of *Canute*, but banished his son *Magnus* on that account. Those compliances appeased the *Abodrites*, till they saw *Nicholas*, in contempt of his oaths and engagements, recal *Magnus* to his court. They then again flew to arms, and *Eric* being once more chosen their general, was offered the kingdom of *Denmark*, which he declined to accept of, till his services should deserve it. It is said, that *Nicholas*, by flattering *Eric's* ambition, which it seems he was not without, prevailed on him to agree to a cessation of arms, and treacherously took that opportunity to cut off the greatest part of his troops, and to drive *Eric* himself, and the remainder, into *Zealand*; where *Eric* accepted of the title of royalty which he had before refused. It was then that *Harold* discovered his real views, by deserting his brother and joining with *Nicholas*. *Eric* shewed himself worthy of the crown he had accepted of, for, after a vast deal of blood had been spilt in the struggle, *Magnus* was killed in battle; and *Nicholas* himself afterwards fell a sacrifice to the burghers of *Sleswick*, for whom he had always entertained the highest contempt; and who took arms to revenge the death of *Canute*. Upon the death of *Nicholas*, *Eric* mounted the throne of *Denmark*. But it is now time to return to the history of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*.

It does not clearly appear, during the above dispute, how the infant son of *Canute* was disposed of; it is said, that upon *Canute's* death, the *Abodrites* raised to their throne *Pribislaus I.* and *Nicholas*, the grandsons of *Godefride*, by his eldest son *Bucco*, who died in 1075. From this time the succession to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* may be said to have de-

\* See Vol. XXXII. p. 125.

scended in an hereditary line to its present dukes. The *Abodrites*; while *Nicholas* and *Eric* were disputing for the throne of *Denmark*, had made some incursions into that country, for which *Eric* made severe reprisals; and under pretence of converting the *Vandals*, he carried fire and sword into the country of the *Abodrites*. It was then the age of crusades; but, upon *Eric's* death, the two kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, instead of marching against the infidels of the East, undertook a crusade against the pagans of the North, and laid siege to *Dobinum*, or *Doberin*, in *Mecklenburgh*. This Piracies of place was a famous asylum of piracy, to which, not only the *Abodrites*, but all the northern nations in general were now addicted. The *Mecklenburgers* in *Doberin*, by the assistance of the inhabitants of the isle of *Rugen*, forced the king to raise the siege with great slaughter, and committed such ravages upon the coasts of *Denmark*, that *Sveno*, its king, found himself obliged to advance a large sum of money to *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, on condition of his assisting him with a numerous body of troops for the entire reduction of *Mecklenburgh*. *Henry* eluded the performance of this engagement, having himself an eye upon the reduction of *Wandalia* to his own subjection. Nothing had hitherto stood in the way of his ambition but the fear of the emperor, whom he soon reconciled by his services, and he gave *Henry* a permission to establish bishops in *Wandalia*, or, in other terms, to conquer it.

KING *Pribislaus II.* the nephew of *Pribislaus I.* was then upon the *Abodrite* throne. Notwithstanding all the pains that had been taken for their conversion, the generality of his subjects continued still pagans. Though *Pribislaus II.* was a brave prince, and made a noble stand for the independency of his country, yet being defeated in several bloody battles, he was obliged to resign to his conqueror, *Henry the Lion*, part of his dominions, and to content himself with the title of prince of *Mecklenburgh*, which was the capital of his reserved territory. This city had suffered so much by war, that its episcopal see was translated to *Schwerin*, and the province of *Butzow* was appropriated to support it; but to prevent the effects of future apostacies, *Henry* appointed one *Guncelin*, to superintend, and guard the affairs of the church and bishop, under the title of count of *Schwerin*. Many of the *Saxons*, *Henry's* subjects, having served in *Italy*, their manners were less ferocious than those of the *Mecklenburgers*, whose country had been greatly depopulated by their late wars. To repair this waste of men, *Henry* encouraged

couraged many of his Saxons to settle in *Mecklenburgh*, and their residence there polished the minds of the inhabitants.

*Submit to  
the Saxons.*

As to *Pribislaus* being deeply impressed with the truths of Christianity, he thought it his duty to submit to his conqueror, by punctually fulfilling all he had undertaken, and by seconding him in all his views for polishing and improving the manners of his people. This made him a favourite with the duke of *Saxony*, who employed him in many of his northern expeditions, especially against *Waldemar*; who, about the year 1154, became sole king of *Denmark*. The duke of *Saxony* being engaged in more distant wars, *Waldemar* sought to revenge himself upon *Pribislaus*, by attacking *Mecklenburgh*, and this occasioned a rupture between him and *Henry*. The reader is to observe, that there was still, in other parts of *Wandalia*, a copious field for the ambition of both those princes; and, after some disputes, they came to an accommodation, which ended in each making an addition of some *Vandal* territories to his own dominions. The duke of *Saxony* thus leaving his dominions in peace, undertook, according to the mode of those times, an expedition into the Holy Land, in which he was attended by *Pribislaus*, who, being now old, died by a fall from his horse in a tournament at *Luneburgh*. He was three times married, first to *Petronella*, daughter to *Canute*, king of the *Wendes*. Secondly, to *Voisboda*, daughter to the king of *Norway*; and thirdly, to *Matilda*, daughter to *Bolislav Crispus*, duke of *Poland*.

*Disputes  
about his  
succession.*

*PRIBISLAUS II.* left two sons, *Canute* and *Henry Burwin*, and was succeeded by the former. The ambition of *Henry the Lion*, by this time, had raised him up enemies on all hands, and drawn upon him the resentment of the head, and the other princes, of *Germany*, by whom he was put to the ban of the empire, and obliged to fly to *England*, where he was received by his father-in-law *Henry II.* All the princes, and others whom he had despoiled of their dominions, or their heirs, then resumed possession of them, and, among other states, *Mecklenburgh* recovered its liberty. The *Danes* were then at war with *Bogislaus*, the prince of *Pomerania*, with whom the *Mecklenburghers* took part; while *Jarimar*, prince of *Rugen*, assisted the *Danes*, and having taken *Henry Burwin* prisoner, he made a present of him to *Canute* king of *Denmark*. That prince was then secretly resolved to revive the *Danish* claims of subjection from the country of the *Abodrites*, and, indeed, from *Wandalia* in general. As *Canute*, prince of *Mecklenburgh*, had no issue, his succession was disputed by his uncle *Nicholas*, who opposed *Henry Burwin*.

*Burewin*; and the *Dane* was artful enough to prevail with both parties to chuse him for their umpire. His decision was, that *Nicholas* should enjoy the town of *Rostock*, with the district of *Kiffins*; while *Henry* was to succeed to the cities of *Mecklenburgh* and *Hovia*, with all their dependencies; and both were to hold their principalities as fiefs of the crown of *Denmark*. Twenty-four hostages, among whom was *Henry's* son, (his elder brother *Canute* being now dead) were required and delivered for the performance of this treaty, upon which, the king of *Denmark* ground their right to the title of kings of the *Vandals*, for reasons that must be obvious to the reader.

As the encroaching bishops of *Rome* never failed to make *Canute* the propagation of the Christian religion one of the terms *reduces* of territorial acquisitions, which they pretended to be in-  
valid without their consent; *Canute*, who now looked upon *Mecklenburgh*. himself as lord paramount of the vast country of *Wandalia*, granted to the knights of the Teutonic order, then a powerful body in *Germany*, large tracts lying towards the eastern part of *Wandalia*, on condition of their serving as a kind of military missionaries for the propagation of the Christian religion in that country; and part of those estates now form the inheritance of his present *Prussian* majesty, and the princes of the house of *Brandenburgh*. A marquis of *Brandenburgh* was then in being, and a party in the confederacy with *Adolphus*, count of *Dessau* and *Holstein*, against *Canute*, who, in virtue of his paramount powers over the two princes of *Mecklenburgh*, whom he had lately settled, ordered them to oppose this confederacy with all their troops. A battle followed, which proved fatal to the prince of *Rostock*, but glorious to *Henry*, who entirely defeated the count of *Dessau*, or *Holstein*, and made himself master of the greatest part of his estates, and forced himself to retire to *Hamburgh*. He afterwards, by an ill-judged treaty, fell into the hands of his enemies, and remained long prisoner in *Denmark*, till he was released chiefly through the intercession of the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, with *Waldemar*, who succeeded *Canute* in the throne of *Denmark*.

THE glory which the prince of *Mecklenburgh* acquired by conquering *Adolphus*, inspired him with ideas of independency upon the crown of *Denmark*, which he thought his country had been wrongfully deprived of; and he, in concert with the count of *Schwerin*, made some efforts for that purpose, which drew upon them the arms of *Waldemar*, which *Henry Burewin* was unable to resist, and therefore made his submission. *Waldemar* upon this, as additional security to his

his rights, applied to the emperor *Frederic II.* who granted him letters patent, confirming him in the possession of all the *Wandalian* territories, which he, or his predecessors, had acquired. To this grant a very remarkable clause was added, prohibiting all future emperors, or princes of the empire, from molesting the king of *Denmark* in his possession, under any pretext whatever. It does not appear that, after this, *Henry Burewin* was engaged in any war; for he applied himself to the arts of peace, and to the removing those disorders which war had introduced into his country. After he had governed *Mecklenburgh* for thirty-six years, with indefatigable attention to the good of his people, he resigned the administration into the hands of his two sons, and betook himself to a very private station. He was twice married; first, to *Maud*, daughter of *William*, prince of *Brunswic*, and mother of his two sons and a daughter, who was married to the count of *Ollenburgh*; and secondly, to *Adelhard*, daughter of *Lofeus Allus*, king of *Poland*, but she brought him no issue.

The family  
of Bure-  
win,  
princes of  
Mecklen-  
burgh;

THE names of *Henry Burewin's* two sons were, *Henry* who resided at *Gustrow*, and *Nicholas* who resided at *Mucklenburgh*, while the count of *Schwerin* continued still to enjoy a very considerable property in the principality, and therefore his history has an immediate relation to this part of our work, and contains one of the most remarkable transactions of that age, which has been already hinted at. Upon his undertaking an expedition to the Holy Land, he recommended his wife to the protection of *Waldemar*, who became so enamoured of her, that he scandalously seduced her from the duty she owed her husband. The count, upon his return, being informed of what had passed, dissembled his resentment, and repaired to *Waldemar*, who was then a hunting in the island of *Luith*. After partaking for some days of that diversion, he one evening invited *Waldemar*, who was attended by his son, into his tent, where the king was overpowered by sleep; and the count seized that opportunity of conveying him on board a ship, which carried him to *Schwerin*, where he was confined in the fort of *Danneburgh*. There is some reason for suspecting, that the amour between *Waldemar*, and the count's wife, did not give rise to this very singular adventure, though something like it might have been a concomitant cause. The truth is, that *Waldemar* was now become too powerful to the south of the *Elbe*; and the princes there, whom he had either rendered tributary, or oppressed,

u See Vol. XXXII. p. 187.

had entered into a general confederacy to do themselves justice. The daring action of so inconsiderable a prince as the count of *Schwerin*, and his confining, by his own power, so great a king for above three years, cannot otherwise be accounted for; and our conjecture is strongly confirmed by the event. The natives *Danes*, who were passionately fond of their sovereign, offered to ransom him at a rate so high, that it must have shaken the resolution of a far greater prince than the count, had he not been influenced by very extraordinary motives; for had conjugal resentment been the only spring of his conduct, he undoubtedly would have taken a more signal revenge of the king than merely putting him under confinement. The affections of the *Danes* for their imprisoned sovereign, proved to be the strongest bar to his liberty; for they made no effort to rescue him, lest the count, in the mean time, should have put him to death. *Frederic II.* was then emperor of *Germany*, and secretly approved of the confederacy against *Waldemar*, whom he thought to be too powerful in the empire. The clergy, the nobility, and the people of *Denmark*, joined as one man, in a petition that he would exert his authority for the deliverance of *Waldemar*; and a diet of the Imperial states was convoked upon the subject, while the *Danes*, at the same time, had recourse to the see of *Rome*, imploring the intercession of the spiritual arms in the cause of their sovereign.

THE matter being debated in the diet, *Waldemar* was offered his liberty if he would give up all his possessions on the south of the *Elbe*, or lying near that river; and, in short, if he would resign all the conquests and acquisitions he had made. The pope offered to interpose in his favour, provided he would render his crown tributary to the *Roman* see. *Waldemar* rejected both proposals with equal indignation, and the count of *Schwerin* shewed a noble disdain at the menaces of the pope, who pretended to be the sole umpire in the matter. The count perceiving the firmness of *Waldemar*, had recourse to the confederacy he had formed. The two princes of *Mecklenburgh*, count *Adolphus* of *Holstein*, the archbishop of *Bremen*, and many of the neighbouring princes, who had been injured by *Waldemar*, took the field, and acted with so much success, that the *Danes* were stripped of all their conquests, especially those they had made in *Wandalia*; and each proprietor, after dispossessing the *Danish* prefects and governors, returned to the possession of his own estate. This revolution, which appears to have been wisely and firmly conducted, reduced *Denmark* to so miserable a state, that *Waldemar's* family, and chief subjects, joined in throwing

ing themselves at his feet, to beg that he would relent. At the same time, they distributed large sums among the princes of the empire, that they might favour his cause. They could not, however, mitigate the terms of his release, which *Waldemar* was at last prevailed on to accept. He was obliged to swear, that he would never attempt to resume *Halstein*, *Hamburgh*, *Schwerin*, and the countries that had been taken from him on both sides of the *Elbe*; to renounce all his family pretensions to the third part of *Schwerin*, which had fallen to his grandson *Nicholas*, whose mother was daughter to that count; that he never should express any resentment against the authors of his imprisonment, and that he should pay, within a certain time, the sums stipulated for his ransom. For the performance of those terms the king gave two of his sons, and some of his chief nobility, as hostages.

after a  
bloody  
struggle ;

*MECKLENBURGH* having thus re-asserted her independency, lost *Henry Burewin* one of her princes, while the pecuniary terms of the late treaty was punctually complied with, and the *Danish* hostages withdrawn. But the pope, as might have been easily foreseen, having absolved *Waldemar* from the obligation of his oath, and the *Lubeckers*, though not included in the late treaty, having recovered their liberty, *Waldemar*, collecting a great army, marched towards the *Elbe*, but he was opposed by the princes of *Mecklenburgh*, the bishop of *Lubeck*, the count of *Halstein*, whose territories he had again seized on, and other parties in the late confederacy. Both armies were numerous, resolute, and well commanded, for *Waldemar* was allowed to be a consummate hero, but after performing wonders in a general battle then fought, (in which he lost an eye, and, falling from his horse, was carried off the field by a common soldier,) he sustained a total defeat. Not discouraged with this, he assembled the broken remains of his army, and receiving some reinforcements, he made fresh attempts for recovering the territories he had renounced; but all of them were ineffectual, as the duke of *Saxony* had by this time joined the confederacy.

but they  
again sub-  
mit to the  
Danes.

*NICHOLAS* of *Mecklenburgh*, the younger son of *Henry Burewin I.* who was now dead, about the year 1228, was unfortunately buried in the ruins of a house where he had for some time resided, and left no issue; and thus all the county of *Mecklenburgh*, excepting *Schwerin*, fell to *Burewin II.* and his sons; among whom, according to the mode of succession in those days, he portioned it out at the time of his death; and this occasions some intricacy in part of the ensuing history. His eldest son *John*, had, for his division,

*Meck-*



*Mecklenburgh-Proprietary*. Part of the country of the antient *Heruti* fell to *Nicholas*, as *Rostock*, and its dependencies, did to *Henry Burewin*, whom we shall call by his family *Burewin* III. and the territory that was called *Wandalia-Proprietary*, was inherited by the fourth son *Pribislaus*. From this distribution, it is evident, that the *Burewin* family was then very powerful. But being thus parcelled out, it was not near so formidable as when united under one head. The growing power of the emperors, filled the *Mecklenburgh* princes with the most dreadful apprehensions of their falling under their dominion, for which reason they entered into a treaty with *Eric VI.* king of *Denmark*, whose power was less formidable to them than that of the emperor, and acknowledged him for their sovereign. To strengthen this alliance, *Burewin* III. married *Margaret*, sister of *Eric*, and the count of *Schwerin* was admitted as a party in the treaty which proved extremely fortunate for *Eric*, for he was faithfully served by the *Mecklenburgh* princes, in the long bloody wars which he waged with his brother. With the same fidelity they served *Christopher I.* *Eric's* brother, and successor in the kingdom of *Denmark*. We have already mentioned *John*, the eldest son of *Henry Burewin* II. His character is uncommon, especially for that age and country. He was the immediate ancestor of the present *Mecklenburgh* family, and when young he studied divinity at *Paris*, where he acquitted himself so well, that he received the degree of doctor, and the epithet of *The Divine*. But his theology had nobler objects than useless disputations and unintelligible distinctions. His country, notwithstanding all that had been done for its reformation, still contained a great number of pagans, and of half reformed Christians, who, having no sentiments of true religion, had turned free-booters, and lived upon plunder. *John*, upon his return, applied himself to reform the former, and extirpate the latter, in which he succeeded. He likewise was a main instrument, with the princes of his family, in restoring peace to *Denmark*, and effecting an accommodation (though it was a short-lived one) between *Elizabeth* of that kingdom, and *Abel*, duke of *Sleswick*. He likewise employed his arms to excellent purpose in repelling the incursions and depredations of the *Livonians*; but a spirit of reformation and regularity, joined to a studious course of life, formed a character so little understood in those times, that *John* was not respected so much by his subjects as his exemplary virtues deserved; so that when he died in the year 1260, his merits were soon forgotten. The name of his wife

*History of*  
*John the*  
*Divine.*

wife was *Luitgarda*, by whom he had six sons, *Henry*, *Nicholas*, *Poppo*, *Herman*, *John* and *Albert*.

*His son*  
*Henry taken pri-*  
*soner.* THE eldest, *Henry*, succeeded *John* in his dominions, but the latter took a turn different from that of the father; for it partook of the madness of the age, the spirit of crusading in the Holy Land, for which he acquired the appellation of *John of Jerusalem*. His zeal for visiting the Holy Sepulchre was such, that when *Lewis IX.* of *France*, to whom he had attached himself returned to *Europe*, *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh* set out for *Jerusalem*, but being taken prisoner on his journey, he was sent to *Grand Cairo*, where he was carried before the sultan of *Egypt*. *Henry*, when he was taken, was attended by a domestic, who was carried with him into captivity, and who had been bred up to the silk manufactures (probably in *Italy*, with which country *Germany* had then great connections.) This faithful servant was so expert in his business, that besides his own occasions, he supplied those of his master during a long captivity of twenty-six years. Here the *German* historians give the *Egyptians* a *German* sultan, who having been long employed in the armies of the *Franks*, (for so the *Europeans* in general were then called all over *Asia*) raised himself to that dignity by his valour. This sultan had been once a Christian, and had some knowledge  
*Delivered,* of *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh*, by his having served in his father's armies, and set him at liberty without any ransom. All *Egypt*, and the neighbouring countries, were then under the power of banditti, who intercepted *Henry* in his return to *Germany*; so that it was his fate once more to be carried a prisoner to *Grand Cairo*, where the sultan again set him at liberty, furnished him with necessaries for his journey, and provided him with a proper escort, till he could proceed in safety to his own dominions, where his subjects were overwhelmed with joy upon his return.

*and re-*  
*turns to*  
*Mecklen-*  
*burgh.* THIS happened about the year 1300, and perhaps, his long absence was profitable to his dominions, which thereby did not feel the scourge of war. They were governed by one of his brothers in peace, and with so great œconomy, that he was enabled to purchase the dominions of *Pribislav*, *Henry* the II'd's youngest son, who was obliged to sell them, that he might pay for his ransom to *Rudolphus*, bishop of *Schwerin*, who had taken him prisoner. *Henry* was scarcely resettled in his dominions, when entering into a fresh war, he laid siege to, and took the city of *Wismar*. Next year he died. By his wife *Anastasia*, a *Pomeranian* princess, he had two sons and two daughters. The sons were, *Henry* who succeeded him, and for his valour was called *The Lion*,  
and

and *John*. The daughters were *Anne*, who was married to *John*, count of *Holstein*, and *Luitgarda*, the wife of *Primislaus*, king of *Poland*, who is said to have strangled her.

DURING the administration of *Henry the Lion*, *Nicholas* *Nicholas* *Burewin*, of the *Mecklenburgh* family, quarrelled with the *Burewin* margraves of *Brändenburgh*, by refusing to execute a marriage contract he had entered into with their sister; and *Nicholas* in the end was obliged to sell his principality of *Rostock*, and put himself under the protection of the king of *Denmark*. This intimidated the margraves from continuing their hostilities, and all the differences between them and *Nicholas* were submitted to the arbitration of his *Danish* majesty, and *Henry the Lion*, who settled every thing amicably. In the mean while, the inhabitants of *Rostock* did not think that *Nicholas* had any power to transfer their allegiance from the *Mecklenburgh* family to the king of *Denmark*; and their opposition appeared to be so determined, that his *Danish* majesty to quiet them, was obliged to appoint *Henry the Lion* to the government of *Rostock*, but took an acknowledgement from him, promising to hold it only during his, the king of *Denmark*'s, pleasure. *Henry* had married *Beatrice*, the last margrave of *Brandenburgh*'s daughter, and, in her right he claimed a large estate, which was disputed by her brother the margrave *John*, whom he defeated, and obliged him to resign the province of *Sturgard*; a cession so disadvantageous to the *Brandenburgh* family, that the disputes between them and *Henry* were often renewed; but *Henry* still maintained his possession.

ABOUT the year 1307, the nobility of *Holstein* rebelled against *Gerhard* their count, who defeated and forced them to fly to *Lubec*, which was then a city very considerable for its strength and commerce, where they were favourably received. This so greatly exasperated the count, that he raised a fort at the mouth of the *Trave*, to interrupt their trade, and to intercept all their communications by water. The *Lubeckers*, upon this, applied to the duke of *Saxony*, and to *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, under whose protection their city was, for assistance; and the latter sent them some troops. The count of *Holstein*, on the other hand, had recourse to *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh*, who joined him, and forced the *Lubeckers* to a peace, by which they were obliged to leave the fort upon the *Trave*, for four years, in the possession of the count, and, after that, all differences between the parties were to be referred to the emperor *Albert*. The divisions between the count and his nobility were afterwards accommodated by the mediation of the king of *Denmark*, and the prince of *Meck-*

and the  
Rostock-  
ers.

*Mecklenburgh*, who were chosen by both parties to be guaranties of the accommodation, and judges in all future disagreements. Next year, viz. 1308, those princes interested themselves in favour of *Bergen*, the late king of *Sweden*, who had been taken prisoner and deposed from his throne\*. The imprudence of the two kings, *Eric* and *Bergen*, had occasioned a general revolt of the chief men of their party, and they must have been ruined, had it not been for the firmness of the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, who stood by them, and was the means of putting an end, for that time, to the war. The next military affair in which the prince of *Mecklenburgh* was engaged, was on occasion of a difference that had arisen between the king of *Denmark* and the *Rostockers*, who refused to suffer him to celebrate a tournament which he had proclaimed to be held in their city. Others say, that this quarrel was occasioned by the prince of *Mecklenburgh* having appointed his nuptials to be celebrated in *Rostock*, and that the *Rostockers* had shut their gates against him, as not thinking it safe to admit his numerous attendants. The prince, upon this, applied to his friend and ally, *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, who, as lord-paramount of the city, peremptorily required the city to open their gates to the prince, which they as peremptorily refused to do. Upon which, his *Danish* majesty equipped a fleet, with which he blocked up *Rostock* by sea, and having raised some force which he thought to be sufficient for continuing the blockade, he returned to *Denmark*, while the prince of *Mecklenburgh* was still carrying on the siege by land. No sooner did the king of *Denmark* withdraw, than the *Rostockers* attacked the works he had left to guard the mouth of the *Warnaw*, and not only demolished them, but built two strong forts to prevent their city from being blocked up, in like manner, for the time to come. Not contented with that, they invaded *Denmark* with their shipping, and ravaged several of its principal sea-ports. This provoked *Eric* so much, that he returned afresh to the siege, and, after an obstinate dispute, he took the towers upon the *Warnaw*; but, being obliged to return to *Denmark*, he once more left the siege under the command of the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, who straitened the city so much, that the inhabitants being driven to despair, murdered all their senators who fell into their hands, while the rest were obliged to throw themselves upon the prince of *Mecklenburgh* for protection. The citizens, in like manner, submitted to his mercy, and offered to give up the place; upon which, a ces-

\* See Vol. XXXIII. p. 70.

sation of hostilities was granted. But notwithstanding all the miseries the *Rostockers* had suffered, they still refused to admit the prince within their walls, even to finish the treaty, which they insisted upon being transacted without their gates. The prince, exasperated by their obstinacy, had recourse to stratagem. He loaded two covered waggons with armed soldiers, which was pretended were provisions, a present so grateful to the half-starved citizens, that they opened their gates to admit them, upon which the soldiers, concealed in the waggons, jumped out, and securing the gates, gave an opportunity to the prince to march into the city at the head of a strong detachment of his troops. Notwithstanding this, the citizens bravely put themselves under arms, and a smart encounter happened between them and the prince in the market-place, in which, probably, he would have been defeated, had he not proclaimed aloud, that he came thither only for the sake of justice, to give the inhabitants peace and protection, and that every thing should be settled according to their minds, by the strictest rules of equity. This declaration had its weight with the people, fainting under hunger, and the tumult ceased. The prince then sent for the principal burghers, remonstrated to them that their conduct had been refractory and rebellious, and he pronounced that they should pay, at three instalments, 14,000 marks in silver, as an indemnification for the king, himself, and the marquis of *Brandenburgh*, who was their ally. This compromise being finished, the king again asserted his right to the sovereignty of the city, and gave the government of it to the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, upon condition of his holding it under the crown of *Denmark*.

An accommodation with them.

THE strict alliance between the kings of *Denmark*, and the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, at this time, was founded upon reciprocal maxims of policy. The *Mecklenburghers* assisted the king in keeping those states and cities in awe who owed him fealty, while the king was a powerful protection to the prince, against the encroachments of the Imperial power. In the year 1326, *Waldemar*, of *Sleswick*, having been elected king of *Denmark*, pursued a different plan of policy, for he assisted the prince of *Rugen* with troops, in a territorial dispute he had with the prince of *Mecklenburgh*. The latter, for some time, was obliged to give way, and even to conclude a treaty with the *Rugeners*, tho' he paid no regard to it longer than the continuance of the *Danes* upon their island; but it is uncertain, how the quarrel ended. *Christopher* king of *Denmark*, being driven out of his kingdom, had recourse to the princes of the house of *Mecklenburgh*, for his being

Great friendship between Denmark and Mecklenburgh.

restored. They accordingly raised some troops both by sea and land, who, with prince *Henry of Mecklenburgh* at their head, took *Wardinburgh*, esteemed to be the strongest place in *Denmark*; while the *Mecklenburghers* were in their turn besieged by the count of *Holstein*, and the place was defended with such obstinacy, that the besieged were reduced to the last degree of famine, but made so good a countenance, that the besiegers thought themselves happy in concluding a capitulation, by which *Christopher*, who had been shut up in the place, together with *Henry*, and all their soldiers, had liberty to retire to their ships. After this, *Christopher* was pursued from place to place; but at last he retired to *Rostock*, which city, together with all the territory that now forms the duchy of *Mecklenburgh Strelitz*, was ceded to *Henry*. The reader, in the preceding part of this work, has been informed of the fate of *Christopher*, who, chiefly by the assistance of the prince of *Mecklenburgh*, recovered his dominions, or, at least the greatest part of them. *Henry* died in the year

Death of  
Henry the  
Lion.

1329, his first wife was *Beatrice*, whom we have already mentioned to have been daughter to *Albert*, marquis of *Brandenburgh*; and, by her, he had a daughter, named *Maud*, who was married to *Otho*, duke of *Luneburgh*. *Henry's* second wife was *Anne*, sister of *Adolphus*, duke of *Saxony*, by whom he left two sons, *Albert*, who succeeded to the principality of *Mecklenburgh*, and *John*, who, by his father's will, inherited the lordship of *Stargard*. *Henry*, by the same marriage, had two daughters; *Anne*, who was married to the count of *Holstein*, and *Agnes*, who was married to *Nicholas*, one of the *Mecklenburgh* princes.

Peace be-  
tween  
Mecklen-  
burgh and  
Branden-  
burgh.

THE death of *Henry the Lion* encouraged the marquis of *Brandenburgh*, to attempt to re-unite *Stargard* to his own dominions; but he met with so vigorous a resistance from the two princes of *Mecklenburgh*, that he was obliged to renounce *Stargard*, and to accept of *Lentzen*, a town on the *Elbe*, in lieu of it by way of portion for his wife *Ingelburga*, *Albert's* daughter, whom he married, upon condition that *Albert* should likewise release, without ransom, an hundred of the subjects of *Lewis*, whom he had taken prisoners. After this, *Nicholas*, who had sold *Rostock* to the king of *Denmark*, having been attacked by the duke of *Pomerania*, and finding himself hard pressed, applied for assistance to his kinsman *Albert*, who marched in person against the duke, and recovering for *Nicholas* the town of *Grun*, he left him in quiet possession of his reserved territory. *Germany*, especially in the neighbourhood of the *Mecklenburgh* dominions, being then pestered with banditti and robbers of all denominations, *Albert*

formed

formed the noble design of exterminating them. As they were resolute and numerous, *Eric*, duke of *Saxe Lauenburgh*, undertook to protect them; but he had soon reason to repent of so scandalous a measure. *Albert*, without any regard to the duke's interposition, attacked them, and defeated them in all their fastnesses, especially in the counties of *Wirtenburgh* and *Ratzeburgh*, and obliged *Eric* himself to sue for peace.

THE difficulties which the emperor *Charles IV.* had in mounting the Imperial throne, may be seen in the preceding part of this history. His cause was vigorously espoused by *Albert*, and the princes of the *Mecklenburgh* family, and therefore they were declared enemies to the house of *Bavaria*. A margrave of *Brandenburgh*, to whose estate *Lewis* of *Bavaria* had succeeded, having died in the Holy Land, an impostor started up, who pretending to be the real margrave, returned to *Germany*, and he acted his part so well, as to gain a great many friends, and particularly *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh*, the duke of *Saxony*, and the prince of *Anhalt*. The king of *Denmark*, the brother-in-law of *Lewis*, resented this so much, that they fitted out a large armament both by land and sea, with which he ravaged the *Mecklenburgh* estates in a most merciless manner, and then marching into *Pomerania* he made himself master of *Stargard*. *Albert* was not wanting to himself upon this occasion; he drew together an army, with which he shut up the king in *Stargard*, and *Albert* must have become master of the place, and his person, had not the margrave of *Brandenburgh's* brother come to his assistance, which obliged *Albert* to raise the siege of *Stargard*, and to march against the *Brandenburgher*, whom he entirely defeated, and he narrowly escaped falling into *Albert's* hands. The king took the opportunity of *Albert's* raising the siege to draw his army out of *Stargard*, and he marched with it against the *Mecklenburgh* territory, which he once more filled with desolation and ravages. From thence he marched against *Berlin*, which had declared for the impostor, and besieged it, but was closely followed by *Albert*, and the *Mecklenburgh* princes. A most bloody battle must have ensued, had not some princes, who were not so deeply engaged in the quarrel, together with the principal subjects of both parties, interposed, and prevailed upon them to chuse the king of *Sweden* to be the umpire of their differences. An accommodation, under his mediation, accordingly took place, and it was agreed, that the princes of *Mecklenburgh* should abandon the cause of the pretended margrave; that the reigning margrave of *Brandenburgh* should pay ransom for all his subjects who were prisoners in the hands of *Albert*, that he

War with  
Bavaria.

A peace.

should absolve some towns, formerly belonging to *Wandalia*, from the oath of allegiance he had imposed upon them, and that he should marry *Ingeburga*, daughter of *Albert*; and in this peace were concluded the allies of both parties.

**Mecklenburgh** It is here proper to acquaint the reader, that by this time, viz. 1349, the emperor *Charles IV.* had, in consideration of the great services performed to him by the house of *Mecklenburgh*, created *Albert* and *John* of *Stargard*, dukes of the empire. Not only their personal merit and high reputation pointed them out as proper subjects for this honour, but the great power and influence they had in the empire seemed to demand it. They had carried the terms of the late treaty with a very high hand, and notwithstanding the powerful confederacy against them, headed by his *Danish* majesty, they acquitted themselves with great honour, and instead of giving up any share of their family estates, they secured them from future invasions. *Waldemar* was then king of *Denmark*, and the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, as well as the emperor, who had espoused the impostor, being now convinced of their error, *Waldemar* sought to enter into nearer connections than heretofore with the house of *Mecklenburgh*. For this purpose, a treaty of marriage was set on foot between *Henry*, son to duke *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh*, and *Ingeburga*, daughter to his *Danish* majesty, though she was then no more than three years of age; but was to be delivered to the tuition of the duchess of *Mecklenburgh*, till she was marriageable. By way of portion, her husband was to receive the towns of *Kibnitz*, *Cropentius*, and *Tiffin*, and all the territories belonging to them, together with 6000 marks of silver. About the year 1352, the duke of *Stetin* declared war against *Albert*. *Waldemar*, who valued himself for being a faithful ally, immediately raised an army, nominated a regency, and marched in person to *Albert's* assistance. The duke of *Stetin* upon this, immediately submitted to a negotiation, which terminated in an alliance between him and the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, in which *Pomerania* was included. The duchy of *Mecklenburgh* for some time after this peace, seems to have enjoyed a state of repose. In the mean while, a war raged in *Sweden*, between king *Magnus*, and his son *Eric*, whom the senate had raised to the throne. The dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, and the count of *Holstein*, offered their mediation to compose the differences between them, and succeeded so far, that they effected an accommodation by *Magnus* delivering up part of his dominions to his son, who was to retain the regal title. This proved fatal to the young prince, for having declared his intension to marry, he was

Marriage  
between  
duke Hen-  
ry and In-  
geburga,  
daughter  
to the king  
of Den-  
mark.

poisoned



poisoned some days after by the hand of his own mother, who could not brook the mention of another queen of *Sweden* besides herself.

THE tyranny of *Magnus* continuing over the *Swedes*, he *Magnus*, called in the assistance of *Waldemar*, whom he is said to have *king of* made heir to his kingdom to protect him against the resent- *Sweden*, ment of his subjects. The latter, in like manner, applied *deposed*. for protection to *Haquin*, king of *Norway*. This last prince was to have been married to *Margaret*, daughter of *Waldemar*, who was then but seven years of age, and was afterwards the famous *Semiramis* of the north. The *Swedes*, being equally exasperated against *Waldemar* as against *Magnus*, prevailed with *Haquin* to drop this match, and to marry *Elizabeth*, sister to the duke of *Holstein*, in order to strengthen his interest in *Germany*. The *Mecklenburgh* family could not, without great uneasiness, behold the growing connections between *Magnus* and *Waldemar*, as they tended to render the latter too powerful; and being equally dissatisfied with the proposal of *Haquin's* marriage with *Margaret*, favoured the match between him and *Elizabeth*; but that princess, in her voyage to *Norway*, being forced upon the *Danish* coast, was made prisoner, and detained by *Waldemar*. This ungenerous proceeding was resented by the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, and the count of *Holstein*, who flew to arms, that they might oblige *Waldemar* to release the lady; but before that could be effected, the politic *Dane* succeeded in persuading *Haquin* to marry the princess *Margaret*; and it is said, that to secure the succession to the crown of *Sweden* to them and their posterity, he procured poison to be administered to *Magnus* and his queen *Blanche*, the same who had poisoned her own son. Whatever may be in this fact, which is far from being strongly attested, it is certain that the *Swedes* were so much exasperated at the conduct both of *Magnus* and *Haquin*, that they proceeded to the election of a new king, and offered their crown to *Henry*, count of *Holstein*.

THE progress of those transactions have been already related in the histories of *Sweden* and *Denmark*. We shall, therefore, here confine ourselves to that of *Mecklenburgh*. Duke *Albert's* professed principle in all those differences was to prevent any one monarch in the north from growing too powerful for *Mecklenburgh*, and the other *German* princes upon the *Elbe*. With this view, he, and the princes of his house, had endeavoured to balance parties; and in order to prevent *Waldemar* from conquering *Schonen*, the duke invaded *Fionia* with a fleet and army at the same time, which reduced almost the whole country, and he returned triumph-

Copen-  
hagen re-  
duced.

antly with a great number of prisoners, whom he detained at hostages. He had undertaken the invasion at the request of the *Futlanders*, who hated *Waldemar*, and the princes of *Holstein*. Duke *Albert*, by this precaution, preserved himself from being duped by *Waldemar*, as the rest of his confederates were, by being trepanned into a negotiation, after *Waldemar* had reduced *Sconen*, one of the finest provinces in *Sweden*. *Waldemar* next joined the hanse towns, who had united to support their independency against *Waldemar*. They had been exasperated by that prince having plundered *Wisby*, one of the richest cities in the north, and they gave the command of their fleet to the count of *Holstein*, who attacked and plundered *Hafnia*, now *Copenhagen*, and afterwards made himself master of its citadel. On this occasion, the city of *Lubec* fitted out a squadron at its own expence, which was commanded by the consul *John Wittenburgh*; and in confidence of being supported by the *Lubeckers*, the confederates laid siege to *Helsingburgh*; but they were obliged to raise it, because *Waldemar* intercepted, took, or destroyed the *Lubec* squadron, before it could arrive to support the siege. This success on the part of *Waldemar* encouraged the other garrisons of the country, that were in his interest, to defend themselves with great obstinacy. The count of *Holstein*, to re-establish the credit of his arms, which had suffered at *Helsingburgh*, laid siege to *Wardingburgh*; but the garrison defended themselves so well, that he was obliged to offer to raise the siege, provided the prisoners, that had been made during it, were restored to him. The besieged punctually complied with this condition; but the count, in the meanwhile, receiving a reinforcement, perfidiously resumed the siege with the greatest vigour, so that the commandant of the town, pretending to be reduced to the last extremity, offered to capitulate, and desired the count to send into the town some of his officers to receive the keys of the place. The count, not mistrusting the commandant's sincerity, commissioned some of his chief officers for that purpose, to whom the commandant, in terms of his promise, delivered up the keys; but he immediately after put them under arrest, and detained them as prisoners. From this resolute action, the count perceiving, that the commandant was in a much better condition than he had imagined, broke up the siege, upon which the duke of *Mecklenburgh* proposed to treat with *Waldemar*. An interview succeeded, in which the duke's three sons, *Henry*, *Albert*, and *Magnus*, attended him; and every thing being amicably adjusted on the part of the allies, the duke

**Duke** received the arrears of the fortune due to his son *Henry's* wife, daughter of *Waldemar*.

WE have already mentioned the *Swedes* having made an offer of their crown to the count of *Holstein*, but he declined it, and recommended to their choice his cousin prince *Albert of Mecklenburgh*, who being son to the sister of *Magnus*, had, at least, some pretensions to that crown, upon the exclusion of his uncle and his son. The policy of the great princes of the north began now to unfold itself. *Albert*, without hesitation, accepted of the crown of *Sweden*, and was powerfully supported by his father, and the princes of the *Mecklenburgh* family, while the kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark* united against him. *Albert* immediately repaired to *Gothland*, which was the rendezvous of the nobility, who were in opposition to *Magnus*, and was there proclaimed king, while his father, with a strong fleet, reduced *Stockholm*; and the nobility, assembling in that capital, publicly declared their reasons for dethroning *Magnus*, and recognizing *Albert*.

NOTWITHSTANDING those successes, *Magnus*, the late king, was still very powerful. *Haquin*, king of *Norway*, was his son, and the reader has already seen the connections he had with the king of *Denmark*, who was in possession of great part of *Sweden*, and some of its strongest towns. On the other hand, *Albert*, who had been crowned for a second time in the capital, was possessed of the hearts of the nobility and the people, and he raised an army sufficient to face that of the confederate kings, which had advanced as far as the province of *Upland*. A battle ensued, in which *Albert* and conquered victorious; *Magnus* was taken prisoner, and his son escaped with wounds. This victory obtained by *Albert*, great *quers* *Magnus*, as it was, was far from being decisive. The kings of *Denmark* and *Norway* poured their forces into *Sweden*, which prevented *Albert* from reducing the strong places that still held out for *Magnus*, who remained a prisoner in the castle of *Stockholm*. From the complexion of history, it appears, that *Albert* was resolved to sacrifice every thing that could secure him the possession of his newly acquired sovereignty, and that *Waldemar* was equally determined to sacrifice the interests of *Magnus*, that he might quietly keep his *Swedish* acquisitions. *Albert* called together the states of *Sweden*, who appeared in a very thin body, and obtained their consent for treating with *Waldemar*. A negotiation succeeded, and a treaty was concluded, by which *Albert* gave up to *Waldemar* the isle of *Gothland*, the city of *Wisby*, the fort of *Helsingburgh*, with many other places and dependencies. *Waldemar*,

at the same time, engaged to leave *Albert* in quiet possession of the crown of *Sweden*, and to drop all pretensions of sovereignty over *Mecklenburgh* and *Rostock*, or the county of *Schwerin*; which, by the failure of the male line of the counts of *Schwerin*, had devolved upon himself in right of his wife *Richarda*, the only issue of *Otho* the last count.

Confederacy  
against  
Denmark,

As this treaty did not expressly include the reigning duke of *Mecklenburgh* as a party, he began to encroach upon that duchy. Duke *Albert*, who was now old, still stuck by his plan, and prevailed with the nobles of *Jutland*, and the duke of *Sleswick*, the count of *Holstein*, the hanse towns, and several other states, to league themselves against *Denmark*. This confederacy was not purely defensive, for it soon appeared to be a treaty of partition, by which all the acquisitions of the crown of *Denmark* were to return to their original proprietors; and even *Albert* king of *Sweden* entered into it. *Waldemar*, then stricken in years, did not retain spirits sufficient to face this storm, and after settling a regency with full powers to act for him, he resolved to abandon his government, in hopes that his absence would mitigate the resentment which his enemies had conceived at his person. Meanwhile, the confederates took the field, and, in pursuance of their plan, each seized the portion of territory which had been allotted to him by the treaty, whilst *Waldemar* was pursuing his journey to *Rome*, to which, as he pretended, he had vowed a pilgrimage. This resolution had proceeded only from his first consternation, for, upon second thoughts, instead of going to *Rome*, he repaired to the emperor's court, before which he laid the wrongs he had suffered in the most pathetic manner; and his Imperial majesty recommended his cause to some princes of the empire, who were as unwilling, as they were unable, to assist him. Every one knows to what a height of power and insolence the court of *Rome* had arrived at this time. *Waldemar* had high ideas of the services which his holiness, who was pope *Gregory XI.* could render him, and applied to him, but not in person, with presents, and by his ambassadors. The reader has already seen how this application terminated, and with what spirit *Waldemar* resented the menaces of the pope, who had threatened to excommunicate him.

broken.

THE prudence of the grand-marshal of *Denmark*, who had been left at the head of the regency, broke the confederacy against his country by detaching from it the hanse-towns, and thereby sowing dissensions among the other al-

<sup>r</sup> Vol. XXXII. p. 176.

<sup>z</sup> Ibid.

lies; upon which *Waldemar* returned to *Denmark*, where he soon after died in peace. By this time *Haquin*, who still continued to make war with *Albert*, king of *Sweden*, had made such a progress in that kingdom, that he delivered his father *Magnus* from his confinement, but, upon conditions very advantageous to *Albert*; and *Magnus* soon after was drowned. But the death of *Waldemar*, without male issue, was a very interesting circumstance to the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, old as he was. His son *Henry* had been married to *Ingeburga*, the eldest daughter of *Waldemar*, and therefore the hereditary right to the crown of *Denmark* indisputably devolved upon *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh*, the issue of that marriage; while *Margaret*, who was but the second daughter, now a widow, put in her claim to the sovereignty, and was, by the states of the kingdom, declared regent, till her son *Olaus* should be of age. It was in vain for the old duke of *Mecklenburgh* to fill all the courts of *Europe* with complaints of the injustice that had been done his son; for he was obliged to support them by a strong army which he raised, and which was joined by the troops of his son the king of *Sweden*, and likewise by a naval armament. But the latter was dispersed by storms, which disconcerted the measures of the *Mecklenburgh* princes: for *Albert* being obliged to return to his capital of *Stockholm*, found a great part of the *Swedes* had formed an association against him, on account of the partiality he had shewn to the *Germans* about his court; and that many of them had gone over to *Margaret*, who promised them her assistance in dethroning *Albert*, on condition of her succeeding to the crown of *Sweden*, and of its being made hereditary in her family, to which they agreed by oath.

THE old duke of *Mecklenburgh*, through those unexpected *Olaus* <sup>cho-</sup> events, was deprived of his son the king of *Sweden*'s assist- <sup>sen king of</sup> ance, and he himself was unable to prosecute his grandson's right <sup>Denmark,</sup> to the crown of *Denmark*, though he had, on the principle <sup>and his</sup> of hereditary right, a very strong party in that kingdom. Se- <sup>mother</sup> veral meetings of the states were held without any election <sup>Margaret</sup> being made; but at last *Margaret* managed so well, that <sup>regent.</sup> *Olaus* was chosen, and being but eleven years of age, his mother was declared regent during his minority. Old duke *Albert*, perceiving the *Danes* to be almost unanimous in their choice, was obliged to submit his grandson's right to arbitration, and it was agreed to stand by the new establishment, which was not to injure the title of the *Mecklenburgh* prince, who was, in right of his mother, to inherit such a part of the *Danish* succession, as should be adjudged to him by the marquis of *Misnia*. This agreement was made, but not ratified,

tified, when old duke *Albert* died. His wife was *Euphemia*, sister to *Magnus Smeck*, king of *Sweden*, and by her he had issue three sons, *Albert*, king of *Sweden*, *Magnus* and *Henry*, and two daughters, *Anne*, who was married to *Adolphus VII.* count of *Holstein*, and *Ingeburga*, whose first husband was *John I.* margrave of *Brandenburgh*, and her second to *Lewis*, margrave of *Brandenburgh* likewise, son to the emperor *Lewis* of *Barbaria*.

YOUNG *Albert*, competitor for the crown of *Sweden*, did not long survive his grandfather; and his death left *Olaus* in the unrivalled possession of the *Danish* crown. *Olaus* himself dying soon after, the dispute lay between *Margaret*, the late regent, (for her son died after he came of age) who now claimed in her own right, and her elder sister *Ingeburga*, wife to *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh*. *Margaret*, during her regency, had shewn great capacity for government; and the *Danes* had such an aversion to the *Swedes*, to whose king *Henry* was brother, that she was raised to the throne, to which she soon after added that of *Norway*, which had been sometime vacant by the death of her husband *Haquin*. A female ruling two northern crowns was a prodigy that had never been known before, and her new subjects became uneasy under *Margaret's* government; especially, considering the calamities to which both crowns might be subject in case of her death without issue. She loved power too well to accept of a husband; but, being pressed to name her successor, she referred the nomination to the states, who pitched upon prince *Eric*, son of *Wratislaus*, duke of *Pomerania*, by *Mary* the daughter of *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh*, and *Ingeburga*; who was accordingly accepted of as her successor. About the same time, *Margaret* added the title of queen of *Sweden* to that of *Denmark* and *Norway*, which exasperated *Albert*, king of *Sweden* to the last degree; so that *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh* and he agreed upon a joint war against *Margaret*; who was backed by the duke of *Pomerania*, father to the young prince, whom she had adopted for her successor, and who had been sent into *Denmark* for his education. After many personal, and some of them coarse and indecent, altercations, between *Margaret* and the *Mecklenburgh* princes, both parties took the field. *Mecklenburgh* was, at that time, in a flourishing condition, and its ducal family, when united, formed a power next to that of the emperor, and superior to that of any *German* prince. The *Swedes*, on the other hand, were divided; many of them had gone over to *Margaret*, and had actually elected her their queen, which had given her the pretext for assuming that title, while others opposed

*Albert*

*Albert* in all his domestic measures. Notwithstanding this, he was at the head of an army, and was in possession of most of the strong holds in the kingdom; but two of them, *Obernstein* and *Oreslein*, were surrendered to *Margaret*, after she had taken upon herself the title of queen, and after the nobles of her party had come to a formal resolution to dethrone *Albert*, and to transfer their allegiance to her.

*ALBERT* finding the defection against him encreasing *Difficulties* every day, and that the senate had actually recognized the *and dis-* right of *Margaret*, collected all his strength, and a general *treffes of* battle was fought on a plain near *Falkoping*, which proved de- *Albert.* cisive in favour of *Margaret*. *Albert*, and his son *Eric*, were taken prisoners, as was the prince of *Holstein*, and many of the first noblemen of *Sweden*. As the battle had been obstinately fought, many thousands of the *Swedes* were killed, and among them nineteen of their general officers. The king, and his son, were put under a strict guard, and *Albert's* misfortunes effaced the memory of his miscarriages; for the *Swedes* refused to crown *Margaret* during their king's imprisonment. It is allowed on all hands, that had the *Swedes* discharged their duty as well as the *Brandenburghers*, and other *Germans* did, in the late battle, *Albert* must have been victorious. Many reproaches passed between them on that account; for the *Swedes* threw upon the *Germans* all the blame of their king's misfortune, and even such of them as refused to recognize *Margaret's* authority, refused to join in any attempt to deliver *Albert*.

By this time, *Magnus* and *Henry*, the sons of old duke *Revolution* *Albert*, were both dead, and the succession to the duchy of *in Meck-* *Mecklenburgh* devolved upon *John*, the son of *Magnus*. This *lenburgh.* prince supported the king his uncle's, cause with great firmness, and for that purpose borrowed a large sum from the grand master of the Teutonic order, upon a mortgage of some of his estates. The cities of *Rostock* and *Wismar*, with some other hanse-towns, joined him, and an armament both by sea and land, under the command of duke *John*, was immediately fitted out, and proceeded towards *Stockholm*. That city was now besieged by queen *Margaret*, and contained a strong garrison of *Germans*, who were all of them faithfully attached to their imprisoned king, for which reason they exercised the greatest cruelties upon the *Swedish* inhabitants, whom they accused of endeavouring to give up the city to *Margaret*. Duke *John*, before he sailed, had published a manifesto at *Wismar* and *Rostock*, containing a kind of a general letter of marque and reprisals, indemnifying the commanders of all vessels, and their crews, who should take any  
ships

*Duke John* ships belonging to *Sweden*, *Norway*, or *Denmark*. In his *relieves* voyage to *Stockholm*, he was overtaken by a tempest, which *Stock-* dissipated his fleet for some time, but having collected it, he *holm.* proceeded on his voyage; and landing at *Stockholm*, he found the siege still continued, and the prudence of the governor of the castle, and some moderate senators, alone prevented the garrison and townsmen from cutting one another's throats. *Duke Albert* immediately landed his forces, and, after driving the besiegers from their posts, he reinforced the city with all kinds of provision and ammunition. He then re-embarked his troops, and, in a short time, all the coasts of *Sweden* were filled with flames, slaughter, and rapine. The *Mecklenburghers*, and their allies, made descents wherever they found an opportunity; but the chief calamities of the *Swedes* arose from the pirates, who, by *John's* manifesto, had been authorized to commit the like hostilities, without being obliged to any service in return, but that of supplying the garrison of *Stockholm* when in want of provisions. At one place, duke *John's* troops were attacked by the exasperated peasants, who, having no leader to head them, were soon cut in pieces. It must be confessed, that those ravages were so far from serving the cause of the imprisoned king that they ruined it. The pirates, who assumed to themselves the name of purveyors, had no regard but to their own plunder, and the sufferings of the *Swedes* inspired them with horror at the *Germans*, which extended to the person of their late king.

\* In the year 1394, matters continued in this ruinous situation in *Sweden*, where the cause of *Albert* was supported only by the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, but so powerfully, that *Margaret*, though her right had been recognized by all orders among the *Swedes*, was forced to listen to terms of an accommodation. The first conference was held at *Helsingburgh*, *A truce* but that proved ineffectual, by the governor of *Stralsund* *concluded,* being killed in a skirmish between the *Danes* and the *Mecklenburghers*. Soon after, queen *Margaret*, and duke *John*, had a personal interview at *Labholm*. Here it was agreed, that *Albert*, and his son, should be restored to their liberty; that they should, within three years, renounce all their pretensions to the crown of *Sweden*, or return to their prison; that in case of non-performance, the hanse-towns should be bound to pay to *Margaret*, the sum of 60,000 marks; that a truce, among all parties, should take place during the said three years; but that king *Albert*, with the consent of queen *Margaret*, should give up, during that time, *Stockholm* to the hanse-towns, as a security for the sum for which they were engaged. Besides this general treaty, one of a more private nature



nature was transacted between duke *John*, and queen *Margaret*, who demanded a considerable ransom for *Albert*, which the exhausted state of *Mecklenburgh* rendering it extremely inconvenient for the duke to pay, was generously raised by the ladies, who for that purpose sold their jewels and paraphernalia. This public spirit was rewarded by a law, which passed, rendering the daughters of the *Mecklenburgh* nobility capable to succeed to the estates held in fee of the duke.

THE vast affection which duke *John* shewed for his uncle, *and king* and the prodigious efforts he made for his deliverance, are the *Albert's* more extraordinary, as by the family modes of succession in *turns to* *Mecklenburgh*, the uncle generally reigned jointly with the *Mecklenburgh* nephew, which he accordingly did upon his return to *Mecklenburgh*. The glory of having been a king for twenty-three years, had got such possession of his spirit, that it could not be effaced by all the miseries and inquietudes he had suffered during that period, so that he was but little disposed to fulfil the intention of the late treaty. Instead of that, he redeemed the city of *Stockholm* from the hanse-towns, by paying them the 60,000 marks for which they stood engaged; and he even redeemed from the Teutonic order, the island of *Gothland*, which had been mortgaged to them by his uncle; so that *Margaret*, though she had been formally recognized, and crowned, and had procured the succession to be settled in the person of *Eric*, and his descendants, could not as yet be said to be the sole queen of *Sweden*. The death of prince *Eric*, king *Albert's* son, put an end to all her disquietudes; for that event rendered *Albert* so unambitious, that he consented to the evacuation, not only of *Stockholm*, but of several fortresses he still held in *Sweden*; and sent to *Margaret* a formal renunciation of that crown. He then returned to the cares of domestic government, and, aged as he was, he married *Helen*, daughter of *Magnus Torquatus*, duke of *Brunswick*.

THOUGH the late immense expence of the war with *Margaret* had exhausted *Mecklenburgh*, yet that duchy was the *Affairs of that duchy*. better enabled to bear them, through the wise and vigorous measures which had been taken by duke *Henry*, *Albert's* brother, during his administration. This prince had found the duchy infested by banditti, who were often encouraged and protected by the nobility, to whom, when convicted, he shewed as little favour as to the meanest peasant, for they were immediately executed; by which severity he is distinguished in history by the epithet of *suspensor*, or *the banger*. Having thus left to his brother and nephew the duchy, in a state of peace and security, it soon recovered the wounds of war,

war; but the abdication of *Albert* now introduced a revolution in the politics of the *Mecklenburgh* family. The provision which that prince had made for the independency of *Mecklenburgh* upon the crown of *Denmark*, instead of being salutary, was judged to be dangerous, now they had no ally in the north. It was easy for them to foresee, that either the emperor, or *Margaret*, would renew their claims of superiority over *Mecklenburgh*; but they preferred that of the latter to the former; and in the year 1411, both duke *John*, and duke *Ulric* of *Stargard*, did homage to *Margaret*, and to *Eric* their cousin, who was her associate, and was to be her successor in her three kingdoms, and engaged not only to assist them in all their wars, but to enter into no treaty with their enemies.

*Death of  
Albert,  
king of  
Sweden.*

NEXT year being 1412, died *Albert* king of *Sweden*, and duke of *Mecklenburgh*. By his wife *Ricarda*, daughter to the count of *Schwerin*, he had a son and a daughter, *Eric*, whom we have already mentioned to have died before him, and *Ricarda*, wife to *John*, duke of *Moravia*, the emperor *Sigismund*'s brother. He had issue by his second wife *Helen*, *Albert*, who was fifteen years of age when his father died, and became partner in the government with duke *John*. We are told, however, that this method of co-regency was found to be so very inconvenient, and so detrimental to the state, that a new rule of succession was settled, by which the elder branch was absolutely to preside in all affairs of government, while the younger was to act as his substitute, or first minister. We know of no wars in which *Mecklenburgh*, or its dukes, were involved till the death of queen *Margaret*, when her successor, *Eric*, refused to ratify an award that had been pronounced by *Ulric*, duke of *Stargard*, between queen *Margaret*, and the duke of *Brunswic*, *Holstein*, and *Sleswick*. *Eric* pretended that the interests of his crown were not to be subjected to any arbitration, and that the matter must be decided before a general assembly of the states; and he required the duke of *Mecklenburgh* to attend while the process was depending. The dukes, concerned on the other side, refused to submit to a tribunal, composed of judges who were subjects to the prince with whom they were contending; and they prepared to make good their claims by force of arms. They were joined by *John*, duke of *Mecklenburgh*, who, probably, thought that *Eric* had over-strained his authority, and that the case of the dukes might be sometime or other his own. The war was, for a while, carried on with great animosity, but with no decisive advantage on either side. At last, duke *John*, having retired to *Sleswick*, he

he was there besieged by *Eric*, and the place being untenable, the duke, on the 17th of *July*, 1417, was obliged to agree to a capitulation, by which he engaged never again to carry arms against the crown of *Denmark*. This capitulation, by which *John* was suffered to return to his dominions, greatly weakened the common cause in which he engaged; but the truth is, he, and the princes of his family began now to think that it was time to give repose to their dominions. As the first-fruits of their leisure, they founded and endowed the university of *Rostock*, in which they were assisted by the townsmen in 1419, privileged by a bull from pope *Martin V.* which was afterwards confirmed by the emperor *Ferdinand I.* This was a wise and useful institution, as it tended to take off from the *Mecklenburghers* that ferocity of manners to which they were as yet but too much addicted, and which led them to despise the arts of peace, to the infinite detriment of their country. This, and other public-spirited works, raised the reputation of the two dukes to the highest pitch in the north; and, in the disputes which then raged between the crown of *Denmark*, and the princes of *Holstein*, they were generally chosen umpires; but their differences were of such a nature as not to be reconcileable by any mediation. In 1423, those two princes died. *Albert* had no issue by his wife *Margaret*, who was daughter to *Frederic*, elector of *Brandenburgh*. *John* was married first to *Judith*, daughter of the count of *Hoya*; and his second wife was *Catherine*, daughter to *Eric*, duke of *Saxe Lawenburgh*. He had two sons, *John III.* and *Henry the Fat*, who succeeded him.

As to the other branches of the *Mecklenburgh* family, particular mention is made, at this time, of *Ulric I.* duke of *Mecklenburgh-Stargard*, and his son *Henry*, who was in a confederacy with *Christopher III.* king of *Denmark*, for reducing *Lubec*, in which they failed. The perpetual wars that were now carrying on between *Denmark* and *Sweden*, gave a breathing-time to the states of *Mecklenburgh*, which their princes wisely improved to the best purposes, the advancement of commerce, literature, and manufactures in their dominions. For some years, this desirable situation rendered prince and subject equally happy, and each repaid the benefit of reciprocal obedience and protection he received from the other. In 1443, died, without issue, *John III.* he had been married to *Anne*, daughter to *Casimir*, duke of *Pomerania Stettin*, and by his death, his brother *Henry the Fat*, became sole duke of *Mecklenburgh*, and prince of *Wenden*, the male line of which principality had been extinct in 1436; for the male issue

issue of *Nicholas*, already mentioned, failed in *William*, whose daughter was married to *Ulric*, the second duke of *Stargard*, great-grandson to *John I.* of that duchy; and upon *Eric's* death, without issue, his succession devolved as aforesaid upon *Henry the Fat*; who, by this accession, became master of a powerful territory, which he ruled in great tranquillity till the time of his death, which happened in 1477. He was married to *Dorothy*, daughter to *Frederic I.* elector of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had four sons; *Albert*, who succeeded him, but died in the same year without issue; *John*, who died in his father's life-time; *Magnus*, who succeeded *Albert*; and *Balthazar*, bishop of *Schwerin*; and two daughters, *Anne*, who died without issue, and *Elizabeth*, abbess of *Ribnitz*.

Uncertainty of their succession.

NOTWITHSTANDING all the pains which the princes of the house of *Burewin* had taken to settle their succession in the elder branch of their family, it never could be effected; for the second brother claimed the same title, and exercised an almost co-ordinate power with the elder. *Balthazar*, wearied of an ecclesiastical life, married *Margaret*, daughter to *Eric*, duke of *Pomerania*; and, assuming the title of duke of *Mecklenburgh*, he entered upon the exercise of the government. The hanse-towns were then very powerful, and that of *Rostock* held itself to be equal to many sovereign princes, for which it had been often chastised by the emperor and the pope; so that in the year 1437, having fallen under the ban of the empire<sup>a</sup>, its academy was removed to *Gräsfvalde*, from whence the professors returned in 1443. Duke *Magnus*, of *Mecklenburgh*, like his immediate predecessors, cultivated the arts of peace, and gave orders for erecting the church of *St. James*, in *Rostock*, into a cathedral. In this *Defence of* he was vigorously opposed by the haughty *Rostockers*; but *Rostock.* *Magnus*, being determined to assert his rights of sovereignty, proceeded in his design, and actually established a chapter in the church. The citizens, upon this, took arms, expelled the canons, killed the provost, and imprisoned the dean. This happened about the year 1487, when the university was removed to *Lubec*. The duke endeavoured to reduce the rebels by besieging their city; but his efforts, though very vigorous, proved ineffectual; and, at last, both parties being tired of the war, it was agreed, that the citizens should indemnify the duke for his expences, that the exiles and prisoners should be re-instated and restored, and that the *Rostockers* should be confirmed in all their antient privileges.

<sup>a</sup> BUSCHING'S Geography, Vol. VI. p. 385.

THE *Lubeckers*, about this time, shewed a like spirit with *Congress* those of *Rostock*, by the opposition they made to their sovereign *John*, king of *Denmark*. That prince was so deeply engaged in a war with *Sweden*, that he could spare but few troops to employ against the rebels; and therefore he was obliged to have recourse to the method of negotiation; in which he employed the pope's legate, with duke *Magnus*, to whom was afterwards added prince *Frederic*, his *Danish* majesty's brother. A congress was accordingly held at *Lubec*, but through the obstinacy of the *Lubeckers*, who aimed at nothing less than absolute independency upon the *Danish* crown, the mediation proved fruitless; and soon after, duke *Magnus* of *Mecklenburgh* died. He was a wise and a worthy prince, and was married to *Sophia*, daughter to *Eric*, duke of *Pomerania*, who had been betrothed to his elder brother. By her he had three sons and four daughters. The sons were, *Eric*, *Henry*, and *Albert the Handsome*, who reigned co-ordinately. The daughters were, *Sophia*, the wife of *John*, elector of *Saxony*; *Dorothy*, who was abbess of *Ribnitz*; *Anne*, who married the landgrave of *Hesse*, as did the fourth daughter *Catharina*, the duke of *Saxony*. *Eric*, the eldest son, had his education in some of the chief universities in *Europe*, and had so great a turn for learning, that he intermeddled but little in affairs of government, and died about five years after his father. His brother *Henry* was so excellent a prince, that he obtained from his contemporaries the glorious epithets of "the Peaceful," and "the Father of his People." Among the first cares of his government was to check the insolence of the *Lubeckers*, which was now become insupportable. They extended their fishery, of which they made vast profits, as far as *Dessau*, a town belonging to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*; and some of their fishermen being one day insulted by three drunken peasants, a quarrel ensued, in which two of the peasants were made prisoners, while the third escaped, and alarmed the country for the safety of their companions, and particularly the owner of the estate where they lived. A party, under arms, was immediately assembled, who posted themselves at the bridge of *Dessau*, that they might intercept the fishermen in their return. While they waited there the two peasants came on shore, and reported, that far from being mal-treated, they had been most jovially entertained by the *Lubeckers*; upon which the party dispersed. The report of this adventure reaching *Lubec*, a troop of horse was immediately detached against the supposed party, whom the *Lubeckers* imagined to have assembled to disturb their fishing; but though the troop

Death of  
the duke of  
Mecklen-  
burg.

Dispute  
between  
the Meck-  
lenburgh-  
ers and Lu-  
beckers.

found all quiet, they had the insolence to commit some trespasses on the estates of the *Mecklenburghers*. A scuffle naturally ensued, in which one of the troopers was killed, and the others, being wounded, fled back to *Lubeck*. Upon this, the *Lubeckers*, almost to a man, rose in arms, and plundered, wasted, or burnt, the *Mecklenburgh* estates; so that in one incursion, besides noblemen's houses, it was computed that thirty villages were destroyed. The dukes made reprisals, and not only ravaged the lands of the *Lubeckers*, but laid siege to *Mölen*, which, however, they were not able to carry. In the mean while, those republicans compromised their affairs with *Denmark*, by which, being at liberty to employ all their force against *Mecklenburgh*, the war was carried on with the utmost fury, but without either party having any apparent advantage. At last, both being tired of mutual ravages, they made peace by the interposition of the neighbouring princes, and both sat down with their own losses.

*Dawning  
of the re-  
formation  
in Ger-  
many.*

By this time, the Reformation was dawning in *Germany*, and duke *Henry*, having examined into *Luther's* principles, began to relish them; but proceeded on a plan of conduct very different from that of many other princes who favoured the new doctrines. He was so far from considering it in a political, or party-light, that he refused to enter into the league of *Smalkald*; nor did he so much as encourage any of his subjects to follow his example, by embracing the principles of the Reformation. Rational, religious, enquiry was all that he recommended or enjoined, and he shewed the same countenance to all his subjects, whether Roman Catholic or Protestant, if he was convinced that their principles were conscientious. In short, he was, as far as he could, of no religion but that of *Christ*, to whose precepts and practice he conformed himself, without regard to human authority, farther than as he thought it was confirmed by the Gospel.

*Wars of  
Albert  
duke of  
Mecklen-  
burgh.*

His brother, the other duke of *Mecklenburgh*, *Albert the Handsome*, was far from *Henry's* amiable character. Upon the expulsion of *Christiern*, king of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, for his tyranny, *Albert* entered into intrigues with the *Lubeckers* for restoring him to his throne. The reader, in the history of *Denmark*, will find a detail of these proceedings. The dispute, at this time, lay between the deposed *Christiern II.* and *Christiern III.* son to his uncle *Frederic*, who had succeeded him in the throne. *Christiern III.* was disagreeable to the Roman Catholic party among the *Danes*; and though he had been recognized by the province of *Jutland*, yet the *Lubeckers* had been so active for the deposed king, that he was in

in possession of *Scania*, and many important places of *Germany*. In the mean while, a war broke out between the *Lubeckers* and the *Holfsteiners*; upon which the former applied to the abbot of *Mecklenburgh* for his mediation, wherein he was perfectly successful; a peace being restored between those two people, upon condition that neither should assist the enemies of the other. This gave a new turn to the war, the complexion of which was now entirely altered. *Christiern III.* marched into *North Jutland*, where he chastised some piratical *Lubeckers*, while duke *Albert* of *Mecklenburgh* raised an army, which he led into *Denmark*, and joined with that of the count of *Oldenburgh*, who had espoused the interest of *Christiern II.* *Christiern III.* had seized the isle of *Fionia*, and the *Lubeckers* gave duke *Albert* the command of a fleet which was intended for the relief of *Christiern II.* but, in the mean time, to block up *Christiern III.* in *Fionia*. In this expedition, duke *Albert* commanded the sea-forces, as the count of *Oldenburgh* did the land troops. *Christiern III.* was then besieging the town of *Assen*, and the confederates sent orders to the garrison to make a brisk sally upon his camp, while they attacked his entrenchments. *Christiern* was aware of their design, and far from declining an engagement, he burnt his tents, and marched out against his enemies, whom he attacked and entirely defeated. This did not discourage duke *Albert* and the count of *Oldenburgh*; for though they had lost about half their army in the late engagement, they encouraged their party to make a fresh attempt, and duke *Albert* proceeded with the *Lubeck* fleet, and some reinforcements he had received, to *Copenhagen*, where they were soon after besieged by a more powerful fleet under *Christiern III.* The city was defended with great obstinacy, and held out till their provisions were exhausted, and they were reduced to extremity. At last, they were obliged to capitulate, and more to their advantage than they could well have expected, after so ill-conducted an expedition. *Christiern III.* and his friends were not only tired of the siege, but he began to have suspicion of his allies the *Swedes*. The terms he granted to duke *Albert* are said to have been *Obliged to* honourable, though others say, that *Christiern* obliged him *submit to* to ask pardon for his behaviour, but that his humiliation was *the king of* very slight. It is certain, that *Albert's* duchess, during the *Denmark*, siege of *Copenhagen*, had been delivered of a child in that city, and that the capitulation was no sooner concluded, than *Christiern* presented her with all kinds of refreshments; while he expressed so much resentment for the wicked behaviour of the count of *Oldenburgh*, that he declared, had it not been

for the blood-relation between them, he would have taken off his head.

*His marriages and death.* THIS duke *Albert* was married, first, to *Anne*, daughter of *Joachim I.* elector of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had six sons and a daughter. The sons were, *John-Albert*, *Ulric*, who was afterwards bishop of *Schwerin*, *George*, *Christopher*, bishop of *Ratzeburgh*, *Charles*, who succeeded to that bishopric, and *Lewis*, the sixth son, who was born during the siege of *Copenhagen*, died in his cradle. *Albert's* only daughter *Anne*, was the wife of *Gottard*, duke of *Courland*, and *Albert* himself died in 1547. *Henry the Peaceable*, his elder brother, was first married to *Ursula*, daughter of *John*, elector of *Brandenburgh*, by whom he had a son, *Magnus*, who was bishop of *Schwerin*, and having embraced the Lutheran religion, he married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Frederic* the First, king of *Denmark*; but he died without issue two years before the death of his father *Henry*. The latter had likewise two daughters by his first marriage; the eldest, *Sophia*, was married to *Ernest* of *Zell*, duke of *Lunenburgh*; the second, *Ursula*, was abbess of *Ribnitz*. *Henry*, for his second wife, had *Eleanor*, daughter to *Philip*, elector palatine, and he had a son and two daughters. The son's name was *Philip*; but as he grew up, his understanding appeared to be so defective, that he was universally adjudged to be unfit for government. The daughters, by the same marriage, were *Margaret*, who was married to *Henry*, duke of *Munsterburgh*, as the other daughter was to *Frederic III.* duke of *Leignitz*. *Henry the Pacific* had a third wife, who was *Ursula*, daughter of *Magnus II.* duke of *Saxe Lawenburgh*; but by her he had no children. As to *Henry the Pacific* himself, he died in 1552, after an administration that had proved extremely beneficial to his subjects.

*Albert and Ulric, dukes of Mecklenburgh.* THROUGH the weakness of *Henry's* son *Philip*, we look upon his male issue to have been then extinct, and the administration of *Mecklenburgh* consequently devolved upon *John-Albert*, the eldest son of *Albert the Handsome*, and *Ulric* bishop of *Schwerin*. Those princes possessed the virtues of their family, by the attention they paid to all literary institutions, particularly the university of *Rostock*; the revenues of which had been greatly abused, but were by them converted into comfortable provisions for men of learning and merit. Both of them professed the Lutheran religion, which, in their time, becoming that of their dominions, they were more zealous than their uncle had been in abolishing idolatry, and other abuses of the *Romish* church. They deserved equally well of their country in their legislative capacity,



by composing a code of excellent laws ; and their people must have been happy to the last degree under their administration, had not ambition intervened.

ULRIC had married the widow of *Magnus*, bishop of *Ulric of Schwerin*, daughter, as we have already seen, to *Frederic*, king *sociated in of Denmark*. As *John-Albert* pretended, from family-con-<sup>the go-</sup>ventions, to confine *Ulric* to the government and revenues of <sup>vernment,</sup> his bishopric of *Schwerin* ; the latter being now the husband of a king's daughter, found them to be too scanty for her support, and demanded of his brother a proportionable share of the *Wenden*, and other, territories, which had fallen into their house since those conventions had been made, and therefore, as he alledged, were not included in them. *John* rejected this demand with some disdain, and *Ulric*, being encouraged by certain neighbouring princes, had recourse to arms to make them good, and actually invaded *John's* part of the *Mecklenburgh* dominions. *Ulric's* chief ally was the duke of *Brunswic*, by whose assistance he took *Boitzenburgh*, one of the strongest places of *John's* dominions, without his being able to relieve it. *John* had no recourse but to the assistance of his nobles, which he demanded in terms of their holdings, but they declined all concern in a quarrel between their two princes. This conduct is a plain evidence, either that the *Mecklenburgh* nobility thought *Ulric's* claim to be just, or that they expected to reap some advantage by the ducal power not being invested in one person. Duke *John* was obliged to submit to the necessity of the juncture, and to admit his subjects to be umpires between him and his brother. Their award was, that *Ulric* should have a moiety in the government of all the family territories that had fallen to the house since the conclusion of the above-mentioned conventions ; and that, besides his enjoying the undivided revenues of the bishopric of *Schwerin*, he should have half the ready money left by the uncle. As to the duke of *Brunswic*, the *Rostockers*, who undoubtedly thought themselves to be benefited by this convention, advanced to him 16,000 crowns for the payment of the auxiliaries he had lent to *Ulric*.

THIS compromise seems to have exasperated *John-Albert* *John's un-* so much, that he was resolved to make the *Rostockers* sensi-<sup>successful</sup> ble of his resentment. The people and the magistrates of that city had been long at variance, and they accepted of *John-Albert's* mediation between them. He thought it a hardship to be a mediator where he ought to be a sovereign, and resolved to chastise both parties. The people had directed, upon the strength of certain Imperial constitutions, a court of sixty tribunes, chosen out of their own number, to pro-

test them against the encroachments of their magistrates. Upon the day of hearing, the people produced those writings, but *John* committed them to the flames, which threw them into the utmost despondency, and proportionally increased the exultations of the magistracy; but both were disappointed. *John-Albert*, who came attended with a body of troops to give weight to his mediation, demanded not only that the keys of the city should be delivered up to him, but that the city itself should pay him above 73,000 crowns, to indemnify him for the expences they occasioned to him on several occasions. The *Rostockers* paid the greatest part of the money; but the duke being determined to bridle them for the future, beat down some of their walls, and began to erect a citadel to over-awe the place: in this attempt, he was greatly assisted by the king of *Denmark*, who likewise had his reasons for being displeased with the *Rostockers*; but the latter, being strongly supported by the other hanse-towns, *John-Albert* was obliged to accept of an ineffectual submission on their part, by which they asked pardon for their conduct, while he himself was forced to demolish the citadel he had begun to erect.

His death,  
and family.

*JOHN-Albert* married *Sophia*, the daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Prussia*, by whom he had three sons; *John IV.* his eldest, who succeeded him; *Albert*, who died in his cradle; and *Sigismond-Augustus*, who was married to a daughter of the duke of *Pomerania*, but died in his father's life-time, without issue. As to *John-Albert* himself, he died in the year 1576. *Ulric*, his brother and coadjutor in the government, had a daughter, *Sophia*, who was married to *Frederic*, king of *Denmark*, who, in the year 1577, paid a visit to his father-in-law on the following occasion. A great number of differences had long subsisted between the crown of *Denmark* and the city of *Hamburgh*; and as the dukes of *Mecklenburgh* had, immemorably, been the umpires of the north, both parties, who had suffered considerably by their quarrels, applied to duke *Ulric* to compose their differences, which he accordingly did, and likewise those between the same city and the duke of *Holstein*. But while duke *Ulric* was thus labouring for the peace and prosperity of other states, as well as his own, his tranquillity was interrupted by a fresh quarrel he had with the hanse-towns, on account of the *Rostockers*, who even contumeliously sought every opportunity to assert their independency upon him. The duke complained of their behaviour to the king, his son-in-law, who immediately equipped a fleet, which seized upon all the ships of the *Rostockers*, and blocked up the mouth of the river *War-*

now,

now, while duke *Ulric* advanced against them with an army by land. The king, on this occasion, gave a proof how well he understood his own dignity, and that of his father-in-law; for instead of publishing any manifesto, or making any proposals to the *Rostockers*, he gave them to understand, that he would continue to deny them all commerce with his *The Rof-* dominions, and order his ships to destroy their trade, till tockers they brought him a certificate of their good behaviour, under *chastised.* the hand of duke *Ulric*. The *Rostockers* were obliged to comply, and having, on promise of future amendment, obtained the certificate in question, the blockade of their city was raised, and their commerce returned to its former channels. In 1588, his *Danish* majesty, with whom his son-in-law duke *Ulric* had always lived in the most affectionate friendship, died, and was attended to his grave by the duke; who, next year, was present at the marriage of *James VI.* king of *Scotland*, and afterwards of *Great Britain*, with his grand-daughter, *Anne* of *Denmark*; and likewise at the nuptials of her sister *Elizabeth* with the duke of *Wolfenbuttel*.

ALL this time, *John IV.* of *Mecklenburgh*, the son of *John IV.* *John-Albert*, must be supposed to be co-ordinate with his un- *of Meck-* cle in the government; but he had, in fact, no share in it, *lenburgh,* being of so melancholy a cast of mind, joined to so bad a *kills him-* state of health, that in 1592, in the 34th year of his age, *self.* he put an end to his own life. He had been married to *Sophia*, the daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Holstein*; and *Charles* his brother, bishop of *Ratzeburg*, became guardian to his two infant sons, *Adolphus-Frederic*, and *John-Albert II.* He likewise left a daughter, *Anne-Sophia*, who became a nun. The latter part of *Ulric's* administration was tranquil and peaceable; and he died in the bosom of that repose which he loved, at the uncommon age of seventy-five; by which he acquired the epithet of the *German Nestor*. He was twice married, first to *Elizabeth*, daughter to the king of *Denmark*, and widow to his cousin, as we have already observed; and secondly, to *Anne*, daughter to *Philip*, duke of *Pomerania*; but he left no issue except *Sophia*, who was married to the king of *Denmark*.

DUKE *Ulric* thus dying without male issue, the government of *Mecklenburgh* devolved upon his brother *John-Albert's* grandsons, *Adolphus-Frederic*, and *John Albert II.* the eldest having for his portion the duchy of *Schwerin*, and the other that of *Gustrow*. *John Albert*, as soon as he came of age, married his cousin *Margaret-Elizabeth*, daughter to the bishop of *Ratzeburg*; but, upon her death, in 1616, he married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Maurice*, landgrave of *Hesse*.

*Adolphus II. and John-Albert, dukes of Mecklenburgh,*

*Adolphus-Frederic*, whom we are to call the duke of *Mecklenburgh Schwerin*, in 1622, married *Anna Maria*, the daughter of *Enno*, prince of *East-Friesland*. Here it is necessary, for the sake of connection, to resume part of the history of *Enrope*, so far as religion is concerned in it.

enter into a confederacy with the king of Denmark. IT was provided by the peace of *Augsburgh*, in 1555, that a toleration should be granted to the Protestants, who were to retain all the church-lands they were in possession of; and this provision kept *Germany* peaceable for several years after; but some fresh broils happening, two new parties were formed; one, of the Protestant princes, under the term of the Evangelical Union, and the other of the Roman Catholic powers, under that of the Catholic League. The protestants of *Bohemia* had offered their crown to the elector-palatine, who was married to the daughter of *James I.* of *Great Britain*, whose grandmother, as we have seen, was a princess of the house of *Mecklenburgh*. *Frederic*, the count palatine, was rash enough to accept the proffered royalty, not doubting of being effectually supported by his father-in-law and the protestant interest in *Germany*. How he was disappointed in both, may be seen in former parts of this history. It is sufficient here to say, that he was utterly defeated at *Weissenburgh* by the Imperialists, and forced to fly towards *Silesia*; and afterwards, with all his adherents, he was put to the ban of the empire. As to his dominions, they were partitioned out by the emperor to the two princes of the empire who had been the most instrumental in his defeat, the duke of *Bavaria*, and the elector of *Saxony*. From *Silesia* the elector-palatine was obliged to fly to *Denmark*, where he met with a most affectionate reception from king *Christiern IV.* and a confederacy was entered into by the protestant princes, the duke of *Mecklenburgh* among others, to restore him to his electoral dominions. Before they proceeded to force, his *Danish* majesty, in imitation of what king *James* had done, tried the success of negotiation, and sent a most magnificent embassy to *Vienna*, remonstrating upon the irregularity of having put the elector-palatine to the ban of the empire, and exhorting the emperor to restore him to his dominions. This application proving ineffectual, though the elector-palatine offered to make all the submission and satisfaction that could reasonably be required of him, the confederate powers resolved to take the field, and *Christiern* was chosen for their captain-general. He had some pretence for taking upon him this title, because he was one of the principal members of the circle of *Lower-Saxony*, which was, at this time, desolated by the Imperial forces under count *Tilly*.

ABOUT

ABOUT this time, *Adolphus Frederic* of *Mecklenburgh*, Operations married for his second wife *Mary-Catharine*, daughter of *Er- of the* est, duke of *Brunswic*; and his brother *John-Albert* took war. or his third wife *Leonora-Mary*, daughter to *Christiern*, prince of *Anhalt-Dernburgh*. It is, therefore, reasonable to suppose, hat the two dukes had but little time to spare for warlike perations; nor do we in fact perceive, that they were ery active during the first year of the confederacy. The ruth is, his *Danish* majesty was sensible that his troops were aw, and by no means to be compared to those under *Tilly*, who was one of the most accomplished generals in *Europe*; and therefore the first campaign passed without much action. The king industriously avoided coming to a battle, and employed himself and his officers in disciplining his soldiers, a practice, which, though well intended, and judicious in itself, served to intimidate and dispirit them. In the year 1626, the king of *Denmark*; having divided his army into three parts, headed one division himself, and penetrated into the bishopric of *Hildersheim*. The duke of *Saxe-Weymar* acted in *Westphalia* at the head of the second division; and the third passed the *Elbe*, under count *Mansfeld*, in his march to *Silesia*. It had been resolved by the princes of the confederacy, that the duke should be joined by the contingency of the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, consisting of 9000 men, who had been actually raised and were ready for that purpose; but *Mansfeld* being himself a soldier of fortune, gave but little attention to the discipline of his troops on their march, for wherever they came, they equally plundered friends as enemies. In short, the open country, and all the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, was threatened to be filled by their rapines. This altered the plan of the two dukes. Instead of joining the count with their 9000 men, they employed them in strengthening the garrisons of their fortified places, into which they ordered their subjects of the open country to retire with their effects; but, at the same time, they gave orders, that the count's army should be plentifully supplied with forage and provisions. Those wise dispositions, though they prevented the duchy from being plundered, weakened the army of the count, which chiefly consisted of Low-country troops, who had little affection for the *Germans*; and he was defeated by *Wallenstein*, at the bridge of *Dessau*. The count, after his defeat, retired into *Brandenburgh*, where he was joined by the army of *Mecklenburgh*, and some troops sent him by the king of *Denmark*; who, after various operations, was entirely defeated by count *Tilly*, and all that the king

king could do, was to repass the *Elbe* with some of his cavalry.

NOTWITHSTANDING this misfortune, the death of *Manfeld*, and the dissipation of his army, *Christiern* was so active, that he raised a new army consisting of 36000 men, among whom was a large body of *Mecklenburghers*. Before the king took the field, he published orders, that no officer or soldier should, on pain of death, and confiscation of goods, molest the peasants or farmers, or any one concerned in agriculture; a precaution the more necessary, on account of the misfortunes that had befallen the common cause from neglecting it. He then marched to the relief of *Menburgh*, which had been long besieged by *Tilly*, and had the good fortune not only to oblige that general to raise the siege; but to do considerable execution upon his army in their retreat. But to counterbalance this advantage, the Imperialists, under the count of *Fruštenburgh*, much about the same time, made themselves masters of *Northheim*, after a most obstinate resistance.

The dukes  
of Meck-  
lenburgh  
put to the  
ban of the  
empire,  
and their  
dominions  
granted to  
Wallen-  
stein.

WHILE Germany became thus the theatre of a bloody war, the two dukes of *Mecklenburgh* were put under the ban of the empire, and their dominions given to *Wallenstein*, who immediately assumed the title; and thereby, with the accession of his other estates, he became, under the emperor, the most powerful prince of the empire. Upon his accession to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, he convoked an assembly of the nobles, and affected great moderation, which was the more suspected, as it was well known to be very foreign from his nature. He promised to maintain all the members of the states of *Mecklenburgh* in their rights and privileges, and offered to grant them all the favours they could desire. But, at this time, he was become too powerful for a subject, and appeared abroad with a pomp superior to that of most of the sovereign princes in *Europe*, being attended by a body of 600 horse-guards in rich uniforms. Notwithstanding the grant which had been made to *Wallenstein*, the *Mecklenburghers* made a very noble resistance to the Imperialists; but it proved only fatal to themselves. His *Danish* majesty, though he was sincerely attached to the two dukes, and though his troops were superior in number to those of *Tilly*, could not be prevailed upon to hazard a general action for their relief. Instead of that, he took up strong camps all along the *Elbe*, raised fortifications in convenient places, all which he never failed to abandon to *Tilly*, upon his approach; so that the whole duchy of *Mecklenburgh* came into the quiet possession of *Wallenstein*. As to his *Danish* majesty, he retired  
piece-

piece-meal into *Holstein*, where he endeavoured to shelter himself by laying part of the country under water. Notwithstanding this, *Tilly* and *Wallenstein* having united their forces, took possession of almost all *Holstein*, excepting *Gluckstadt* and *Rensburgh*, and *Christiern* was obliged even to abandon them, after setting fire to the houses, and throwing his artillery into the sea, to prevent its falling into the hands of the Imperialists, who soon after penetrated into *Jutland*, and even threatened the conquest of all *Denmark*.

It was no wonder if this deplorable state of the Protestant interest in *Germany* and the North, cooled the zeal of many of its patrons. The example of the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, who were now obliged to follow the distressed fortunes of his *Danish* majesty, terrified the elector of *Brandenburgh*; and he published an edict, commanding all his subjects to quit the king of *Denmark's* service; and the marquis of *Baden-Dourlach*, another of the confederates, privately made his terms with the emperor. All that his *Danish* majesty could do, was to have recourse to the regency of *Bremen*, and the other hanse towns, requiring them on account of their neighbourhood and antient treaties, as well as for the good of the Protestant cause, to raise troops for the relief of *Mecklenburgh*; but they were so far from complying, that they drove out of their cities all the *English* and other Protestant agents, who concerned themselves in favour of the dukes. In the meanwhile, the states of *Denmark* assembled, and took upon them to write to the emperor in a very pressing manner, that he would give peace to *Denmark*, by ordering a cessation of arms to take effect in *Jutland*, and to appoint a place for treating of peace; promising, that *Christiern* should comply with any reasonable terms to be required of him. *Christiern*, to give the greater force to this proposal, or to break it off entirely, equipped a fleet of forty-seven ships of war, with which he destroyed a squadron of eighteen ships belonging to his enemies, and retook the island of *Femeren*, and some other places. After that, he carried his fleet against *Kiel* in *Holstein*, which he endeavoured to retake, but he failed in the attempt. He then proceeded to *Stade*, which was besieged by the Imperialists, and bravely defended by an *English* garrison under colonel *Morgan*; but the king finding it impracticable to relieve the place, abandoned that enterprize likewise, and *Morgan* was obliged to accept of an honourable capitulation from *Tilly*, who received him without the gates of the town, and openly expressed his admiration of his courage, and that of his garrison, which was conducted to *Bremen*. All this while, negotiations for a general peace were going

*Distresses*  
of *Den-*  
*mark.*

*Negotia-*  
*tions for,*

going forward in different parts of the empire ; but all without effect, through the insincerity of the emperor. At last, the four catholic electors interested themselves so far for the restoration of public tranquillity, that the emperor consented to send ambassadors to *Lubec*, under their mediation ; and the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh* not only sent their own plenipotentiaries thither likewise, but were joined by those of his *Danish* majesty. The truth is, *Christiern* had suffered so much in the war, that he seems to have been secretly determined to sacrifice the interests of the *Mecklenburgh* dukes to the recovery of his own dominions. On the other hand, *Wallenstein*, who had now a decisive influence over the emperor's councils, as well as a command over his armies, was indifferent about the terms of pacification, provided he could secure to himself the possession of *Mecklenburgh* ; so that on whatever quarter the two dukes threw their eyes, their situation was truly deplorable.

and conclusion of  
a peace.

*WALLENSTEIN* was then at *Gustrow* in *Mecklenburgh*, where he received the proposals of the Protestant electors, which tended chiefly to the restitution of the king of *Denmark's* estates, without any particular notice being taken of those of *Mecklenburgh*. The emperor's demands, on the other hand, were thought to be so exorbitant, that the Protestant plenipotentiaries threatened to break up the congress, which occasioned those of the emperor to repair to *Gustrow*, there to consult with *Wallenstein*. That general, in pursuance of the plan he had adopted, favoured the demands of the *Danes*, and drew up such terms as were agreeable to his *Danish* majesty, and to all the other parties ; but such as left him in absolute possession of *Mecklenburgh*. His *Danish* majesty, however, either to save appearances, or out of friendship to the two dukes, or both, published strong manifestoes, and wrote the most pressing addresses to the emperor in their favour ; but *Wallenstein* having represented the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* as being the only barrier between the emperor and the Northern powers, and that by its returning to its former possessors, it would always be a ready inlet for the *Danes* to invade *Germany*, his Imperial majesty rejected all proposals in behalf of the two dukes. At last, the very means that had been made use of for their destruction, operated towards their preservation.

*Gustavus Adolphus* THE famous *Gustavus Adolphus*, then king of *Sweden*, had reasons which are foreign to this history to be dissatisfied with the house of *Austria*, which had now extended its arms over the *Elbe* and to the *Baltic*<sup>b</sup>, and the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*.

<sup>b</sup> See Vol. XXXIII. p. 230.



burgh now laid their distresses before him, imploring his protection and friendship. The king convoked the diet of his kingdom, and in consulting the members upon the expediency of a war with the house of *Austria*, he plainly intimated that he himself was for it, while, at the same time, he most pathetically expatiated upon the misfortunes of the two dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, and the injustice that had been done them. The other cause which operated towards the relief of the two dukes, was the insolence and arrogance of *Wallenstein*, which was as odious to the princes of the empire, as his power and credit appeared dangerous to the emperor. He had even obtained a patent, constituting him admiral of the *Baltic*, after making himself master of *Rostock* and *Wismar*, both which cities had possessed some rights independent of the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, ever since the year 1621<sup>c</sup>. This ridiculous patent was no obscure intimation of *Wallenstein's* ambition, especially as he soon after besieged *Stralsund*; but he was obliged by *Gustavus* to abandon his enterprize. *Gustavus* being now thoroughly determined upon a war with the house of *Austria*, and to comply with the earnest requests of the *German* protestant princes, published a manifesto, in which he declared the restitution of the *Mecklenburgh* princes to be one of the capital reasons for his taking up arms. He had before this time sent ambassadors to the congress at *Lubec*, demanding this restitution in the strongest terms; and it had not only been refused, but his ministers were treated in a most opprobrious manner. The abovementioned manifesto was published in 1630, at the time when the diet of *Ratisbon* was sitting, and the princes of the empire were unanimously preferring complaints against the insolence and power of *Wallenstein*. The emperor, who was of himself sufficiently jealous of his authority, and had many reasons for managing the princes of the empire, at first endeavoured to soothe *Wallenstein* into a compliance with their demands; but finding him intractable, and that the Roman Catholic as well as the Protestant princes were his enemies, publicly required him to renounce the investiture which he had obtained of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*; and *Wallenstein* not complying, he was dismissed from his command in the army.

WE shall not here repeat the progress made by *Gustavus* Invader in *Germany*, farther than as it relates to the history of *Meck-Germany*. *lenburgh*. His first step was to secure to himself possession of *Stetin*, then belonging to the duke of *Pomerania*, with whom

<sup>c</sup> BUSCHING's Geography, Vol. VI. p. 386.

he entered into a treaty ; and then he took *Wolgast*, with some other places, by which he opened to himself a passage into the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*. Nothing could contribute more to the success of the *Swedish* arms, than the part which *Gustavus* acted towards the two dukes. They were pitied by all *Europe* for their sufferings in the cause of the Protestant religion, and their attachment to their kinsman the king of *Denmark* ; and *Gustavus* could not do his cause any service so effectual as to begin his operations in *Germany* with restoring them to his dominions. The two dukes had behaved with a most wonderful prudence. After being put under the ban of the empire, they had retired to *Lubec*, that they might give no offence to the emperor ; they there lived in a private manner, and took no farther concern in public affairs, than by their most humble solicitations that they might be reinstated in their dominions ; nor was it till all other expedients had failed them, that they applied to the king of *Sweden*. The duchy of *Mecklenburgh* being now the theatre of war, the command of the Imperial army there was committed to an *Italian*, *Torquato di Conti*. He had under him one *Quinti Aligheri*, an *Italian* likewise ; and by a collusion between them, it was agreed, that *Aligheri* should make a sham desertion to *Gustavus*, who gave him a considerable post in his army, and admitted him into his confidence. One day, *Aligheri* knowing that his majesty was to reconnoitre a post at a considerable distance from his army, he privately repaired to *Torquato's* camp, and receiving the command of 500 cuirassiers, he ambushed them by detached ways near a spot which he knew his *Swedish* majesty must pass in his return. Nothing but the wonderful intrepidity of *Gustavus* could have saved him at this time. He defended himself at the head of his little party till his horse being shot under him, he was, for some minutes, a prisoner in the hands of his enemies, but rescued by the valour of his attendants, most of whom were cut in pieces ; when a *Swedish* officer at an out-post, being uneasy at the king's long stay, came up to his assistance, and saved him just as he was sinking under the superiority of his enemies.

and re-instates them in their dominions. AFTER this, *Gustavus* took *Bart*, *Damgarten*, and *Ribnitz*, all of them depending on *Mecklenburgh*. He then entered the duchy itself, where he was received by the inhabitants as their guardian-angel and deliverer ; and published manifestoes, requiring the inhabitants to expel their *Austrian* tyrants, and to return to their allegiance under their lawful dukes. They were easily persuaded to this, as they had never laid aside their loyalty ; but *Gustavus* being obliged to march

narch into *Pomerania*, where he reduced some places, they were for some time deprived of his protection. It was partly supplied by the spirit of the inhabitants. One *Melk*, a native *Mecklenburgher*, though no more originally than a common soldier, was distinguished on this occasion. By the surprising proofs he gave of his personal conduct and courage, he raised himself to the command of 300 foot and about 36 horse, with which he resolved to attempt the reduction of *Malchin*, which was a strong fort upon the *Pene*, and garrisoned by two companies of dragoons. He made his dispositions in the dark, and furnishing each of his men with two lighted matches, the better to deceive the garrison as to their numbers, he advanced to the gates of the fort, which he summoned to surrender instantly, under the pain of the garrison being all put to the sword, with which they complied, on the supposition that his numbers were formidable. When the day-light undeceived them as to *Melk's* numbers, rather than to risk the punishment they expected from their generals for their precipitate surrender, the two companies of dragoons enlisted under the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*.

THE latter, not to be wanting to themselves, had, by this time, assembled a body of their faithful subjects, and partly by force, but much more through the affections which their subjects still bore towards them, they reduced great part of the duchy to their obedience. In the mean while, his *Swedish* majesty was making a most rapid progress. He laid siege to *Damin*, which is situated between *Mecklenburgh* and *Pomerania*, and took both the town and its citadel by storm, the garrison of the latter enlisting in his armies. The garrison of the town was commanded by *Savelli*, an *Italian*, who made a very gallant defence; but being obliged to capitulate, the king forced the commandant to sign an obligation, by which he engaged himself not to serve against *Sweden*, or her allies, for three months. He afterwards reduced *Frankfort on the Oder*, by the assistance of the *Scots* who served in his army; and obliged *Landsburgh*, tho' it contained a very strong garrison, to capitulate. His successes every where, great as they were, must have been far more considerable, had it not been that the Protestant princes in the interior part of the empire, partly intimidated by the power of the house of *Austria*, and partly jealous of *Gustavus*, did not give him that cordial assistance that might have been expected from princes of the same religion, and in the same interest. Duke *Adolphus* of *Mecklenburgh* was more hearty, as well as more grateful. He accompanied *Gustavus* to *Berlin*, and was a main instrument in persuading the elector of *Brandenburgh* to join in the common

*Defection  
of the Pro-  
testant  
princes.*

common cause, though he could not be brought to be hearty in it. The elector of *Saxony*, the other great Protestant prince of the empire, was still more averse to the cause he ought to have befriended; for all that either *Gustavus* or duke *Adolphus* could obtain of him, was not to obstruct any provisions that might be sent to the relief of *Magdeburgh*, a place of the utmost importance, at that time besieged by *Tilly*. But when, at the request of that elector, the Protestant princes, or their deputies, assembled at *Leipsic*, all they did was to agree upon certain ineffectual remonstrances that were to be presented to the emperor, as head of the house of *Austria*. The consequence was, that *Magdeburgh* was taken by *Tilly*, and that the Imperialists exercised cruelties upon the garrison and the inhabitants, that would have disgraced the greatest barbarian.

*Gustavus*  
returns to  
Mecklen-  
burgh.

ABOUT this time, *Gustavus*, after he had reduced *Gripswald* in *Pomerania*, returned to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, which, before this, had entirely submitted to its dukes, excepting the towns of *Rostock*, *Wismar*, and *Dæmitz*. It was then thought proper, for many wise reasons, that the two dukes, who had been so long proscribed from their sovereignty, should be re-inaugurated. The ceremony was performed in a most edifying manner. The elder duke, as if mourning for the sufferings of his country, appeared in black, and led the procession, which was, in other respects, magnificent; he being attended by 800 of the senators, clergy, and nobility. The king of *Sweden* assisted in it on horseback, as did *Ulrich*, the prince of *Denmark*, third son to that king, with all the princes and princesses of the house of *Mecklenburgh*; the cavalcade being closed by an hundred and thirty coaches, and one thousand eight hundred horsemen, well armed, and mounted on excellent horses. The procession arriving at the great church, the people who were assembled there for that purpose, received their dukes with transports of loyalty and affection; and this joyful event was so agreeable to *Gustavus*, that he recommended it as an indispensable duty to the people, that they should inculcate upon their children the warmest principles of gratitude to Providence, for the signal restoration of their dukes, and their deliverance from the popish and *Austrian* tyrants.

*His suc-  
cesses.*

THE victories of *Gustavus*, far from making the Imperial court more tractable, seemed to increase its insolence; which, at last, awakened the Protestant princes of *Germany* to a due sense of their danger. The elector of *Saxony* and the landgrave of *Hesse* now cordially fell in with the interest of *Gustavus*, and not only joined him with their forces,  
but

but agreed to admit his garrisons into their towns, which were to be evacuated at the end of the war. The battle of *Leipsic* succeeded, in which *Gustavus* completely beat the Imperialists under *Tilly*, and that was followed by the surrender of *Leipsic* itself, and a most rapid course of victories, which extended the conquests of *Gustavus* from the *Baltic* to the frontiers of *Lorrain*; while the elector of *Saxony* penetrated into *Bohemia*, and took *Prague*. All this time, the blockade of *Rostock*, which had been formed by *Gustavus*, was continued by the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, who, after the battle of *Leipsic*, again became masters of it, by granting to the inhabitants an honourable capitulation. Their first care was to resettle the government of that city, and they then applied themselves to raise a body of troops for the service of the common cause. This done, they penetrated into *Lower Saxony*, where they were joined by a strong detachment from *Gustavus*; and their appearance there gave so much protection and encouragement to the Protestant princes, that they immediately declared themselves against the house of *Austria*, as did the free towns.

AN event happened, at this time, which may naturally be supposed to have given the dukes of *Mecklenburgh* great disquiet; for *Tilly* growing too cautious by his late defeat at *Leipsic*, the Imperial ministers persuaded their master to recal *Wallenstein* to the command of his armies. Deputies were accordingly sent to that general, who, ever since his disgrace, had retired to a private life, where he rejoiced over the misfortunes of the Imperialists, and he was re-invested in the command of the army, with powers superior to any that ever had been granted to any *European* general; while *Tilly* was employed in defending the river *Lech* against *Gustavus*, whose progress was irresistible. *Tilly* was defeated, and died of his wounds, and *Augsburgh* surrendered to *Gustavus*. He had hitherto only acted in the quality of the deliverer of *Germany* from the tyranny of the house of *Austria*, and, as such, he had been joined by the Protestant princes, and several of the Roman Catholics. But upon the reduction of *Augsburgh*, he not only established by his own authority, the Protestant religion, but obliged the *Augsburghers* to take an oath of allegiance to himself; which act of sovereignty over a free imperial city, and one of the greatest in *Germany*, raised, among his best friends, very disadvantageous suspicions that his views were different from his professions. *Gustavus* after this besieged *Ingoldstadt*, but in vain; and took *Munich*, which was redeemed from plunder and devastation by the inhabitants, at the expence of 300,000 rixdollars. *Wallenstein*;

MOD. HIST. VOL. XLII. Y mean-

meanwhile, shewed himself worthy of the command which he had extorted from his master, by retaking *Bavaria*, and checking the progress of the *Swedish* arms.

*and death.* THE battle of *Lutzen* delivered the house of *Austria* from the greatest scourge it ever had known, by the death of the brave *Gustavus*, who was killed upon that plain in the arms of victory. The Protestant cause, for some time, was nobly supported in *Germany* by *Bernard*, duke of *Saxe-Weymar*; but the principle of union being gone, the Protestant princes were dispirited and disunited; nor could all the efforts of the *Swedish* chancellor *Oxenstiern*, who directed the administration of that kingdom, reconcile them so as to act vigorously for the common cause, though the *Swedish* arms continued to be for some time successful. The *Swedish* general *Horn* defeated an army of *Italians*, then in *Germany* under the duke of *Feria*, who had been sent for to counterbalance the now dangerous power of *Wallenstein*. That general, ever since he had been stripped of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, had been meditating new schemes of ambition, and thought that nothing less than the crown of *Bohemia*, and the possession of *Moravia*, could indemnify him for his loss. With this view, he had established a kind of an independent command over the army, and formed an association among his officers, to stand by him upon every occasion. This was soon known at the Imperial court, where *Wallenstein*, who still retained the title of duke of *Mecklenburgh*, was again disgraced. It is said, that to facilitate his ambitious schemes, he resumed the thoughts of conquering *Mecklenburgh*; and this was one of the charges brought against him by the Imperial court. This accusation is, however, not very probable, after we reflect that some time before his death, he actually had offered to put himself at the head of the Protestants in *Germany*, if they would consent to assist him in his views upon the crown of *Bohemia*. It is not, therefore, likely, that he had any design against the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, whose cause was espoused by all the Protestants, and even patronized by the court of *Vienna*. But, be that as it will, he rendered himself so obnoxious to the emperor, that he was put to the ban of the empire, and soon after killed by three *Scotch* officers in his own tent.

*War continues between the Swedes and the Imperialists.* AFTER various fortunes of war between the *Swedes* and the Protestant *Germans* on the one side, and the Imperialists on the other, the treaty of *Prague* was concluded, and signed on the 30th of *May* by all parties; and among others, by the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, whose rights to their dominions were thereby acknowledged by the emperor. The *Swedes*

considered this treaty as a defection from the common cause, and accused the Protestant princes, who had brought it about, of perfidy and ingratitude. The elector of *Saxony*, on this occasion, declared himself on the side of the emperor, and *Mecklenburgh* again became the seat of war. That duchy had never been evacuated by the *Swedes*, who still kept possession of its most important towns; nor could all the efforts of its dukes, who offered themselves as mediators, effect a reconciliation between the *Saxons* and the *Swedes*. Such was the state of affairs when *John-Albert*, one of the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, died, in the 45th year of his age. By the princess his wife, he had two sons, who died infants, and two daughters, *Sophia-Elizabeth*, and *Christina-Margaret*. The former was married to *Augustus*, duke of *Wolfenbuttle*, the treaty of marriage having been far advanced in the father's lifetime. The second wife of duke *John-Albert* was *Elizabeth*, daughter to the landgrave of *Hesse*, by whom he had no issue. His third wife was *Eleonora-Mary*, daughter to *Christiern*, prince of *Anhalt-Dernburg*, by whom he had a daughter *Anna-Sophia*, and a son, to whom, in gratitude to his great benefactor, he gave the name of *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was but three years of age at the time of his father's death.

As duke *Adolphus-Frederic* was still alive, he claimed the guardianship of his nephew young *Gustavus*, which was disputed with him by the mother, who applied to the emperor, who adjudged to her the guardianship of her own son. Though this decree was both just and natural, yet it was far from corresponding with the views of *Adolphus-Frederic*, who suspected that the mother would educate her son in the Roman Catholic religion. He therefore had recourse to arms; that Duke A: he might assert his right, as being the nearest male relation, *dolphus* and even forced the infant from his mother's tutelage, with- *Frederic* out the emperor interfering in the matter. When young *obtains the Gustavus* was brought to his uncle's court, he was educated a *guardian-Lutheran*. The *Swedes* still kept their footing in *Mecklen-ship of his burgh*, which was no longer able to supply them with pro- *nephew*visions; for the duke of *Saxony* entered it, at this time, with another army, but was forced by the *Swedish* general *Bannier*, who had been reinforced by 12,000 of the elector of *Brandenburg's* troops, to retreat. The elector of *Saxony* then marched into *Pomerania*; to join the Imperialists in that province; and though he was beaten out of it by the *Swedes*, yet being reinforced by a body of *Austrians*, he laid siege to, and took *Magdeburgh* and *Tangermund*, and then pushed *Bannier* back to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, where *Maracini*, one of his generals, took *Stargard*, before which he had been formerly

repulsed, and plundered it. The subjects of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, though they had regained their antient sovereigns, were, at this time, in a woeful condition, by having two powerful armies lying in their country. The *Saxons* avoided a battle, and nothing decisive being done, encreased the distresses of the *Mecklenburghers*, who suffered equally from both parties. *Bannier*, at last, attacked the fortified posts of the *Saxons*, whom he utterly defeated, and took the fortress of *Werben*, in *Pomerania*, the garrison of which enlisted in the *Swedish* army. *Bannier* then passed the *Elbe* near that place, and pursued the Imperialists through *Hesse* into *Westphalia*.

Continuation of the war.

NOTWITHSTANDING those losses, the Imperialists, under general *Galas*, indemnified themselves in *Lorraine*, where they took *Kaisar-lauter*, which was an immense loss to the duke of *Weymar*, and put all the garrison to the sword. *Galas* then laid siege to *Deux-Ponts*, and count *Mansfeld*, another Imperial general, blockaded *Mentz*. But a *French* army of 18,000 men, marching into *Germany*, under cardinal *La Vallette*, *Mentz* was re-victualled, and the siege of *Deux-Ponts* was raised. The duke of *Mecklenburgh*, during those and a vast number of other military transactions which were then desolating his country, was busied in his negotiations for an accommodation between the *Swedes* and the *Saxons*, who now acted in the Imperial interest. The chief impediment of his success lay in the convenient situation of his duchy for both parties. The possession of it secured to the *Swedes* a safe retreat into *Jutland*, which the Imperialists were equally eager to cut off; while the duke, partly through inability, and partly in commiseration of his subjects, acted no other part than that of a mediator. He was encouraged by the consideration that both the powers, by which his duchy suffered, were protestants. But he was disappointed; for ambition and interest took place of all other motives; and the *Swedes* were so much exasperated by the defection, as they called it, of the princes who had invited *Gustavus* into *Germany*, that nothing gave them equal delight, than, without regard to any religion, to multiply the miseries of the empire.

Successes of the duke of Saxe-Weymar and Bannier.

THE treaty between the *French* king and duke *Bernard* of *Saxe-Weymar*, who was thereby constituted general of all the troops in alliance with *France*, encreased the duke of *Mecklenburgh's* perplexities, as it was a kind of declaration of the continuance of the war. In the mean while, the emperor had convoked a diet at *Ratisbon*, previous to the election of his son to be king of the *Romans*; a measure which he had



had greatly at heart. The Protestant deputies at the diet laid hold of this opportunity to insist upon the pacification of *Germany*, and refused to concur in the election till that could be effected. They were so firm in this refusal, that an assembly was called at *Cologne*, and another at *Hamburgh*, to which the Protestant princes repaired; but though a king of the *Romans* was elected, the deliverance of *Germany* from the miseries of war was still at a great distance. The courage and successes of *Bannier* and the duke of *Saxe-Weymar*, the Protestant generals, served only to contribute to the unhappiness of *Mecklenburgh*, where both armies, every winter, took up their quarters. The Imperialists, though often routed, were gaining upon the main, by means of the vast resources they had in men, money, and provisions; and the death of the landgrave of *Hesse* seemed to leave the *Mecklenburghers* without all hope of relief; for the Imperial court, which had been always haughty, became then untractable, and rejected all proposals for an accommodation; so that the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, to their great mortification, saw the confederacy between *France* and *Sweden* renewed for three years.

COUNT *Galas*, in the year 1638, commanded the Imperialists in *Mecklenburgh*, where a famine raged through the subsistence which the inhabitants were obliged to furnish for so many armies. *Galas* was attacked by *Bannier* in *Mecklenburgh*, and was obliged to pass the *Elbe* with the loss of 3000 men, while the duke of *Saxe-Weymar* continued his operations through all the winter. This was the more necessary, as the constancy of the Protestant princes had been greatly shaken by the death of the landgrave of *Hesse*. Passing the *Rhine*, he took several towns, and besieged *Rhinsfeld*; but it was relieved by the Imperialists, who were afterwards completely defeated by the duke, and then *Rhinsfeld* submitted of course. *Neuburgh*, *Rottelen*, and *Brisgau* followed the example of *Rhinsfeld*; and then the duke of *Saxe-Weymar* laid siege to *Brisac*, which the duke of *Lorraine* endeavoured, but in vain, to relieve. The campaign was carried on with less success in other parts of *Germany*, where the prince-palatine, and his brother prince *Rupert*, were defeated in their retreat to *Minden*; but in the year 1639, the duke of *Saxe-Weymar* and *Bannier* agreed upon a joint irruption into the emperor's hereditary territories, as the only means of disposing him to peace. In their march, *Bannier* cut in pieces seven Imperial regiments, and four *Saxon* battalions, and then laid siege to *Friburgh*. Understanding that *Hatsfeld*, the Imperial general, was marching to the relief of the place, and

Death of  
that duke,

that he was to be joined by a great body of *Saxons*, he raised the siege, and totally defeated the Imperialists. He then broke into *Bohemia*, attacked and defeated *Hofkirck*, another Imperial general, killed 2000 of his men, and made him and *Mantecuculi* prisoners. But though *Bannier* was thus victorious, he was unsuccessful upon the whole. He had no resources of men or money to supply the waste of war, nor could he garrison the places which he took. He was in hopes, however, of being joined by the duke of *Saxe-Weymar*, and of making the emperor's hereditary dominions of *Bohemia* and *Silesia* defray the expence of the war; but all his schemes were blasted by his receiving news of the death of the duke of *Saxe-Weymar*, which was reported to have been effected by poison, administered to him by the *French*, because he was too much in the interest of the Protestants, and had refused to deliver up to them *Brisac*.

THE duke of *Saxe-Weymar's* death was an irreparable blow to the Protestant interest in *Germany*. The *French* arrested the prince-palatine, who pretended to succeed him in the command of his army, which now accepted of a *French* general, the duke of *Longueville*, and gave up all *Weymar's* conquests to the Most Christian king. The duchy of *Mecklenburgh* continued all this while to be torn in pieces by the *Swedes*, whom *Bannier* had left there under the command of *Oxel-Cili*, and the Imperialists, who wanted to drive the *Swedes* out of *Germany*. All that the duke of *Mecklenburgh* could obtain from either party, was, a permission for some of his towns and territories to remain neutral; and he thereby gained so much respite, that, in 1640, he was present at the nuptials of his niece *Christina-Margaret*, daughter to duke *John-Albert*, with *Francis-Albert*, duke of *Saxe-Lawenburgh*.

THE Protestant army in *Germany* then continued to be commanded by marshal *Bannier* and the duke of *Longueville*, who acted together, but with very different views; while *Picolomini* was general of the Imperialists, and lay on the frontiers of *Bavaria*, to prevent *Bannier* from penetrating into that duchy. Upon this, *Bannier* resumed his old plan, and required the duke of *Longueville* to join him with his army, that they might force *Picolomini* to a battle. The duke would have gladly avoided the junction, had he not been apprehensive of the consequences, *Bannier* having declared, that if he did not join him, he would no longer look upon the *French* as the allies of *Sweden*, but provide for the safety of his army and himself. The Imperial court endeavoured to improve this misunderstanding, by offering to *Bannier*,

nier, that if he would detach himself from his *French* and *German* allies, he should be recompensed with two rich duchies in *Silesia*. *Longueville*, though he could no longer defer his junction with *Bannier*, entered into intrigues to thwart him in all their councils of war. They had, by this time, been joined by the troops of *Hesse-Cassel*, *Brunswic*, and *Lunenburgh*, and they marched to *Saltsfeld* to fight *Picolomini*. That cautious *Italian* knew the temper and views of his enemies too well, not to be sensible that they could not act long in concert together, and therefore he cautiously avoided a battle, to which all the arts and power of the confederates could not force him; so that the campaign was spent in fatiguing marches and counter-marches till both armies went into winter-quarters.

NEXT year, the active *Bannier* must have surprised the emperor at *Ratisbon*, had not his project been disconcerted by a sudden thaw. A diet had been convoked for the often-mentioned purpose of restoring peace to *Germany*, and the emperor furnished passports to the ministers of the powers at war, that they might repair to it; but the *French* were to treat at *Cologne*, and the *Swedes* at *Hamburg*. The negotiations met with great difficulties, and the only thing concluded on was, that there should be a congress for a general peace to be held at *Munster*, where the *French* plenipotentiaries were to meet, and at *Osnaburgh*, which was assigned to those of *Sweden*. The emperor refused to ratify those preliminaries, which, as he alledged, were derogatory to his honour; and thus the war broke out with greater fury than ever. *Bannier* penetrated into *Bohemia*, while *Picolomini* besieged and took *Newmarck*. After this, *Picolomini* joining his troops with those of *Gleen*, another Imperial general, the whole formed an army vastly superior to that of *Bannier*, whom they pursued across the *Bohemian* forest; but he had the good fortune to escape to the river *Pleiss*, over which he transported his army in boats, when the Imperialists appeared upon the opposite bank. That river, however, did not stop the pursuit; for the *Austrian* horse forded the river, and *Bannier* was now shut up in such a manner between the *Pleiss* and the *Moldaw*, that his ruin was by all *Europe* looked upon as inevitable. Nothing but the utmost efforts of generalship could have prevented it. He made so judicious a disposition of some troops at a pass near a mill, and defended it so bravely, that the *Austrians* were kept in play, till his army, baggage, and artillery reached *Zuickaw* on the *Moldau*; where he was joined by *Guebriant*, the *French* general. This retreat was one of the best-conducted that ever was made,

and of  
Bannier.

and an equal honour to the judgement and the courage of *Bannier*, but it proved fatal to him; for though he had youth and a robust constitution on his side, he sunk under the fatigues he had undergone, and died at *Halberstadt*, in the 41st year of his age.

NOTWITHSTANDING the death of this great man, who was as amiable in his personal, as he was great in his military, capacity, the war was carried on by the *Swedes* with the utmost spirit and intrepidity under *Torsten*son, who succeeded *Bannier* in his command, and, like him, was a great and an able general, and did wonders in *Germany* against the *Austrians*, though he could not bring *Guebriant* to act in conjunction with him, and though the war which then broke out between *Denmark* and *Sweden*, retarded his supplies. He made his winter-quarters, however, good in *Bohemia*; he ravaged *Germany*, and in 1645, he narrowly missed surprizing the emperor, and his son the archduke *Leopold*, at *Prague*; and compleatly defeated their army in a general engagement. In short, it was thought, not without reason, that had *Torsten*son been properly supported, he must have put an end to the greatness of the house of *Austria*; but we must refer our reader for particulars to the foregoing parts of this history.

Treaty of  
Munster  
concluded,  
which settles the af-  
fairs of  
Mecklen-  
burgh.

LITTLE occurs, during this period, that particularly relates to the affairs of *Mecklenburgh*. That duchy, and the ducal family, participated of the common calamities of *Germany*. Manufactures, trade, and agriculture, were forgotten in the profession of arms, and all civil subordination was laid aside, the inhabitants having been so long enured to military customs. It is true, the dukes were at peace with both the parties that were harrassing their dominions; but even that consideration brought them little relief; for, their duchy was upon all occasions treated as a conquered country, and if one party granted to a place, or a state, a neutrality, the other party obliged the inhabitants to break it. Happily for the repose of *Germany*, the negotiations for a general peace were all this while going on at *Munster* and *Osnaburgh*; and, at last, the same took place in 1648, while the *Swedes* were on the point of conquering all *Bohemia*, under the duke of *Deux-Ponts*. By this peace, which now commonly goes by the name of that of *Westphalia*, the palatine family were re-instated in part of their dominions; the Protestant princes received additional securities for their religion and properties; and the duke of *Mecklenburgh* was re-instated in the peaceable possession of all his dominions, excepting the town and port of *Wismar*, which were granted to *Sweden*, together with the bailiwicks of *Pohl* and *Neukloster*.

WISMAR

**WISMAR** was formerly a hanse-town, and a place of great trade, enjoying even the privilege of coining; nor is it at present inconsiderable. It is situated on a bay of the *Baltic*, and has a good harbour. So far back as the year 1261, it was annexed to the duchy of *Schwerin*, by which it came into the possession of the dukes of *Mecklenburgh*. In 1627, the Imperialists seized upon it, but were dispossessed by the *Swedes* in 1632. It lay so conveniently for the *Swedes*, to whom it served as an inlet into *Germany*, that their plenipotentiary offered to put the duke in possession of the bishopric of *Minden* in exchange for it; but the *Mecklenburgh* envoy having no instructions to treat on that head, the proposal was dropped. The bailiwick of *Pohl*, which was ceded at the same time to *Sweden*, is an island about a *German* mile distant from the mouth of the harbour of *Wismar*, and contains several towns and farms; as does the bailiwick of *Neukloster*, which is now farmed for 7690 rixdollars.

In compensation for those cessions, the emperor gave the dukes of *Mecklenburgh* the several towns and districts which had formerly belonged to the bishoprics of *Schwerin* and *Ratzeburgh*, which were now secularized, together with *Miro* and *Nemero*, two bailiwicks in the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, formerly commanderies of the order of *St. John*, and belonging to the *Sonneburgh* grand-mastership; but with a proviso of paying the *responsgelder*, which is a kind of tribute to the order. Some other secularized benefices were likewise ceded to the dukes at the same time. *Sweden*, besides the acquisition of *Wismar*, obtained by the peace of *Westphalia* in property, the duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, which they acknowledged to be fiefs of the empire; but the mode of this cession was so indetermined, that it afterwards created great disputes. They likewise obtained the isle of *Rugen*, and all the *Upper Pomerania*, with five millions of crowns to indemnify them for the expences of the war, and *Brisac* and *Alface* were ceded to *France*.

SUCH were the northern arrangements of *Germany* made by the treaty of *Westphalia*, when duke *Adolphus-Frederic* of *Mecklenburgh* re-entered into the peaceable possession of his dominions; which, as we have already observed, he found in a most deplorable condition. His first attention was turned towards securing his subjects in their possessions, in restoring boundaries and land-marks; in re-establishing manufactures; but, above all, in restoring agriculture. At the same time, courts of justice began to resume their usual functions, as did the ministers of religion; so that the people were soon reconciled to that subordination, which is so requisite in a civil government.

ment. The duke, in 1647, had given his daughter, *Anna-Maria*, in marriage to *Augustus*, duke of *Weissenfels*; and in 1649, his niece *Anna-Sophia* was married to *Lewis*, duke of *Leignitz*. Next year, his daughter *Sophia-Agnes* was contracted in marriage to *Augustus*, margrave of *Brandenburg-Bayrent*; but the bridegroom dying before the marriage was consummated, the prince's renounced all farther concern with the world, and retired to a religious life. The same year, *Christian*, the eldest son of *Adolphus Frederic*, married his cousin *Christiana-Margaret*, widow of the duke of *Sax-Lawenburgh*, who had been killed in the late wars between the *Swedes* and the *Imperialists*.

*Adminis-  
tration of  
duke Adol-  
phus-Fre-  
deric.*

THE cares of duke *Adolphus-Frederic* were not confined to his own family and dominions, but extended to those of his nephew *Gustavus Adolphus*, duke of *Mecklenburgh-Gustrow*, who, when he came to be of adult age, entered upon the possession of a fine, and, considering the times, of a flourishing estate. This young prince married *Magdalen-Sibilla*, the daughter of his near neighbour the duke of *Holstein-Gottorp*. In the year 1658, died *Adolphus-Frederic*, in the 90th year of his age. The great equanimity with which this prince bore a long train of misfortunes, his patience, prudence and piety, and the paternal care he always exercised towards his subjects, cannot be sufficiently admired; and his virtues were at last rewarded by his uncommon length of life, and by his being enabled to restore to his country order, tranquillity, and affluence. His first wife was *Anna-Maria*, princess of *East*

*His issue.*

*Friesland*, by whom he had *Christian*, his eldest son, and successor in his government, and three other sons, *Charles*, *John-George*, and *Gustavus-Rodolphus*, with two daughters, *Sophia-Agnes*, and *Anna-Maria*, whose marriage we have already mentioned. His second wife *Catharine*, was of the house of *Brunswic*, and by her he had *Frederic*, to whom he left the district of *Grabow*; with five daughters, *Juliana*, *Sibilla-Christina*, *Mary-Elizabeth*, and *Anna-Sophia*. Seven months after his death, his duchess was delivered of a posthumous son, to whom he had eventually bequeathed the district of *Strelitz*, which now goes by the name of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*.

*History  
and cha-  
racter of  
his eldest  
son Christ-  
ian,*

*CHRISTIAN*, duke of *Mecklenburgh*, son to *Adolphus-Frederic*, was one of the most extraordinary characters of his age. He was giddy, capricious, and voluptuous, unthinking, improvident, immoral, and irreligious. With those bad qualities, he was polite, generous, and obliging to the last degree. He had a most pleasing turn of conversation, and he made up the want of deep erudition, by his being master

master of that kind of learning that is agreeable, striking, and entertaining ; and he was possessed of a fund of wit, that rendered him the delight of all who approached him. With all those accomplishments and blemishes, he was reckoned to be in his person the handsomest prince of his age ; and this, perhaps, was a main source of the irregularities and misfortunes into which he fell ; as it was difficult for any woman, if not armed with the severest virtue, when he paid his addresses to her, to look upon him with an eye of indifference. The excellent condition in which the duchy of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin* was, when *Christian* succeeded his father, rendered it easy for him to gratify his passions to the full ; the first effect of which was, the ruin of his domestic felicity. His wife, who passionately loved him, could not bear his open infidelity to her bed ; nor could he bear her continual bitter reproaches on that head, till, at last, she was exasperated into resentment, and he into hatred, which made a state of separation the most eligible for both ; but political, as well as domestic reasons, contributed to *Christian's* unhappiness.

His father had succeeded in reducing the common people of his duchy to regularity and subordination ; but, during the late war, the nobility had been so little sensible of the ducal power, that they had not only acquired a taste for independance, but they refused to pay to their duke the common dues and fines, and even encroached upon his prerogative as sovereign. Mutual recriminations passed between them, the nobility being unanimous in their refusal to pay the sums demanded, and, at last, the cause was brought before the emperor, who was the only judge in such a case. It may be easily imagined, that, during this dispute, the duke must pass his time very indifferently in his court, where he was deserted by all his nobility, and entertained only by the upbraidings of his wife. To put an end to so disagreeable a situation, he named a regency, composed of his counsellors, and came to a resolution of travelling to *France*, in hopes that the gaieties of that court would dispel his inquietudes. While he was there, he fell in love with *Isabella Angelica de Montmorenci*, widow to the duke of *Gbatillon*, and sister to the marshal *Montmorenci*. But the duke's first wife being still alive, no expedient could be thought of to complete their union by marriage, but his renouncing his religion ; a sacrifice which was easy for a man of his principles and disposition to make ; and cardinal *Barterini*, after having received by the pope's orders the duke's abjuration of *Lutheranism*, baptized him anew by the name of *Lewis*.

who turns  
Roman  
Catholic,

and re-  
marries.

It does not appear that the execrable purpose of this abjuration was publicly owned by the duke at the time of his abjuration. He was highly careffed by his name-father, *Lewis XIV.* and by him presented with the order of the Holy Ghost; but a short time fully cleared up the motives of his conversion. Under the ridiculous pretexts of his former marriage having been contracted within the degree of consanguinity prohibited by the canons of the church, and of his not having received the papal dispensation, it was declared to be invalid by the same cardinal; and soon after, he was married to the duchess of *Chatillon*. It was not long before he found his domestic situation more disagreeable than ever. His new wife, without having the same affection for his person as his first had, was extravagant in her resentment of his irregularities, and persecuted him even to a degree of fury. Under those unhappy circumstances he had recourse to philosophy, and sought to divert his uneasiness by the conversation of learned men; but that soon proving ineffectual, he took a most extravagant resolution, but well suited to a man of his volatile temper, which was that of travelling incognito to *Rome*, to see the famous *Kircher*. This jesuit was, in his time, the mountebank of learning. He possessed an inexhaustible fund of erudition, but it was of the abstruse kind; and not having a proportionable share of critical knowledge, he was vain, credulous, and ostentatious, though his works were entertaining and amusing, and carried with them great marks of authenticity, particularly in his researches into the *Chinese* and *Egyptian* learning; and, in short, of antiquity in general. The duke did not find in *Kircher* either the entertainment or improvement he expected. He was disgusted with the father's dry pedantic manner; nor could he conceal his chagrin at being disappointed in his purpose; and when he took his leave, they were equally dissatisfied with each other.

WHILE *Christian* was thus pursuing either his pleasures or his disappointments in *France* and *Italy*, his duchy of *Mecklenburgh* was once more rendered the seat of war, by the hostilities which again broke out between *France* and *Germany*. The *Swedes*, as usual, took part with the former, and invaded the dominions of the elector of *Brandenburgh*, who forced them to retreat into *Mecklenburgh*. The usual plea of necessity superseded all other considerations; for tho' that duchy was equally in alliance with both the belligerent powers, yet it enjoyed no benefit from its neutrality, and the inhabitants were treated with the same severity, as if they had been enemies to both. The duke, whose residence

upon



upon his own dominions might have alleviated, if not prevented, the calamities of his country, received a farther mortification by the emperor intimating to him, his displeasure at seeing so considerable a member of the *Germanic* body residing at the court of a prince who was the public enemy of the empire. His abjuration of Protestantism, and his treatment of his first wife, who was still alive, and whose brother was the reigning duke of *Gustrow*; his differences with his subjects, and many other causes, contributed to dissuade him from returning to *Mecklenburgh*; but, as the emperor could have no objection to his living in *Holland*, he went to the *Hague*, where he spent the remainder of his days, and died in the 69th year of his age, in the year 1692, without leaving any lawful issue. He dies in Holland.

*FREDERIC*, duke of *Mecklenburgh Grabow*, brother as we have seen to *Christian*, had been four years dead at this time, and had left by his wife, who was daughter to the landgrave of *Hesse*, three sons; *Frederic-William*, *Charles-Leopold*, and *Christian-Lewis*, and a daughter *Sophia-Louisa*. and the eldest of those sons, *Frederic-William*, claimed the succession to the late duke, as being son of the elder brother; but his title was disputed by *Adolphus-Frederic* of *Strelitz*, *Christian's* posthumous brother, as being next in blood to the deceased. Account of the time of Mecklenburgh, and the disputes succession, The difference was referred to the arbitration of the elector of *Brandenburgh*, who adjudged the succession to the nephew *Frederic William*, and that too, upon very just principles: scarcely was this affair settled, when *Gustavus Adolphus*, the duke of *Gustrow*, died likewise. By his wife *Magdalen-Sibilla*, daughter of *Frederic*, duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, he had eight daughters; *Mary*, who was wife to *Adolphus-Frederic II.* duke of *Mecklenburgh Strelitz*; *Magdalene*, who died unmarried; *Sophia*, who was wife to *Christian-Ulric*, duke of *Wirtemberg-Bensstadt*; *Christina*, married to *Christian-Lewis*, count of *Stolburgh*; *Hedwiga*, the wife of *Augustus*, duke of *Saxe-Mersburgh*; *Louisa*, married to the king of *Denmark*; *Elizabeth* to *Henry*, duke of *Saxe-Mersburgh*; and *Augusta*, who died single; besides several other children, who died either in their infancy, or without issue. *Gustavus Adolphus*, duke of *Gustrow*, before his death, had fixed the marriage between the king of *Denmark* and his daughter *Louisa*, who, after his death, was received in a most magnificent manner at *Copenhagen*, and married to his *Danish* majesty, in presence of his sister the duchess of *Strelitz*, and the chief nobility of *Denmark* and *Mecklenburgh*.

THE death of *Gustavus Adolphus* renewed the disputes between the duke of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*, and his nephew, between the branches of

Schwerin the duke of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*. This, and the former dispute rested on the same principles; the duke of *Strelitz* claimed from proximity of blood; the duke of *Schwerin* by priority of descent, which was strengthened by his having married the eldest daughter of the late duke of *Gustrow*. The succession was too considerable to be decided by any other arbitration than that of arms. The duke of *Schwerin* being more powerful than his uncle, the latter put himself under the protection of the *Swedes*, who, glad of a fresh pretext to get footing in *Germany*, invaded *Mecklenburgh*, and took *Gustrow*. Nothing could be more disagreeable to the court of *Vienna* than this invasion; and the emperor was much alarmed at it, that he ordered the princes of the circle of *Lower-Saxony* to be assembled, and by representing the danger to which the *Germanic* body was exposed by this invasion of the *Swedes*, they consented that the duchy of *Gustrow* should be sequestrated till the succession to it should be determined in a legal manner by the emperor. The cause was accordingly heard, and the right of succession was formally adjudged to the duke of *Schwerin*.

THIS decision, impartial as it was, was not, it seems, agreeable to the modes of succession which generally prevailed in the *Lower-Saxony*, and which are regulated by proximity of blood, and not priority of succession; and therefore the emperor's decision was universally disliked. But besides the hereditary right, pleaded by the duke of *Schwerin*, we find that so far<sup>d</sup> back as the year 1523, the nobility and commons of the duchies of *Schwerin* and *Gustrow* entered into an indissoluble compact of union, which consisted in the conjunction of the provinces as well as of the states of which each is composed. The duke of *Strelitz* readily agreed to the vote of sequestration upon the duchy of *Gustrow*; but his acquiescence proved insignificant, for the *Swedes* were in possession of the city, and refused to give it up, or any of the places in *Mecklenburgh* which they were possessed of. They agreed, however, that the matter should be referred to arbitration; and that the arbitrators should meet at *Hamburgh*, which they accordingly did in 1701, after *Mecklenburgh* had been for four or five years desolated by a foreign invasion. The award pronounced - at *Hamburgh*, was, That duke *Frederic-William* of *Schwerin* should hold the principality of *Gustrow*, with that of *Schwerin*; but that *Adolphus-Frederic* should, besides his duchy of *Strelitz*, hold the principality of *Ratzeburgh*; with the lordship of *Stargard*.

and the commanderies of *Miro* and *Nemero*, with a yearly pension of 9000 dollars in specie, out of the *Boitzenburgh* toll\*. This compact was accepted of by both parties, and ratified by the emperor *Leopold*, who likewise settled a right of primogeniture and lineal succession in both houses.

FROM this decisive compact, the division between the lines of *Schwerin* and *Strelitz* in the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* took place, and the titles of both dukes<sup>†</sup> now are, duke of *Mecklenburgh*, prince of *Wenden*, *Schwerin*, and *Ratzeburgh*, count of *Schwerin*, and the country of *Rostock*, and lord of *Star-gard*. Duke *Frederic-William* was a wise and a moderate prince, and made the good of his subjects the only object of his administration; but the dispute between his predecessor *Gustavus Adolphus* and the nobility of *Gustrow*, though suspended, had never been decided, and it was revived upon his succession. The nobility required of the duke a formal renunciation of his uncle's claims; but the affair was of too great consequence to his posterity for him to give them up, so that his moderation led him to accept of a stated revenue till the difference could be legally decided. This point being settled, he married in 1704, *Sophia-Charlotte*, daughter to the landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*. But, notwithstanding all his attention to the ease and happiness of his subjects, the situation of his country brought it under inexpressible difficulties. When *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*, undertook to dethrone *Augustus*, king of *Poland*, *Mecklenburgh* became once more the seat of war, notwithstanding the most strenuous efforts made by the duke to preserve a neutrality. In short, all the strong places of *Mecklenburgh* were seized by one or other of the parties, and the country itself laid desolate. *Strelitz*, having little or no defence, was again and again plundered by both; and in 1708, *Adolphus-Frederic II.* duke of *Strelitz*, died. His first wife was *Mary*, daughter to the last duke of *Gustrow*, by whom he had a son, who succeeded to his dominions, by the name of *Adolphus-Frederic III.* and a daughter, *Gustava-Carolina*, whose husband was *Christian-Lewis*, administrator of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*. The second wife of *Adolphus-Frederic* was *Johanna*, duchess to *Frederic*, duke of *Saxe-Goth*; and his third wife was *Christiana-Amelia-Antonia*, daughter to the prince of *Schwartzburgh-Sanderhausen*, and by her he had *Sophia Christina-Louisa*, who died an infant, and *Charles-Lewis-Frederic*, who was but three months old when his father died.

\* BÜSCHING, Vol. VI. p. 372.

† Ibid.

and of  
Charles-  
Leopold.

**CHARLES-Leopold**, duke of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*, married *Sophia-Hedwiga*, daughter of *Henry-Casimir-Nassau*, hereditary stadtholder of *West-Friesland*; but some disputes happening in their conjugal state, their marriage was annulled by consent of both parties, after they had submitted their differences to the university of *Gripswalde*. The ducal house of *Mecklenburgh*, in the year 1709, was low, as duke *Frederic-William* had no children, which, perhaps, was an inducement to *Frederic I.* king of *Prussia*, to desire his sister *Sophia-Louisa* in marriage, on condition that the duchies of *Schwerin* and *Strelitz*, in the event of their having no male issue, should be settled upon his family. The duke consented to this condition, that he might see his beloved sister a queen. The marriage, however, proved unhappy; the cause was attributed to her capricious temper, and a separation ensued. The duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, all this while, was suffering the most cruel devastations from the troops of the princes who were at war in *Germany*; and their miseries so much affected *Frederic-William*, who most tenderly loved his subjects, that he fell into a consumptive disorder. He consulted an ignorant physician, who improperly prescribed to him the waters of *Stagenback*, which finished his life at *Mentz*, in the 39th year of his age, most sincerely lamented by his subjects, in the year 1713. He was succeeded by his brother *Charles Leopold*.

His differences with  
his nobility.

THE reader may remember, that the quarrel which had been begun between *Charles-Lewis* and his nobility, though compromised, had never been thoroughly ended; and length of time gave them a pretext to add prescription to the other reasons of their opposition. The duke was most unhappily situated in this dispute. The emperor, as head of the *Germanic* body, pretended to be the sole arbiter of all the differences between him and his nobility. The states of the *Lower-Saxony* joined the nobility against their duke, and the city of *Rostock*, upon whom he had the like demands, declared against him likewise. It happened, at this time, that, very critically for the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, the system of affairs in the North took a very unexpected turn. The czar, *Peter the Great*, of *Russia*, from the experience he had in his late wars, was encouraged to think, that it would be no difficult matter for him to obtain a footing in the empire; and for reasons that may be found in other parts of this history, he had entered into a most unnatural alliance with his perpetual enemy the king of *Sweden*; and as *George I.* king of *Great Britain*, was the greatest obstacle to the ambition of both, they formed a scheme for placing the Pretender on the *British* throne.

His

His Swedish majesty being killed, and his ministry ruined, the execution of this plan rested upon the czar alone. Duke Charles-Leopold of Mecklenburgh, perceiving that all the German powers either remained neutral, or took part with his nobility, threw his eyes towards Russia; and, by the czar's consent, he married Catherine, daughter to the czar John, elder brother to Peter the Great, whose assistance he implored against his nobility and his enemies in the empire.

NOTHING could be more fortunate than the situation of *His con-Mecklenburgh* was for the views of the czar, who, of all *actions* things, wanted the possession of *Wismar* to give him footing *with the* in the empire. From the moment that the match was concluded between his niece and the duke of Mecklenburgh, he *whose* abandoned all thoughts of assisting the Pretender, and was *niece be* tirely employed upon effectuating his German system. This *marries* was no secret to the court of Great Britain, and it determined king George I. to take part with the Mecklenburgh nobility. The czar, on the other hand, in the year 1716, made dispositions for becoming master of *Wismar*, which being in the hands of Sweden, was closely besieged by the Northern allies, as they were called. With this view, he ordered three Russian regiments to march into Mecklenburgh, on pretext of assisting the duke against his rebellious nobility, but in reality to get possession of *Wismar*; which, while they were upon their march, surrendered to the allies in April 1716, notwithstanding all the efforts the duke made, not only by the Russian troops, but by large pecuniary offers to get possession of it for the czar. Soon after, the whole Russian army marched into Mecklenburgh, the czar pretending, that his intention was to make a descent upon *Schonen*; which, by the event, it is plain, he never intended, and that his real design was, that his army should take up its winter-quarters in Mecklenburgh and its neighbourhood. Little doubt can be made, that, in all this proceeding, the interest of the duke of Mecklenburgh was but his secondary view; for his real intention was to possess himself of that duchy, and thereby to acquire a firm footing in Germany. For this purpose, he even went so far as to propose to give the duke all his part of *Livonia*, if he would relinquish Mecklenburgh. In 1717, king George, after presenting the strongest remonstrances, both at the Imperial and Danish courts, pressing them to use their interest with the czar to evacuate Mecklenburgh, returned from Germany to London, while the czar's real intentions became every day more and more apparent. He had erected *Rostock* into a place of arms, and the flower of his troops, particularly his own regiment, without which he never un-

took any expedition in person, was quartered upon the *Mecklenburgh* nobility.

*Affairs of the North.* His arms were seconded by memorials, in which he pretended, that the affair of *Mecklenburgh* was an object entirely foreign to a *British* ministry, and that his *Britannic* majesty, through the whole dispute, had artfully blended his character as king with that of elector; and that he could not regularly, in either capacity, become a party against the duke in favour of his stubborn rebellious nobility. Those were plausible allegations, but destitute of truth; and the czar's hopes received a severe blow, by the Northern allies blowing up and razing the fortifications of *Wismar*, in the beginning of the year 1718. By this time, all the princes of *Germany* interested themselves in the quarrel, and became parties against the czar, and, consequently, against the duke of *Mecklenburgh*; and this drove the czar into closer connections than ever with *Sweden*, through the agency of the famous baron *Goertz*. It was agreed between them, that king *Stanislaus* should be replaced on the throne of *Poland*; and with regard to his *Britannic* majesty and the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, the following stipulations, as published by the court of *London*, were concluded.

“THE czar promises and engages to act with all his troops, to compel the king of *England*, as elector, not only to restore *Bremen* and *Verden* to the king of *Sweden*, but also to give him due satisfaction for the damages he has sustained; and if it happens that the crown of *England* should oppose this, the two contracting parties promise to unite all their forces against it, and not to lay down their arms till that restitution and satisfaction be really obtained from *Hanover*.

“HOWEVER, in case the king of *Sweden* should chuse, before the exchange of the ratifications, to excuse the czar from this obligation; his czarish majesty promises, and takes upon himself, to dispose the duke of *Mecklenburgh* to yield up voluntarily, and for ever, to the king and crown of *Sweden*, the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* and its dependencies for a proper equivalent, which the czar promises to procure for that duke; and as such equivalent cannot be found but on the side of *Poland*, the king of *Sweden* shall engage to assist in getting it.

“AND in this case, the agreements about the succession of families, which are subsisting between the house of *Prussia* and *Mecklenburgh*, shall take place with respect to the equivalent to be given to the duke of that name.”

*The Russians occupy Mecklenburgh.* UPON the whole it appears, that the duke of *Mecklenburgh*, besides *Livonia*, was to have been indemnified with part of *Esthonia*, *Carelia*, and *Ingria*; and in the plan of execution

execution laid down by baron Goertz it was stipulated, that the czar should furnish 25,000 men to be sent to *Mecklenburgh*, and to be actually there before the arrival of the transports from *Sweden*. The death of his *Swedish* majesty put an end to all those ambitious schemes, and was followed by the execution of baron Goertz, their chief pla. . . The duke of *Mecklenburgh* was the chief sufferer by this catastrophe. He had quartered the 3000 *Russians* lent him by the czar upon his nobility, and his conduct in calling into *Germany* foreign troops, had rendered him excessively unpopular in the empire. The king of *Great Britain* was his professed enemy, as being a member of the *Lower-Saxony*, and the regent of *France* was connected with *George*. The new government of *Sweden* adopted a plan entirely different from that of the late king, and the czar, notwithstanding his recent family-connection with the duke, became very cold in his cause. To complete his misfortunes, the emperor took upon him finally to decide the long-depending cause between the duke and his nobility in favour of the latter, and committed the execution of his sentence to the king of *Great Britain*, as elector of *Hanover*. At the same time, *Christian-Lewis*, the younger brother of duke *Charles-Leopold*, was made administrator of the duchy, a scanty part of its revenues being allotted for the maintenance of duke *Charles-Leopold*. This prince had a spirit too great to submit to his fortune; which was thus, perhaps, unjustly depressed. Unhappily for him, his resentment was now chiefly directed against his wife's uncle, *Peter the Great*, of *Muscovy*, who he thought had betrayed him, by not sufficiently supporting him against his nobility. His complaints were far from being ill-founded; for it is certain, that *Peter* had led him into those measures that rendered all the empire his enemies, and then withdrew from his assistance. The duke could not bring his spirit to submit so far as even to crave his protection, or aid, to recover his dominions; but he loudly accused *Peter*, for having most scandalously withheld from him the portion which had been stipulated for his wife when he married her; and which *Peter* ungenerously alledged he had already paid, by the assistance he had afforded him against his subjects. These altercations with a prince of *Peter's* power, served *Misfor-* but the more to depress *Leopold*, who being now, in a manner, *tunes of* an exile from his own dominions, lived with a splendor *duke.* little suitable to his income, sometimes at *Dartzig*, and sometimes at *Wisnar*. In the mean while, his brother, the administrator, was supported by the *Hanoverian* troops, who acted as an army of execution; and the duke, soured by

his repeated misfortunes, comprehended even his wife in the aversion he had conceived for the *Russians*, by openly maltreating and abusing her. Upon the death of *Peter II.* of *Russia*, great doubts arose concerning the succession to that empire.

Succession  
of the Rus-  
sian em-  
pire

THE eldest daughter of the empress *Catharine*, by czar *Peter the Great*, was duchess of *Holstein*; and had the succession been limited for the satisfaction of the *Russians* to the posterity of *Peter*, she had, undoubtedly, the prior right of succession; but she was then dead, and her son no more than ten years of age: a circumstance which rendered his government incompatible with the good of *Russia*, and therefore he was for that time set aside, and the *Russian* nobility threw their eyes back towards the posterity of czar *John*, *Peter's* elder brother. It is evident, that, upon this occasion, the *Russians* had not the smallest regard to hereditary right, provided they were governed by any one of the Imperial blood. Some of them were for forming their empire into a republic, but all of them agreed in setting aside the succession of the duchess of *Mecklenburgh*, though she was the eldest daughter of czar *John*, and raising to their throne her younger sister *Anne Iwanowna*, duchess of *Courland*. Their true reason for this was, the aversion they had to all foreign connections, and their dread of being involved in the duke of *Mecklenburgh's* affairs in *Germany*. To colour the injustice done to the duchess of *Mecklenburgh*, it was given out, that the late emperor, *Peter II.* who was invested with the power of nominating his own successor, had passed by the duchess of *Mecklenburgh* in favour of her younger sister.

settled in  
the prin-  
cess of  
Meck-  
lenburgh,

THE duchess of *Mecklenburgh*, though she was sensible of, and protested against, the wrong that was done her, was destitute of all the means to assert her right; and she was forced quietly to submit to see her younger sister mount the throne of *Russia*. The *Russian* nobility and senate, upon this occasion, discovered the strongest dispositions to limit the Imperial authority; and before the empress took possession of her new dignity, they obliged her to sign a kind of a capitulation, which, in fact, threw the government into their own hands. The empress herself, being a woman of sense and spirit, knew the invalidity of her own title, as well as of the senate's proceedings; but she wisely dissembled both. With regard to the latter, it soon appeared that the new modelled government was no better than an aristocracy, which was likely to prove more oppressive to the people than the power of the crown itself had ever been. Such of the nobility as had been excluded by the new capitulation from the



the government, readily joined with the empress in annulling the capitulation ; and all the measures she took for that purpose were so prudent and so vigorous, that in a few days after her succession, she became as absolute as any of her predecessors had been.

SHE next applied herself towards supplying the defects of her own title ; but this she found to be a difficult and hazardous attempt. The *Russians* hated the *Germans* beyond any other people, and of all the *Germans*, none was so disagreeable to them as duke *Leopold* of *Mecklenburgh*. Though he lived upon very bad terms with his wife, yet he began now to consider himself as a very powerful prince in her right. The czarina was no stranger to his bad treatment of her sister, and the aversion the *Russians* had to his person ; notwithstanding which, she resolved to declare the duke's daughter, the only child he had by his duchess, her successor in the empire. Many reasons of state, however, concurred for excluding the duke from all benefit that could arise from this high destination of his daughter. It was easy to foresee, that if the duke should once obtain a footing in *Russia*, he could soon raise a party that might give great trouble to the government. To prevent so undesirable an event, the empress privately communicated to her sister the duchess, her intentions ; which were, that her niece, the princess of *Mecklenburgh*, should be educated at her court, that the *Russians* might be accustomed to look upon her as her successor in the empire ; and that, if the duchess possibly could escape from her husband, she should accompany her daughter to *Petersburgh*. The duchess, who was thoroughly dissatisfied with the treatment she met with from her husband, agreed to this proposal ; and she and her daughter effected their escape from the duke into *Russia*, where they were received with all the honours due to their rank, and the affection borne to them by the empress.

THE latter, though a wise and a great princess, had her weaknesses ; and her chief one was, an unmeasurable affection she bore towards one *Biren*, a man of mean original, whom she had preferred to be duke of *Courland*. This ridiculous partiality was by her carried to such a height, that it influenced all her actions ; and it was thought, that could she have done it with any degree of decency or prospect of success, she would have made him her successor in the empire. She, however, stretched, or rather overstrained, her power to serve him ; and thereby undid all that she had been so long labouring to effect. The duchess of *Mecklenburgh* had the uncommon satisfaction of seeing her daughter treated as

opposed.

the presumptive heir of a mighty empire for three years before her death. Her husband, the duke, though sensible how unwelcome his presence must be in *Russia*, could not resist the impulses of curiosity, and it is said, that he put himself in the train of an embassy, which he sent to *Petersburgh*, that he might have the satisfaction of beholding the high marks of distinction paid by the empress to his daughter. In 1739, the czarina gave her niece in marriage to *Antony Ulric*, prince of *Brunswic-Wolfenbuttle*. This match was far from being agreeable to some of the greatest subjects of the *Russian* empire, who opposed it, as tending to introduce a *German* government into their country; but the power of the empress was by this time so well established, that their opposition was fatal only to themselves. In the event, the match itself was found to be a political contrivance between the empress and *Biren*; for the princess of *Brunswic*, who was in her own person, in the course of descent, preferable to her issue in the succession, being brought to bed of a son, whose name was *Iwan*, or *John*, the empress *Anne*, who survived the marriage but about twelve-months, appointed *Biren* to be regent of the empire during the minority of the young prince, whose father and mother had no other share in the government than the charge of his education, and that of the other children who might be born of the marriage; and who, in case of *John's* death, were to succeed in course to the empire.

THIS destination, though unjust and absurd in itself, was strengthened with all the precautions that human policy could suggest to render it permanent. Baron *Osterman*, high chancellor of *Russia*, was appointed to be first minister; count *Munich*, one of the greatest generals of his time, was to command the army; and a council, the members of which were entirely in *Biren's* interest, was appointed during the minority. Those arrangements were far from being pleasing to the princess of *Mecklenburgh*; but her situation was very delicate. The validity of her son's nomination to the empire, rested entirely upon the will of the late empress, which she could not pretend to set aside, without endangering her own succession. Though she was entirely sensible of the injury that had been done to her, yet she was forced to dissemble. The right of the duke of *Holstein*, grandson to czar *Peter the Great*, was secretly abetted by many of the most powerful of the *Russian* grandees. The princess *Elizabeth*, daughter of the same czar and the empress *Catherine*, was still alive; nor was there in all the civil constitution of *Russia*, a fundamental rule for succession, excepting the nomination

mination of their several soveteigns, which had been again and again brokern into. All that the princefs of *Mecklenburgh*, under fuch circumftances, could do, was to form a party to countermine *Biren*, who had no family-interest in the empire, and who was hated by the great nobility. To counterbalance this unpopularity, he made ufe of his powers as regent to fill the moft important pofts in the empire with his own creatures, and this ferved only to haften his ruin. They became eafily fenfible, that having no fupport but the will of the late empress, which was growing every day more and more contemptible, they could have no fure dependence upon him; and therefore they privately connected themfelves with the princefs of *Mecklenburgh*, who behaved with great prudence on this trying occafion.

UPON the death of the empress *Anne*, the young *Iwan*, <sup>Death of</sup> though but two months old, was proclaimed emperor; and <sup>the empress</sup> *Biren's* conduct foon gave the princefs advantages which the *Anne*.

could not otherwife have hoped for. His upftart quality rendered him odious to many of the chief nobility, who, <sup>John pro-</sup> because they difdained his favours, were by him sentenced to <sup>claimed</sup> banifhment in *Siberia*. Even fuch of the nobility as accepted <sup>emperor.</sup> them, were fhocked at the thoughts of being obliged for their promotion to one who was fo much inferior to themfelves. The princefs of *Mecklenburgh* omitted no opportunity of fomenting this general difcontent; and *Biren* thought himfelf fo fecure, that he gave himfelf little trouble in prying into her conduct, by which fhe had an opportunity of ftrengthening her party, till her meafures being fettled, the great nobility of *Ruffia*, in the night preceding the 17th of *November*, 1740, afsembled in the palace of the princefs of *Mecklenburgh*, who then bore the title of grand-ducheffs, and not only declared her regent of the empire, but gave orders for arresting *Biren* as an ufurper and a tyrant, which was done accordingly. Soon after, he was legally tried, and fentenced to lofe his head; but his fentence was by the grand-ducheffs commuted into that of banifhment to *Siberia*, together with all his family and adherents.

THE exaltation of the grand-ducheffs to the regency of <sup>Duke of</sup> the *Ruffian* empire, gave her father fome weight in the <sup>Courland</sup> affairs of the North, though it does not appear that fhe <sup>condemned.</sup> interefted herfelf much in the re-eftablifhment of his fortunes. When fentence paffed againft *Biren*; he was declared to have forfeited the duchy of *Courland*, a proceeding which, however, was afterwards judged to be irregular; and a new election being held, it went in favour of prince *Antony* of *Brunfwic*, husband to the grand-ducheffs, whose power was far

from being so well secured as she imagined. The *Swedes* were particularly interested in resenting the injury that had been done to the duke of *Holslein*, and had likewise some territorial disputes with the *Russians*, upon which a war broke out in 1741, in *Finland*. This war was but poorly managed on the part of *Sweden*. *Lascy*, the *Russian* general, took *Wilmanstora*, and gained many signal advantages over the *Swedes*. The great-duchess, at the same time, shewed a moderation with which *Russia* was seldom acquainted. She gave orders, not only that the *Swedish* prisoners should be treated with all kind of humanity, but that all the subjects of that kingdom, residing in *Russia*, should have security for their persons and effects, and be permitted to reside in, or depart out of, the empire as they should think proper; but the great-duchess herself was now on the eve of a revolution that was to strip her and her family of all their power.

Revolution

THOUGH her son was emperor by a priority of descent from the elder brother of czar *Peter the Great*, yet it was well known, that he filled the throne of *Russia* in direct violation of the testamentary dispositions of that prince, whose memory was adored by the *Russians*. The princess of *Mecklenburgh* and her aunt the empress *Anne* were aware of this difficulty, and therefore they had a strict eye over the princess *Elizabeth*, the only surviving child of *Peter the Great*. This princess resembled her father in his person, was graceful, majestic, affable, and prudent; and she had, through all the revolutions of government, behaved with so much wisdom and decency, that nothing could be laid to her charge. Notwithstanding this, she was fully sensible of the wrong that had been done her, by being set aside from the succession; and she lived in the palace as a state prisoner surrounded by spies. This circumstance of confinement awakened the compassion of the *Russians*; nor could all the precautions of the court prevent her from having secret interviews with many noblemen and officers, who promised to stand by her, and assist her in mounting the throne. The difficulties, however, that she had to encounter were so various, and seemingly so insurmountable, that after the scheme of a conspiracy was far advanced, her resolution was staggered at the thoughts of the danger to which she exposed her friends. As explanations, by discourse or writings, were dangerous, one of the conspirators, who understood drawing, sketched her figure, with the head taken off by an executioner, himself lying stretched on the rack, and her other friends suffering the most horrible deaths. She comprehended the meaning of the drawing, and that it was far more safe for her and her party

party to advance than to recede. Matters, however, were not carried on with such impenetrable secrecy, but that the great-duchess had an intimation of the conspiracy going forward, and repaired in person to the apartments of the princess, who received her with so much serenity and composure, that her suspicions vanished, after questioning her upon the subject of her visit, which the princess *Elizabeth* strongly disavowed.

UPON the departure of the grand-duchess, in the night between the 5th and 6th of *December*, the conspirators, perceiving their designs could be kept no longer secret, resolved to proceed to immediate execution, and repaired to the apartments of the princess *Elizabeth*, who had already concerted the plan of the Revolution. She was favoured by the universal defection of the *Russian* army from the *German* government, as it was called; and their officers repairing to her lodging, she gave orders for securing all the *German* guards, and for preventing any alarm or noise from reaching the ear of the great-duchess. She then put herself at the head of a favourite regiment of guards, and marched to the principal apartments of the palace, where she placed centinels over the great-duchess and all her chief domestics, and set guards upon the houses of all her ministers and officers of state. All this was done with so much secrecy and regularity, that the great-duchess had no suspicion of what had happened, till, awakening in the morning, she found herself a prisoner; and in a few minutes she understood that the princess *Elizabeth* had been proclaimed empress of the *Russians*. Soon after, the new empress, who had by this time assumed all the spirit of her father, and who seemed to have lost all her timidity with her private station, entered the apartment of the great-duchess, and in person acquainted her with the catastrophe that had happened; exhorting her at the same time to submit to her fate, which was, that she and her son should remove out of the palace to another house, from whence they were to be conducted to *Germany*.

It is to this day uncertain whether the new empress was sincere in this declaration; it is most probable that she was, but that she was afterwards persuaded of the danger that must attend the leaving such powerful competitors for her crown at liberty. The great-duchess and her son, however, set out under a guard; and it was remarked that she behaved with great equanimity. During her government, the princess *Elizabeth* had been treated with less severity than under the preceding, and she had suffered her to keep all the valuable jewels that had been presented or left her by the late empress.

The

The great-duchess had philosophy enough not to repine at her reverse of fortune. She had for some time been reconciled to her father, who had served her faithfully at the northern courts, and whose experience had now rendered him a valuable friend; so that she comforted herself with the prospect of passing the remainder of her days with him and her son. But she was disappointed in those pleasing hopes: the new empress of the *Russias* had issued a commission for trying the heads of the late administration; and it was pretended that such discoveries had been made as rendered it unsafe to trust the great-duchess or her husband with their liberty. Accordingly, in *January* 1742, in their journey to *Dantzic*, they were arrested and carried to *Riga*, where they were put under confinement. All *Europe*, especially the courts of *Germany*, were surprised at this proceeding, as no crime or act of delinquency could be charged against the great-duchess, who had done no more than submitted to the will of others, and that too in her own prejudice. The courts of *Vienna* and *Berlin* presented memorials on this head; but all the answer they received from the empress *Elizabeth* was, that the princess of *Mecklenburgh* should be treated in her confinement with the regard due to her rank, till the state of affairs could admit of her enlargement.

IN the mean while, the same defect in the succession took place now as had done in the time of the empress *Anne*, and the same remedy was applied: for as that empress reigned in prejudice of her elder sister and her daughter, so the empress *Elizabeth* reigned in prejudice of her elder sister's son, the duke of *Holstein*, who was at the same time next in blood to the crown of *Sweden*. To prevent any bad consequences from this preposterous order of succession, the new empress sent for the young duke of *Holstein*, adopted him as her successor in the empire, and married him in 1745 to the princess *Catharine* of *Anhalt-Zerbst*. His melancholy fate is well known; and his wife, who by birth is in no manner of degree related to the imperial blood of *Russia*, is now the sole sovereign of that empire. As to the princess of *Mecklenburgh*, she died, after being about three years in her confinement; and it is uncertain whether her son is now dead or alive; but if the latter, he is not at his liberty.

Succession  
of Meck-  
lenburgh.

**CHARLES-LEOPOLD**, the deprived duke of *Mecklenburgh*, having no surviving issue of his own body, was succeeded, on his death in 1747, in his duchy by his brother *Christian Lewis*, the administrator of his estates. This prince, in 1755, new modelled the constitution of his state by a fundamental convention which he entered into with his nobility,  
and

and which we shall have occasion to mention hereafter. He died in 1756, and was succeeded by his son duke *Frederic*, whose mother was *Gustava*, one of the princesses of *Strelitz*. As the situation of *Mecklenburgh* is peculiarly unhappy in all disputes that happen between the *Germans* and the *Swedes*, it became, during the late war between *Prussia* and *Sweden*, a theatre of the most dismal calamities. The duke had seen, in his own family, a melancholy example of disobedience to the head of the empire, and therefore could not be brought to take part against the house of *Austria*. The *Swedes* had no regard to his dominions, more than if they had been an enemy's country; and his *Prussian* majesty treated them with a severity that can scarcely be justified by the laws of war. He not only laid all *Mecklenburgh* under the most cruel contributions, but obliged the duke's subjects to enlist in his armies, and to subsist his troops while they themselves were starving for want of bread. A representation of those miseries is said to have come to his *Prussian* majesty's hands, so feelingly and pathetically drawn, that it is said to have contributed to raise the author to be partner of the first throne in *Europe*.

*ADOLPHUS-FREDERIC* III. duke of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*, the year after he succeeded to his dominions, married *Dorothy-Sophia*, daughter to *John-Adolphus*, duke of *Holstein-Ploen*; but he died without having any issue. He was succeeded by *Adolphus-Frederic* IV. the son of his younger brother *Charles-Lewis-Frederic*; which *Adolphus-Frederic* is the present reigning duke of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*. Besides him, his father had by his wife, *Albertina-Elizabeth*, daughter to *Ernest-Frederic*, duke of *Saxe-Hildbourghausen*; *Charles-Lewis-Frederic*, born the 10th of *December* 1741, who has a considerable post in the *Hanoverian* service; *Ernest-Gottlob-Albert*, born *August* the 27th, 1742; and *George-Augustus*, born *August* the 3d, 1748; and two daughters: *Christina-Sophia-Albertina*, born *December* the 6th, 1735; and *Sophia-Charlotte*, the present queen of *Great-Britain*, born *May* 16th, 1744, and married to his present *Britannic* majesty *September* the 8th, 1761. Here the history of *Mecklenburgh* properly ends; and we shall now, as usual, proceed to give some account of the duchy itself, and its constitution; which are well worthy the attention of the reader.

*AUTHORS* and geographers are divided with regard to the *Natural* extent of this duchy. *Beehrs*, in his *Reb. Mecl.* (says *Busch-history of* in his *Geography*) makes its length fifteen *German* miles, *Mecklen-* and its breadth twelve; whereas *Frauke*, in his *Mecklenburgh*, gives it (and that too exclusive of the lordship of *Stargard*) a length of eighteen such miles, but reduces its breadth to nine;

nine; and according to *Chver* it is from twenty-four to thirty long, with a breadth of nine, ten, and eighteen. The last computation seems to approach nearest to the truth; but till the exact measurement of the country be completed, and the result of it published in a map, no precise determination can be made. Within it also lie the principality of *Schwerin*, and the *Swedish* town of *Wismar*, with its dependencies. As to the country itself, even the inhabitants are divided with regard to its fertility and produce; but the unfavourable representations that have been published of it are justly to be suspected, because they were drawn up to move the commiseration of the imperial court, in the dispute between the duke and his subjects, by placing their circumstances in the most disadvantageous light. It is true, great part of the country is taken up with unprofitable lakes, and some of it is heathy and sandy; but upon the whole it is fertile, and produces every thing necessary for human subsistence, its soil being equal to that of *Holstein* and *Pomerania*, two of the finest corn-countries in *Europe*. Its greatest misfortune lies in its situation, which has so often within these two centuries rendered it the seat of war, that the inhabitants have not had leisure to give their grounds the necessary culture. Even the sandy parts of it, when tilled, produce excellent rye, when untilled they make good sheep-walks, and when improved they afford barley and wheat in great abundance. The country is as pleasant as it is fertile, being interspersed with hill and dale, woods, lakes and rivers, which yield excellent game, fish, and great numbers of cattle for exportation; and even their marshy grounds, when drained, are excessively profitable. Baron *Luke*, who had a considerable place in the administration of *Mecklenburgh* in 1730, in a publication of his affirms, that in the year 1632 the nobility and land-holders of *Mecklenburgh* estimated the collective value of their estates at 10, 323, 317 guilders; but, at the time he wrote, he affirms, that their rents amounted to twenty-one millions of guilders; so that the whole duchy raises to its owners annually about a million sterling.

ABOUT a century ago a bold project was formed for making a navigable canal to run south from *Wismar* to the lake of *Schwerin*, and along the *Stor* and *Elde*, so as to open a navigation between the *North Sea* and the *Baltic*, and to avoid the passage of the *Sound*; but this project, which must have been so detrimental to the crown of *Denmark*, and other powers, was soon discontinued. Among other disadvantages attending the situation of *Mecklenburgh*, is the neglect of commerce; for though it might have three separate harbours on  
the



the *Baltic*, it has but one, which is *Rostock*. Towards the south-west the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* is washed by the *Elbe*, which is joined by the *Elde*, rising out of the *Plauer-Lake*. The river *Reckenitz*, so called from a village of that name, rises in the principality of *Wenden*, and divides *Mecklenburgh* from *Pomerania*, discharging itself at last into the *Baltic* on one side, as the *Pene* does on the other. Besides these rivers, many others arise in *Mecklenburgh*; the *Havel* particularly, which issues from the principality of *Wenden*, and runs into the *Marche* of *Brandenburgh*.

EXCLUSIVE of *Rostock*, are found in *Mecklenburgh* forty-five cities and towns, great and small, three convents, and 594 manors, the peasants of which are in the state of the old *English* villainage, their persons being transferable with the land. It is remarkable, however, that the interest of the sovereigns of *Mecklenburgh* has been greatly reduced since the year 1628, at which time they possessed 1000 farms, their nobility no more than 727, and the convents 768. In the duchy are three capitals: *Parchim*, which is the metropolis of the *Mecklenburg* circle; *Gustrow*, that of the principality of *Wenden*; and *New Brandenburgh*, of the *Stargard* circle. Each of those capitals convokes the towns of its circle, and its magistrates precede in all public assemblies. We have already mentioned the fundamental convention entered into by duke *Christian-Lewis* at *Rostock*, on the 18th of *April* 1755. By that it was agreed, that all and every estate or parcel of land belonging either to the nobility, the three convents of the country, the district of *Rostock*, the dependencies of the municipal towns, and œconomies, should be measured and reduced into hufs, one half of which, on performing the several services reserved in feudal and allodial patents, should be exempt from the contribution; but the other half remain subject to it, and agreeably thereto pay the annual assessment. Its cities:  
See  
Busching.

THE states of *Mecklenburgh* consist of nobility and towns; and we have already mentioned the indissoluble contract of union entered into between the nobility and commons of the two duchies of *Schwerin* and *Gustrow* in 1523: "This union (says *Busching*) consists as well in a conjunction of the provinces, as in that of the states, of which each is composed. With respect to the former, it was agreed, that all the free settled inhabitants of both duchies, including the whole of the *Stargard* circle, should enjoy an undisturbed equality in rights, privileges, and immunities, in such manner that these three circles should be governed by the same laws, ordinances, and compacts; and that on such an equality

lity and communion, both in the civil and ecclesiastical government, diets, contributions, and provincial convents, as was agreeable to the tenor of the said union, and of course in all other rights, privileges, and immunities; and that in all cases and exigencies they should be duly aiding in council and action. The latter, or the conjunction of the nobility and towns, implies an irrevocable participation and community of all the rights and prerogatives appertaining to the nobility and states; and consequently that *Rostock* and the other towns should not be curtailed, detrimented, or excluded from their share in the diets, courts of justice, lesser committee, convents, and all other customary rights and duties. Farther, one state shall not, without the knowledge or consent of the other, make any contract relative to common rights; and all contracts so made are declared null and void. In another instrument, opposite to the former, the union of 1523 is not to be brought in plea, nor be of any validity, either directly or indirectly; nor shall the sovereignty of the country be impaired or weakened thereby."

THE business of the diets, all which are summoned by the duke, is to fix annual contributions; to issue proper directions with regard to the taxes paid to the empire or the circle; to settle the portions paid to the princesses; and to remedy grievances. The states of the three circles are summoned to those diets which are alternately held at *Sternberg* and *Enalchin*, in autumn; but, upon extraordinary occasions, the duke may assemble them at any time of the year, specifying, four weeks before-hand, in the summons, the particular business upon which they are convened. When they meet, their proposals are regularly sent to the nobility and the states, and they return their answers in a few days. Four provincial counsellors, properly qualified, are appointed for each of the two duchies of *Schwerin* and *Gustrow*; and in case one of those counsellors drops off, the duke names his successor out of a list of three people, presented to him by the nobility and states of the duchy in which the vacancy happens. The president in each circle is an hereditary marshal, who ranks with the colonels, as the provincial counsellors do with the duke's privy-counsellors.

"THE lesser committee of the nobility and states consists of two provincial counsellors; that is to say, one from each duchy; with three deputies of the nobility, being one from each circle; one deputy of the town of *Rostock*; and three from the vorderstadte of *Parchim*, *Gustrow*, and *New Brandenburg*; making in all nine persons; but this number the nobility and states may encrease at their own expence. This com-

committee is, by a royal edict, invested with the weight and rights of a college representative of the whole body of the nobility and commons. The choice of the members is left entirely to the free will of the nobility and commons. With regard to ordinances relative to the whole country (the nobility and commons included) the opinion of the latter is first demanded, and nothing enacted in prejudice of their rights. The meetings of the nobility in the several bailiwicks are under no restrictions; but other assemblies, or *Landes-convente*, as they were called, which may be thought necessary, must be convened by writ from the sovereign." See  
Büfching.

WITH regard to the religion of the *Mecklenburghers*, the bulk of them are *Lutherans*, but intermingled with *Calvinists* and Roman Catholics. Their religious affairs are in the hands of superintendants, in the nature of bishops, and under them are provosts; most of their towns have grammar-schools, but *Rostock* is an university. The exports of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh* consist in corn, flax, hemp, hops, wax, honey, cattle, butter, cheese, wool, and several kinds of wood. But their manufactures of wool, leather, tobacco, and other trades, are too few and insufficient for the supply of the inhabitants. The duke of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*, as possessed of the two duchies of *Schwerin* and *Güstrow*, has two votes among the princes in the diet of the empire, and in the circle of the *Lower Saxony*. His assessment for his dukedoms, in the matricula of the empire, is forty horse and sixty-seven foot, or 748 florins to a *Roman* month: but when the towns of *Wismar*, and the bailiwicks of *Poll* and *Neukloster*, were dismembered from the duchy, an abatement was made in this assessment, which was to be made up by the *Swedes*. Ibid.  
Government.

THE privy-council of the regency belonging to the dukes is the supreme college, but a demesne chamber manages the revenue. "From the three law-courts at *Schwerin*, *Rostock*, and *Strelitz*, as likewise from the *Rostock*-consistory, appeals lie to the high and provincial court of justice, some particular cases excepted, in which appeals are precluded, either absolutely or in part. Ever since the year 1701 this high and provincial court of justice assembles at *Güstrow*, holding its sessions four times a-year. This court is common not only to the two ducal lines, but the nobility and states likewise have a share in its administration. The presidents and vice-presidents, with four assessors, are nominated by the duke. The nobility sends to it four extraordinary assessors, and one ordinary; but the three other ordinary assessors come from the principality of *Schwerin*, the university of *Rostock*, and the

*Ibid.*

the town of *Rostock*. Processes, as far as comports with the privilege granted to the duke's *de non appellando*, may be removed from those courts to the high tribunals of the empire. The nobility and states continue unimplested in the jurisdiction granted them, together with their fiefs and estate, as likewise the magistrates in that appertaining to them in the towns; namely, of being invested with the first hearing of causes."

*and revenues.*

As to the revenues of the *Schwerin* line, duke *Frederic-William* publicly declared, that those arising from the demesne bailiwicks and regalia brought him in 300,000 rix-dollars a-year; so that, upon the whole, the income of the duchy cannot be estimated at less than 100,000 *l.* sterling a-year. The public expenditures are either ordinary and annual, and ordinary or extraordinary. "To the former the sovereign, for his demesnes, has engaged to furnish the sum of 6000 rix-dollars, and a like sum also for all his patrimonial towns collectively; but the nobility pay their proportion according to the number of their taxable bufs. The annual quota of the town of *Rostock* is 2000 rix-dollars. The extraordinary charges levied for the public safety and benefit, are defrayed by imposts agreed on between the sovereign, the nobility, and the states; and of these the prince's demesnes, as well as the estates of the nobility and towns, contribute all in common one third; whereas the expences which are levied for the convenience of one state only, are defrayed out of its particular purse."

*Ibid.*

"WITH respect to the revenues of the dukes of the *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz* line, the *Stargard* circle, out of the land, and other taxes, produces annually between 70 and 80,000 rix-dollars. In the *Hamburg*-act of 1701, the revenues of the demesne bailiwicks of this circle were estimated only at 31,000 rix-dollars; but under duke *Adolphus-Frederic IV.* they are said to have been improved to above 20,000 more. From the principality of *Ratzeburgh*, and the *Boitzenburgh*-toll (out of which it levies 9000 dollars in specie) the duke receives about 46,000 rix-dollars; and consequently in the whole about 126,000 rix-dollars."

"FOR the maintenance of the duke's troops no payment is required, either of the nobility or states, the convents, or places in the district of *Rostock*, the duke taking on him to defray all the expence of the military establishment out of the annual contributions agreed on. The nobility and their vassals are also exempted from quartering and maintaining the militia, as the municipal towns are from quartering the horse. Except also in urgent cases, and such as threaten  
the

the safety of the empire, circle, or country, the nobility and states are exempt from furnishing magazines, or summoning their vassals and dependants to work at any fortification, or to carry necessaries thither, or to pay money in lieu of such services. The towns, however, quarter the foot, and pay service-money."

THE two duchies are divided into three circles; the *Mecklenburgh*, the *Wender*, and the *Stargard*. The *Mecklenburgh* circle properly consists of the antient duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, but now comprehends the county of *Schwerin*, the western part of the principality of *Wenden*, and part of the lordship of *Rostock*. The head town of the circle is *Parchim*, which contains nothing remarkable. The *Elde* divides it into two towns, the Old and the New. It sends a deputy to the lesser committee of the states, and formerly it had a castle and a mint. *Schwerin* was the residence of the dukes of that line, and is situated on a fine lake, in which there is an island containing the duke's palace, which communicates with the town by a bridge. The situation, the gardens, and the paintings of this palace are very fine. We have already mentioned upon what occasion the bishopric of *Schwerin* formed part of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*. The cathedral of the see was founded in 1170 by *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, who gave the property of the county to *Günzelin*, whose descendants held it for above 200 years. This circle contains likewise *Boitzenburgh*, which is chiefly remarkable, for its antiquity and toll on the river *Elbe*, producing about 40,000 dollars yearly, 9000 of which, as we have already observed, is part of the revenue of the duke of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*. The income of this toll, and of other bailiwicks, the whole amounting to 60,000 rix-dollars a-year, were in 1734 appropriated by the emperor to the house of *Brunswick-Lunenburgh*, in consideration of the great expences attending the executing the ban of the empire in 1732, of which the *Brunswick* share alone amounted to 789,856 rix-dollars, 12 ruitzers; the duke of *Brunswick's* to 268,755 rix-dollars; and the sum-total to 1,018,272, exclusive of 50,000 rix-dollars advanced by the elector of *Brunswick* for the *Saltzburg*-troops, besides the charge incurred in quelling a tumult.

IT must be acknowledged, that this immense expence was too hastily liquidated by the emperor, who had at that time his reasons for obliging, to the utmost, the princes of the *Brunswick*-line. Besides the above-mentioned towns, this circle contains twenty bailiwicks, one of which is that of *Mecklenburgh*, which some writers call *Megapolis*, or the

Great Town. In 1058 a bishopric was founded there; and at that time it contained three convents. In 1164 it was taken and burnt to the ground by *Pribislaus II.* the last king of the *Obodrites*; but in the year 1170 it was rebuilt, tho' it never recovered its ancient lustre; and since the building of *Wismar* it has dwindled into a village. The bailiwick of *Dobberan* lies in the lordship of *Rostock*, about half a German mile from the *Baltic*. A famous *Cistercian* monastery formerly stood here, which in 1179 was demolished by the *Wendi*, but rebuilt in 1186. Its church is very large, and in it lie interred two kings of the *Obotrites*, with twelve lords of *Werle*, several princes of *Mecklenburgh*, and other persons of note. At present, the convent is converted into a hunting-seat; and out of the produce of its lands, and some salt-works at *Lunenburgh*, which were bequeathed to the university of *Rostock*, the professors were paid their salaries. Along the *Baltic*-coast, in the neighbourhood of this bailiwick, runs the celebrated *Heiligen-Damm*, being a natural wall of stones, of most beautiful imagery and colours <sup>2</sup>.

THE bailiwick of *Eldena*, in the principality of *Wenden*, was formed out of a *Benedictine* nunnery, founded in 1230; but that institution has been discontinued ever since the Reformation took place in this duchy. The revenues of this bailiwick are mortgaged to the house of *Brandenburgh*. It contains an allum-mine, and a salt-work; and a remarkable strong castle stood within it in former times. Within this bailiwick lie a great number of noblemen's estates, which we shall forbear to particularize.

The Wenden circle.

THE *Wenden* circle contains the greatest part of that principality, as well as of the duchy of *Gustrow*, and the whole of the lordship of *Rostock*. *Gustrow*, the<sup>h</sup> capital of the circle, is situated in the principality of *Wenden*, on the little river *Nebel*; being one of the largest and most pleasant towns in the whole country, as also the seat of the chief courts of judicature, and a superintendency. In this town is a good palace of the prince's, and in the church belonging to it lies the vault of the ducal family. It contains likewise a cathedral, and one parish-church. In 1220 it obtained the *Schwerin*-right. This circle, besides a great many other towns and bailiwicks, contains the town of *Rostock*, anciently called *Rotzstock*, which is the largest in both duchies, but, instead of forming one of the states, it is reckoned only among the nobility; nor was it included in

<sup>2</sup> BUSCHING, ubi supra.

<sup>h</sup> Ibid.

the partition made in 1621 between the dukes *Adolphus-Frederic* I. and *John-Albert* II. its district remaining in common to both princes and duchies. *Rostock* lies on the *Warno*, at the mouth of which it has a harbour named *Warnemunde*, and thus it enjoys also a convenient situation for trade. It consists properly of three parts: The *Altstadt*, or Old Town, stands on an eminence towards the east, and contains the churches of *St. Nicolas*, *St. Peter*, and *St. Catharins*. Of these, the two first are parochial. In 1677 the greatest part of this place was destroyed by fire, but has been since rebuilt with greater regularity and conveniency. The *Mittlerstadt*, or Middle Town, is separated from the *Altstadt* by a branch from the *Warno*. In it lies *St. Mary's* church, being a stately structure, in which are preserved the entrails of the celebrated *Grotius*, who died in 1645. In this part also is the church of *St. John*, containing a library, with the council-house. In the *Neustadt*, or New Town, lies *St. James's* church, which was formerly collegiate, and contained a library, together with that of the *Holy Ghost*, having a rich alms-house; the church of *St. Michael*, and that of the *Holy-Cross*, at the last of which is a convent for young ladies, natives of *Rostock*. The town-prior of this church is chosen by the conventualists and burgher-masters, and confirmed by the dukes. The university lies likewise in the New Town. This was jointly founded by the dukes and the town, in 1419, and privileged by pope *Martin V.* whose bull was afterwards confirmed by the emperor *Ferdinand* I. In 1437 the town falling under the ban both of the emperor and pope, the professors removed to *Griefswalde*, from which place they returned not again till the year 1443. In 1487, a misunderstanding having arisen between the dukes and the town, the university was removed to *Lubeck*, but restored again in 1492. This place has not only suffered thrice, and that too very considerably, by the pestilence, but at the beginning of the Reformation was almost entirely forsaken by its professors and students; till, in 1530, *Arnold Buren* vigorously set about the restoration of it, and in 1560 the emperor *Ferdinand* endowed it with a new charter. Pursuant to a convention made in 1563, between the dukes and the town, the former nominate and pay fifteen professors, and the town nine. The senate of the academy consists of nine ducal professors, and the nine appointed by the magistracy. In the same convention it was agreed, that the dukes should annually contribute the sum of 3000 florins, and the town 500, towards the salaries of the professors. Here is also a public free grammar-school.

The twelve ministers of the town, in conjunction with the superintendant, form the consistory, from which appeals lie to the two supreme courts of justice. The dukes are possessed of the mansion-house, which formerly belonged to the abbot of *Dobberan*; and, on account of their frequent residence in it, stile *Rostock* their residence-town. The magistracy consists of three burgher-masters, one syndic, twelve aldermen, one secretary, and a prothonotary. It is endowed with the right of coining copper, silver, and gold, and in consequence thereof has a mint. It sends a deputy to the lesser committee, and an extraordinary assessor to the two supreme courts of justice. Both the civil and criminal jurisdiction are vested in the magistracy, though with right of appeal to the two supreme courts of justice, or the magistracy, except in those cases where no appeal is allowed. The town enjoys other considerable privileges, yet is hereditarily subject to the dukes, to whom, as an acknowledgment of its subjection, it annually pays the sum of fifty-five rix-dollars, as an *Urbor* (or *tributum originale*); as likewise the sum of 600 florins, in consideration of the grant of an excise. Of its contribution to the public expenditures mention has been made in the introduction. *Rostock* carries on a large trade. About the year 1030 it was erected into a town, and in 1166 enlarged and fortified out of the remains of the town of *Kiszin*, which once stood in its neighbourhood. In the year 1218 *Lubeck*-rights were conferred on it, and in the same century also it was admitted into the Hanseatic-confederacy. About the same time too, it had still its own lords. On the death of *Nicolas*, the last of those lords, it fell under the dominion of the margraves of *Brandenburgh*; but eight years after it threw itself, on a disgust, under the protection of *Eric*, king of *Denmark*; from whom, about ten years after this event, that is to say, towards the middle of the fourteenth century, it likewise detached itself. This gave rise to a hot war, both with the *Danes* and *Henry* duke of *Mecklenburgh*; during which the burghers, in a tumult, killed their magistracy, and chose others in their stead. But being besieged by duke *Henry* in 1314, they came to an accommodation with him, and acknowledged him for their sovereign. In 1323 duke *Henry* procured himself to be invested with the lordship of *Rostock*, by *Christopher* king of *Denmark* and his son *Erick*. In 1428 they again deposed their magistracy; but for this being excommunicated in 1437 by the council of *Basil*, and put under the ban by the emperor, they restored them two years after to their former dignity. In 1487 they again revolted  
against



against the dukes, which gave rise to a five years war. In the sixteenth century new animosities broke out between the town and the dukes; but in 1573 and 1584 these were composed by a perpetual convention. In 1620 a compact was concluded for the town-excise, strand-monies, and estates; and in 1715 another relating to the right of garrisoning, hunting and excise<sup>1</sup>.

THE district of *Rostock* consists of the lands belonging to the town, the alms-house, and the convents. *Warnemund* contains a church which belongs to *Rostock*; and when the trade of that district was in a more flourishing condition than it is at present, the *Swedes* levied a toll of two rix-dollars and an half on all shipping passing that way, which produced 80,000 rix-dollars a-year: but, according to *Busching*, at present it scarce exceeds 6000. This toll was imposed by *Sweden* in the thirty years war; and the toll-right in the ports of *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburgh* having been granted to it at the peace of *Westphalia*, they retained this; and for the further securing and levying of it, erected a fort here. This fort the dukes of *Mecklenburgh* have complained of, alledging that the toll-right is to be understood only of the harbours of the towns, which were ceded to *Sweden*. That crown, however, has kept possession of it; but about the year 1740 mortgaged it to the duke of *Mecklenburgh*.

THE three following *Lutheran* convents for ladies, appertaining to the nobility and states of both duchies, are by the *Reversalia* of 1572, and the perpetual convention of 1755, to be maintained in their respective privileges. The nobles and states chuse, nominate, and change, at pleasure, the purveyors and other officers of these convents, though with the prince's confirmation; but if this be not done within a year and a day, such delay is deemed a confirmation. The accounts belonging to them are annually controlled by the sovereign and the several deputies of the nobility and states. The town's share in them, pursuant to the act of the nobility and states at the diet of *Gustrow* in 1737, and the perpetual agreement of 1755, consists herein; viz. That in the three places belonging to the convent of *Dobbertin* they raise the full sum, and in six other places one half; that is to say, two of each convent, each to be computed at sixty rix-dollars yearly, but nothing more, and thus of course neither dwelling nor provisions. The convents may not, without the joint consent of the prince,

<sup>1</sup> Ibid.

nobility, and states, purchase or acquire any parcel of land, though they are allowed to exchange, or with their savings to buy, whatever land they please out of the duchies. The *jus primarium precum* remains inviolable to the convents, by the solemn promises both of the dukes and their consorts. Both they and their states too are represented on all occasions by the nobility and states. Next follow the convents themselves; viz.

THE convent of *Dobbertin*, situated on a small lake in the principality of *Wenden*, not far from the *Goldberg*. This convent was founded by duke *Henry I.* as a monastery of *Benedictine*-monks; but in 1222 was converted into a nunnery of that order. On the Reformation it was sequestered; but in 1572 the dukes *John-Albert* and *Ulrick* transferred it to the states. Belonging to it are twenty-eight villages.

THE convent of *Ribnitz*, the town of which name is described above. This convent was founded in 1323, by duke *Henry IV.* In his palace in the said town is a nunnery for ladies, of the order of *St. Clare*. In 1572 the sovereigns transferred it to the states. Under it are thirteen villages; and it is likewise possessed of the patronage of *St. Mary's* church in *Ribnitz*, as also of those of *Schwan*, *Darso*, *Wustro*, and *Marlo*. Lately also, with the sovereign's consent, it made a purchase of the *Wulfshagen* estate.

THE convent of *Malcho*, the town of which is described above. This convent was originally intended for a *Dominican*-monastery; but its monks afterwards exchanged it with the *Augustine*-nuns of *Rabel*. In 1572 the sovereigns made a grant of it to the states. Belonging to it are fourteen villages, together with the patronage of the town of *Malcho*, and likewise those of *Lexo* and *Grusso*.

THE circle of *Stargard*, which forms a part of the duchy of *Gustrow*, consists of the ancient lordship of *Stargard*. This country was the subject of long contests between the princes of *Mecklenburgh* and the margraves of *Brandenburgh*. In 1283 the margrave, *Albert IV.* gave it with his daughter *Beatrix* to duke *Henry IV.* who in 1303 still paid an acknowledgment of 5000 marks for it. In 1317 the elector *Waldemar I.* made a second donation of it to duke *Henry IV.* and in 1349 a like cession was made by the elector *Lewis II.* to the dukes *Albert II.* and *John VIII.* and lastly, in the year 1377, the emperor *Charles IV.* annexed it for ever to the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*. In 1621 it became a part of the duchy of *Gustrow*. In 1701, at the convention of *Hamburg*, it was transferred by *Frederic-William*, duke of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*, to *Adolphus-Frederic II.* duke of *Mecklenburgh-*

*Mecklenburgh-Strelitz*, “ *cum omni jure principum imperii*, in such manner that the said duke should, without reserve, exercise in it the *jura territorii & superioritatis*, in all causes and affairs, whether civil or ecclesiastical, and by whatever name distinguished; as also; that as *dominus feudi directus*, all *Mecklenburgh*-vassals should hold of him; but the states in it were to remain in an indissoluble union with the whole body of the states and nobility of *Mecklenburgh*, to be continued in the enjoyment of their votes at the diets, and remain capable of being chosen for provincial counsellors, assessors in the high courts of justice, and administrators of certain convents.” The nobility and towns of this circle are summoned to the diets and other assemblies by the duke of *Mecklenburgh-Schwerin*, who acquaints, however, the duke of *Mecklenburgh-Strelitz* of it, specifying also the articles to be laid before them; and he has likewise the power of sending a representative to inspect the several necessities of the circle. The taxes and collections levied in this circle, as agreed on in the general diets or meetings of the nobility and states, are remitted to the common treasury of the province; but the *Stargard quota contributionis* is refunded. The courts of justice and the consistory are usually held in the duke of *Schwerin*’s name; but in causes relating to the inhabitants of the *Stargard* circle, the citations, injunctions, and sentences, run in both titles, and the duke of *Strelitz* may appoint his assessor at the courts, and his superintendant of *Stargard* to sit in the consistory.

THE chief towns in the circle of *Stargard* are, *New Brandenburg*, which is the capital of the circle, and contains two churches, with a grammar-school. Its streets are straight and broad, and its form circular. *Old Stargard* contains a palace built by the princes of that title. *Strelitz* is a town, situated in a marshy neighbourhood. This place was erected in 1349 by *Otto* and *Ulrich*, counts of *Furstenburgh*. In 1575 and 1676 it was entirely destroyed by fire. Duke *Adolphus-Frederic* chose the palace here for his residence; but on its being burnt down in 1712, that duke built another palace, a little way out of the town, at a place called *Glienke*; and in 1733 also founded a town adjoining to it, under the name of *New-Strelitz*, taking it for granted, that in time it would enlarge so as that *Old* and *New-Strelitz* would become one place<sup>k</sup>. *Furstenburgh* is a town which gives name to a county erected in 1349 by the dukes of

<sup>k</sup> Ibid.

*Mecklenburgh*, in favour of count *Otho-Dewitz*; but that family siding with *Pomerania* in 1369, duke *Albert* re-assumed it to himself. *Wesemburgh* is a small town; but *Pomel*, which is part of its estate, is remarkably fertile. We have already mentioned the bailiwicks of *Nemiro* and *Miro*, which the dukes of *Mecklenburgh* acquired by the cession of *Wismar*.

and Wis-  
mar.

*WISMAR*, in ancient records, stiled *Wissemer* and *Wisfmer*, is a town seated on a bay of the *Baltic*, with a good harbour. This is one of the best and largest places in all those countries, as besides its six churches it has also a particular consistory of its own, with a grammar-school under the direction of eight masters; and is the seat likewise of a *Swedish* court of justice erected in 1653, both for the district and *Swedish Anterior Pomerania*. This court consists of a president, a vice-president, and four assessors. *Wismar* still enjoys a middling trade. It was formerly also a hanse-town, and possessed of the privilege of coining. Its annual contribution amounts to 3000 rix-dollars; the licent to about 3500; and the rent of the ground here, which formerly composed a part of the works, with that lying in other places, produces 6 or 7000 rix-dollars. The first origin of this town is not known with any degree of certainty. In 1238 it was enlarged, and in 1266 obtained the *Lubeck-right*. It 1261 it was annexed to the duchy of *Schwerin*. In 1627 the Imperialists got possession of it, but in 1632 were driven out by the *Swedes*, to whom it was absolutely ceded at the peace of *Westphalia* in 1648. In 1675 the *Danes* took it, but in 1680 restored it; whereupon, between the years 1681 and 1711, its fortifications were encreased. At the end of the year 1711 it was bombarded by the *Danes*. In 1715 it was blockaded, and in 1716 taken, by the northern confederates; who, from the winter of the year 1717 to 1718, blew up and razed the fortifications, particularly *Walfisch-fort*, which stood on an island. In 1758 the *Prussians* raised large contributions here.

*Sequel of the History of Europe, continued to  
more modern Times.*

S P A I N.

**T**HE vast variety of matter which fell into the preceding history, and the intermixture of interests which happened among the several states and kingdoms it contained, with various other incidents, having prevented the authors from carrying them down to the present times, we are now to supply that defect, that our readers may have a complete *Modern Universal History*.

OUR history of *Spain* concludes with the treaty of *Utrecht*, and the declaration which the commons of *Barcelona* made against the crowns of *France* and *Spain*; who, upon that account, treated them as rebels. Her *Britannic* majesty interceded for them, but they refused to lay down their arms. They pleaded, that they had acknowledged king *Charles* to be their sovereign upon the strength of the promises of protection given them by the queen's express orders; and that they had always been faithful to the common cause: they therefore insisted upon an ample confirmation of their privileges. Lord *Lexington*, the *English* ambassador at the court of *Spain*, was ordered to insist upon an amnesty being granted to all *Spaniards* in general: but this was thought by the *Catalans* to be an insufficient security, because no mention was made in his demands of their persons, estates, dignities, and privileges. The *English* ministry shewed no resentment at king *Philip's* refusing to grant even a general amnesty, farther than to order another memorial to be presented on the same head. As king *Philip* had at that time reasons for not disobliging the court of *England*, he answered, that "He was willing to grant his pardon to those *Catalans* who acknowledged his clemency, and, repenting them of their error, should submit to his dominion and vassalage within a time to be prescribed." Count *Zinzendorf*, the Imperial minister, insisted at the same time upon the confirmation of the *Catalonian* privileges: and not only queen *Anne* herself; but the honest part of her *Tory* ministry, were inclined to have broken off all negotiations with *Philip* till that point was granted.

*The hard  
case of the  
Catalans;*

THE *French* court, however, knew that a majority of the *English* ministry were absolutely bent on having a peace upon any terms; and therefore, when Lord *Lexington* pressed the matter again, *Philip* answered with great disdain, that a peace was as necessary for *England* as for *Spain*; and preemp-  
torily

torily refused to make any farther concessions to the *Catalans*, whom he accused of being the most rebellious of all his subjects, but to pass a general amnesty. As Lord *Lexington*, by order of his court, had, in a private audience, already recognized *Philip's* title as king of *Spain*, he had no right to insist peremptorily upon a matter between a sovereign and his subjects; and Lord *Bolingbroke*, who was then secretary of state, with his followers, actually gave up this point against the *Catalans*. "It is not (says he in one of his letters to the *British* plenipotentiaries) for the interest of *England* to preserve the *Catalan* liberties: and likewise begs leave to make an observation to them, that the *Catalan* privileges are the power of the purse and sword; but that the *Castilian* privileges, which the king of *Spain* will give (in exchange for the *Catalan*) are the liberty of trading and resorting to the *West-Indies*, and a capacity of holding those beneficial employments the king has to bestow in *America*; which (says his lordship) are of infinitely greater value to those who intend to live in a due subjection to authority."

who are  
ungene-  
rously de-  
serted by  
the English  
ministry.

FROM this time, the *English* minister in *Spain* was so far from befriending the *Catalans*, that he spoke of them on all occasions as rebels; and the *French*, at the peace of *Utrecht*, had the dexterity to amuse the negociators so effectually, that the treaty was ripe and ready to be signed without any mention of the *Catalan* privileges. The queen, however, had some scruples of conscience on this head, and lord *Lexington*, who by this time had signed the treaty with *Spain*, was again ordered to interpose in favour of the *Catalans*; a proceeding which the court of *Madrid* treated with the utmost contempt: and the marquis de *Bedmar*, the *Spanish* minister, plainly intimated, that the treaty which lord *Lexington* had signed, had cut him off from all right to interpose farther in the matter; so that all the *Catalans* obtained by the treaty was, "That they shall have the same privileges as the king's best-beloved subjects, the *Castilians*, enjoy." After this, his Catholic majesty even prevailed with lord *Lexington* to write a letter to the *Catalans*, to persuade them to submit to king *Philip's* pleasure; and Sir *Patrick Lawless*, the *Spanish* minister, in *September* 1713, had the assurance to present a memorial to the *British* ministry against the *Catalans*, for not having submitted to the king's obedience, and for interrupting all commerce and correspondence in the *Mediterranean*: and therefore, says the memorialist, "his Catholic majesty hopes the queen will order a squadron of her ships to reduce his subjects to their obedience; and thereby compleat the tranquility of *Spain*, and of the *Mediterranean* commerce."

merce." In consequence of this memorial, a fleet was fitted out early in the year 1714, and the command of it given to Sir *James Wishart*, who was ordered "to enforce a strict obedience of the treaty of evacuation in all its parts, upon any complaints of the queen's subjects, of interrupting of commerce, or depredations by the vessels of *Catalonia*, *Majorca*, *Sardinia*, *Naples*; and other places, to demand restitution, and, in case of a refusal, to make reprisals: to repair with the fleet before *Barcelona*, then besieged by the enemy, and demand immediate payment of the value of the queen's stores in the town, or a sufficient security for payment in some reasonable time." He was likewise to make the strongest representations to the regency of *Barcelona*, and the inhabitants of *Majorca*, to persuade them to accept of the terms that should be offered them; and in case they continued obstinate, he was to employ his squadron in countenancing and assisting all attempts that might be made for reducing them to a due obedience.

THOSE instructions were considered by all the protestant states in *Europe*, and by the Whig party in *England*, as being infamous; because, by the treaty of evacuation, the queen had engaged to employ her good offices in the most effectual manner to obtain the *Catalans* their liberties; and even the *French* king laid himself under the same engagements, at the very time that *Bolingbroke*, in his correspondence with Mr. *Prior* at the court of *France*, was stigmatizing the *Catalans* with the appellation of being a turbulent people. The house of peers, however, on the third of *April* 1714, generously interceded in their behalf by presenting a strong address to her majesty, that she would be pleased to interpose, that the *Catalans* might have the full enjoyment of their just and ancient privileges continued to them. The queen returned a decent, tho' a cold and doubtful answer to this address: but the public indignation rose so high, that lord *Bingley*, who was then going ambassador to *Spain* (but never went) was instructed to insist upon the *Catalan* privileges, and admiral *Wishart* was ordered not to appear before *Barcelona* without farther orders. At the same time, *Bolingbroke*, in a gentle friendly manner, reproached the *Spanish* ambassador, *Grimaldo*, for his court not having offered the *Catalans* reasonable terms; "which (said his lordship) they must either have accepted, or forfeited the queen's compassion, and that of the whole world."

In the mean while, the duke de *Popoli*, the *Spanish* general, was advancing against *Barcelona*, at the head of an army, besieged by and summoned the inhabitants to surrender; to which they answered, niards,

answered, that they were resolved to die rather than be slaves; but that if their ancient liberties were confirmed to them, they would open their gates, and receive them with all gladness. When *Wishart* arrived at *Cadiz*, though his service was employed in favour of *Philip*, he was received in a cold, if not a contumelious, manner, by the *Spanish* court. They sent the *French* minister, *Orry*, however, to treat with the *Catalans*, as if they scorned to be obliged to the *British* court, but to *France* only, for reducing them. *Orry's* negotiation was unsuccessful; for the *Catalans* would hear of no proposals that did not include their being reinstated in all their privileges. The court of *Madrid*, upon this, began to shew some consideration for the *British* admiral; and *Grimaldo* sent him a civil letter. *Barcelona*, by this time, was invested, and reduced to considerable distress for want of provisions. On the first of *July* 1714, the trenches were opened before the place by the duke of *Berwick*, whom the *French* king, in defiance of all his engagements, had ordered to assist the king of *Spain* in the reduction of *Barcelona*. The courts of *France* and *England* were now so intimately connected, that on the eighth of the same month, Sir *James Wishart* wrote a threatening letter to the regency of *Barcelona*, informing them, "That complaints had been made of their disturbing the commerce of the queen's subjects; and that they had insolently presumed to take, carry up, and plunder their ships, and used the men in a barbarous manner." He therefore told them, that he had sent captain *Gordon* with two men of war, to demand, in the name of his mistress, immediate satisfaction for their insolent and presumptuous proceedings, and the punishment of the officers of their ships with the utmost severity, leaving them to judge of the consequences if they should not comply.

THE regency returned a most respectful answer to this letter, in which they represented, that only one of the ships complained of had been brought into *Barcelona*, where ready money had been immediately paid for her cargo; that the *English*, during the whole war, had carried on in that port a most gainful trade; and that they would punish with the utmost severity any attempt to interrupt the *English* navigation, even if they were carrying stores to their enemies. The *French* were now committing the most shocking barbarities all over the province of *Catalonia*, where, without distinction of age or sex, they put all to the sword, and during the siege 14,000 bombs, which had been thrown into *Barcelona*, had ruined most part of the houses. In this extremity the *Catalans*, having undoubted information that the *French* were preparing



paring to storm the place, wrote a most affecting letter to the *British* admiral, conjuring him by all the ties of national gratitude, to mediate with the *French* troops for a suspension of arms, as the congress of *Baden*, which was then sitting, might still determine their affairs. This letter is dated the 23d of *July*, but it was so far from affecting the admiral, that on the 7th of *August* following, he informed lord *Bingley* of his having lent three of his ships to assist in bringing home the *Spanish* flota. The *Catalans* having now no farther refuge, made their appeal to Heaven, and hung up, at their high altar, the queen's solemn declaration to protect them; nor were they even indulged in a suspension of arms till they could hear from *London*. On the 11th of *September*, the general assault was made upon *Barcelona*; and all that the inhabitants could obtain was, that they should not be put to the sword, and that the place should be exempted from plunder, provided they gave up *Cardonne*, and assisted in the reduction of *Majorca*. Thus, to the eternal reproach of the *English* ministry, this brave people were deprived of their liberties, after suffering the most horrible calamities: nor was the capitulation itself observed; for besides the multitudes that perished by famine and the sword, numbers of their leaders were executed in cold blood, and many persons of high rank perished in dungeons, through different parts of the kingdom.

and sur-  
rendered.

THIS year died *Maria Louisa Gabriela* of *Savoy*, queen of *The king of Spain*; and *Philip* soon after married *Elizabeth*, daughter to *Spain* *Edward*, prince of *Parma*. This match, which has since *marries the* greatly tended to the aggrandisement of *Spain* in *Italy*, was chiefly brought about by the agency of *Alberoni*, an *Italian* *princess of* priest, one of the duke of *Vendosme's* creatures; and he was soon after rewarded by a cardinal's cap, and by being promoted to the post of first minister of *Spain*. The emperor beheld all that had passed with silent discontent. He could never be prevailed upon to make a formal renunciation of the crown of *Spain*, and the negotiations of peace were still in suspense at *Rastadt* and *Baden*. In short, it was easy to foresee, that whatever turn they took, the public tranquillity would be of no long continuance. In 1716, the *Venetians* being attacked by the *Turks*, applied to the emperor for his assistance, which he granted them; and the pope, to induce his Catholic majesty to imitate his example, granted *Philip* the power of raising large sums upon the ecclesiastics in his dominions. The situations of *France* and *Spain* at this time were very particular. Upon the death of *Lewis XIV.* *Lewis XV.* who was then but a child, succeeded; but great doubts arose

arose concerning the title to the crown upon his decease, or whether it devolved upon the king of *Spain*, or the duke of *Orleans*, the regent. The right of blood was unquestionably in favour of the former; but he solemnly renounced all pretensions to the *French* succession; so that the regent stood next in blood. *Philip*, however, insisted upon the invalidity of his renunciation, because the emperor had not fulfilled his part of the condition, by renouncing all claim to the *Spanish* monarchy. *Philip's* friends, at the same time, added, that his renunciation, and all other renunciations of the same kind, were invalid upon another account, because no prince can make a renunciation in prejudice of his posterity. As the question could not be determined, should the event ever take place, but by force, each party sought to strengthen itself by powerful alliances, and the regent attached himself particularly to king *George I.* of *Great Britain*. *Philip*, on the other hand, knew that he had a strong party in *Spain*, and depended chiefly for his success to the genius of his minister, which must be acknowledged to have been very great, and the valour of his troops, most of whom were veterans, and well commanded. But *Philip* had, at this time, another object in view, which was the attacking the emperor's dominions in *Italy*. He alledged, that *Charles* had forfeited all his right to *Naples* and *Sardinia*, by his not giving up *Minorca*.

Alberoni  
restores the  
Spanish  
marine.

*ALBERONI*, on pretence of succouring the *Venetians* by sea, had, with incredible diligence, restored the *Spanish* marine to a higher pitch than it ever had been since the reign of *Philip II.* *Philip's* forces had now made a descent upon the island of *Majorca*, which was yielded to them, on condition that the natives should be well used, and that the Imperial troops, under the marquis *de Rubi*, should be transported to *Naples*. By this evacuation, all the islands and provinces properly belonging to *Spain*, reverted to *Philip*, except *Gibraltar* and *Minorca*, which, by the treaty of *Utrecht*, were given up to *Great Britain*. But this was far from satisfying the court of *Spain*, whose preparations by sea were now astonishing, under the plausible pretext of their being designed against the infidels, who had conquered all the *Morcia*, and were making great progress in *Europe* against the emperor. The pope was so zealous in this cause, that when he granted the indulto upon the ecclesiastical revenues to the king of *Spain*, he obtained an express promise from that prince, that he would not undertake any thing against the emperor during his war with the infidels. Without regard to this promise, a strong squadron of men of war, commanded by the mar-

marquis *de Lede*, on the 20th of *July*, sailed from *Barcelona*, and landing at *Cagliari* in *Sardinia*; they besieged and took that city, upon which the rest of the island submitted to his Catholic majesty.

THE marquis *Grimaldo*, the *Spanish* secretary of state, at the time this expedition was undertaken, sent to all the *Spanish* ministers at foreign courts, a kind of a manifesto, justifying the conduct of his master, in thus taking advantage of the emperor's war with the *Turks* to be revenged upon him for having supported the *Catalans*, and other injuries he had done to the crown of *Spain*. All *Europe* was amazed and scandalized at the frivolous allegations contained in this manifesto; and his Catholic majesty at last, by his ambassador at the *Hague*, *Beretti Laudi*, promised not to proceed against the emperor; and referred the differences between them to the arbitration of *Great Britain* and the *States-General*. It happened that king *George* was not only one of the guarantees for the neutrality of *Italy*, but was engaged with the emperor in a defensive alliance; and it was soon seen, that the ambition of *Spain* was on the point of rekindling a general war in *Europe*; and to prevent it, a project was formed of a quadruple alliance, in which *Great Britain*, *France*, the Emperor, and the *States-General* were to be the parties. The main points of this alliance were, that the emperor should renounce all pretensions to the crown of *Spain*, and part with *Sardinia* to the duke of *Savoy*; who was, in return to cede *Sicily* to the emperor; and the succession to the duchies of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, to all which the queen of *Spain* was heiress, in default of male issue, were to be settled on her eldest son. The heads of this treaty being communicated to the court of *Madrid*, it was there rejected with some disdain; as were all the applications and memorials presented to the *British* court, tending to dissuade that of *Spain* from continuing its warlike preparations.

The quadruple alliance formed.

UPON this, his *Britannic* majesty had recourse to more effectual arguments, and gave orders for the equipment of a strong squadron of ships of war. The marquis *de Monteleone*, the *Spanish* ambassador at the *British* court, by his master's command, presented a memorial on the 18th of *March*, 1718, shewing, "That so powerful an armament, in time of peace, could not but cause umbrage to the king his master, and alter the good intelligence between the two crowns." His majesty's answer was, that, "It was not his intention to conceal the subject of that armament; and he designed<sup>1</sup> soon

Preparations in Britain to support it.

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. XXXVII. p. 200, and p. 514.

to send admiral *Byng* with a powerful squadron into the *Mediterranean*, in order to maintain the neutrality of *Italy*, against those who should seek to disturb it." This answer was only what the *Spaniards* expected, and they had already entered into measures for placing the Pretender on the throne of *Great Britain*. It did not, however, prevent Sir *George Byng*, who was to command the *English* fleet in the *Mediterranean* from repairing to *Portsmouth*, where he received his instructions; part of which were, that as soon as he arrived in the *Streights*, he should give notice of his arrival to the *British* minister at the court of *Spain*, who was to communicate the same to his Catholic majesty, and to signify to him, that the admiral was instructed to promote all measures for composing the differences between him and the emperor. He was then to make the best of his way to *Port-Mahon*, from where he was to advertise the emperor's viceroy at *Naples*, and the governor of *Milan* of his arrival, and to concert his plan of operations in conjunction with them; and above all things, he was to insist upon a suspension of arms, and in short, to try every thing before he proceeded to hostilities, which he was to do, if the *Spaniards* still insisted upon disturbing the tranquillity of *Italy*.

Strength  
of the Spanish  
fleet.

THE *Spanish* fleet at this time lay at *Barcelona*, and consisted of thirty ships of the line and frigates, seven galleys, four bomb-vessels, four hundred forty transport-ships, with forty mortars, 1500 mules, 150,000 fascines, 300,000 stakes for intrenchments, a vast quantity of warlike stores, and provisions for many months. On board this armament were embarked thirty-six battalions, six regiments of horse, four of dragoons, a thousand matrosses, or artillery-men, an hundred and fifty mechanics of all kinds, especially carpenters, sixty miners, and a brigade of fifty engineers. Considering the long war which *Spain* had lately undergone, and the exhausted state of her finances, the fitting out such a force on this occasion is matter of astonishment to this day; but *Alberoni* effected it by giving the *Spaniards* hopes of recovering all the antient dominions of their crown in *Italy*; so that all ranks and degrees of men in the kingdom taxed themselves in troops and money to complete it. The cardinal, during its fitting out, had encouraged the public to believe, that its destination was against *Naples*; but in reality, it was intended against *Sicily*, to which he was determined by many considerations. That island was then in possession of the duke of *Savoy*, whose dominions had not been comprehended in the treaties between *Great Britain* and the emperor, and the cardinal had some intimations, that the duke

It sails.

duke intended to resign *Sicily* to the emperor. Add to this, that the island was in so weak a state of defence, that the conquest of it was very practicable. In the mean while, besides the treaty of quadruple alliance, another was on foot under the mediation of *Great Britain* and *France*, between the duke of *Savoy*, who had now assumed the title of king of *Sicily*, for ceding that island to the emperor in two months; while the emperor was to give him *Sardinia* in return, with the title of king. This expedient was hit upon to satisfy the emperor, who could not be persuaded to ratify the cession of *Sicily*, which had been made to the house of *Savoy*.

To make up for the disproportion of value; between the two islands of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, the emperor was to confirm all the cessions to him by the treaty of *Turin*, in 1703; and he was likewise to acknowledge the right of succession in the house of *Savoy*, to the crown of *Spain*, in case of failure of *Philip's* male issue. Many other regulations were also made by the mediating powers, to carry their arrangements into execution. Admiral *Byng* sailed on the 4th of *June*, 1718, from *Spithead*, with twenty ships of the line; two fireships, two bomb-vessels, a hospital-ship, and a store-ship. When he came to the proper latitude, he dispatched an express, to inform colonel *Stanhope*, the *British* minister at *Madrid*, of his instructions; and the colonel communicating his letter to cardinal *Alberoni*, it was treated with the utmost contempt by that haughty prelate, who, in the end, sent a kind of defiance to the *English* admiral, bidding him do his worst, and that he was at liberty to execute his master's orders. *Byng*, after relieving the garrison of *Port-Mahon*, sailed for *Naples*, where the inhabitants, who had been terrified with the apprehensions of a *Spanish* invasion, received him as their guardian angel. By this time, the marquis *de Lede*, having landed his army in *Sicily*, had reduced *Palermo*, and was laying siege to the citadel of *Messina*, which was in the utmost danger of being taken. The king of *Sicily*; however, had agreed, that the garrison should receive Imperial troops for its defence; and *Byng* immediately set sail from *Naples*, with 2000 Imperialists for the relief of the citadel. It was the 9th of *August*, when he came in sight of the *Faro* of *Messina*. The first thing he did was to send his own captain to propose a cessation of arms to the *Spanish* general, till farther measures could be taken for a general pacification. The answer was, that he had no power to treat, and that he was resolved to execute his master's orders by reducing *Sicily* to his obedience. Admiral *Byng*, understanding that the *Spanish* fleet had left *Messina* the day before his

arrival off the *Faro*, thought that they were retired to *Malta*, and came before *Messina* that he might encourage the garrison of the citadel to hold out. As he was standing in about the point of *Faro*, towards *Messina*, he understood that the *Spanish* fleet was lying by; upon which he sent away the *German* troops who were under his convoy to *Reggio*, and pursued two of the *Spanish* scouts, who, he was pretty sure, would lead him to their main fleet, which he soon saw drawn up in a line of battle. It consisted of twenty-seven sail of men of war, two fireships, four bomb-vessels, seven galleys, besides provision and storeships; the whole being commanded by *Antonio Castaneta*, with four rear-admirals under him, *Chacon*, *Mari*, *Guevara*, and *Cammock*. On seeing the *English* squadron, they stood away, but without disordering their line of battle; but on the 11th of *August*, the *British* fleet getting up with them, the *Spanish* rear-admiral, marquis de *Mari*, broke out of the line with six men of war, all the galleys, fireships, bomb-vessels, and store-ships, and stood in for the shore of *Sicily*. Upon this, sir *George Byng* sent captain *Walton* in the *Canterbury*, with other five ships, in pursuit of them, and coming up with them, an engagement began; while the admiral was pursuing the main body of the *Spanish* fleet. Accounts differ with regard to the commencement of the action, each side throwing upon the other the blame of being the aggressor. The *Spaniards* are said to have fired first their stern-chase guns. Be that as it will, it is certain that the *Orford* attacked, and took the *Santa Rosa*, a *Spanish* ship of 64 guns; and the *St. Carlos*, another *Spanish* ship of 60 guns, struck to captain *Matthews* in the *Kent*. The *Grafton* fell upon *The Prince of Asturias* of 70 guns, which carried the *Spanish* rear-admiral *Chacon*, but left it to be taken by the *Breda*, and the *Captain*; while *Haddock*, who commanded the *Grafton*, stretched after another *Spanish* 60 gun ship. About one o'clock, the *Kent* and the *Superb*, engaged the *Spanish* admiral of 74 guns, and other two ships, and, after a smart engagement, obliged the admiral to strike; while the *Spanish* rear-admiral, *Guevara*, with other two ships, made the best of their way from the *British* admiral, who was in the *Barfleur*. The latter then stood into the fleet, and found, that the *British* ships had taken the *Juno* of 36 guns, the *Volante* of 44 guns, and the *Isabella* of 60.

Defeat of  
the Spa-  
nish fleet.

THIS engagement, which almost entirely ruined the *Spanish* marine, happened about six leagues distance from *Cape Passaro*, and cost the *English* but little. The *Grafton* was their chief ship that suffered; and, as we have mentioned, that the marquis de *Mari* separating from the *Spanish* fleet,

stood

flood towards the shore of *Sicily*; on the 18th, admiral *Byng* received the following letter from captain *Walton* in the *Canterbury*, who, with five other ships, was sent in pursuit of him. "Sir, We have taken and destroyed all the *Spanish* ships and vessels which were upon the coast, the number as per margin. I am, &c. *G. Walton. Canterbury, off Syracuse, August 16, 1718.*" The ships mentioned in the margin were, one of 60 guns, commanded by the *Spanish* rear-admiral *Mari*, one of 54, one of 40, and one of 24 guns, a bomb-vessel, and an armed ship; besides which, he burnt one ship of 54 guns, two of 40, and one of 30 guns, a fire-ship, and a bomb-vessel.

So complete a victory gave the highest satisfaction to *George I.* who, upon the first certain account of it, sent the following letter to his admiral. "Monsieur le chevalier *Byng*, Though I have not yet heard from you directly, I am informed of the victory which the fleet has gained under your command, and I was unwilling to delay the satisfaction that my approbation of your conduct might afford you. I thank you for it; and desire you to express my satisfaction to all the brave people who have signalized themselves on this occasion. Secretary *Craggs* has orders to inform you more at large of my intentions; but I was pleased to assure you myself, that I am, Monsieur le chevalier *Byng*, your good friend. *Hampton-Court, Aug. 23, 1718. George R.*" This action threw great discredit upon the *Spanish* marine, which, by no means, answered the opinion that all *Europe* had conceived of it. They were so much disconcerted by the appearance of the *British* fleet, that they spent some hours in a tumultuous consultation, which terminated in a resolution to lie by, in order of battle. They had not, however, the spirit to support their line, which the *English* broke the moment they came up to it; nor was the resistance they made suited in the least to the character of a brave gallant people. Their admiral *Castaneta*, and their rear-admiral *Chacon*, behaved bravely, but by rejecting the advice of rear-admiral *Garrimock*, an *Irishman*, which was, to remain at anchor in the road of *Paradise*, and to range their ships in a line of battle, with their broadsides to the sea, they became an easy prey to the *British* fleet.

THE consequence of this victory is so well described by Mr. *Corbet*, who was afterwards secretary to the admiralty, and the author of the account of the expedition, that we shall make no apology to the reader for transcribing his words. "The counsels of *Spain*, were, at this time, under the management of two *Italians*; the queen, and the abbot

Conse-  
quences of  
Byng's  
victory.

*Alberoni*, whom she had raised to the dignity of cardinal and prime-minister. They had vast designs in their view, and by secret intrigues with the king of *Sicily*, and other *Italian* princes and states, had laid no less a scheme than to exterminate the house of *Austria*, and the Imperial power out of *Italy*; and it was thought to be owing to the doubts they had of the sincerity of the king of *Sicily*, that the storm fell first upon his dominions, which was intended elsewhere. The armament they fitted out was suited to the greatness of the undertaking; never any nation sent to sea an army so numerous, so well-appointed, and so provided with all necessities for a distant expedition; the least implement was not forgotten; all which was owing to the indefatigable care of don *Joseph Patinhu*, a man of great abilities, who went in the expedition, and had the absolute direction and management of the whole enterprize, except the military command. The world was amazed to see *Spain* exerting a vigour she had not shewn for a century past. Some of the principal prisoners, and *Castaneta* himself, assured the admiral, that they intended the summer following, to have at sea fifty sail of the line of battle; which the great preparations in the ports of *Biscay*, and other ports of *Spain*, made very probable. Those in *Biscay*, which were one man of war of seventy guns, and two of sixty, newly built; with an incredible quantity of timber, pitch, and tar, and other naval stores for building more, were all destroyed by an *English* squadron, assisted by a detachment which the duke of *Berwick* spared from his army, at the solicitation of colonel *Stanhope*, the *English* minister, who contrived the design, and serving as a volunteer in the enterprize, principally contributed to the execution of it.

Memorials  
relating  
thereto.

“IT should seem but ill policy in a court, intent on such mighty designs, to provoke and irritate, without cause, a nation, the most capable in the world of thwarting and defeating them. And yet they seemed to make it a studied point to vex and distress the *English*, by all manner of ways, in their commerce; insomuch, that their trade with *Spain* was almost ruined and lost.\* They demanded arbitrary and heavy duties from the *English* factories residing in their ports, from which the treaties expressly exempted them; and, upon refusal of payment, their houses were surrounded by soldiers, their warehouses and chests broke open, and their goods sold at public outcry. The royal officers used them with such injustice and insolence, as if they knew they made their court by doing so. Every post brought complaints to the *English* minister at *Madrid*, of new grievances and oppressions. The

memo-



memorials delivered to that court for redress were numberless, without the least regard had to them. When any transportation of troops were intended, they immediately embargoed all the *English* merchant-ships in their ports, compelling their masters, with great circumstances of severity, to enter into their service, imprisoning them in common jails if they refused, and obliging them to unload their cargoes, though perishable, and consigned to other markets. They proceeded so far in their unjust treatment, that their cruizers brought into the ports of *Spain*, whatever *English* merchant-ships they met with in the open sea, though bound to *Italy*, or other ports; and compelled them to unload their cargoes and enter into their service. Such as were not used by them for transports, had their seamen taken away to serve in their men of war. Rear-admiral *Cammock* pressed no less than sixty for his own ship; and one of the masters, endeavouring to keep his men, had both his ears cut off. The battle of *Passaro* was fortunate to those poor people, for when the issue of it was known, forty-five *English* transports made their escape from *Messina* to *Reggio*, several of them laden with military stores and provisions; and, their masters applying to the admiral, he granted them a convoy to the ports in *Italy*, where they desired to go; but some chose to stay, and enter into the emperor's service, to transport his troops from *Genoa* and *Naples* to *Sicily*."

AFTER the action, admiral *Byng* put into *Syracuse*, which *War* in was then blockaded by a *Spanish* army on the 19th of *August*. *Sicily*. The chief intention of the *Spaniards* was to have got possession of *Messina*, which was a safe port for their fleet, and so conveniently situated, that they might from thence have transported the war into the heart of *Naples* itself. There was then a *Piedmontese* garrison in that city; but the duke of *Savoy* had obtained from the emperor the assistance of a detachment of *German* troops, consisting of 2000 foot, to be admitted into the citadel. The *Savoyard* resident, who had concluded this agreement, perceiving the great success of the *English* fleet, endeavoured to elude it, though it had been concluded with the privity of the *British* admiral, who thereupon wrote a letter to the marquis *Maffei*, representing, "The unfairness of such a proceeding, and how contrary it was to what he himself had agreed to, in their conference together the day before upon that subject. That such a disagreement, at a time when the citadel was so vigorously attacked by the enemy, might be a means of their taking it, which the reputation of the *English* fleet would not suffer him to be an idle spectator of; and therefore, if he was resolved to

stay till he had instructions from the court of *Turin*, he should likewise send to his court for farther orders; and, in the mean time, would retire from the island to some other place, to refresh his men, and refit his ships, till he should receive new directions from *England*." Upon this remonstrance, the viceroy executed the agreement, and the *German* troops were admitted into the citadel. The admiral then sent his damaged ships and prizes to *Port-Mahon*, and sailed to *Reggio*, where general *Wetzel* concerted with him the project of raising the siege of *Messina*, which proved ineffectual, for the garrison surrendered by capitulation on the 29th of *September*. Admiral *Byng*, hearing that the *Spanish* rear-admiral *Cammock*, with three men of war, and as many frigates, were at *Malta*, where a rich *English* *Turkey* ship, and five *Sicilian* gallies were in danger of falling into the hands of the *Spaniards*, sailed thither, but found that *Cammock* had left that place some days before. He then demanded liberty for the *Sicilian* gallies to join him, which the grand master of *Malta* readily granted. The *Sicilian* admiral, however, partly ashamed, and partly afraid to leave the harbour, made so many excuses, that the *British* admiral threatened to abandon him to his fate, and was preparing to sail; when the *Sicilians* moved from the port, but in so wretched a condition, that the admiral was obliged to lend them hands, and other assistances, to navigate their vessels. At the same time, he delivered the *British* *Turkey* ship, and sent her to *England*, as he did rear-admiral *Delaval*, with two eighty-gun ships, and a fireship, after he himself had arrived at *Syracuse* with the rest of his fleet. Here he received a most gracious letter of thanks from the emperor, and his Imperial majesty's picture set with diamonds.

The Imperialists assisted by admiral Byng,

At this time the duke of *Savoy* was possessed of only three places in *Sicily*, *Syracuse*, *Trepani*, and *Melazzo*; but none of those cities had a port proper to receive the *English* fleet. The *Spanish* army was strong and well-appointed, and though the quadruple alliance had allotted *Sicily* to the emperor, yet the duke of *Savoy* made great difficulty of yielding up the places he possessed in it without the equivalent, which was not in the emperor's power to give him; because all *Sardinia* was then in the hands of the *Spaniards*. An alliance therefore was formed at *Vienna*, for giving the duke of *Savoy*, king of *Sicily*, possession of *Sardinia*, on condition of his evacuating *Sicily*. His Imperial majesty was to furnish 6500 foot, and 600 horse, for this service, and a copy of the treaty itself was sent to *Naples*, where the viceroy, the *British* admiral, and the king of *Sicily*'s

cily's minister, were to deliberate upon the means of carrying it into execution. Great difficulties occurred through the duke of Savoy's jealousy of the Germans; but the authority of the British admiral at last surmounted all obstacles, and the evacuation of Sicily to the Imperialists was concluded on. Winter was now set in, and the Spaniards had formed the siege of Melazzo. On the 14th of October, the garrison sallied out with great effect upon the Spaniards, and probably would have raised the siege, had they not fallen to plunder the enemy's camp, which gave the marquis de Lede, the Spanish general, leisure to bring up fresh troops from Messina, by which the besieged were driven back with the loss of about 1200 men. Soon after, the garrison was so strongly reinforced, that Melazzo was too narrow to contain the troops; and therefore, they were obliged to extend their entrenchments, till they almost joined those of the besiegers, and in this uncomfortable situation both parties passed the winter, without either making any attempt upon the other, but with a vast loss of men on both sides, through the dampness of their situation and the inclemency of the season.

HAD it not been for the great care of the British admiral, all the Germans upon the island must have been famished. He appointed captain Walton with a squadron to prevent rear-admiral Cammock from coming out of the Faro, and thereby to secure the supply of provisions to the German camp. But Walton was blown from his station by stress of weather, upon which Cammock got out of Messina, and, by an artful stratagem, he almost prevailed with the governor of Tropez to entrust him with the provisions destined for the Germans at Melazzo, in which if he had succeeded, the affairs of the emperor in Sicily must have been ruined. They were, in the mean while, reduced to the most deplorable state, till admiral Byng ordered four English men of war to force their way into Melazzo, at all adventures, with provisions, which three of them effected when the Germans were on the point of surrendering, or of perishing by famine. Soon after, Walton recovering his station, Cammock again went into Messina, which giving an opportunity for reinforcing Melazzo, the Spaniards turned the siege into a blockade. While admiral Byng, was making dispositions for returning with his damaged ships to Port-Mahon, the viceroy received intelligence of a truce being concluded with the Turks, and that the emperor was able to spare from prince Eugene's army in Hungary 6000 horse, and 10,000 foot. Upon this, the viceroy prevailed with the admiral to put off his departure, that he might assist in a council of war to deliberate on the proper

place of landing. General *Wetzel* was for their landing at *Syracuse*; but this was opposed by general *Caraffa*, and both seemed to be obstinate in their opinion. At last, the *English* admiral understood that some of the troops expected were to embark at *Fiume* and *Trieste*, from whence they were to be transported by sea to *Reggio*. He therefore proposed, that as land-forces, especially in an army, and uncertain season, should be as little as possible exposed to a long navigation, that therefore they should land at *Manfredonia*, upon the *Adriatic-Sea*; from whence they might march by land to *Naples*, the place of their rendezvous; and the traject was not great from *Naples* to *Sicily*. He then cautioned the *Germans* against that contempt which they seemed to express for the *Spanish* troops, who, he said, was in every respect equal to their own; and gave it as his opinion, that supposing the expected forces to arrive safe, they were not equal to the conquest of an island, where the inhabitants had an attachment to the *Spaniards*, and an invincible aversion to the *Germans*, and where the enemies army was every day encreasing.

Remon-  
strances of  
the court  
of Spain,

THE manly, yet rational freedom made use of on this occasion by the admiral, would have disgusted the *Germans*, if coming from any other person; but the viceroy felt and acknowledged the force of his reasoning, and after some deliberation, in which he lamented the dispositions of the Imperial court, it was resolved, that count *Hamilton* should be dispatched to *Vienna*, to obtain fresh and final instructions for the operations of the war. In the mean while, notwithstanding the provocations the *Spaniards* received daily from the *English*, the former pretended that their resentment did not reach to any commercial matters; and the marquis *de Monteleone*, his Catholic majesty's ambassador at *London*, wrote a letter for that purpose to Mr. Secretary *Craggs*. In this letter was enclosed the articles delivered by earl *Stanhope* to the court of *Madrid*, a day or two after the action of *Syracuse*. By the first of which it was proposed, "That the Catholic king shall have three months to accept of the treaty, reckoning from the day it was signed." The court of *Madrid*, at the same time, filled all *Europe* with remonstrances against the behaviour of the *English* admiral; and pretended that the guaranty for the neutrality of *Italy* having been long at an end, could afford no justifiable pretext for his attacking the *Spanish* fleet. He then reproached the *British* ministry with having artfully abused the confidence and security of the *Spaniards*, and for reviving and supporting a neutrality by open force, not as mediators but as enemies. Admiral

Byng,

*Byng*, it seems, in the 'account he sent of his engagement, alledged, that the *Spaniards* drew up first in a line of battle, and fired upon the *English*. This was expressly denied by the *Spaniards*. " If said the cardinal, in his letter, he had no design to attack them, why did he pursue them from the *Faro* to *Syracusa*? Why did he send four of the prime sailors of his fleet to come up with them?"

*Mr. Craggs*, on the other hand, not only justified the proceedings of the *British* fleet, but complained of several commercial grievances under which the *English* laboured, in direct contravention of treaties, by laying on additional imposts, and arbitrarily prohibiting goods, and likewise in denying schedules for the annual vessels of the *South-Sea* company. He likewise charged them with various other breaches of good faith, particularly, their having seized *English* ships, and forcing them to take out their cargoes, that they might transport troops, and even cutting off the ears of such masters as refused to submit to such oppressions. While matters stood in this undecisive situation, the *British* parliament sat, and *Sir George Byng's* proceedings were approved of, though opposed by *Mr. Walpole*, (afterwards earl of *Orford*) and his friends. *Colonel Bladen*, at the same time, produced a list of merchant-ships that had been taken and detained by the *Spaniards*. At last, on the 18th of *December*, 1718, his majesty sent a message to the house of Commons, acquainting them, " That all his endeavours, as well as those of the king of *France*, to procure redress for the injuries done to his subjects by the king of *Spain*, to the unspeakable detriment of their trade, or even to obtain a discontinuance of his unjust hostilities, having proved ineffectual, he had found it necessary to declare war against *Spain*." The like message was sent to the peers; and addresses of approbation were voted in both houses. There was, at that time, in the nation a great jealousy of *German* measures, which was increased by the breach with *Spain*. It was alledged, that our complaisance for the emperor had involved us in a war with *Spain*, a nation with whom we had the greatest reason to cultivate friendship, and in direct violation of the treaty of *Utrecht*. The administration, to prevent the effects of those allegations, in the declaration of war, set forth the injuries which the *British* trade had received from the *Spaniards*, and the dangers arising to *Europe* and *Great Britain*, should the crowns of *France* and *Spain* be united in the person of his Catholic majesty, and should he continue to assist the Pretender.

Great projects of  
cardinal  
Alberoni.

THOUGH the credit of cardinal *Alberoni* was shaken at the courts of *Spain*, and those of the allies, and though he never could restore the efficacy of his plans, yet he proceeded with an undaunted spirit in recruiting the *Spanish* marine, and raising fresh armies. Sensible that he was at war with the three greatest powers of *Europe*, he laid schemes for deposing the duke of *Orleans* from the regency of *France*, for an invasion of *Great Britain* by the Pretender, and for dividing the power of the empire by means of the czar and the king of *Sweden*, whom he likewise engaged in the project of invading *Great Britain*. To succeed against the regent, the prince *de Cellamere*, the *Spanish* ambassador at *Paris*, had orders to enlist in the cardinal's service all the malcontents in *France*, who were numerous and powerful, and who were to secure the persons of the king and the regent: after which, the parliaments were to assemble, and the states of the kingdom to meet for new settling the government. The first intimation the regent received of this conspiracy was from king *George I.* and a packet dispatched for *Spain* by the abbot *Portocarrero*, from the prince of *Cellamere*, being by great accident intercepted on the road, the particulars were discovered, and the chief conspirators put under arrest, as was the prince *de Cellamere* himself, whose papers were sealed up. On the 29th of *December*, war was declared at *Paris* against *Spain*, and the cardinal's practices, in the lately discovered conspiracy, were exposed in the declaration in strong and striking colours. This declaration was followed by the regent's raising an army of 36,000 men. As it was destined to act against a prince of the house of *Bourbon*, marshal *Villars* refused the command of it.

In the mean while, the cardinal was treating with the Pretender, who, with the duke of *Ormond*, went to *Spain* in the beginning of *March*, 1718-19, where he was received at that court with all the titles and distinctions due to a king of *Great Britain*. Soon after his arrival, the duke of *Ormond* received his commission as his Catholic majesty's captain-general of 6000 land-forces, who were to be embarked at *Cadiz*, in the expedition against *Great Britain*, on board of ten men of war and transports. The duke, at the same time, was furnished with a manifesto, which he was to publish upon his landing, in the king of *Spain's* name, in favour of the Pretender. This declaration, among other things, offered a secure retreat in *Spain*, in case of ill success, to every person who should embrace the *Jacobite* interest; and every sea and land-officer was to have the same rank as he enjoyed in *Great Britain*; and even the common men were

were to be treated as *Spanish* soldiers. Before the *Spanish* fleet was ready to sail, his *Britannic* majesty received from the duke of *Orleans*, an account of the preparations making against his dominions, and proclamations were issued for securing the duke of *Ormond*, and the chief officers under him. The states-general, at the same time, not only prohibited all the embarkations of arms and ammunition that were making for the *Spaniards* at *Amsterdam*, but upon a requisition made by the court of *England*, sent over 2000 auxiliary troops; and the marquis de *Prie*, governor of the *Austrian-Netherlands*, by his master's order, sent over six battalions of Imperialists. The *Spanish* fleet, in the mean while, actually sailed, with all its troops on board, and arrived with a fair wind off *Cape Finisterre*, where it was dispersed and disabled by a most violent storm, which lasted three days and three nights; and this put an end to the main expedition against *Great Britain*. *The Spanish fleet designed against Great Britain shipwrecked.*

AMONG other schemes of *Alberoni*, one was to procure a diversion of the troops from *England* to the north of *Scotland*, where a detachment of 300 *Spaniards* were to land with some of the rebel lords, who were to head their clans and followers there in a rebellion; and for that purpose they brought with them arms for 2000 men. The *Spanish* lieutenant-colonel, who commanded this detachment, being assured that he would be joined by 2000 rebels in arms as soon as he landed, finding himself disappointed, was for returning in the frigates that brought him. A few of the clans, however, joined him, and they pretended to defend two passes, that of *Gleneshill* and that of *Strachell*, against general *Wightman*, who was advancing at the head of a body of regular troops to dislodge them, which he did with the loss of twenty-one men killed, and an hundred and twenty-one wounded, including officers of the king's troops. Next day, the *Spanish* party surrendered themselves prisoners at discretion, and delivered up their arms; and thus ended this attempt, the success of which depended chiefly on that of the invasion of *England*. As to the rebel noblemen, and chiefs, none of them were taken or suffered.

DURING the absence of count *Hamilton*, admiral *Byng* sailed from *Sicily* for *Port-Mahon*, but left a squadron at *Pentamelia*, under captain *Matthews*, to block up rear-admiral *Cammock* in *Messina*. *Matthews* had the good fortune to destroy a sixty-four gun ship of *Cammock's* squadron, and another of sixty guns was lost in *Tarento* bay, *Cammock* himself escaping with great difficulty. *Patinho* was, at this time, first

first minister for the *Spanish* affairs in *Sicily*; but being called to *Madrid*, he was employed in finding the means of recruiting the *Spanish* army in *Sicily*. It was necessary for this purpose, to employ the *Venetian* and *Genoese* vessels, who readily embraced the service, and even many of the *French*, underhand, did the same; till admiral *Byng* obtained leave from the regent to confiscate all *French* ships which he should find to be employed by the *Spaniards*. The admiral, having refitted his squadron, set sail from *Port-Mahon* and arrived at *Naples*, where, to his amazement, he found the troops had not arrived from *Hungary*, and that no preparations were in forwardness against the enemy for want of money. Soon after, count *Merci* arrived from *Vienna*, and took upon him the command of the army. He was a forward, active, intrepid general, to a degree of rashness and disregard for the lives of his men. The marquis *de Lede*, the *Spanish* general, was, on the other hand, cool, provident, and cautious. He was frugal of his soldiers' lives, and yet supported the honour of his master's arms by a soldier-like conduct. At last, the *German* army arrived at *Naples*, from whence it was resolved in a council of war, that they should be carried directly to *Melazzo*; but, upon inspection, they were found to be so miserably deficient in artillery and military stores, that the *British* admiral was obliged to supply them with both. Their numbers were 10,000 foot, and 3500 horse, the best troops in the Imperial service, and being embarked in 200 transports, under convoy of the *British* squadron, they landed without any loss, either of time or men, in the bay of *Patti*, twenty miles to the westward of *Melazzo*. The marquis *de Lede*, hearing of their landing, left some of his artillery behind him, and made a hasty retreat towards *Francavilla*, while *Merci* arrived with his army at *Melazzo*.

The Imperialists defeated in Sicily.

A COUNCIL of war was then held, to deliberate whether *Merci* should form the siege of *Messina*, or attack the *Spanish* army, which was entrenching itself at *Francavilla*. The latter measure was resolved on, the rather as the hasty retreat of the *Spaniards* from *Melazzo*, had impressed *Merci* with a contemptible opinion of their courage and discipline. This resolution was most miserably executed through the numerous wants the *Germans* were in of every thing, but especially draught-horses; and their march to *Francavilla*, which continued for three days, was fatiguing and painful to the last degree; besides their losing in it many of their men by the *Spaniards*, and natives, occupying the passes of the country. At last, on the 19th of *June*, they came in sight of the *Spanish* camp, which they found had been chosen with vast judgment,



ment, and was fortified to the best advantage; but such were the dispositions of the *Spaniards*, and the *Sicilians*, that neither *Merci*, nor any of its officers, had the least intimation of its situation. Those considerations did not deter *Merci* from resolving upon an attack, which proved sharp and bloody, and, for the first day no eminent advantage appeared on either side. On the one part, count *Merci*, who was wounded in the attack, had failed in his attempt, and on the other, the *Germans* had made themselves masters of some inconsiderable posts, while the loss of men had fallen heavier upon the *Germans* than the *Spaniards*. Next day, *Merci* found himself under a necessity of not renewing the attack, and of changing the dispositions of his army, and sent an express to the *British* admiral, who all this while remained off *Melazzo*; uncertain of what happened; complaining of his uncomfortable situation; and begging that he would repair to his camp, and give him his advice as to his future operations.

ADMIRAL *Byng*, at this time, was preparing to sail for *Naples*, in order to forward an expedition against *Sardinia*; but, understanding how matters had gone with *Merci*, and knowing the impetuous intractable disposition of that general, he wrote to the viceroy of *Naples*, advising him to employ the troops designed against *Sardinia*, in recruiting the Imperial army in *Sicily*; and, in the mean time, he set out for *Merci's* camp, where he found both the general and his army in a deplorable condition. The general was weak of his wound, complained of his being served ill by his officers, who were against his attacking the enemy again, and of many other particulars. Next day, in a council of general officers, who all of them blamed the unadvised headstrong spirit of *Merci*, the admiral, to whose judgment they all paid the utmost deference, declared himself against the second attack; and, at the same time, against the proposal of the general to march to *Catanea* or *Syracuse*; but proposed, when the reinforcements arrived from *Naples*, which he had wrote for, they should form the siege of *Messina*, which would facilitate the reduction of the rest of the island: in the mean while, that he would take care to supply the army, by means of his fleet, with present subsistence. Admiral *Byng's* advice was taken, and he immediately returned to *Naples*, where he found a new viceroy had been appointed in his absence. The admiral repeated to him his advice, that the expedition against *Sardinia*, which the Imperial court had greatly at heart, should be laid aside for that time, and that the troops destined for it should be sent to *Sicily*. The admiral's reasons for this were so strong, that the vice-

roy consented to send for orders to the court of *Vienna*; and even the king of *Sardinia*, upon proper representations being made to him, agreed to his proposal. After this, the admiral, till the answer from the court of *Vienna* should be known, returned to *Sicily*, and sent ashore a large supply of powder which the *German* army stood in need of. Count *Merci* was then recovering from a severe apoplectic fit, which had struck him blind. But the generals, with whom he left the command of the army, had taken their measures so well, that they took the city of *Messina*, the governor of which withdrew his troops into the castle, and the *Spanish* ships in the mole fell into the *British* admiral's hands; and to prevent all controversy about the property of them, he sunk and destroyed them in the harbour, thereby completing, for that time, the ruin of the *Spanish* marine.

where they  
are again  
saved by  
admiral  
Byng.

THE answer from the court of *Vienna* was entirely agreeable to the advice which had been given by the *British* admiral, and he was given to understand, that the governor of *Milan* had received orders for sending to *Sicily* the troops that had been designed for *Sardinia*. This service was likewise performed by admiral Byng, and the citadel of *Messina* soon after surrendered upon articles, the *Spanish* garrison being transported to *Augusta*. During the siege, which lasted twenty-one days, the *Germans* lost above 5000 men. In the mean while, the marquis de *Lede*, had taken up, and fortified a strong camp at *Castro Giovane*, in the heart of the island, with an intention to retire to it; but he cantoned his troops about *Aderno*, *Palermo*, and *Catanea*. His situation was so advantageous, that the *Germans*, not being in a condition to attack him, were in danger of starving at *Messina*, and had formed a resolution of going over to *Calabria* for subsistence. The *British* admiral diverted them from this, by offering to transport the army to *Trepani*, where they might subsist; and to obviate the difficulty of supporting one part of the army if blockaded by the *Spaniards*, till the other could relieve them, he undertook to buy up as much corn at *Tunis*, and to carry it to *Trapani*, before the first division could arrive there, as might maintain them; nay, he went so far, as to offer to make the purchase at his own expence, and to depend upon the honour of the Imperialists for his re-imbursement. This offer was joyfully embraced by count *Merci*, and punctually fulfilled by the admiral, who lodged the corn at *Trapani*, before the arrival of the first division; and the second division landed at *Trapani* on the second of *March*, by which they were enabled to extend their quarters in a plentiful country. The marquis de *Lede*, who had excellent intelligence, upon this

this, removed his camp to *Alamo*, and sent his marshal de camp to general *Merci* and the admiral, with proposals for evacuating *Sicily*, on condition of having leave to transport his army into *Spain*, and obtaining a suspension of arms.

WHILE matters, by the good management of the *English* Spain in-admiral, were conducted so much to the advantage of the *vaded by* Imperialists, in *Sicily*, the duke of *Berwick*, at the head of the *French* army, after taking *Fort-Passage*, and there burnt *French*, ing six ships of war that were upon the stocks, laid siege to, and took, *Fontarabia* on the fifth of *June*. The king of *Spain* had been persuaded by *Alberoni*, that if he should appear at the head of his army to raise the siege, the *French* troops would desert to him; upon which his Catholic majesty advanced to raise the siege, with 9000 foot and 4000 horse: but before he came up, the place was in the hands of the *French*, nor did any of them desert to the *Spanish* army. The duke of *Berwick* then took *St. Sebastian*; and a detachment of his army, aided by some *English* soldiers, burnt two sixty-gun ships that were on the stocks at *Port Antonio*, which they likewise took. So many misfortunes happening to the *Spanish* arms, overwhelmed the cardinal *Alberoni*'s credit at that court, and at last he declared, that the States-General should be mediators between his master and the confederates. The king of *Great-Britain*, the emperor, and the *French* king, who had been disgusted at the slowness of the States-General in acceding to the quadruple alliance, declined their mediation, but from different views. The court of *England* had formed a project to become masters of *Corunna*, the best port of *Biscay*, and had even carried their views as far as *Peru* itself. To effect the first conquest, the lord *Cobham* was appointed captain-general, and was to have under him 4000 men, who were to be transported in fifty ships, with four bomb-vessels, and to be under the convoy of admiral *Mighels*. This embarkation sailed from *St. Helen's*, the *and by the* twenty-first of *September*, and for *Vigo*, where the city surren-English. dered on the first summons, and the citadel, the garrison of which was composed of soldiers who were to have been employed in the expedition against *Great-Britain*, surrendered in a few days. After this, the *English* army found little or no resistance in the neighbourhood of *Vigo*. Major-general *Wade* then embarked with 1000 men for *Pont-a-Vedra*, where the magistrates presented him with the keys of the place, which contained a large train of brass and iron artillery. After this, the fleet and transports returned to *England*, no attempt having been made upon *Corunna*. During this expedition captain *Johnson*, in the *Weymouth*, destroyed two *Spanish*

*Spanish* ships of war in the port of *Ribadeo*, sixteen leagues to the east of Cape *Ortega*. As to the expedition against *Peru*; which vice-admiral *Hofier* was to have commanded, it was at first delayed by contrary winds, and afterwards totally laid aside.

*Proposals  
for peace*

By this time, the king of *Sweden* having been killed, and the czar having failed in his design of getting footing in the empire, by the possession of the duchy of *Mecklenburgh*, had laid aside hostilities: so that *Spain* stood all alone in a war, which she found herself unable to support. Both *Great-Britain* and *France* were desirous of peace, and the emperor was willing to make great sacrifices for the establishment of the Pragmatic Sanction; but all those three princes positively refused to enter upon any treaty while cardinal *Alberoni* continued at the head of the *Spanish* councils. That prelate had been most ungrateful to his great benefactress the queen of *Spain*; so that he now found himself destitute of all support, but the obstinacy of his Catholic majesty, which soon failed him when that prince saw the destruction to which his kingdom was exposed by the cardinal's projects. The ministers at the *Hague*, where the great scene of negotiation now lay, had communicated their schemes for pacification to the marquis *Beretti Landi*, the *Spanish* ambassador; and he, on the other hand, gave in his scheme (which he received from *Madrid*) and contained in substance, that not only *France* should restore all the conquests she made in the late war, but that *England* should give back to the crown of *Spain* *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon*; that the eventual successions to the duchies of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, should, independently of all holdings of the emperor, be settled upon the queen of *Spain*'s son. The ships taken in the late war were to be restored to *Spain*. *Sicily* was to be subject to the same right of reversion in the hands of the emperor, as when in those of the duke of *Savoy*. The pope was to restore to the house of *Farnese*, being that of the queen of *Spain*, all the territory and places which had been taken from it by his predecessors; and all possessions and commerce in the *West-Indies* were to be regulated according to the treaty of *Utrecht*.

Those propositions seemed more befitting a victorious state to impose than a vanquished one to demand: but to render the powers of the quadruple alliance more tractable, his Catholic majesty formally dismissed cardinal *Alberoni* from his service by a letter under his own hand, commanding him to meddle in no affairs of state, to leave *Madrid* in eight days, and *Spain* in three weeks. But even this condescension of his Catholic majesty did not prevail with the allies to embrace

*rejected;*

brace his plan of pacification; and, after long and mortifying disputes, he was obliged to accede to the terms of the quadruple alliance, in *February 1720*. Towards the close of the preceding year, died the queen of *Spain's* second son; but on the 15th of *March* following she was delivered of another son, *Philip*, who is the present duke of *Parma*. It now began to be suspected in *Europe*, that this ambitious princess having, by the removal of cardinal *Alberoni*, got an absolute ascendancy over her husband, would prevent any sincere good understanding taking place among the powers of *Europe*, without the introduction of her sons to *Italy* in the quality of sovereign princes; a suspicion that was afterwards verified by experience.

ON the 13th of *June 1721*, the peace between *Spain* and *but two England* was signed at *Madrid*. By it, all regulations agreed *treaties are* on by former treaties were renewed, and were, *bonâ fide*, to *signed* be observed. All effects seized and confiscated on either side were to be restored; all the ships taken in *Sir George Byng's* sea-engagement, with their sails, guns, riggings, &c. were to be restored to *Spain*, or, if sold, their full value in money. All other differences between the two crowns were to be settled in the congress which was then holding at *Cambray* for a general pacification in *Europe*. A secret article was likewise added, by which his *Britannic* majesty engaged not to intermeddle in the affairs of *Italy*. On the same day, another treaty was signed at *Madrid*, which was that of a defensive alliance between *Great-Britain*, *France*, and *Spain*, for protecting the dominions of each other, as they were settled by the treaties of *Utrecht*, *Baden*, and *London*. The party attacked was to be assisted by each of the other two parties, or an equivalent in money and ships. The fifth article of this treaty ran as follows: "Their *Britannic*, Most Christian, and Catholic majesties, being entirely satisfied with the sentiments the duke of *Parma* has always shewn towards them, and being desirous to give him marks of the singular esteem and affection they have for him, promise and engage, by virtue of the present treaty, to grant him a particular protection for the preservation of his territories and rights, and for the support of his dignity; so that, if he shall be disturbed, they will join their good offices and endeavours to obtain a just satisfaction; and, if that be refused, they will agree upon measures to procure it him by all other methods which shall be in their power."

ABOUT the time of this treaty's being concluded, the affairs of *Europe* began to wear a new face. The haughtiness of the court of *Vienna* towards *Spain* grew disgusting to *Great-Britain*

*Britain and France*, and one of the intentions of the defensive alliance of *Madrid* was to guaranty the arrangements that might be made at the congress of *Cambrai*, where the ministers of *Great-Britain* and *France* were to act as mediators between the emperor and *Spain*. When that congress met, the pretensions of those two powers were found to be incompatible; and it was easily perceived, that her Catholic majesty had managed with so much address as to gain the mediating powers upon her side. The duke of *Parma* laid before the congress his claim of being independent of the empire or the emperor, which was rejected by the Imperial ministers with haughtiness and contempt, but justified by those of the mediating powers. In short, debates ran so high that the congress broke up for that time without any effect. But by this time *France* and *Spain* had renewed their family-connections: a marriage was agreed upon between *Lewis XV.* and *Maria*, infanta of *Spain*, who was then but three years of age; and another between the prince of *Asturias* and mademoiselle de *Montpensier*, the regent's daughter; and the exchanges were accordingly made. The same year, another marriage was set on foot between *Don Carlos*, her Catholic majesty's eldest son, now king of *Spain*, and mademoiselle de *Beaujolois*, the regent's fifth daughter. But even those connections could not prevail with the emperor to grant to *Don Carlos* the investiture of the *Italian* duchies; nor did the court of *England* chuse to interfere in the matter, as his *Britannic* majesty was very desirous of procuring from the emperor the investiture of *Bremen* and *Verden*, his possession of which was now precarious by the situation of affairs in the North. The pope had protested against all that might have been decided in the treaty of *Hanover* to his prejudice in the affairs of *Italy*; and his *Sardinian* majesty, with the dukes of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Modena*, had each of them presented memorials in support of their respective pretensions against the emperor; and, what was amazing, the court of *Spain* renewed its claim for the restitution of *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon*. In short, such a variety of opposite titles started up throughout all *Europe*, as entirely defeated the late prospect of peace.

The king of Spain abdicates his crown; but on

In the year 1724, a most dreadful cataract of water fell upon the duke of *Mirandola's* house at *Madrid*, which drowned several persons of the highest quality. The same year, in *December*, died the duke of *Orleans*, regent of *France*, which occasioned very important alterations in the *Spanish* government. The constitution of the young king of *France* was but weakly, and in case of his death his Catholic majesty

jestly was the next in blood to that crown. Being, however, disabled from the succession by his act of renunciation, he found it advisable to abdicate the throne of *Spain*, that, in case of the *French* king's death, he might mount that throne as a private person, and thereby elude the disability he was under of succeeding to that monarchy. He accordingly retired, with his queen, to the monastery of *St. Ildefonso*, from whence, on the 15th of *January* 1753-4, he sent the marquis de *Grimaldo*, his principal secretary of state, with a packet to his son, the prince of *Asturias*, containing the following instrument of the renunciation of the crown of *Spain* in his favour. "Having these four years considered with due reflection, and maturely, the miseries of this life, through the infirmities, wars, and troubles, with which God has been pleased to visit me during the twenty-three years of my reign; and having likewise considered, that my eldest son, Don *Lewis*, sworn prince of *Spain*, is of sufficient age, is married, and has capacity, judgment, and the qualities fit for ruling and governing justly and happily this monarchy; I have determined absolutely to quit the possession and administration of it, renouncing the same, with all its dominions, kingdoms, and lordships, in favour of the said prince, Don *Lewis*, my eldest son; and to retire with the queen, in whom I have found a ready disposition and voluntary inclination to accompany me to this place and seat of *St. Ildefonso*, here to serve God, disengaged from all other cares, to meditate on death, and to seek my salvation. This I communicate to the council for their information, to be notified to the proper persons, that my resolution may be made known to all." Besides this act of renunciation, his majesty ordered a circular letter to be sent to all his great officers of state in the following terms: "The king having resolved to retire, and to withdraw himself absolutely from the government of this monarchy, by renouncing the crown, with all its dominions, kingdoms, and lordships, in favour of his eldest son, Don *Lewis*, sworn prince of *Spain*, his majesty commands me to acquaint you, that his will is, you continue to serve the said prince in the employment you now possess. GRIMALDO."

THE above act of renunciation was accompanied by a letter to the prince of *Asturias*, containing the most despicable sentiments of fanaticism and bigotry for the church of *Rome*. The council of *Castile* being assembled on this occasion, declared, That there was no necessity for assembling the cortes to recognize the new king, who had been already acknowledged to be prince of *Spain*; and *Lewis*, who was just

the death  
of his son

entering the eighteenth year of his age, accordingly mounted the throne, the late king and queen reserving for their own subsistence about 150,000*l.* a-year. The new king had but few opportunities of displaying his talents for government, for he died of the small-pox, on the 30th of *August* after his accession to the crown. It was at that time a question much agitated in *Europe*, whether, as the renunciation of *Philip* was pure and unreserved, the crown did not devolve in course upon the late king's brother; but he being too young for the management of the government, the council of *Castile* petitioned *Philip* to resume his authority; and after calling a council of divines, he agreed to their request, in a letter which he sent them. In this letter, among other things, he intimates, that he had reserved to himself a right to resign the government again to his eldest son, *Don Ferdinand*, when he should come to years of maturity.

reassumes  
it.

In the mean while, the plenipotentiaries assembled at the congress of *Cambray*, but did no business of any consequence. As to *Philip*, after resuming the government, he soon discovered, by a greater application to the affairs of his kingdom than he had ever shewn before, that he had profited during his retirement by the instructions he had received from his queen. Looking narrowly into his finances, he perceived that they had been better managed during the late wars than those of any of the other powers; and he made arrangements for the punctual payment of all his establishments, civil and military. His troops were to be paid monthly, his army at that time consisting of twelve battalions of guards, eighty-eight battalions of foot, four troops of life-guards, twenty regiments of horse, and ten of dragoons, all of them in excellent order. But he and his queen were now involved in mortifying difficulties which they had not foreseen. The *French* nation in general grew every day more and more uneasy at the precarious state of their king's health, and the prospect of his dying without a successor; upon which it was resolved in the council, that their queen, who was then about seven years of age, whose presence their king could never be brought to endure, should be sent back to her parents; which was accordingly done. At the same time a letter was sent, in the name of *Lewis XV.* to their Catholic majesties, to apologize for so unpolite a behaviour, and laying it on the indispensable duty he was under to listen to the voice of his people, imploring him to marry a princess by whom he might speedily have issue. Their Catholic majesties were exasperated to the last degree at this affront, and immediately sent back mademoiselle *de Beaujolois*, who had been



been contracted to Don Carlos, but the marriage never was consummated; together with the dowager-queen of Spain, her sister; and the two Spanish ministers then residing at Paris accompanied the repudiated infanta to Madrid.

THE queen of Spain, not satisfied with those marks of her indignation, broke off the congress of Cambray, and offered to adjust all her differences with the emperor, under the sole mediation of Great-Britain. This gave disgust to the emperor, between whom and George I. there was now a great coldness. His Imperial majesty even intimated to that monarch, that if he should accept the sole mediation, the consequences might be disagreeable to his electorate. But his Britannic majesty knew that the queen of Spain had made that offer only in a fit of passion, and, when that was gratified, that he could not for a moment depend upon her. Add to this, that the same reason subsisted for his continuing in friendship with the duke of Bourbon, then regent, or first minister, of France, and next heir to that crown after the decease of the king, and the young duke of Orleans, who was then unmarried, as he had in the time of the late regent. Those and many other reasons prevailed with George I. to decline the sole mediation without France; upon which the emperor and Spain resolved to adjust all their differences without either of the mediators. The event of this resolution was soon seen, in two treaties which were concluded at Vienna by the duke de Ripperda, the Spanish minister, who had managed the negotiation. By the first treaty, which was signed the 30th of April, the quadruple alliance was confirmed, and Philip V. was acknowledged to be lawful king of Spain and the Indies, as secured to him by the treaty of Utrecht. Philip, on the other hand, gave up all pretensions to the dominions in Italy and the Netherlands, that had been adjudged to the emperor by the treaty of London, 1722. The emperor granted the eventual investiture of the dukedoms of Tuscany, Parma, and Placentia; and Spain agreed to guaranty the Pragmatic Sanction, which was always a favourite point with the emperor. Little umbrage was taken at this treaty, either by Great-Britain or France; but that of commerce was exceptionable, to the last degree, to all the other powers of Europe, Great-Britain especially. By it Spain agreed to grant advantages to the emperor's trading subjects in Spain, which no other nation enjoyed. In consideration of which Spain was to guaranty the Ostend company trading to the East-Indies, and to pay an annual subsidy of four millions of pieces of eight to the emperor.

Congress of  
Cambray  
broken off.  
  
Treaty of  
Vienna.

*Designs to  
introduce  
the Pre-  
tender.*

HIS *Britannic* majesty had reasons for believing that the two courts had secretly entered into engagements still more detrimental to his regal dominions. That of *Spain* continued to insist upon an absolute promise that had been made by *George I.* of giving back *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon* to his Catholic majesty; which promise the emperor engaged to insist on making good, if necessary, by force. It was even pretended, that by those secret articles the whole system of succession in *Great-Britain* was to be unhinged; the two *Austrian* arch-duchesses (the eldest of whom is now the empress-queen of *Hungary*) were to be married to the two infants of *Spain*; and king *George* even went so far as to tell his parliament, that they intended to raise the Pretender, to his throne. This last charge, however, was most solemnly denied by the Imperial minister at *London*. To counter-act those treaties, his *Britannic* majesty formed and completed that of *Hanover*, between himself, *France*, and *Prussia*; by which all his dominions were guaranteed in the Protestant succession. The ambition of the queen of *Spain* was now looked upon as the firebrand of *Europe*; and she carried her intrigues at the court of *France* with such address and secrecy, that the duke of *Bourbon* was, without a moment's warning, dismissed from the administration of that kingdom, and confined to his country-house, the king declaring, that he was resolved to take the government into his own hands.

*Subsidy  
from Spain  
to the em-  
peror.*

THE conduct of the court of *Spain* towards *Great-Britain* gave too much reason to believe, that the emperor, its now-favourite ally, was linked with it in all its dangerous designs. The remittances from *Madrid* to *Vienna* amounted in six months to a million sterling, which enabled the emperor to make a vast augmentation of his troops; and her Catholic majesty had found means to engage even the empress of *Russia* to assist the allies, in the treaty of *Vienna*, with 30,000 men. At the same time, the court of *Madrid* was opened as an asylum for all the exiled Jacobites of *Great-Britain*; and the duke of *Wharton*, who had thrown off his allegiance to his *Britannic* majesty, whom he had grossly insulted, and had entered into the Pretender's service, received protection there. As the court of *England* seemed to be well apprized of all the *Spanish* engagements, that queen's suspicions fell upon *Riperda*, who was a *Dutchman*, and had been a Protestant. Her surmises were confirmed by the report of certain indiscreet expressions which he had let fall. Be that as it will, he was immediately dismissed from his employments, but with a pension of 3000 pistoles a-year. As *Riperda* was  
a vain,

a vain, weak man, and perhaps conscious to himself of having committed great indiscretions, he fled to the house of the *Dutch* ambassador, who received him but coldly, and carried him to that of colonel *Stanhope*, afterwards earl of *Harrington*, the *British* ambassador, who gave him protection, but he soon found his house surrounded by 200 *Spanish* grenadiers. Colonel *Stanhope* complained to his Catholic majesty of this indignity; and upon his engaging that the duke of *Riperda's* person should be forth-coming, the grenadiers were drawn off; but part of them took post at the avenue leading to the colonel's house, from whence the duke was forcibly taken, and carried prisoner to the castle of *Segovia*. By this time, the *Spanish* ambassador was ordered to leave *London*; and he left behind him a paper which fell little short of a declaration of war, and was taken notice of by his *Britannic* majesty in his speech to his parliament: and at the same time he acquainted them with the dangerous consequences of the treaty of *Vienna*, and that his Catholic majesty not only demanded the restitution of *Gibraltar*, but was making great preparations seemingly for besieging that fortress, tho', more probably, for invading *Great-Britain* in favour of the Pretender. His *Britannic* majesty, not to be wanting to himself, gave orders for the equipment of three squadrons, all of them intended to counter-act her Catholic majesty's ambitious practices. One sailed to the *Baltic*, under Sir *Charles Wager*, to keep the empress of *Russia* in awe; another to the *Spanish West-Indies*, under admiral *Hosier*, to intercept or block up the *Spanish* galleons; and the third to the *Mediterranean*, under Sir *John Jennings*. We have, in a former part of this work, given a detail of *Hosier's* unfortunate expedition. The squadron under Sir *John Jennings* had on board it a body of land-forces, which were to be put on shore at *Gibraltar*, in case of its being besieged; and he was to alarm all the coasts of the *Mediterranean*, and even to spread terror to *Madrid* itself.

THE little firmness that then was in the *British* councils *Fleets* fitted frustrated the intention of all those expensive preparations; out against and the expedition of *Jennings*, particularly, appeared rather Spain. like a visit of parade than an hostile invasion. He sailed from *St. Helens* on the 20th of *July*, entered the bay of *St. Antonio*, from whence he sailed to *Lisbon*, and from thence to the bay of *Bulls*, where he was most courteously entertained by the *Spanish* governor of *Cadiz*; and then he cruized off *Cape St. Mary*, but without any attempt to commit hostilities. This tame behaviour was so far from daunting the *Spaniards*, that they had committed the outrage we have

Gibraltar  
besieged.

mentioned upon the *British* ambassador's house while the *English* Squadron was lying upon their coasts. The affair of *Gibraltar*, after this, became to be of great consequence, especially as the *Spaniards* produced a paper under his *Britannic* majesty's hand, containing what they called a promise of its restitution. The *English* ministry did not venture to deny the authenticity of this paper; but when it appeared, it was found to be only conditional, and providing the *British* parliament would give its consent, which its members absolutely refused. It was likewise alledged, that the *Spaniards* had violated every condition upon which that promise was made. In the mean while, the *Spaniards*, to shew that they were in earnest, had been extremely active in repairing and restoring their marine, and had formed a camp of about 20,000 men at *St. Roch*. At first they gave out, that they intended to rebuild the old town of *Gibraltar*, and to raise forts and batteries at the bottom of the bay, to prevent ships from coming up to the town, and thereby render it useless to the *English*. Those projects being found ineffectual, the marquis de *Torres*, the *Spanish* general, actually formed the siege of *Gibraltar* itself, on the 11th of *February* following. His army was well provided with all kind of artillery and warlike stores, and the place was defended by colonel *Clayton*, lieutenant-governor under the earl of *Portmore*. The *British* minister at *Madrid*, being certainly informed that the siege was begun, left *Spain*; but gave proper intimations to the *British* merchants in *Spain*, to secure their effects. All *Europe* was surprized at *Spain* embarking in so improbable an undertaking. The garrison was in an excellent condition of defence, and the sea being open, strong reinforcements were sent to it, which, with the earl of *Portmore*, arrived safe there in the beginning of *April*. All that the *Spaniards* could do was to throw into the town a great number of bombs, which did little or no damage to the garrison; while, in the course of four months, for so long the siege lasted, the *Spaniards* lost half their army, which made them objects rather of ridicule than enmity to the *English*.

Plan of  
accommodation.

IN fact, the powers at variance began to be sensible, that they were embroiled with one another merely on suspicions; but they saw, if their misunderstanding continued, all *Europe* must be involved in a general war, of which no person could predict the extent or event. *France* stood the best of any other power with the allies of the court of *Vienna*, and the duke of *Richelieu*, his Most Christian majesty's ambassador at the Imperial court, undertook a mediation, which, with the assistance of the *British* and *Dutch* ministers, he carried

ried into a project of accommodation, and which was to serve as the basis of an universal pacification, to be settled at a future congress. At first, the emperor formed a counter-project; but, after various altercations, the *ultimatum* of the allies of *Hanover* was accepted of, and a treaty of pacification, which contained twelve preliminary articles, was signed at *Paris* the last day of *May* 1727, by all parties. By the first article, the *Ostend* company was suspended for seven years. By the second, the treaties of *Utrecht*, *Baden*, and quadruple alliance, were to remain in force, but subject to such alterations as might be agreed upon at a general congress. The third article settled the privileges of commerce, as they stood by treaties antecedent to the year 1725. The fourth article related to the pacification of the North. As the fifth article related to *Spain* solely, we shall give it at large: "All hostilities whatsoever, if any should happen, shall instantly cease after the signing of the present articles; and, with respect to *Spain*, eight days after his Catholic majesty shall have received the articles signed, the ships which sailed from *Ostend* to the *Indies* before this convention, the names whereof shall be given in a list on the part of his Imperial majesty, may return freely and safely from the *Indies* to *Ostend*; and, if any of these ships be detained or taken, they shall be restored, *bona fide*, with their cargoes. The galleons also shall be permitted to return to *Spain* unmolested, in firm confidence that his Catholic majesty will, with regard to the effects on board the galleons and the flotilla, deal in the same manner as usual in all times of liberty. In consequence of this, the *English* squadron, commanded by admiral *Hofier*, shall depart as soon as possible from *Porto-Bello*, and all other ports of *America*, belonging to the king of *Spain*; he shall even return with his squadron into *Europe*, that the subjects of his Catholic majesty in the *Indies* may be free from all farther apprehensions and uneasiness. The commerce of the *English* in *America* shall be carried on as formerly, according to the treaties. Moreover, the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch* squadrons, which may appear upon the coasts of *Spain*, or on those of the states of his Imperial majesty, at the time when this present cessation of hostilities commence, shall depart thence as soon as possible, that the inhabitants of those coasts may henceforth be rid of all disturbance and fear. Neither shall those ships be permitted to undertake any thing directly or indirectly against the said port." The rest of the articles having no immediate relation to *Spain*, and most of them never having been executed, we shall omit.

*Siege of  
Gibraltar  
raised.*

H<sup>is</sup> Catholic majesty was happy in getting rid of his ruinous siege of *Gibraltar* by this pacification, and he gave immediate orders for a cessation of hostilities. The fertile and vindictive brain of his queen, however, started new difficulties before the articles were ratified in form. Objections were made to the actual raising the siege of *Gibraltar*, and to the restitution of the *Prince Frederic*, the *English South-sea* ship, which had been taken by the *Spaniards* at *Vera-Cruz*, before the commencement of hostilities. The unreasonable obstinacy of the *Spaniards* on this head occasioned hostilities to continue between the *Spaniards* and Sir *Charles Wager*, who was then cruizing on the coast of *Spain*. To his great surprize, while he was on this station, thirteen *French* men of war anchored before *Cadix*, without his knowing that they had sailed from *Brest* or *Toulon*. As he had no intimation of their instructions or destination, he immediately forbade all communication with their fleet; nor was it till after the death of *George I.* that the *French* ministry ratified the preliminary articles at *Madrid* on the 6th of *March* 1728. It was thought, that her Catholic majesty never could have been brought to agree to this ratification, had she not been persuaded by *Vander Meer*, the *Dutch* minister, that it was the only method by which she could succeed in her family-projects for the provision of her sons. But even this ratification was but a hasty and temporary expedient, as the most important articles in dispute between the two crowns remained to be settled at the approaching congress, which at first was agreed to be held at *Aix-la-Chapelle*; but the vanity of the *French* court, which had taken the lead in the whole of the negotiation, had prevailed that it should be held at *Soissons*.

*Congress of  
Soissons.*

It was opened the 19th of *June* 1728, and the *Spanish* plenipotentiaries in it were the duke de *Bournanville*, the marquis de *Santa Cruz*, and Don *Ignatio de Bernachea*. However fluctuating the conduct of the court of *Spain* may have appeared at this time, yet it is certain that the queen, who had the whole management of affairs, and by her fertility had endeared herself to her husband, was true and steady to one principle, that of her family-establishment in *Italy*. This favourite view was encouraged by the dispositions of the *British* ministry, who seemed to be extremely averse to a war, and by no means enemies to her Catholic majesty's views. The *Spaniards*, at the same time, were perfectly sensible, that the emperor never could heartily concur in her Catholic majesty's family-establishment in *Italy*; that he was unable to support the *Osland* company against the *English* and *Dutch*;

*Dutch*; and that the immense subsidy of a million sterling, which he continued to receive, was expended without their obtaining for it any suitable equivalent. Those considerations privately determined her Catholic majesty to do nothing effectually at the congress of *Soissons*, and, in the mean while, vast preparations for war were making all over *Spain*; the restitution of *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon* was again revived, and new claims were started of searching and confiscating *British* ships in *America*, where the most shocking depredations were committed by the *Spaniards* under that pretext. All those high claims, however, were only intended by her Catholic majesty as so many inducements to *Great-Britain* to come into her schemes.

THE old *Spaniards* as passionately desired the re-annexa-*Treaty of* tion of *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon* to their monarchy, as their *Seville*, queen did her family-establishment in *Italy*; but they were soon convinced, that the former was a consideration only subservient to the latter. In the mean while, the prince of *Asturias*, the eldest son of the king of *Spain*, by his first marriage, married the infanta of *Portugal*, as the prince of *Brasil*, the present king of *Portugal*, did the infanta of *Spain*. The situation of the people of *England* was not much different from that of *Spain*. They were zealous for the establishment of their undoubted rights of navigation in *America*, against the depredations of *Spain*; but they had soon reason to believe, that those were only secondary to the ministry's love of peace, and their attachment to *German* considerations. With some difficulty, the two courts at last began to understand one another. Colonel *Stanhope*, who was personally agreeable to her Catholic majesty, was nominated ambassador-extraordinary to the court of *Madrid*, and Mr. *Keen*, the *British* plenipotentiary there, was joined with him in negotiating a new treaty, which was afterwards known by that of *Seville*; the *Spanish* plenipotentiaries being the marquis *de la Paz* and Don *Joseph Patinho*. By this treaty, all former conventions between the two powers were confirmed. The two contracting powers were to guarantee each other's dominions; and in case of either being attacked, the other was to furnish the attacked party with 8000 foot and 4000 horse, or an equivalent in ships or money. All engagements incurred by the treaty of *Vienna* were rendered void. Commerce in *Europe* and *America* was to be restored to its former footing, and proper orders to be dispatched for that purpose. All damages done by his Catholic majesty's subjects to those of *Great-Britain* were to be made good, and those damages were to be liquidated by commissaries,

commissaries, who were to settle the meaning of antecedent treaties, which were to determine the legality or illegality of the captures, as well as every thing relating to the restitution of the ships taken by the *English* in 1718. The two kings were to carry the decisions of those commissaries into execution within six months after making their report. By the ninth article of this treaty, which was of the utmost consequence to her Catholic majesty's views, the *Spanish* troops were instantly to garrison *Leghorn*, *Porto-Ferraro*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, for preserving the immediate succession of *Don Carlos*, her majesty's eldest son, to those estates. The next article regards the peaceable introduction and continuance of those troops in the places of their destination. And the twelfth article guarantees *Don Carlos* in the quiet possession of the states of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, after he has succeeded thereunto. The *French* king was a party in this treaty; and the States-General, by the fourteenth article of it, were to be invited to accede to it, which they afterwards did, upon the king of *Spain* promising to join with them and the court of *Great-Britain* for obtaining the entire abolition of the *Ostend* company.

disagreeable to the emperor.

THE emperor loudly complained of the treaty of *Seville*, as derogatory to his honour and interest, and contradictory to the quadruple alliance; according to which, neutral troops only were to be introduced into *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*; and could he have procured money, which he endeavoured to do in *England*, he would have declared war. At first, her Catholic majesty was for carrying the stipulations of the treaty of *Seville* into immediate execution; but so many difficulties arose about the *American* commerce, that it was put off, and the *Spaniards*, to intimidate the *British* nation, again threatened to besiege *Gibraltar*, and refused to deliver out the effects of the flotilla, which, by the indulgence of the *British* fleet, had been carried into *Cadix*. The *Spanish* ministry even went so far as to publish a kind of a defeazance of their obligations by the treaty of *Seville*, on pretext that the other contracting parties had not fulfilled their part. While those matters were in agitation, the duke of *Parma* died, in 1730; upon which the Imperialists not only took possession of his capital and dominions, but prevailed with his dowager to pretend that she was with-child. This exasperated the court of *Spain*, and the more because they understood that the *English* were then in a treaty with the emperor, and had offered to guarantee the Pragmatic Sanction, which treaty was actually signed on the 16th of *March* 1730, and was called the second treaty of *Vienna*.

By



By its third article, his Imperial majesty consents to the introduction of the *Spanish* troops into the duchies of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, and binds himself to use his utmost endeavours to obtain the consent of the empire for that purpose. For six months, the younger duchess-dowager of *Parma* kept all *Europe* in suspense with regard to her pregnancy; which, at last, she declared to be counterfeit: and *Spain* and the great-duke of *Tuscany* having acceded to the last treaty of *Vienna*, Sir *Charles Wager* sailed from *Portsmouth* with a large fleet, and landed, on the first of *August*, at *Cadiz*, to receive on board Don *Carlos*, that he might take possession of his duchies of *Parma* and *Placentia*. The Imperial general, at the same time, retired from those duchies; but Sir *Charles*, after he had been amused for some time at *Seville*, failed to *Leghorn*, without having the honour to receive on board his fleet the infant, who went by land through *Languedoc* and *Provence*, and embarked at *Antibes* for *Italy*.

ON the 4th of *June*, a very powerful fleet sailed from the road of *Alicant* in *Spain* for *Oran*, under the count *de Montemar*, and landed a considerable body of troops on the coast of *Barbary*. *Oran* is a town of some consequence, and lies opposite to *Carthage* in *Spain*. It had been taken by the *Moors* from the *Spaniards* in the year 1708, after the latter had been in possession of it for 200 years. The *Spanish* army, which consisted of 25,000 men, the day after its landing, was attacked by a body of *Moors* under the governor of *Oran*, who being repulsed, abandoned the city, which was immediately taken possession of by the *Spaniards*, as was the strong fort of *Mazalaquivir*, which surrendered upon the first summons. The climate proving fatal to the *Spaniards*, they were molested by the *Moors*, who were again defeated: but distempers prevailing in the *Spanish* army, *Montemar* was obliged to reinforce his troops, and leaving garrisons in the two places he had taken, he carried back the remainder of his army to *Spain*. This expedition was a convincing proof how secure the *Spaniards* thought themselves as to their situation in *Europe*. In the mean while, the *Spaniards* had neglected to execute the treaty of *Seville* in many of its most important articles to *Great-Britain*; upon which Mr. *Keen*, the *British* minister at the court of *Spain*, presented several very strong remonstrances, and at last obtained from Don *Joseph Patinho* a schedule on that head, commanding the *Spanish* governors in the *Indies* not to molest the *English* in their navigation, under the severest penalties, provided they kept in their proper distances, and were not concerned

cerned in illicit trade. Those two conditions rendered the whole of this schedule of no effect; and the *Spaniards*, making themselves the sole judges both of the distances and the trade, oppressed the *British* navigation as much as ever. Other declarations were obtained from the court of *Spain* to the same purpose, but all in vain; and at last the *British* parliament was obliged to take the matter under its own cognizance.

THE *Deal-Castle* man of war took, about this time, a *Spanish* register-ship, by way of reprisal, which had almost brought matters between *Spain* and *England* to an open rupture. To compromise matters, *Geraldiño*, the *Spanish* minister, or rather agent, in *England*, by his master's orders, proposed to purchase the *South-sea* company's right of sending an annual ship to the *Spanish West-Indies*, and to give the company two *per cent.* upon all the returns of the commerce of the *Spanish* flota and galleons, during the remainder of the time of the *Affiento* contract for supplying the *Spaniards* with negroes. He even offered to treat about taking the *Affiento* trade, by which many of the company thought they were losers. While those matters were depending in *England*, his Catholic majesty's subjects opened a trade between *Old Spain* and the *Philippine-Islands*, which encroached greatly upon the *Dutch* and the *English*. This trade was well planned. Every *Spanish* ship was to carry out 75,000*l.* worth of silver, which was to be laid out in *East-India* commodities, and the other parts of the cargo were to consist of the produce or manufactures of *Spain*, or such other merchandizes as are most saleable at the places of their destination; and to return with all kinds of *East-India* commodities, manufactures, and drugs. This new company had many other privileges, particularly that of shipping goods on board the flota, galleons, and register-ships, bound for the *West-Indies*; and if they perceived their trade to be disadvantageous, they were at liberty to discontinue it. The *Dutch* made use of the same argument in opposing the institution of this company as it did that of the Imperial company of *Ostend*, that it was an infraction of the treaty of *Munster*.

SOON after, upon the death of the king of *Poland*, the *European* powers were imbroiled in new wars. The emperor opposed the re-election of *Stanislaus*, the *French* king's father-in-law, to that crown; and the *French*, the more to involve the emperor, joined *Spain* and *Sardinia* in her Catholic majesty's ambitious schemes for making her son, *Don Carlos*, king of *Naples* and *Sicily*. *Don Carlos*, then duke of *Parma*,

*Parma*, declared himself to be of age. The king of *Sardinia* took upon himself the command of the confederate-armies, and had under him marshal *de Villars*, the French general. As we have, in the history of *Parma*, given a full account of this war, we shall here only recapitulate its chief events, as they related to *Spain*. On the 29th of *October*, *Progress of his Sardinian* majesty joined the confederates, and publicly *the Italian* declared his chief motive to be the reduction of the ambi-war. tion of the house of *Austria*. *Pavia* immediately submitted to him, without a stroke. The city of *Milan* followed its example, and the citadel was blocked up. *Pizzighitone*, one of the strongest fortresses in *Italy*, was next reduced; as was, in the beginning of *December*, *Cremona*, and the castles of *Frezza* and *Secco*, with several other places, and the citadel of *Milan* itself, and *Novara*, which was expected to make a great defence. In the mean while, the marquis of *Castropignano* besieged the imperial fortress of *Aula*, which was obliged to capitulate in a few days, and the garrison was sent prisoners to *Spain*. The court of *England* sent orders to Mr. *Keen*, its resident at *Madrid*, to offer his *Britannic* majesty's mediation between the emperor and the king of *Spain*; but he was answered, that his Catholic majesty had now gone too far to retract, and that the marquis *de Montijo* had orders to communicate to the court of *London* the reasons of his Catholic majesty's procedure, which he ac- See Vol. cordingly did, in a long memorial, which left no farther XXXVII. room for negotiating or mediating. The levies making in p. 211. *Spain* were prodigious, and a fresh army was raised, of 16,000 foot, 4000 horse, 10 squadrons of dragoons, and proportionable trains of artillery. Next year, all hopes of an accommodation being now over, the *French* entered the *Moderuse*, while Don *Carlos* took possession of *Naples*, of which he was declared king by his father, and besieged *Gaeta* and *Capua*. The *Spanish* general, at this time, was the count *de Montemar*, who beat the Imperialists in the battle of *Bitonto*. They were likewise defeated in the battle of *Parma*, on the 29th of *June*, where count *Merci* was killed; and in all other parts of *Italy* the war went on with vast obstinacy and bloodshed on both sides. The fortress of *Gaeta* was surrendered to Don *Carlos*, and this was followed by the submission of all the kingdom of *Naples* to the same prince. He then passed over to *Sicily*, where some *Spanish* troops were already landed, for the reduction of that island; but during the winter, had they not been prevented by the excellent conduct of his *Sardinian* majesty, the confederate-army

army must have been destroyed by the Imperial generals, *Koningsegg* and *Wallis*, who kept the field with 40,000 men.

*Great suc-* THE *Spaniards* met with little resistance in *Sicily*; and the  
*cesses of the* truth is, that their chief success was owing to the insolence  
*Spaniards.* and tyranny of the Imperial court, which had rendered its government odious both to the *Italians* and *Sicilians*. The continued good fortune attending the *Spanish* army, had now inspired the court of *Spain* with more ambitious sentiments than ever; and it is generally thought, that, notwithstanding the near connections between them and the court of *Portugal*, they were inclinable, at this time, to have revived their claim upon that crown. The servants of the *Portuguese* minister at *Madrid* having rescued a criminal out of the hands of justice, were, by his Catholic majesty's orders, dragged to prison; an account of which arriving at *Lisbon*, his *Portuguese* majesty ordered reprisals to be made upon the *Spanish* ambassador's servants there: and this occasioned the abrupt departure of both ministers to their respective courts. Each took the part of its minister; but it was easy to perceive, that the *Spaniards* had something greater in view than this unimportant incident; for his Catholic majesty immediately ordered a strong army to march towards the frontiers of *Portugal*. The *Spaniards*, as well as *French*, had at this time powerful fleets at sea, with an intention, as was thought, to intercept the *British* fleet, which was expected home, and in which the *British* nation had a vast property. His *Portuguese* majesty was unable to oppose the *Spaniards*, and sent an envoy-extraordinary to implore the protection of his *Britannic* majesty, which was readily granted; and orders were accordingly given out for equipping a strong squadron, which was to be put under the command of Sir *John Norris*, and sent to *Portugal*.

A British  
 fleet sent to  
 the relief of  
 Portugal.

WHILE this armament was preparing, orders were sent to Mr. *Keen* at *Madrid*, to present a memorial to that court, to inform them of his *Britannic* majesty's intentions, and that though he was far from encouraging the *Portuguese* to offer any insults to his Catholic majesty's subjects, yet that his *Britannic* majesty could not see with indifference the preparations making in *Spain* against *Portugal*, and was resolved to send a squadron for its protection. The firmness of this memorial greatly disconcerted the *Spanish* court. Don *Joseph Patinho* represented the dreadful consequence to commerce, and particularly to those concerned in the *flota* then sitting out at *Cadiz*, should any appearances occasion a suspicion of a bad understanding between *Spain* and *Great-Britain*;

tain; adding, that his Catholic majesty was ready to suspend all operations against *Portugal*, and to refer his differences with that crown to his *Britannic* majesty's arbitration. In the mean while, however, the *Spanish* army on the frontiers of *Portugal* made some movements which were far from indicating a pacific disposition; and, on the 27th of *May* 1735, the *British* fleet sailed for *Lisbon*, and arrived, in twelve days, at that capital. His Catholic majesty appeared to be highly offended at this bold step of the *English*, ordered fresh reinforcements to be sent to his army on the frontiers of *Portugal*, and forbade all his subjects, on pain of death, to hold any correspondence with that crown. Notwithstanding this bravado, he proceeded to no farther hostilities, and all *Europe* was sensible, that *Portugal* at that time owed its preservation to *Great Britain*.

ALL parties were now tired of the war, excepting her Catholic majesty, whose ambition was insatiable; and she kept on a secret correspondence with *Chauvelin*, keeper of the seals in *France*, and next in credit to cardinal *Fleury*, whose pacific dispositions were eluded by their intrigues. The spirited conduct of *Great-Britain* in the affair of *Portugal* gave her vast weight at this time; and *George II.* was sincerely disposed towards a general pacification, and had even drawn up a plan for that purpose, in concert with the *States-General*; which being rejected by the court of *Madrid*, the *British* ambassador at the *Hague* made earnest applications to that republic, that they would augment their troops, which they refused to do, for fear of giving umbrage to the *French*. The cardinal, however, being absolutely determined upon a pacification, treated privately at the court of *Vienna*; and after feeling its pulse, formed a plan of his own, which was adopted by the *British* ministry and the *States-General*: upon which, the *French* and Imperial ministers at the *Hague*, without regard to the obstinacy of the court of *Madrid*, declared the willingness of their respective masters to agree to a cessation of arms, both in *Germany* and *Italy*. This negotiation was entirely carried on by cardinal *Fleury*, with the *British* and Imperial courts; but without the knowledge of *Chauvelin*, and consequently of her Catholic majesty, who was dreadfully alarmed when it was made public. She had made his *Sardinian* majesty her enemy, by refusing him the *Milanese*, which had been absolutely promised to him when he entered into the war. Notwithstanding this, she endeavoured to keep him on her side; but he rejected all her advances, and declared himself in favour of the armistice. During the continuance of that, the cardinal's preliminaries

Preliminaries of a pacification.

for a general pacification were agreed to by *Great Britain*, *France*, the emperor, and the States General. They were, so far as they related to *Spain*, in substance as follows :

By the first, it was agreed, that *France* and *Spain* should never be united ; that *Spain* should give up her right to the reversion of *Sicily* ; that the eventual succession to *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, should be granted to don *Carlos* ; that *Leghorn* should for ever remain a free port ; and that the possession of *Sardinia* should be confirmed to the house of *Savoy*. The second was between *Spain* and the Empire. The third was a treaty of commerce ; and the fourth a defensive one between these two powers.

objected to  
by the  
Spaniards,

It was not long after the above plan of pacification took place, before her Catholic majesty found means to make objections to several parts of it, which were left by the *French* and Imperial ministers to the States-General ; who, among other arrangements, endeavoured to persuade his Catholic majesty to agree to a particular convention upon commercial affairs with *Great Britain* and their High Mightinesses. At the same time, she made great delays in evacuating *Tuscany* upon various pretences ; but, upon the emperor's ordering some troops to file off towards that duchy, she consented that the acts of cession should take place. In the year 1737, died *Gaston*, duke of *Tuscany* ; upon which, by the late pacification, the duke of *Lorrain*, who had married the eldest *Austrian* archduchess, came into the immediate possession of *Tuscany*, to the great disquiet of her Catholic majesty ; who, at this time, received farther mortifications, by the total disgrace of her favourite *Chauvelin* at the *French* court, and by being obliged, through the cardinal's passion for peace, to evacuate *Italy*. *Fleury* was now at the height of his credit, and carried his pacific system so far, as to propose to act as mediator between *Great Britain* and *Spain* in their commercial differences ; but this ridiculous offer was disregarded. Her Catholic majesty, however, made some advances of the same kind, and offered not only to procure from her husband an ample renunciation of all claims upon *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon*, but to give the *English* their own terms in the *American* navigation, provided they would assist her in procuring the duchies of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, for her second son don *Philip*. Finding these overtures likewise disregarded, she persuaded her husband to keep on foot all his armaments, both by sea and land ; and took such measures, that the *Spanish* depredations upon the *English* in *America*, grew now more intolerable than ever. She was encouraged to this by the pacific dispositions of the *English* ministry, whom

Whom she was in hopes she could thereby bend to her will, which, probably, would have been the case, had not the spirit of the nation interposed.

Those hostilities of the *Spaniards* against the *English* were <sup>who pre-</sup>not confined to the seas; for in 1737, preparations were made <sup>pare to</sup> for invading *Georgia*, which put the *English* government to <sup>invade</sup>the expence of an additional regiment for the defence of that *Georgia* province. Her Catholic majesty had even the address to elude the execution of several equitable decisions, that, in flagrant cases of captures, had been issued by his Catholic majesty and his ministers. At last, the impatience of the *British* nation broke through all bounds; nor could all the art and influence of the ministry prevent the repeated petitions against those depredations from being laid before the parliament. *Geraldino* was, at this time, the *Spanish* agent in *England*, and, instead of endeavouring to compromise matters between the two courts, he associated himself with the heads of the opposition, and gave them all the information in his power to discredit the ministry with the people; publicly asserting, that his master was resolved never to give up his claim of searching all *British* ships in the *American* seas. *Geraldino's Account* of the incautious conduct was complained of by Mr. Keene at the court of *Madrid*, where it was justified; as her Catholic majesty had then nothing more at heart, than to foment the differences between the parties in *Great Britain* into a rebellion. The facts of the barbarity of the *Spaniards*, which every day came out and were proved before the House of Commons, were shocking to humanity itself; for it appeared, that the *Spaniards* obliged their *English* prisoners, who had been taken on board ships lawfully trading, to work in irons in their dock-yards, where they were subsisted on nothing but vermined provisions. At last, a bill was brought into the House of Commons, indicating the approach of a war, entitled, a bill "for the more effectually securing and encouraging the trade of his majesty's subjects in *America*." The intention of this bill was to invest the captors with the property of all prizes taken from the *Spaniards*, after proclamation of war, and to grant five pound, head-money, to the sailors, for every *Spaniard* taken at sea; and the property of all places taken from *Spain* were likewise to be vested in the captors. Though Sir *Robert Walpole*, the then first minister, vigorously opposed the bill, yet it was soon after resumed, and carried, and it was easy to foresee, that a war was at hand, though the *British* ministry omitted nothing to prevent it; but, upon this occasion, they were deserted by many of their friends.

It unfortunately happened, that Mr. *Keene* himself was ignorant of the true state of the question between the subjects of *Great Britain* and *Spain*, and all the weight of reason and great abilities was against the minister and his friends. A set of resolutions, in direct opposition to the claims of the *Spaniards*, was carried through both houses of parliament; and the manner in which the *Spaniards* treated the *English* subjects, cannot be better expressed than in the words of Mr. *Keene* to don *Sebastian de la Quadra*, the *Spanish* minister. "I have orders, Sir, says he, to tell you, that the *British* subjects complain, in the strongest manner, of the oblique ways and unjust means which the *Spanish* officers in the *West-Indies* make use of for condemning and confiscating their ships, viz. the master and crew are detained prisoners on board their ships, until judgment is given; but, to save appearances, the governor appoints a *Spaniard* as party, in room of the proprietors of the ship; who, without ever consulting the master or crew, makes, properly speaking, a sham defence, on which the vessel is condemned; and, after the sentence, there lies an appeal to the council of the *Indies* in *Spain*; upon which appeal we conceive no defence is admitted, nor any witnesses received or read, but what was admitted before the courts of judicature in *America*. If this be true, no wonder his majesty's subjects have not obtained any manner of justice, either in the first instance, or on the appeal, where the same party is, at the same time, both plaintiff and defendant. I am, therefore, ordered by his majesty to make the strongest representations, in his name, against such extraordinary proceedings, which are directly contrary both to the ordinary course of justice, and the law of nations."

MR. *Keene*, in the same dispatch, complained of the mock forms of justice which were observed in the *Spanish* courts, in all causes relating to *English* sailors or merchants. Notwithstanding this, it appears that the *British* minister was still so infatuated as to imagine he might find means to prevent a war; and he prevailed with his master to intimate so much in his speech upon the rising of parliament. The *French*, who had large property depending in the *Spanish* galleons and the flota, which would be in danger in case of a rupture between the two nations, offered their mediation, in conjunction with the States-General, who were warmly solicited by Mr. *Trevor*, the *English* minister at the *Hague*, to take part with *Great Britain*; but they were dissuaded from this by *Van Hoey*, their resident at *Paris*, who was the obsequious creature of cardinal *Fleury*. Every day discovering  
 less



less appearance than another of an accommodation, the *British* ministry resolved to try what effect an appearance of vigour would produce; and in *April* 1738, a squadron of ten ships of the line was sent to the *Mediterranean*, under admiral *Haddock*. The *British* settlements in *America* were reinforced at the same time, and their merchants had proper instructions sent them for their security. Those preparations in *September* following, produced a sudden alteration in the behaviour of the court of *Spain*, where preliminaries were signed, which were to be ratified in two months. In six weeks after the exchange of the ratifications, a congress of plenipotentiaries was to meet, and they were to finish their business in eight months longer. As to the preliminaries themselves, they formed what was afterwards called The Convention. The chief heads of this famous act were as follow.

THE first article contained only what we have already mentioned concerning the future congress, which was to regulate not only the matters of navigation, but the limits of *Florida* and *Carolina*, where no fortifications, or new posts, were to be erected during the dependence of the congress. The third article stipulated, that upon settling accounts, it appeared, that a sum of 95,000 l. was due from *Spain* to the subjects of *Great Britain*, which sum was to be paid to his *Britannic* majesty, to be by him applied in full satisfaction of all that his subjects had suffered from those of *Spain*. This discharge, however, was to have no relation to any accounts or differences between the crown of *Spain* and the *Assiento*-company; nor to any particular or private contracts that may subsist between either of the two crowns, or their ministers, with the subjects of the other, or between the subjects and subjects of each nation respectively; with exception, however, of all pretensions of this class mentioned in the plan presented at *Seville* by the commissaries of *Great Britain*, and included in the account lately made out at *London*, of damages sustained by the subjects of the said crown; and especially, the three particulars inserted in the said plan, and making but one article in the account, amounting to 119,512 piastres, 3 reals, and 3 quartils of plate; and the subjects on each side shall be entitled, and shall have liberty to have recourse to the laws, or take other proper measures, for causing the above-said engagement to be fulfilled, in the same manner as if the convention did not exist.”

*The Convention.*

“THE value of the ship *Woolball*, which was taken and carried to the port of *Campeachy*, in 1732; the *Loyal Charles*, the *Dispatch*, the *George*, and the *Prince William*, which

were carried to the *Havanna*, in 1737; and the *St. James to Porto-Rico*, in the same year, having been included in the valuation that has been made of the demands of the subjects of *Great Britain*, as also several others that were taken before; if it happens, that in consequence of the orders that have been dispatched by the court of *Spain* for the restitution of them, part, or the whole of them have been restored, the sums so received shall be deducted from the 95,000 l. sterling, which is paid by the court of *Spain* according to what is above stipulated; it being, however, understood, that the payment of the 95,000 l. sterling, should not be, for that reason, in any manner delayed; saving that what may have been previously received shall be restored."

Separate  
articles of  
the Con-  
vention,

BESIDES those articles, two separate articles were annexed. The first named the plenipotentiaries of the future congress. Those on the side of *Great Britain* were, "*Benjamin Keene*, Esq; his said majesty's minister plenipotentiary to his Catholic majesty, and *Abraham Castres*, Esq; his said *Britannic* majesty's consul-general, at the court of his Catholic majesty." Those on the part of his Catholic majesty were, "*Don Joseph de la Quintana*, his counsellor in the supreme council of the *Indies*, and *Don Stephen Joseph de Abaria*, knight of the order of *Calatrava*, counsellor in the same council, and superintendant of the Chamber of Accounts." The second article relates to a ship called the *Success*, which was not comprehended in the Convention, and which his Catholic majesty promised should, or its value, be restored to its lawful owners, provided they gave security that they would stand by the decision of the plenipotentiaries;" and (says the Convention in its close) it is declared by these presents, that the third article of the Convention does not extend, nor shall be construed to extend, to any ships or effects that may have been taken or seized since *December 10, 1737*, or may be hereafter taken or seized; in which cases, justice shall be done according to the treaties, as if the aforesaid Convention had not been made; it being, however, understood, that this relates only to the indemnification and satisfaction to be made for the effects seized, or prizes taken; but that the decision of the cases which may happen, in order to remove all pretext for dispute, is to be referred to the plenipotentiaries, to be determined by them according to the treaties."

which is  
disagree-  
able to the  
English.

WHEN this Convention was published in *England*, it is impossible to conceive how unpopular the minister became; and it was afterwards understood, that, bad as it was for *Great Britain*, it was with the utmost difficulty that the *Spanish* ministers could be brought to sign it; nor did they do

It without a management which evinced the tameness and compliances made by the *British* ministry. In a general court of the *South-Sea* company, *Geraldino* made an absolute demand of 68,000 l. due by them to his master, which they refused to pay till accounts were balanced between him and them. The marquis *de la Quadra* had acquainted Mr. *Keene*, that his master was resolved not to ratify the Convention, unless that 68,000 l. was paid. Nothing could be more unreasonable than this condition, as a liquidated indemnification of the private subjects of *Great Britain* was a consideration entirely distinct from the concerns of a public company. But so fond was *Keene* for flattering the *British* minister's passion for peace, that he did not explain himself on that head to *de la Quadra*, who was more explicit; for at the time of ratifying the Convention, he drew up the following protest.

“DON *Sebastian de la Quadra*, counsellor, and first secretary of state to his Catholic majesty, and his first plenipotentiary for the Convention which is treating with the king of *England*, by order of his sovereign, and in consequence of his repeated memorials and conferences that have passed with Don *Benjamin Keene*, minister plenipotentiary of his *Britannic* majesty; and having agreed therein with reciprocal accord, that the present declaration shall be made as the essential and precise means to overcome the so much debated disputes; and in order that the said Convention may be signed, does declare in due form, that his Catholic majesty reserves to himself, in its full force and right, of being able to suspend the assiento of negroes, and for dispatching the necessary orders for the execution thereof, in case the company does not subject herself to pay, within a short time, the 68,000 l. sterling, which she has confessed is owing on the duty of negroes, according to the regulation of 52d. per dollar, or in the profits of the ship *Caroline*; and likewise declare, that under the validity and force of this protest, the signing of the said Convention may be proceeded on, and in no other manner; wherefore, upon this firm supposition, and that it may not be eluded on any other motive or pretext whatsoever, his Catholic majesty has been induced thereto.

*Pardo*, Jan. 10, 1739. Don *Sebastian de la Quadra*.”

WHEN the pacific, and indeed shameful, conduct of the minister was fully known at *Westminster*, the national indignation arose to an ungovernable pitch, and the minister was, upon this occasion, deserted by some of his firmest friends. *Geraldino* was instructed, without any other consideration or abatement, to insist upon the payment of the 68,000 l. by

the *South-sea* company; and at last, a final resolution was taken in the *British* council to declare war against *Spain*. Previous to this, his Catholic majesty's ministers had seized the effects of the *South-sea* company, and complained most bitterly of admiral *Haddock's* still remaining in the *Mediterranean* with a *British* squadron, with an intent, as they alledged, to intercept the *Spanish* galleons in their return homewards. The marquis de *Villarias*, one of the *Spanish* ministers, continued to insist upon the right the *Spaniards* had to search *British* ships in the *American* seas; and no prospect of an accommodation taking place, *Great Britain* made suitable preparations for supporting the war which her councils had resolved on. In the beginning of *June*, an embargo was laid upon all the merchant-ships in the kingdom; fourteen men of war and three bomb-vessels were put into commission, extraordinary encouragement, by authority, was offered to *British* sailors, and several regiments were brought from *Ireland* to *England*; while the duke of *Newcastle*, then principal secretary of state, took care to inform the merchants of the approaching rupture.

Claims of  
the Eng-  
lish.

To leave the *Spaniards* inexcusable, before any act of hostility was committed on the part of *Great Britain*, Mr. *Keene* declared to the court of *Madrid*, that before the negotiation could be resumed, it was necessary that his Catholic majesty should renounce all right of searching *British* ships in the *American* seas, and that *Georgia* and *Carolina* should be expressly secured to *Great Britain*. He likewise informed the *Spanish* ministry, that unless they agreed to those preliminaries, he must leave that kingdom. The *Spaniards*, till then, had been deluded partly by *Geraldino*, and partly by the *French*, into an opinion that the *British* ministry never would venture upon a war: but the ministry themselves were not now masters of that measure. No sooner was it known that a war was unavoidable, than the publick stocks rose amazingly, and all ranks and degrees of men in *Great Britain*, united in a resolution to support a war against *Spain*. The *French* behaved in a manner that gave no room to doubt of their intentions to take part with the *Spaniards* in such a war; and, in fact, had acted all along in the differences between the two courts, not with any view of reconciling them, but that, in case of a war, they might, under pretext of being a neutral power, carry on the *Spanish American* trade in their bottoms.

On the 19th of *July*, the council at *Whitehall* issued orders for general reprisals to be made upon the *Spaniards*; and all the courts of admiralty in *Great Britain* had commissions

judge of, and condemn all ships, vessels, and goods, taken from the crown and subjects of *Spain*, by virtue of letters of marque and reprisal; the like orders being, at the same time, issued to the *British* plantations and governments abroad. Those spirited measures were supported by a proper execution. The preparations for war were immense, and admiral *Vernon*, who was known to be an implacable enemy to the *Spaniards*, was appointed to the command of a squadron against the *Spanish West-Indies*. Being made vice-admiral of the blue, he sailed on the 20th of *July*, with nine men of war and a sloop, to take upon himself the command of all the *British* ships in *America*. This vigorous measure, however, did not prevent a vast treasure arriving in *Spain* from *America*. But the court of *Madrid* began now to discern that they had been imposed upon, and struck into a new system of management, by retrenching all their pensions and unnecessary expences. At the same time, they published a manifesto, in which his Catholic majesty said, that *England*, “disquieted with domestic divisions, has urged her complaints with such obstinacy, though, perhaps, conscious how little they are founded on justice, that if our sincere disposition had not found more weight in the forementioned considerations than in her instances, these disputes might long ago have proceeded to an open rupture, not without powerful motives on our behalf.” The manifesto then accused the *British* court with various infractions of good faith and treaties, and concluded with an order for making reprisals upon the *British* subjects in *Spain*.

Soon after the publication of this manifesto, his Catholic majesty's reasons for not paying the 95,000*l.* stipulated by the Convention appeared; and charged the *British* nation with seven contraventions of that treaty. The first regarded admiral *Haddock's* continuance in the *Mediterranean* with his squadron, and his having commenced hostilities there. The second contravention was charged upon the *English* having had no regard to the limits of *Florida* and *Carolina*; and they were most ridiculously accused of encreasing their colonies, and re-inforcing their fleet at *Jamaica*. The third contravention relates to the 68,000*l.* which had been so unjustly stated as a claim from his Catholic majesty upon the *English South-sea* company. The fourth contravention regarded a demand made by the *English* plenipotentiaries, that it should be declared his Catholic majesty had not a power to suspend the *Assiento*-contract, and, on that account, invalidating the convention. The fifth contravention related to an *English* ship which had been taken after the Convention was signed, and reclaimed by the *English*; though

Orders for  
reprisals  
issued a-  
gainst the  
*Spani-*  
*ards.*

who pub-  
lish a  
manifesto.

by that treaty, all differences were to have been settled by commissaries. The sixth contravention related to the time within which the *English* plenipotentiaries received their instructions, and to no notice being taken into the value of captures restored since the Convention by the *Spaniards* in *America*. The seventh contravention consisted in the *English* having previously claimed the privilege of a free navigation in all the *American* seas, by the 15th article of the treaty of 1670, concluded between *Great Britain* and *Spain*." This, (said the *Spanish* ministers) is a direct infraction of the first article of the Convention, wherein it is expressly stipulated, "That the respective pretensions of the two crowns should be regulated and settled in the conferences according to treaties." The reasons then acknowledge, that the *English* claim of not being searched on the *American* seas, deserves to be explained distinctly and clearly; and then contended, "That the treaty of *Utrecht*, in 1713, stipulated, that the navigation of the *English* in *America* should continue upon the same footing as in the reign of *Charles II.* of *Spain*; when it was notorious, that by the fundamental laws of *Spain*, all strangers were excluded from the *Spanish West-Indies*." A reference was then made to the stipulations between *Spain* and *Holland* in 1714, by which their High Mightinesses promise to assist his Catholic majesty in preserving to his subjects the exclusive right to trade with the *Spanish* settlements in the *West-Indies*; and some very severe things are said with regard to the *English*, who, as they themselves confess, carry on an illicit trade there, to the amount of several millions yearly, and to the great detriment of the crown of *Spain*.

*Declaration of war by the English.*

No industry was wanting on the part of the *Spaniards* to inculcate these reasons, and soon after, upon the publication of a formal declaration of war between the two crowns, Mr. Keene and Mr. Castres, the *English* ministers, left the court of *Madrid*. The *British* declaration of war was so masterly a composition, that we cannot here dispense with giving the reader the most material part of it: "Whereas many unjust seizures have been made, and depredations carried on, for several years, in the *West-Indies*, by *Spanish* guarda-costas, and other ships acting under the commission of the king of *Spain*, or his governors, contrary to the treaties subsisting between us and the crown of *Spain*, and to the law of nations, to the great prejudice of the lawful trade and commerce of our subjects; and great cruelties and barbarities have been exercised on the persons of divers of our subjects whose vessels have been so seized; and the *British* colours have been in-

insulted in the most ignominious manner; and whereas we have caused frequent complaints to be made to the king of *Spain* of these violent and unjust proceedings, but no satisfaction or redress has been given for the same, notwithstanding the many promises made, and cédulas issued, signed by the said king, or by his order, for that purpose; and whereas the evils above-mentioned have been principally occasioned by an unwarrantable claim and pretension, set up, on the part of *Spain*, that the guarda-costas, and other ships, authorized by the king of *Spain*, may stop, detain, and search, the ships and vessels of our subjects navigating in the *American* seas, contrary to the liberty of navigation, to which our subjects have not only an equal right with those of the king of *Spain*, by the law of nations, but which is, moreover, expressly acknowledged and declared to belong to them by the most solemn treaties; and particularly by that concluded in the year 1670; and whereas the said groundless claim and pretension, and the unjust practice of stopping, detaining, and searching ships and vessels, navigating in the seas of *America*, is not only of the most dangerous and destructive consequence to the lawful commerce of our subjects, but also leads to interrupt and obstruct the free intercourse and correspondence between our dominions in *Europe*, and our colonies and plantations in *America*; and by means thereof, to deprive us and our subjects of the benefit of those colonies and plantations; a consideration of the highest importance to us and our kingdoms, and a practice which must affect, in its consequence, all other princes and states of *Europe*, possessed of settlements in the *West-Indies*, or whose subjects carry on any trade thither; and whereas, besides the notorious grounds of complaint abovementioned, many other infractions have been made on the part of *Spain*, of the several treaties and conventions subsisting between us and that crown, and particularly of that concluded in the year 1667, as well by the exorbitant duties and impositions laid upon the trade and commerce of our subjects, as by the breach of antient and established privileges, stipulated for them by the said treaties; for the redress of which grievances the strongest instances have been, from time to time, made by our several ministers residing in *Spain*, without any effect; and whereas a convention, for making reparation to our subjects for the losses sustained by them, on account of the unjust seizures and depredations committed by the *Spaniards* in *America*, and in order to prevent for the future all the grievances and causes of complaint therein taken notice of, and to remove absolutely, and for ever, every thing which might give occasion

sion thereto, was concluded between us and the king of *Spain*, on the 14th day of *January* last, N. S. by which convention it was stipulated, that a certain sum of money should be paid at *London*, within a term therein specified, as a balance admitted to be due, on the part of *Spain*, to the crown and subjects of *Great Britain*, which term expired on the 25th day of *May* last, and the payment of the said sum was not made, according to the stipulation for that purpose; by which means the convention abovementioned was manifestly violated and broken by the king of *Spain*, and our subjects remained without any satisfaction or reparation for the many grievous losses sustained by them; and the methods agreed upon by the said convention, in order to the obtaining future security for the trade and navigation of our subjects, are, contrary to good faith, frustrated and defeated."

*Their suc-  
cess at sea.*

THE remaining part of this declaration is in the common form, and it was supported with proportionable vigour. The order for reprisals was sent to the *English* officers in the *West-Indies* above three weeks before they were published at *London*; and the minister, to render the *Spaniards* the more secure, affected a perfect indifference as to all matters concerning war and peace, and even went to his country-seat while it was in agitation. Admiral *Vernon*, in the meanwhile, together with Sir *Chaloner Ogle*, was cruising on the coasts of *Spain*, to intercept a rich fleet of *Assogue* ships, then expected home; but they escaped the *British* squadrons by an advice-boat sent to them with orders to steer north about, and to put into the first *Spanish* port which they could make in the bay of *Biscay*, and which proved to be *St. Andero*. Upon those ships escaping, the two *British* admirals sailed to *America*, while admiral *Haddock*, who kept cruising between *Cadiz* and *Gibraltar*, made several very rich prizes, one of them particularly valued at 120,000 l. sterling. All that the *Spaniards* could do, was to continue their naval preparations, and to engage the *French* in their interest. They succeeded in the last measure so effectually, that an invasion was every day expected from *France*; which put *Great Britain* to the trouble and expence of keeping a large fleet to observe the motions of the *French*; while admiral *Haddock* was still cruising on the coast of *Spain*, in order to block up their fleet at *Cales*, and to intercept the remainder of their ships that were expected from *America*. This disposition of the *British* marine in great bodies, left the seas too open for the *Spaniards*, who fitted out vast numbers of privateers, to the in-  
inf.



infinite damage of the *British* trade, as well as the disreputation of the ministry.

WE have, in other parts of this work, taken notice of *Spirited* the *American* war, which was carried on under admiral *Ver-proceedings* *non* at this time, where no fewer than thirty-four ships of of the war were employed. But the nation received no solid benefit from so vast an armament before the taking of *Porto-ment.*

*Bello.* This was owing, in a great measure, to the misconduct of the sea-officers, who alarmed the *Spanish* coasts in *America*, without doing them any damage. The *British* parliament, to shew how much they were in earnest in the war with *Spain*, addressed his majesty never to admit of any treaty, or negotiation for a peace, with that crown, "unless (said the addressers) the acknowledgment of our natural and indubitable right to navigate in the *American* seas, to and from any part of his majesty's dominions, without being seized, searched, visited, or stopped, under any pretence whatsoever, shall have been first obtained as a preliminary thereto." The address having passed, the bill for encouraging the trade to *America* went through both houses of parliament; and, in consequence of the same, a proclamation was issued to inform the subjects, "that his majesty would grant them separate, or united, charters, or commissions, for the more effectually enabling them to attack or destroy the ships, goods, factories, and settlements of the *Spaniards*; and to secure to them and their heirs, the full and undoubted right, property, and title, to what they should take, or cause to be taken, from the enemy." After this, a body of marines was voted to be raised, being an antient establishment, but now revived. But the nation still continuing to suffer by *Spanish* privateers, the ministry became so unpopular, that little was done to any effect. The *French*, and even the *Dutch*, protected and carried on the *Spanish* trade under the mask of neutrality, and the publick discontent was raised by an embargo being laid, and continued, on all shipping.

ADMIRAL *Haddock* being obliged to go into *Port-Mahon* with some part of his squadron, and to send the other part, as being unfit for service, to *Gibraltar*, the *Spaniards* seized that opportunity for effecting a junction between the *Cadix* and *Ferrol* squadrons. They, at the same time, marched down some troops to the coast of *Galicia*, and threatened to employ the duke of *Ormond*, who was then at *Madrid*, in a descent upon *England*. No sooner was it known for certain that the above junction was made, than orders were given for equipping a large fleet under Sir *John Norris*, for destroying the *Spanish* ships in *Ferrol*, and his royal highness the duke

The Spanish fleet  
sails to  
America.

duke of Cumberland went on board as a volunteer. The fitting out this armament raised the expectations of the nation to a very high degree; as it was powerful enough to have engaged both the *French* and *Spanish* fleets, had they been joined. But a train of misfortunes, partly arising from accidents, and partly from the weather, detained this fleet from proceeding on the expedition, while the *Spanish* combined squadrons sailed to the *West-Indies*, to the no small disappointment of the *French*, who were in hopes of bringing home the galleons and flota.

His Catholic majesty was, at this time, consumed with spleen, superstition, and indolence, and it was with the utmost difficulty that his queen prevailed upon him not to make a second abdication of his government in favour of the prince of *Asturias*, who was not thought to be well-disposed towards the *French*. The latter offered their mediation between *Great Britain* and *Spain*, provided the grand armament of sea and land-forces, which was then fitting out in *England*, should not proceed to *America*. This condition being rejected, the *French* declared that they would take part with the *Spaniards*, if any attempt was made upon their *West-Indies*; and their fleet under the Duc d'*Antin*, actually sailed for *America*. Besides the great armament, which sailed under Sir *Chaloner Ogle*, on the 26th of *October*, 1740, another expedition was equipped under captain *Anson*, which was designed for the *South-seas*, and to act on the coasts of *Chili* and *Peru*, occasionally corresponding, across the isthmus of *Darien*, with admiral *Vernon*, of whose success we shall here give some account.

History of  
admiral  
Anson's  
expedition.

IT was the 28th of *June* before Mr. *Anson*, who was appointed commodore in the last-mentioned expedition, received his instructions from the secretary of state, and upon that receipt he immediately set out for *Spithead*, where he found nothing in readiness for his sailing, 300 sailors of his complement being wanting. He had expected to have taken on board *Bland's* regiment of foot; and three independent companies of 100 men each; but this force was changed into 500 invalids, out-pensioners of *Chelsea*, most of them above sixty years of age; and half of the number deserted before they went on board. To supply this deficiency, the commodore was furnished with 210 marines, but all of them new-raised recruits. At last he set sail, with five ships of war and the *Trial* sloop. His largest ship was the *Centurion*, which carried sixty guns, and his smallest was the *Wager*, carrying twenty-eight. The whole number of his guns were 236, and of his men 1510. Those were, exclu-

five

five of two victualler-pinks, and 470 invalids and marines, commanded by lieutenant-colonel *Mordaunt Cracherode*. The sea-commanders under the commodore were, the captains *Norris, Legg, Mitchel, Kidd, and Murray*. The squadron sailed from *Spithead* to *St. Helens* on the 10th of *August*, but it was the 18th of *September* before he weighed; and on the 25th of *October* he arrived with his squadron at the island of *Madeira*. This long delay threw a damp upon all concerned in the expedition, as they could easily foresee that they must pass *Cape-Horn* in the most dangerous and tempestuous season of the year. After their staying about eight days at *Madeira*, captain *Norris* returned to *England*, which occasioned some removes in the command of the ships; but at last they sailed, having orders from the commodore, appointing their rendezvous, in case of separation, at the island of *St. Catharine's*, on the coast of *Brazil*, in *South-America*.

ON the 21st of *December*, after a most sickly passage, in which they lost many of their men, they arrived at *St. Catharine's*, where they remained till the 18th of *January*, and then sailed to port *St. Julian*, on the coast of *Patagonia*. In the mean while, the *Spanish* admiral, *de Torres*, with his fleet, had arrived in the *West-Indies*; and the delays made in commodore *Anson's* expedition had given the *Spaniards* leisure to fit out a squadron, under the command of *Don Joseph Pizarro*, which in the whole carried 304 guns and 2850 men. This squadron was designed to intercept commodore *Anson*, having on board, besides her seamen, an old regiment of *Spanish* foot. The commodore was fortunate enough to escape them, upon which they bore away from *Madeira* to the river *Plate* in *South-America*. Before commodore *Anson* departed from *St. Catharine's*, he issued orders to his captains, "That in case of separation, the place of rendezvous should be the bay of port *St. Julian*, where they were to take in a supply of salt; and if, after a stay of ten days, they were not joined by the commodore, they were then to proceed through the streights *Le Maire*, round *Cape-Horn*, into the *South-seas*; where the next place of rendezvous was to be the island of *Nuestra Senora de Secoro*, in the latitude of 45 deg. south, and longitude from the *Lizard*, 71 deg. 12 min. west; and from thence they were to continue their course to the island of *Juan Fernandes*, in the latitude of 33 deg. 37 min. south; where, after they had recruited their wood and water, they were to continue off the anchoring-place for fifty-six days; in which time, if the commodore did not join them, they were to put themselves under the command

mand of the senior officer, who was to continue in those seas as long as his provisions lasted to permit him, and to use his utmost endeavours to annoy the *Spaniards* both by sea and land; when he was to proceed to *Macao*, at the entrance of the river of *Canton*, on the coast of *China*; and afterwards, without delay, to make the best of his way for *England*."

*His danger  
from the  
Spanish  
Squadron.*

A FEW days after the sailing of the squadron for port St. *Julian*, the *Pearl* separated from its companions, and the captain dying, the command of the ship devolved upon the eldest lieutenant. On the 10th of *February*, he fell in with *Pizarro's* squadron, the leading ship of which was so artfully disguised like the *Centurion*, that he narrowly escaped being taken. When he joined the commodore at St. *Julian*, he informed him of the danger he had escaped: but the *Trial* sloop wanting repairs, occasioned the squadron being detained longer than was convenient at St. *Julian*. Before they sailed, the command of the *Pearl* was given to captain *Murray*, that of the *Wager* to captain *Cheap*, and that of the *Trial* sloop to lieutenant (now Sir *Charles*) *Saunders*. Before their sailing, the commodore, being apprehensive of encountering *Pizarro's* squadron, ordered his captains to put all their provisions which were in the way, of their guns, on board the *Anna* pink, and to remove such of their guns as had formerly, for the ease of their ships, been ordered into the hold. On the 24th of *February*, a council of war, at which colonel *Cracherode* assisted, was held on board the *Centurion*, to concert the future operations of the squadron. In this council the commodore acquainted the members, that he was instructed to secure some port in the *South seas*, where his ships might be careened and refitted: he therefore proposed to attack *Baldivia* upon the coast of *Chili*, to be made use of for that purpose. The council unanimously agreeing to this proposal, the captains received new instructions, by which "they were directed, in case of separation, to cruize off the island of *Nuestra Senora de Secoro* only ten days, from whence, if not joined by the commodore, they were to proceed and cruize off the harbour of *Baldivia*; and if, in fourteen days, they were not joined by the rest of the squadron, they were then to proceed to the island of *Juan Fernandes*, and regulate their farther proceedings by their former orders. And as the separation of the squadron might prove of the utmost prejudice to the service, each captain was ordered not to keep his ship at a greater distance than two miles from the *Centurion*."

It was the 27<sup>th</sup> of *February*, before the squadron could *He passes* be in readiness to weigh, and on the 7<sup>th</sup> of *March* they *the* passed the streights of *Le Maire*, but encountered most dreadful storms in attempting to pass *Cape-Horn*, their ships *streights of* being separated, and their crews reduced, by diseases and *Le Maire*, fatigues. On the 20<sup>th</sup> of *November*, the commodore, after losing out of his own ship 200 men, completed his passage round *Cape-Horn*, and came in sight of the island of *Secoro*. Here he kept cruising for several days, in hopes of meeting with the rest of his squadron; but being disappointed, and tempests and storms multiplying upon him, he sailed to the island of *Juan Fernandes*, after an additional loss of eighty men. By this time, his ship's crew was so weak, that the officers were obliged to assist equally with the common men in navigating her. At last, they reached the island of *Juan Fernandes*, which to them appeared to be an earthly paradise, and gave them inconceivable relief. On the 11<sup>th</sup> of *June*, they entered the harbour, and were joined by the *Trial* sloop, but without any appearance of the other ships. This island was wonderfully fitted by nature and situation for their relief, because they could lie there without alarming the *Spanish* settlements; and its air, water, and herbage, were equally salubrious for men in their condition. It was, however, the 16<sup>th</sup> before their debility suffered them to land their sick, which took up the two following days, to the infinite fatigue of the more healthy among them. The whole number that landed alive was no more than 167 persons; and for the first ten or twelve days they commonly buried six in twenty-four hours. On the 21<sup>st</sup> of the same month, they discovered a sail, which, upon the 26<sup>th</sup>, they perceived to be the *Gloucester*. The commodore easily guessed at the distressed situation of her crew, which was then reduced to fewer than eighty men, and sent off his boat to their assistance, laden with fresh water, fish, and vegetables. This supply arrived just at the time when the *Gloucester's* crew was on the point of expiring, they having been reduced for many days to a pint of water each man a-day; and even that failing, they must in a short time have perished through thirst. But though the admiral had sent all the hands he could spare to her assistance, yet it was the 23<sup>d</sup> of *July* before she could enter the bay.

The men being now somewhat recovered, and capable of working, the *Trial* sloop was dispatched to the little island of *Masa Fuero*, which captain *Mitchel* had discovered, twenty-two leagues to the westward of *Juan Fernandes*,

*The vast  
distress of  
his Squa-  
dron.*

thinking, that possibly the other ships might have mistaken it for the place of rendezvous: but the sloop returned without receiving any intelligence of the others. They now began to be in want of bread, the gréatest part of their flour being on board the *Anna pink*, which had not arrived; and this obliged the commodore to reduce his men to a short allowance of bread. At last, on the 16th of *August*, the *Anna pink*, to their great joy, came to anchor in the bay, after undergoing a proportionable share of distress with the other ships. The *Severn* and *Pearl*, in the mean while, had put back to the *Brazils*, having been separated from the rest of the Squadron off *Cape Noire*. The fate of captain *Cheap*, in the *Wager*, was still more deplorable. He had on board great part of the artillery that was intended, according to the original plan, to act against *Baldivia*, and he was very solicitous to have them ashore, in case the execution of that plan should be attempted. The *Wager* made land on the 14th of *May*, off the island of *Secoro*, from whence she proposed to sail for *Baldivia*; but being then little better than a wreck, she next morning struck on a funken rock, and soon after was entirely lost; being grounded between two small islands, about a musket-shot from shore; but the crew escaped to land in boats, and saved great part of their provisions.

THEIR common calamity in being thus thrown on an unknown desolate coast, instead of uniting them, proved the principle of disunion among the crew. They imagined, that the loss of their ship dissolved all relation between them and their officers, and nothing but anarchy, and the wildest scenes of riot, confusion, and intemperance of every kind, reigned in the company. The captain was a sedate, but resolute, officer; and having procured some fire-arms and ammunition from the wreck, he had formed a scheme, of fitting up his boats, and proceeding to the northward. Having with him 100 healthy men, he was in hopes of meeting with a *Spanish* prize, which would carry him to the rendezvous at *St. Juan Fernandes*; and, if they met with none, he imagined he could make that island in his boats. This was a scheme very distant from that which was formed by his hot-headed crew; who being impatient to return home, proposed to lengthen their long-boat, and, steering to the southward, to pass the streights of *Magellan*, and then to range along the east-side of *South-America*, till they could get a ship to carry them to *England*. The captain, in opposing this mad, impracticable, scheme, was treated by those ruffians with the utmost brutality. At last,

Just, towards the middle of *October*, when the long-boat was almost ready, the captain was so much provoked by the usage he received, that, apprehending a mutiny, he shot one of his crew dead; upon which he was put under arrest, and the russians threatened to carry him in irons to *England*, there to be tried for murder. The captain's resolution did not desert him on this occasion; and to that, perhaps, he owed his deliverance and safety: for when they were going to set sail, his serenity and intrepidity struck them so much, that, reflecting on what they were doing, they set him at liberty, and gave him leave to dispose of himself and the few attendants who were willing to share his fortune, in the yawl and the barge. This was on the 13th of *October*; and no more than nineteen remained with the captain, among whom were, Mr. *Hamilton*, lieutenant of marines, the honourable Mr. *Biron* and Mr. *Campbell*, midshipmen, and Mr. *Elliot*, the surgeon. The number of those who went off was fourscore; and their long-boat, which they had converted into a schooner, arrived, on the 29th of *January*, at *Rio-Grande*, on the *Brazil*-coast, their number being by that time reduced to thirty persons.

UPON their departure, the captain pursued his former plan, of embarking himself and his little company in the barge and yawl, and to sail northward. Accordingly, on the 14th of *December*, they set sail; but finding their scheme impracticable, after losing six of their hands, they returned to *Wager-Island*, so called from the name of their ship. It was then the middle of *February*, and the captain and his companions were entertaining the most dismal reflections, when two canoes of *Indians* arrived. One of them, who was a native of *Chiloe*, understood a little *Spanish*, and could converse with Mr. *Elliot*, who made a bargain with them to carry the captain and his company to the island of *Chiloe* in the barge, which the *Indian* was to receive for his trouble. Their company was now reduced to eleven persons; and the barge had proceeded for some days, when the captain, and the four gentlemen we have named, going on shore, the other six and an *Indian* put off in the barge, and left them exposed to fresh horrors, without the smallest means of subsistence, upon a desert, unknown, shore, and without arms to defend themselves. While they were in this melancholy situation, they perceived a canoe which belonged to the other *Indian* who had arrived at *Wager-Island*, and who, after some solicitation, carried them, partly by water, partly by land (Mr. *Elliot* dying on the way), to

*Chiloe*, where, to the honour of *Spanish* humanity, they were received and entertained with the utmost tenderness.

*His escape.* From *Chiloe* they were carried to *Valparaiso*, and then to *St. Jago*, the capital of *Chili*, being every where treated with the same humanity. Here they continued for about a year; and a cartel being settled between *Great-Britain* and *Spain*, the captain, *Mr. Biron*, and *Mr. Hamilton*, were sent in a *French* ship to *Europe*, the other midshipmen remaining among the *Spaniards*. But we are now to return to the commodore.

*Progress of* ABOUT the middle of *September*, upon mustering the  
*commodore* hands on board the *Centurion*, they were found to be no  
*Anson*; more than 214 marines and seamen. The *Gloucester* had only eighty-two alive, and the *Trial* thirty-nine, the victualling pink being discharged, and declared incapable of returning to *England*. The commodore bought the hull and furniture for 300*l.* and the hands on board it were sent to the *Gloucester*; so that, upon the whole, those three ships of war, from the time of their departure from *England*, lost no fewer than 636 men, and no more than 335 were left to navigate them. The prospect which this afforded was the more melancholy, as they had reason to believe that *Pizarro's* Squadron was in those seas, and that the *Spaniards* had, by that time, taken measures for defeating all their attempts. The commodore, however, acted with invincible fortitude of spirit, and determined, weak as his condition was, to sail down the coast, and to touch somewhere in the neighbourhood of *Panama*, being in hopes of receiving some intelligence of admiral *Vernon*, across the isthmus of *Darien*, it being one of the commodore's instructions, "That as he might find an opportunity to send privately over land to *Porto-Bello* or *Darien*, he was, by that means, to endeavour to transmit to any of his majesty's ships or forces that should be on that coast, an account of what he had done, or intended to do; and, lest any such intelligence should fall into the hands of the *Spaniards*, he was to use a cypher that had been given him, to correspond with the *British* admiral that might be in the North seas of *America*, or the commander in chief of the forces."

He was farther instructed as to the destination of the troops under the lord *Cathcart* to the *West-Indies*; and was ordered, that "If those forces should go to *Porto-Bello* or *Darien*, with a design to march to *Panama* or *Santa Maria*, to make the best dispositions to assist them in making a secure settlement, either at *Panama* or any other proper place, and supply them with cannon, or any thing else to be spared



spared, without weakening the squadron; and if they should want soldiers, to reinforce them with those on board his squadron, with the consent of the proper officer." Upon the whole, the commodore had some reason to believe that *Porto-Bello* was then actually in the hands of the *English*, in which case he flattered himself with the hopes of receiving a supply of men from thence, and of concerting such a plan of operations as should put him in possession of *Panama* itself, and consequently of the whole isthmus of *Darien*, which would lay open the wealth of all the *Spanish West-Indies* to the *British* arms. Had the expedition commanded by *Vernon* and *Wentworth*, who succeeded to lord *Catbcart's* command, been managed with tolerable prudence, the commodore's hopes would probably have been realized. On the 8th of *September*, which was the season for sailing in that country, as they were preparing to put to sea, they espied a sail to North-east, to which the *Centurion* immediately gave chase, but soon lost sight of her. The *Centurion*, returning to the island, saw another sail, which happened to be the consort of that which she had lost. The captain of this ship, imagining the *Centurion* to be the ship that had escaped, immediately bore down upon the commodore, who took her without resistance. This prize proved to be a *Spanish* ship, with a very considerable cargo on board, consisting of sugar, cloth, cotton, wrought-plate, and dollars, and was bound from *Callao* to *Valparaiso* in *Chili*. The crew consisted of fifty-three sailors, blacks and whites, exclusive of twenty-five passengers.

THIS capture, besides the value of its contents, was of infinite service to the commodore. He learned from the prisoners, that he had now nothing to apprehend from *Pizarro*, whose squadron, not being able to double *Cape-Horn*, had been forced back to the river *Plate*, after losing two of its largest ships. Next day, the *Centurion* came in sight of the island of *Juan Fernandez*; but the *Spanish* prisoners could not be persuaded that so small a vessel as the *Trial* sloop was, could have effected the passage of *Cape-Horn*, to which the best ships of *Spain* had been often found unequal. From the same prisoners, on the information of their letters, the commodore learned, that several other merchant-men were about to sail from *Callao* to *Valparaiso*; and perceiving that his men were in high spirits, through their late success, he ordered the *Trial* to cruize off *Valparaiso*, and gave her a reinforcement of hands for that purpose. At the same time, he sent on board the *Gloucester* six prisoners and twenty-three seamen, with orders for

who takes  
several  
prizes;

captain *Mitchel* "to proceed to the latitude of five degrees south, and there to cruize off the high land of *Paita*, at such a distance from shore as should prevent his being discovered. On this station he was to continue till joined by the commodore; which would be whenever it should be known that the viceroy had fitted out the ships at *Callao*, or on the commodore's receiving any other intelligence that should make it necessary to unite their strength."

CAPTAIN *Mitchel* having received those orders, the commodore and his prize weighed anchor the 19th of *September*, and steered to the eastward to join the *Trial* off *Valparaiso*, which he did on the 24th. The *Trial*, in the mean time, had taken a prize of about 600 ton, with much the same contents with the former prize, but the value in plate did not amount to above 5000 l. All the *Trial* could do at this time was just to keep above water; and the commodore, at the earnest request of the captain and the officers, perceiving that she had sprung her main-mast, turned her crew over to the prize, to which he gave the rank of a frigate in the royal service, and ordered the *Trial* to be scuttled and sunk. The new frigate mounted twenty guns, and the commodore's orders to captain *Saunders*, who was appointed to the command of it, were, "After he had sunk the *Trial*, to cruize off the high land of *Valparaiso*, keeping it from him, N. N. W. at the distance of fourteen leagues; to continue on that station twenty four days; and then, if not joined by the commodore, to proceed down the coast to *Pisco* or *Nasca*, where he should be certain to meet the commodore." Lieutenant *Saumarez*, at the same time, was appointed to the command of the *Centurion's* prize, and ordered to keep company with captain *Saunders*. On the 27th of *September*, the commodore, taking leave of the two prizes, directed his course to the southward, and for some days cruized to the windward of *Valparaiso*. In this cruize, he met with no prizes, which determined him to rejoin the ships he had last parted from: but returning to the same station, he could not find them, though he cruized there for three or four days. He then proceeded down the coast to the island of *Nasca*, where he arrived on the 21st of *October*, but it was the 2d of *November* before he was joined by the two prizes; who, as he found, had been as unfortunate as himself, having seen no *Spanish* ships. This made the commodore suspect, that an embargo had been laid upon the ships all along the coast, and that an armament was fitting out at *Callao* to attack him. He therefore determined to collect his ships into one body, and to join com-

modore

comodore Smith off *Paita*, with an intension to fight the Spanish Squadron if it should come out. On the 5th of November, being then in sight of the high land of *Baranea*, he took the *Santa Teresa de Jesus*, of 300 ton, bound to *Callao*, with forty-seven sailors and ten passengers on board, but her cargo not near so rich as those of his two former prizes.

On the 11th of the same month, while he was drawing near to the station assigned to the *Gloucester*, he took a ship called *Nuestra Senora del Carmin*, commanded by *Marcos Morena*, of 270 ton burden, with a cargo which cost 400,000 dollars (about 100,000 l.) prime-cost at *Panama*. An Irishman on board this prize informed the commodore, that, a few days before, the master of a vessel that arrived at *Paita* had informed the governor, that he had been chased in the offing by one of the English Squadron (which proved to be the *Gloucester*); that upon this, the royal officer residing at *Paita* had been for some days busily employed in removing the treasure there to *Puiza*, a town lying about fourteen leagues within-land; and that the governor of *Paita* had sent off an express to the governor of *Lima*, with the intelligence he had received. At the same time, the commodore learned from the other prisoners, that a considerable treasure was lodged in the custom-house at *Paita*, belonging to the *Lima*-merchants, which was to be moved to on board a ship with the first opportunity. The commodore comparing all those informations together, resolved to lose no time in surprizing *Paita*, not only that he might make himself master of the treasure, but that he might procure some fresh provisions, which were much wanted for his ships, and that he might have an opportunity of getting rid of his prisoners, who encreased the consumption of the small stock that was left him.

He was encouraged in this resolution by his receiving an exact information of the strength and situation of the place, as well as of the nature of the inhabitants; and every circumstance encreased his hopes of success. He learned that *Paita* lay in the latitude of five deg. and twelve min. south; that the soil was barren; and that the town contained about 400 houses, built of split cane and mud, and raised no higher than the first floor. The town itself is almost open, having for its protection only a small fort of eight guns, without ditch or outwork, or any other defence but that of a plain brick wall; that the garrison consisted of only one weak company; that few whites lived in the place; and that the inhabitants in general were composed of Indian blacks, or a mixed breed. The port, or bay of *Paita*, however,

the execution of which he commits to lieutenant Brett;

was reckoned the best upon that coast, and all vessels coming from the North commonly touched there; and such passengers as were bound to *Lima* from *Acapulco* or *Panama* commonly disembarked there. The commodore, to lose no time in executing his scheme, resolved to attack *Paita* that very night, but to do it by boats only, lest the sight of his large ships should alarm the inhabitants. An eighteen-oared barge and two pinnaces were accordingly ordered for that service, the execution of which was committed to lieutenant Brett, at the head of fifty-eight picked men, all of them well-armed and appointed. The commodore, at the same time, ordered, that they should be attended by two *Spanish* pilots, who were his prisoners, and well acquainted with the coast; and who were not only to direct the lieutenant and his company to the best place of landing, but were to be their guides in their attack upon the place. The commodore promised, that if the pilots behaved faithfully they should be well rewarded, and all his prisoners released at *Paita*; but upon the least appearance of treachery, the pilots were to be immediately shot to death, and all the prisoners carried to *England*.

who performs it with great courage and conduct.

THE commodore was, at this time, about twelve leagues from the shore, for which he stood in as soon as he made the proper dispositions for the attack; and the night favouring him, lieutenant Brett and his detachment arrived at the mouth of the bay without being discovered. Having entered it, they were discovered by some *Spanish* sailors, who ran on shore, and gave the alarm, "that the *English* dogs were landing." This discovery served only to redouble the spirit and resolution of the brave lieutenant and his detachment; and though the guns of the fort began to play upon them, they disembarked without any loss. When landed, one of the *Spanish* pilots conducted them to the entrance of a narrow street, which sheltered them from the fire of the fort, and gave them leisure to form; upon which they marched, with shouts of triumph, towards the parade, which was formed into a square at the end of the street. Mr. Brett had taken care to give his men such instructions that the shouts and the noise of the drums struck terror into the unwarlike inhabitants, who imagined their numbers to be at least 300. The governor's house formed one side of the parade, and a gallery round it was manned by the merchants who were proprietors of the treasure, and who gave the detachment a volley of fire arms, which being returned by the *English*, all the *Spaniards* abandoned that post, and left the parade in possession of the enemy. Mr. Brett then divided his

his detachment into two parties, one of which was allotted to the attack of the governor's house, while he himself led on the other to the fort, which the *Spaniards* abandoned upon his approach, and, to his amazement, he entered it without resistance. The governor, finding his house attacked, made his escape half-naked, leaving his wife (a young lady of about seventeen, to whom he had been but a few days married) in danger of falling into the hands of the *English*, from whom she, however, was carried off by two centinels. An absolute conquest was now made of the town and fort of *Paita*, with the loss of no more than one man killed and two wounded; and the whole action did not last above a quarter of an hour from the first landing of the men. Mr. *Brett*, apprehending there might be some danger from the fugitives rallying and returning, placed a guard at the governor's house, and another at the fort, and made the last the repository of the treasure, which he employed some stout negroes to carry from the Custom-house; but he took care to confine the few inhabitants that were left, in a church. In the mean while, the sailors ransacked private houses for pillage, and ridiculously equipped themselves in *Spanish* lace and embroidery.

WHILE the action lasted, the commodore was advancing towards the town with an easy sail; and having entered the bay, he could perceive, about seven in the morning, *English* colours hoisted on the flag-staff of the fort. About eleven, the *Trial's* boat, laden with treasure, joined the *Centurion*, and at two the commodore anchored at a mile and a half distance from the town. He could then perceive, that tho' the *English* had yet met with no interruption in collecting the treasure, yet that about 200 *Spanish* horse had rendezvoused in the country, and appeared on a hill behind the town, founding all kind of warlike instruments to make the *English* believe them to be more numerous than they really were, and to intimidate them into a retreat to their ships. This stratagem had no effect upon the sailors, who went on collecting the treasure and plunder, and sending off great plenty of live provisions to their ships. Towards evening, however, the commodore sent on shore a detachment to reinforce his party, and this kept the *Spaniards* in awe during the night; and next day the sailors went quietly on in their pillaging. The commodore had regretted the escape of the governor, and he found what he had suspected to be now true; for large warehouses were discovered of effects, which, though of vast value to the *Spaniards*, were of little to the captors, and which, had the governor been secured, he must have

*Cape-Corientes*, in the latitude of 20 deg. 20 min. and to cruize on that station till the 14th of *February*, when they were to depart for the middle island of the *Tres Marias*, in the latitude of 21 deg. 25 min. bearing from *Cape-Corientes* N. W. by N. 25 leagues distant; and if, at this island, they did not meet the commodore, after recruiting their wood and water, they were then immediately to proceed for the island of *Macao*, on the coast of *China*."

His crew  
encou-  
raged.

THE winds proved so contrary, that it was the 28th of *January* when they found themselves in the latitude of 17 deg. 56 min. and in the neighbourhood of *Acapulco*. This retardment greatly dispirited the crews, as they saw themselves too late for intercepting the *Manilla* galleon. But on the 19th of *February*, the *Centurion's* barge, which had been sent to discover the harbour of *Acapulco*, returned with accounts that had been received from some negroes, that the galleon had actually arrived at *Acapulco* on the 9th of *January*; that she had delivered her cargo, and was making ready for a return, her departure from *Acapulco* being fixed by the viceroy of *Mexico* to the 3d of *March*. This intelligence, which was to be depended on, gave fresh spirits to the sailors, as they were now in hopes of intercepting the galleon with all her treasure on board, which to them was far preferable to effects or other goods. But we shall leave them in pursuit of their voyage, to attend the *Spanish* admiral, *Pizarro*.

HE had arrived at the river *Plate* in *South-America* on the 5th of *January* 1740, and anchoring in the bay of *Maldonado*, he sent to *Buenos Ayres* for fresh provisions. While he remained there, he received intelligence from the *Portuguese* governor of *St. Catharine's*, that the *British* commodore had arrived there on the 21st of *December*, and of his preparing to set sail again. It is doubtful whether *Pizarro's* instructions authorized him to attack the *English* squadron any where but in the *South-seas*. Be that as it will, it is certain that he precipitately left the river *Plate* without his supplies, and put to sea on the 22d of *January*, in hopes of getting round *Cape-Horn* before Mr. *Anson*, who had sailed four days before from *St. Catharine's*; and during some part of the voyage, they sailed almost in company with each other. When the *Spaniards* had run the length of *Cape-Horn*, as they were standing to the westward to double it, on the 28th of *February* at night, three of their ships, the *Guipuscoa*, *Hermiona*, and *Esperanza*, were separated from their admiral; and on the very day that Mr. *Anson's* ships passed the streight of *Le Maire*, all the *Spanish* squadron was dispersed.

Distress  
and ruin of  
*Pizarro's*  
fleet.

dispersed by a most furious storm at North-west. The improvidence of their admiral and officers contributed to their distresses, which were inconceivable. They had left *Spain* with no more than four months provisions at short allowance, and the storms they encountered detained them at sea a month longer. A dreadful mortality, the usual attendant on famine, swept off the bravest and hardiest of their sailors; and their distresses were so multiplied, that rats, when they could be caught, were sold at four dollars a-piece. It was no wonder if so dismal a situation produced plots and conspiracies among some of the sailors, who intended to murder their officers, that they might engross the remaining provisions, miserable as they were. But those bloody purposes were detected and defeated, and at last, after several fruitless attempts to get round *Cape-Horn*, *Pizarro*, having lost half of his men in the *Asia*, bore away for the river *Plate*, and about the middle of *May* arrived at *Monte Vedio*. The *St. Estivan* lost 175 men; of 450 which composed the crew of the *Esperanza*, no more than fifty-eight were left alive. The *Guipuscoa* was sunk on the coast of *Brasil*, having lost 300 of her crew. The *Hermiona* foundered at sea, and all her crew, consisting of 500 men, perished; so that, upon the whole, this unhappy squadron lost no fewer than 2000 men, besides being disabled in their masts, yards, and rigging, which in those countries were irreparable.

WITH the utmost difficulty, *Pizarro*, at last, out of the wrecks of his other ships, refitted the *Asia* and the *St. Estivan*, and once more attempted to sail round *Cape-Horn*; but the *Estivan* was disabled, and the *Asia*, in which was *Pizarro* himself, was obliged once more to return to the river *Plate*, with the loss of her masts. In the mean while, the situation of commodore *Anson* was but little more desirable. He was forced to sink the *Gloucester*, and to destroy his other ships, all but the *Centurion*, for want of hands to man them, such dreadful havock had fatigue and diseases made in his squadron. At last, when reduced to the most deplorable condition, he reached the small, but plentiful and wholesome, isle of *Tinian*, where he and his men underwent fresh hardships by the *Centurion* being driven to sea. Having recovered her, they bore away for the river *Canton* in *China*, where their ship was sheathed, and he received a small reinforcement of sailors. Leaving *Canton*, he set sail back for the streights of *Manilla*, where he had the good fortune to intercept the *Manilla* galleon, for which he had so long waited, and was called *Nuestra Signor de Cabadonga*. This ship

Anson ship was mounted with forty guns, and had on board her takes the 600 sailors; so that she was, in all respects, superior to the great Ma- Centurion, who took her after a short but smart engagement, with all her treasure and effects, amounting in the nilla gal- whole to above 313,000 l. Mr. Anson then returned to leon. Canton, and after some adventures which do not belong to this part of our history, he returned to England by the Cape of Good-Hope. Upon the whole, though this expedition has been censured, and though it is certain, the adventurers owed their success to mere accident; yet it was productive of much real benefit to the nation, whose specie was thereby augmented to the value of above 400,000 l. The expedition itself, it is true, cost Great Britain dear, but it cost her enemies dearer, Pizarro's squadron being composed of the very flower of their navy. But we are now to attend such part of the operations of the Spaniards in Europe as have not been touched upon in the preceding history.

THE English fleet under admiral Matthews had long blocked up the combined squadrons of France and Spain in Toulon, but in February 1744 they ventured out. The Spaniards were commanded by don Navarro, whom the English admiral, Matthews, engaged; as rear-admiral Rowley did Monsi. de Court, the French admiral. The combined squadrons would willingly have declined an engagement, and Matthews was not supported by that division of his fleet which was commanded by admiral Lestock. Matthews, fearing that the whole of the enemy's fleet would escape him, gave his orders with great precipitation, and reduced Navarro's ship, the *Real*, which mounted 100 guns, to a mere wreck, and captain Hawke took another Spanish ship of the line. The miscarriages that happened after this, on the part of the English, were shameful, and owing to the stubborn differences that subsisted between Matthews and Lestock, while don Navarro escaped with the main of his division to Carthagena. In the month of July 1746, died Philip V. king of Spain, in the sixty-third year of his age. He was a prince not destitute of good natural abilities; and had, in the early part of his life, given proofs of personal courage. But indolence and superstition, for some years before his death, rendered him useless to his people, and he was entirely under the government of his queen, the most intriguing and ambitious princess of her age.

Death and  
character  
of Philip,  
king of  
Spain.

Succeeded by Don Fer- PHILIP was succeeded by his eldest son, Ferdinand, prince of Asturias, whom he had by the princess Maria-Louisa-Gabriela, sister to the present king of Sardinia, Ferdinand himself having married donna Maria-Magdalena, an

infanta



infanta of *Portugal*. He mounted the throne with a firm desire to restore peace to his people, which was effected by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, the substance of which, as well as the operations of the *Spaniards* which preceded it, the reader will find in other parts of this work. But, above all, *Ferdinand* was resolved to cultivate a firm alliance between *Spain* and *Great Britain*. He engaged with the *French* and the *Sardinian* monarchs in a defensive alliance, in which were comprehended the king of the *Two Sicilies*, the republic of *Genoa*, with the dukes of *Parma* and *Modena*; and he gave one of his daughters in marriage to the prince of *Piedmont*. As soon as he was settled on the throne, and peace restored to his dominions, he introduced fundamental alterations into the whole system of the *Spanish* government. He cut off unnecessary pensions. He applied himself to the discharge of the public debts, to put his forces both by sea and land into a respectable condition, to encourage commerce, and promote manufactures upon better and more active principles than *Spain* had ever known since the discovery of her *West-Indies*. In consequence of those maxims, conferences were held between Mr. *Keen*, who still continued to reside at the court of *Madrid*, and don *Joseph de Carvajal*, the *Spanish* minister, in order to compromise all the differences that had been left unsettled by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*. His treaty with Great-Britain;

THOUGH those conferences were embarrassed by the intrigues of the queen-mother, yet a treaty at last was concluded, by which his Catholic majesty engaged himself to pay, in three months time, to the *South-sea* company, 100,000 l. in consideration of all the claims they had upon his crown in virtue of the *Assiento* contract. The trade between the two crowns was regulated on the footing of former treaties. It was stipulated, that the *British* nation should pay no higher duties than those that had been settled in the reign of *Charles II.* of *Spain*, and that they should continue to enjoy the privilege of taking in salt at the island of *Tortuga*. As *Great Britain* at this time enjoyed vast advantages from the trade to *Spain* and *Portugal*, her ministers did not chuse to attempt to introduce the article of *No Search* into this treaty, though it had given rise to the preceding; and the *Spanish* ministry still continuing obstinate on that head, the *English* thought proper to let it rest upon the moderate exercise of it. The king of *Spain* was disposed towards those amicable sentiments for *Great Britain* by his ambassador, general *Wall*, who represented to him the true interests of *Spain*, and proposed the commercial system

system of *Great Britain*, as a model for that of *Spain*. As *Wall* was a man of sense and penetration, and well received at the *English* court, his Catholic majesty soon relished his reasoning on those points so well, that he called him to *Spain*, where he raised him to the post of first minister of state. About this time, his Catholic majesty gave orders to his sea-commanders to repress the shameful insults of the *Barbary* corsairs, with whom the crown of *Spain* is always at war.

to whom  
he conti-  
nues unal-  
terably at-  
tached.

THE partiality shewn by the king of *Spain* to Mr. *Wall*, renewed the efforts of the queen-mother to displace him, in which she was joined not only by the *French* faction at court, but by the marquis de *Ensenada*, the other *Spanish* minister of state. The king, continuing firm to his engagements with *Great Britain*, Mr. *Wall* and Sir *Benjamin Keene*, who, on this occasion was made knight of the Bath, procured the disgrace of *Ensenada*, who was arrested and confined; and even the queen-mother was given to understand, that she ought not to meddle too much with the affairs of government. Upon the breaking out of the differences between *England* and *France*, in the year 1755, the *French* court made a fresh attempt to bring his Catholic majesty off from his engagements with *Great-Britain*. For this purpose, they laid hold of the *British* admiral, *Boscawen*, having destroyed two *French* men of war before war was declared. This was represented by the *French* as a most gross violation of the law of nations; but Sir *Benjamin Keene* justified the action, and by orders of his master declared, that *British* ships would attack and destroy their enemies wherever they could find them, without regard to that neutrality, to which the *French*, by their conduct, had shewn themselves not to be entitled. This, undoubtedly, was a critical case, especially, as all the ports of *England* were, at this time, filled with *French* ships that had been taken at sea. His Catholic majesty, however, to the surprize of the rest of *Europe*, persevered in his system, and declared that he would take no part in the differences between the two crowns, but such as would tend to reconcile them. This declaration was intimated by his *Britannic* majesty to his parliament, who received it with great approbation. In this pacific condition and sentiments the crown of *Spain* continued, equally after the war was declared between *France* and *Great Britain*, as before. In 1758, the *British* admiral, *Osborne*, kept cruising with a squadron between *Cape de Gatt* and *Carthage*; and, on the 28th of *March*, he fell in with a squadron commanded by the marquis du *Quefne*.

THIS

THIS last squadron had been sent by the court of *France* to the relief of *de la Glue*, another *French* admiral, who was then shut up in the harbour of *Carthage* by *Osborne*. It consisted of four of the best ships the *French* had, viz. the *Foudroyant*, one of the largest ships of their navy, mounting eighty guns, with 800 men on board, commanded by the marquis *du Quesne* himself; the *Orphée*, of sixty-four guns; the *Oriflamme*, of fifty, and the *Pleiade* frigate, of twenty-four guns. As soon as they saw *Osborne's* Squadron they would have gladly escaped, but he himself standing in for *Carthage*, dispatched single ships after them. The *Foudroyant*, after a most obstinate engagement, struck to the *Monmouth*, a ship of very inferior force; the *Oriflamme* was driven on shore under the castle of *Aiglos*, in violation, as the *French* bitterly complained, of the neutrality of the *Spanish* coasts; and the *Orphée*, with 500 men on board, was taken by captain *Storr*, in the *Revenge*. The *Spanish* ministry could not help complaining of this violation, but were contented with a very moderate apology. The court of *London*, on the other hand, shewed a particular attention to his Catholic majesty, by their commissioners of the admiralty publishing a reward of 500 l. without deduction, to any person who should discover certain *English* pirates who had plundered the money and effects of the *Spanish* ambassador, in his voyage to the court of *Denmark*, on board a *Dutch* ship.

WHILE the war was thus carried on with unrelenting *His death*. fury between *Great Britain* and *France*, the *Spanish* monarchy received a dreadful shock in the person of her pacific king. He was passionately fond of his queen, who died in the year 1758. As he was naturally of a melancholy cast, which he inherited from his father, he gave way, with the most astonishing extravagance, to this disposition. He threw off, on a sudden, all concern in business, renounced all company, and immured himself in a chamber at *Villa Viciosa*, where he abstained from food with so much obstinacy, that it exhausted his strength, and brought upon him a complication of distempers. He was deaf to all consolation; he seemed to be sensible of no relation in life, but that which he had lost; and he neglected all kind of concern about his own person, even to an indecency of appearance. All he could be persuaded to was to make his will, which was written by the count *de Valparaíso*, in the presence of the duke *de Bejar*, high-chancellor of *Spain*. In this deplorable condition, he continued for above eleven months, and died on the 10th of *August*, 1759.

By his will he appointed his brother don *Carlos* to succeed him, as king of *Spain*, and that the queen-dowager should be regent till his arrival. As the succession to the kingdom of *Naples* was very doubtful, it was thought that this event would kindle a new flame in *Europe*. By the treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, it was provided, that if don *Carlos* should succeed to the crown of *Spain*, his brother don *Philip* should succeed him in that of *Naples*, and that his duchies of *Parma*, *Placentia*, and *Guasalla*, should revert to the house of *Austria*. Don *Carlos* paid no regard to this provision, and, on that account, he never had ratified the treaty itself; and, upon his elder brother's death, he considered himself as being in possession of both crowns. He knew that the empress-queen was then too much involved in war to be able to make good her claim, and that she would receive no assistance from *Great Britain*, the only power in *Europe* who could afford it with effect. His eldest son don *Philip*, who was thirteen years of age, being, through want of intellects and infirmities of person, incapable of succession, his father drew up a formal act, by which his second son was declared his successor to the crown of *Spain*, and his third son, don *Ferdinand*, to that of the *Two Sicilies*. He, at the same time, published the report of the chief physicians of his court and kingdom, concerning the insanity of his eldest son; and regulated the future succession to the crown of the *Two Sicilies*, which never is to be united to that of *Spain*. He likewise declared the young king of *Naples* and *Sicily* to be entirely independent of him both as a father and a sovereign, and made a formal cession to him of all his *Italian* dominions. After that, he embarked on board a *Spanish* squadron, and landing at *Barcelona*, he proceeded to *Madrid*, where he was received with great demonstrations of joy in the month of *October*, 1759. It at first appeared, that he was resolved to pursue the maxims of his deceased brother, by observing a strict neutrality with regard to the belligerent powers.

Neutrality  
of Spain.

IN vain did the court of *France* endeavour to form a party among his ministers, assisted by the queen-mother, to whom his majesty owed so much, to divert him from this wise resolution. All that he could be brought to, was, to send the count *de Fuentes*, a nobleman of high quality, to the court of *Great Britain*, with an offer of his mediation between it and that of *France*. It was thought that the count was charged with a proposal for a cessation of arms, in which the *British* ministry not readily acquiescing, the count, to remove some difficulties, went to *Paris*; but no compliances of the *French* court could make the proposition go down.

During

During those transactions abroad, his Catholic majesty was giving the most intense application to the improvement of his kingdom, and the relief of his people. They owed three-score millions of reals to the crown, which he immediately discharged. He called for an account of all the debts left by his father, and ordered that ten millions of reals should be annually appropriated for the payment of them, and he added, out of his own treasury, fifty millions. In all other respects, by the execution of justice, and by the improvement of agriculture and manufactures, his people looked upon him as their father. Those pacific measures did not divert his attention from the possible event of a war; and he equipped, under pretext of his intending to chastise the insolence of the *Algerines*, a very considerable naval armament at *Carthage*. It soon appeared, that his Catholic majesty had a very different design, though concealed from the public. He could not behold the progress made by the *British* arms without great jealousy, lest they might extend their conquests to the *Spanish America*; and the *French*, notwithstanding all his aversion to war, at last shook his resolution; by representing the intractable haughtiness, as they called it of the *British* minister, who was then Mr. *Pitt*; and the danger of both branches of the house of *Bourbon* being stripped of their *American* possessions; not to mention the dreadful consequence that must rise from thence to *Spain*.

It appears, that these representations secretly determined *Family-Compact* the Catholic king to break with *Great-Britain*; and perhaps never was any negotiation more artfully conducted than this was on the part of *France*, when we consider the state of bankruptcy that nation was in, and the immense losses she had sustained. His Catholic majesty looked upon this distress as the chief motive for entering into what is very justly called a *Family-Compact*, the most extraordinary treaty that this age can produce; it being, in fact, a consolidation of the rights and interests of the two crowns, and their subjects, in all respects but those relating to the *Spanish American* commerce. By the twenty-third and twenty-fourth articles of this treaty, the subjects of their Catholic, and *Sicilian* majesties, were to enjoy in *France* the same privileges as natives; and the *French* were to be treated in *Spain*, and the *Two Sicilies*, as the natural born subjects of those two monarchies; and the subjects of the three sovereigns shall enjoy, in their respective dominions in *Europe*, the same privileges and exemptions as the natives; but by the twenty-fifth article it was agreed, that the subjects of no other nation in *Europe* should participate in these advantages.

By those articles, this compact became, in fact, an incorporate union of the subjects of the three powers; and it is very questionable, whether such an union can in justice take place to the exclusion of all other nations with whom those three powers have treaties of commerce. But we have no room for a farther discussion on this point.

A federal, as well as an incorporate union, was necessary to render the compact complete. This was formed in the most artful manner, and plainly intimated that it was pointed against *Great-Britain*. By the first article, both kings are for the future to look upon every power as an enemy that becomes the enemy of either; and, after stipulating the proper guarantees and assistances, which each power was to give to the others, the 16th article provides, that "The succours above stipulated, shall be considered as the least that either of the two monarchs shall be at liberty to furnish to the other; but as it is their intention, that a war declared against either, shall be regarded as personal by the other, they agree, that when they happen to be both engaged in war against the same enemy, or enemies, they will wage it jointly with their whole forces; and that, in such cases, they will enter into a particular convention suited to circumstances, and settle as well the respective and reciprocal efforts to be made, as their political and military plans of operations, which shall be executed by common consent, and with perfect agreement." By the seventeenth and eighteenth articles, "They formally engage not to make, or even to listen to, any proposal of peace from their common enemies, but by mutual consent; being resolved, in time of peace, as well as in time of war, each mutually to consider the interests of the allied crown as its own; to compensate their several losses and advantages, and to act as if the two monarchies formed only one and the same power."

By the eighth article of the said treaty, (for we shall not consider it in the artful order in which those articles are disposed, but according to the natural tendency it has to influence the affairs of *Europe*) an exception is made, by which his Catholick majesty declares himself not obliged to furnish the stipulated succours to *France*, in any war she may be engaged in with the Northern powers, in consequence of her guarantee of the treaty of *Westphalia*, unless some maritime power takes part in those wars; or that *France* be attacked by land in her own country. The obvious sense of this article is, that *Spain* will assist *France* against the Northern powers, and even against the house of *Austria*, if *Great Britain* should offer to support them. The tendency of this treaty

treaty was so dangerous, and so alarming, that all imaginable care was taken to keep it secret ; but it came to the knowledge of the *English* minister, who brought it upon the carpet of his master's council-board, even while the contracting parties thought it impossible it should be known. The *French*, at this time, had entered into the famous negotiation with *Great Britain*, and their negotiator, *Bussy*, was treating at *London*. It soon appeared, that the whole of the *French* negotiation was undertaken and pursued for no other purpose than to keep his Catholic majesty firm to his engagements with *France* ; and that the latter was laying a plan of future hostilities, while she was making the most solemn declarations of her sincere dispositions towards peace.

His Catholic majesty was prevailed with to lend his name, *Injustice to* on this occasion, to the most extraordinary paper that *Portugal*. ever was presented. *Bussy* offered a memorial to the *British* minister, importing, that his Most Christian majesty apprehended that a new war might break out, unless the *British* court would give satisfaction to his Catholic majesty on the three following points. First, with regard to some ships taken in the course of the war under *Spanish* colours. Secondly, the pretensions of *Spain* for her subjects to fish on the banks of *Newfoundland*. This was a claim that the *Spaniards* had made at the time of the peace of *Utrecht*, and it was then treated with the utmost disdain. Thirdly, the destruction of the *English* fortifications in the bay of *Honduras*. His Most Christian majesty, therefore, passionately desired that those points might be settled, and that his Catholic majesty should be invited to guarantee the treaty. This memorial seems to have been the first fruit of the family-compact, and to have been artfully introduced into the negotiation, to give the *Spanish* court an opinion of his Most Christian majesty's sincerity. The *British* minister could not conceal his indignation at this memorial which came from an enemy, though relating to the settlement of differences with a friend, who had an ambassador that very time residing in *London*. It was returned with disdain by the *British* minister, who, at the same time, in a letter to *Bussy*, declared, that his master would not suffer the disputes with *Spain* to be intermingled in any shape in the negotiation ; and that the bare mention of such an idea would be considered as an affront. The *Spanish* minister was applied to, to disavow the proceeding. He returned, at first, a verbal, but an ambiguous, answer, and then sent a written answer, which, though couched in terms of seeming moderation in the main, justified *Bussy's* proceeding.

THIS conduct of the court of *Spain* left the reality of the Family-Compact no longer disputable; and Mr. *Pitt*, the *British* minister, renewed his instances at the council-board for an immediate declaration of war with *Spain*. He, at the same time, wrote a private letter to the earl of *Bristol*, the *British* ambassador at *Madrid*, complaining of *Buff's* conduct, and demanding satisfaction; and likewise, an explanation of the reasons for equipping the large naval armaments which were every day going forward in the ports of *Spain*. The earl of *Bristol* immediately conferred with general *Wall*, the *Spanish* minister, on that head, and gave him a memorial of the same. *Wall* wanted to explain *Buff's* insolence, in a manner, that should render it less offensive to the court of *Great Britain*, but he justified the claims that had been made in his memorial. As to the then preparations making in the ports of *Spain*, general *Wall* declared, that all the ships of war, including frigates, did not exceed twenty; and were but just necessary for protecting their trade, and for checking the *Barbary* corsairs. Mr. *Wall*, in several subsequent conferences, professed the great regard which his master had for his *Britannic* majesty, and his resolution to cultivate the harmony between the two crowns; but after the arrival of the flora in the bay of *Gadix*, he began to be more explicit, and declared, that his master thought the *French* could not, consistently with their own interests, and their engagements with their allies, make any farther advances towards peace than they had done.

War with  
England.

THE court of *England* was now perfectly sensible, that the *French* and *Spaniards* intended to join in the war, and agreed with Mr. *Pitt*, in general, as to facts; but the other ministers differed with him as to consequences. The particulars of the Family-Compact were yet unknown. *England* was groaning under an immense debt. *Spain* had done nothing to provoke *England* to a war, and the laws of nations were to be respected, especially, considering the great interest the *British* trade had at stake, and the respectable state of the *Spanish* marine. It was therefore the opinion of all the *British* privy-council, excepting Mr. *Pitt*, and his brother-in-law, earl *Temple*, that no hostilities should commence against *Spain*, till farther explanations could be obtained. Mr. *Pitt*, upon this resigned the seals of his office, which were given to the earl of *Egremont*. The new secretary's first dispatch to the earl of *Bristol*, instructed him to desire from the court of *Spain*, a communication of the treaty acknowledged to have been lately concluded between the courts of *Madrid* and *Versailles*; or such articles of it as related to *Great Britain*, and



and that too before he entered upon any other business. He acquainted his lordship, at the same time, that the war, far from being relaxed by Mr. Pitt's resignation, would be carried on with more vigour than ever. The earl of *Bristol* found Mr. *Wall* a good deal altered as to the language he made use of, which was more peremptory than before, in justifying the court of *France*, and blaming that of *Great Britain*; whose conduct, he said, had a very dangerous tendency. He, at the same time, insinuated, that his Catholic majesty expected satisfaction as to his own demands. The reason of this alteration was soon known by the arrival of another fleet at *Cadiz*, with an immense treasure; and on the 19th of *November*, 1761, the earl of *Egremont*, by his master's order, instructed the earl of *Bristol*; that if Mr. *Wall*, either in direct terms, or by implication, should acknowledge his master's having entered into any agreement with *France*, or in any way receding from his neutrality, that his excellency should depart from *Madrid* without taking leave. His Catholic majesty was all this while sending strong reinforcements of ships and troops to *America*, and was supplying *France* with vast sums, which the *English*, and their allies, severely felt in *Germany*. The *French* interest, at the court of *Madrid*, now compelled Mr. *Wall* to a still greater alteration of his language. The earl of *Bristol* having communicated to him his last dispatch, he replied, that "the spirit of haughtiness and of discord, which dictated this inconsiderate step, and which, for the misfortune of mankind, still reigns so much in the *British* government, is what made, in the same instant, the declaration of war, and attacked the king's dignity. Your excellency may think of retiring when, and in the manner is convenient to you, which is the only answer that, without detaining you, his majesty has ordered me to give you."

SOON after the receipt of this letter, the earl of *Bristol* quitted *Madrid* on the 17th of *December*, all farther tentatives for an accommodation being found ineffectual. In *England*, the count *de Fuentes* had orders likewise to leave that court. Before his departure, he left a most insolent and inflammatory note with the earl of *Egremont*, accusing, as usual, the *British* ministry with being haughty and intractable; and intimating, that had the explanations so often desired been made with a proper deference with regard to his Catholic majesty, they might have been easily obtained. He said, in the same paper, that the treaty between the two branches of the house of *Bourbon*, was no more than a family convention that had not the least concern with the

war; and that though it contained a mutual guaranty of the dominions of the two sovereigns; yet that that guaranty was not to be understood but of the dominions which shall remain to *France* after the war is ended. Other parts of this memorial contained the most bitter invectives against Mr. *Pitt*, whom he still supposed, secretly, to hold the reins of government. This answer was answered in a counter-memorial penned by the earl of *Egremont* with great decency, precision, and strength of reasoning.

It is certain, that *Great-Britain* would willingly have declined this rupture with his Catholic majesty, whose armies and fleets were untouched, and whose finances were full through a long continuance of peace; all which was the reverse with regard to *Great Britain*. It was computed, that the *Spanish* navy, at that time, consisted of above an hundred ships of war, many of them of great force, of those nineteen of the line, with sixteen frigates, and a body of land-forces on board, were, at that time, in *America*; besides thirteen ships which were ready to sail for the *Havannah*. This marine, joined to the remains of that of *France*, and those which the *French* nation, animated by the conclusion of the Family-Compact were then building, became a great object of attention to *Great Britain*, after so long, so bloody, and so expensive a war, as she had maintained. But the *English* nation had taken part with the late minister in his sentiments with regard to *Spain*, and a war with that country was now the only point in which all parties in *Great Britain* were united; and they had, at this time, upon their hands the two most important expeditions they had ever been engaged in, one against *Martinico*, and the other against *Cuba*.

proclaim-  
ed.

On the 10th of *December*, orders were issued by the king of *Spain*, to the governors of his sea-port towns, for the detention of all the *English* ships there; and his *Britannic* majesty's proclamation of war against *Spain*, which was published in *London*, bears date the 2d of *January*, 1762, and that of his Catholic majesty against *Great Britain*, is dated the 16th of *January*, the same year. The first effect of the Family-Convention broke out against *Portugal*, which almost ever since it was an independent kingdom, had been under the immediate protection of *England*. Though that kingdom was then in a most deplorable condition, without a fleet, with very few troops, and those entirely undisciplined, yet her preservation was of the utmost consequence to the *British* nation. The *Spanish* army marched towards the frontiers of *Portugal*. All commerce between the two king-  
doms

doms was prohibited. On the 6th of *March*, the *French* and *Spanish* ministers presented to the court of *Portugal* the most insolent memorial that history can parallel. It insisted greatly upon the insolence with which *Great Britain*, by her marine, behaved towards all other nations; and enlarged upon the tyrannical dependence in which she held *Portugal* itself. It mentioned the *English* admiral, *Boscawen's*, attacking *de la Clue's* Squadron in a *Portuguese* harbour, the affinity between the crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal*, and the common interest the latter had with the former. The memorial concluded with several soothing expressions, inviting his Most Faithful majesty into an offensive and defensive alliance with *France* and *Spain*; and offering, on the part of the latter, that if his answer should be favourable, the *Spanish* troops, who were upon his frontiers, should immediately garrison the principal forts of his kingdom, to defend them against the *English*. The memorialists added, that they were instructed to demand a categorical answer in four days time; and, that every delay beyond that term would be considered as a negative.

FEW princes have ever been known in a more undesirable situation than his Most Faithful majesty was in at this time. It was equally dangerous for him to provoke the *Spaniards* as the *English*, without the smallest means of resisting either; and, by admitting the *Spanish* garrisons, he rendered his kingdom a dependent province on that crown. He behaved with astonishing firmness. He returned a modest, rational, but resolute, answer to this memorial, declining the invitation, and vindicating his alliance with the *English* nation. This produced other memorials from the same ministers, more insolent, if possible, than the former. They gave him to understand, that he was not at liberty to continue his neutrality, and that his alliance with *Great Britain*, which he said was purely defensive, ceased to be so, and became offensive from the situation of the *Portuguese* dominions, and from the nature of the *British* power, that without the ports and assistance of *Portugal*, the *English* squadrons could not keep the seas, and be always ready to cruise to intercept the *French* and *Spanish* navigation; nor could they insult all the powers of *Europe* by sea, did not the riches of *Portugal* come into their hands. His Most Faithful majesty answered this, and several other memorials to the same purpose; and, at last, the memorialists demanded passports for leaving the kingdom, which was readily granted them; and they set out on the 27th of *April*, 1762. Their departure was followed by declarations of war on all sides, that of his Catholic majesty

jesty was issued the 15th of June. Future ages will scarcely believe that nations, calling themselves civilized, could act with so avowed a disregard to justice and good faith, as *Spain* and *France* did on this occasion. It was thought, that all the troops of *Portugal*, at this time, did not amount to above 20,000 men, some of them without arms or cloathing, and all of them without discipline; nor did their marine consist of above five or six ships of the line, and a very few frigates; nor was there a fortified place in the kingdom in repair, or fit to stand a regular siege. To compensate those disadvantages the *Spaniards*, before they could enter into the inhabited part of the kingdom, had prodigious tracts of a dreary, barren, burnt-up country, to march through; and had all the hardships of thirst, hunger, and heat, to encounter. Besides these considerations, his Most Faithful majesty had great dependence upon the inveterate aversion that his subjects in general, however unwarlike in other respects, had for the *Spaniards*; but his chief reliance was on the *English*, many of whose officers had repaired to *Portugal* upon the first breaking out of the differences between the two courts.

THEY were followed by larger supplies of troops, artillery, arms, provisions, and even money; in all which the *Portuguese* were deficient, and which the *Spaniards* had flattered themselves *Great Britain* could not have supplied in her then exhausted state, when there was scarcely a corner in the world in which she was not carrying on a vigorous war. The general at first made choice of by his Catholic majesty to command his army in *Portugal* was, the marquis de *Sarria*; who entered that kingdom at its north-east angle, by the *Terra de Campos*, and proceeded towards *Miranda*. Tho' this place was in no good condition, yet it was thought to be strong enough to have delayed the progress of the enemy, for at least two or three days, which would have been of the utmost consequence to the *Portuguese*. But a powder magazine, either thro' accident or treachery, blew up, overthrew the fortifications, and the *Spaniards*, without the least opposition, entered the place by the breaches that were made in the wall. The *Spaniards*, elated by this unexpected success, marched to *Braganza*, a considerable city that gave a ducal title to the ancestors of his *Portuguese* majesty, but which the *Spaniards* took possession of without resistance; so dispirited were the garrison and the inhabitants by what had happened at *Miranda*. From thence a detachment was sent across the country to *Moncorvo*, which they took possession of with the same facility, and thereby became masters of a great part of the river *Douro*. During those operations, count *O'Reilly*, by a forced march

of

of fourteen leagues, which he performed through a mountainous country in two days, came before the city of *Chaves*, which he found evacuated by its garrison and the inhabitants. By those conquests, the *Spaniards* became masters of almost the whole large province of *Tra los Montes*, by which their progress was, in a manner, cleared to the important city of *Oporto*, where the *English* had very valuable storehouses; and it was thought proper by the *British* admiralty to give orders for transports to carry off the effects of their factory; so prevailing was the opinion that that city must be lost.

By this time, some *English* officers had found means to re-animate the courage of the *Portuguese*, by reviving in them their hereditary enmity to the *Spaniards*, and to give them a severe repulse in attempting to cross the *Douro*. It was impossible to retain the *Portuguese* peasants from inflicting many unwarrantable cruelties upon the *Spaniards* who fell into their hands upon this occasion, and which were severely retaliated in kind. This repulse did not prevent another division of the *Spanish* army from entering the province of *Beira*, by the villages of *Val de Mula*, and *Val de Coelha*, where they were joined by almost the whole body of the *Spanish* army, that had over-run *Tra los Montes*. This blow was aimed at the vitals of the *Portuguese* monarchy, as, if successful, it opened their way to *Lisbon* itself. Their first operation here was to besiege *Almeida*, the strongest town of the *Portuguese* frontiers. It held out for some days; but on the 25th of *August*, the garrison surrendered by an honourable capitulation. The *Spaniards* then directed their march southwards to the *Tago*, at the mouth of which stands the capital of *Portugal*. A small army of *English* and *Portuguese* had now taken the field, but by far too inconsiderable to think of hazarding a pitched battle with the *Spaniards*. All they could do was to dispute passes, intercept convoys, and surprise detached parties. Even those operations, inconsiderable as they seem, were of vast service to the affairs of the *Portuguese*, as they retarded the execution of the plan which their enemies had formed.

THE court of *Portugal*, from the beginning of this war, had solicited his *Britannic* majesty to send them an able general to command their armies. Count *la Lippe*, who had served with so much reputation in the *German* war, was pitched upon; and, to the great joy of the *Portuguese*, he arrived at *Lisbon* just at the time when a third division of the *Spanish* army was preparing to enter *Portugal* by its southern frontier from *Estremadura*. It was of the utmost consequence to the *Portuguese* to check the progress of this divi-

division; and the count *la Lippe* receiving intelligence that the *Spaniards* were assembling and forming magazines at *Valenca d'Alcantara*, for the invasion of *Alentejo*, he laid a plan, the executing of which he communicated to brigadier *Burgoyne*, for surprising them at the first-mentioned place. The brigadier collected together 400 of his own regiment, all the *British* grenadiers, eleven companies of *Portuguese* grenadiers, two pieces of light cannon, and two haubitzers. Having taken all the necessary precautions to conceal his true design from the enemy, he began his march, which was through very bad roads to *Castel de Vida*, where he was joined by about 200 ill-appointed *Portuguese*, from whom he seems to have got intelligence of the situation of the town. Being arrived near it, after infinite fatigues and difficulties, his advanced guard had the good fortune to find the *Spaniards*, who could not dream of such an attempt so secure, that they rushed into the town without resistance, sword in hand, and cut in pieces, or made prisoners, all who resisted. The brigadier then detached his dragoons into the country, to pick up those who had escaped. A serjeant, and six men only, who were by themselves, engaged a subaltern with twenty-five dragoons, unbroken, killed six of the men, and brought in the rest prisoners, with every horse of the party. Among the prisoners were the general who was to have commanded the intended invasion, one colonel, two captains, and seven subaltern officers; and one of the best regiments of *Spain* was entirely destroyed. This blow entirely disconcerted the scheme the *Spaniards* had formed for entering *Alentejo*; where, it being an open country, their cavalry, in which their great strength consisted, could have acted with great advantage; but the province of *Beira*, in which they still continued, being rough, barren, and mountainous, they were there of very little service. That part of the *Spanish* army which continued still at *Castel Branco*, had made themselves masters of several important places. While the combined army was passing the river *Alveito*, the *Spaniards* attacked their rear, but were repulsed with considerable loss. Notwithstanding this, they were still masters of the country, and wanted only to pass the *Tajo*, in order to take up their quarters in *Alentejo*. Brigadier *Burgoyne* was in the neighbourhood, and posted so as to be able to obstruct their passage; he perceived, that near a village called *Villa Velha*, a large body of the enemy's cavalry lay encamped, and he formed a design to surprise them; the execution of which he trusted to colonel *Lee*, who, in the night, turned the enemy's camp, fell upon their rear, dispersed the *Spaniards* with a considerable

able slaughter, and after destroying all their magazines, he returned with scarcely any loss. In this action, the colonel was greatly assisted by general *Burgoyne*, who kept the enemy in play in another quarter, so that they could not send any reinforcements to that where colonel *Lee* acted.

THOSE and several other checks which the *French* and *Spaniards* received during the progress of this invasion, effectually prevented their hostile designs against *Portugal*. The winter was now drawing on; most prodigious quantities of rain fell; the roads were broken up, and rendered impassable; they could not find subsistence for their cavalry, and they had taken no place where they could maintain themselves during the winter; nor had they laid up any magazines. Under those circumstances, the *Spaniards* thought proper to return to *Spain*, and thus *Portugal*, by the valour and good conduct of the *English*, was delivered from the most powerful invasion she had ever known. We have, in another part of the work, given a full account of the siege and taking of the *Havannah*, the most signal event that ever distinguished this, or any other, war between *Great-Britain* and *Spain*. That court had no idea of the possibility of the *English* succeeding against a place so well provided, and so strongly situated, that they deemed it to be impregnable; and their ministers even threw out unmanly taunts against the *English* for their temerity in attempting it. Though the *English* valour saved *Portugal* for that campaign, yet it is probable, that the invasion must have been renewed next year, had it not been for the taking of the *Havannah*; but the loss of that key to their *American* possessions was so deeply felt through all their monarchy, and the loss of *Martinico* making the like impression upon the *French*, that both those crowns now disposed themselves seriously to peace, which was at last effected by the conclusion of the definitive treaty. which is saved by Great Britain.

THE points in dispute between *Great Britain* and *Spain* had been materially adjusted during the late negotiations; and nothing remained to be settled but a few insignificant matters to satisfy the *Spanish* punctilio. The reader may remember, that one of the grievances, which *Buffy*, in his famous memorial, said the *Spaniards* complained of ships having been taken and condemned, though carrying *Spanish* colours. The *British* ministry very properly replied to this complaint, that those ships had been condemned by regular process before the *English* court of admiralty, from whom there was an appeal to commissioners; but the matter was settled by the 16th article of the treaty, as follows: "The decision of the prizes made, in time of peace, by the subjects of

of *Great Britain* on the *Spaniards*, shall be referred to the courts of justice of the admiralty of *Great Britain*, conformable to the rules established among all nations, so that the validity of the said prizes, between the *British* and *Spanish* nations, shall be decided and judged according to the law of nations, and according to the treaties in the courts of justice of the nation who shall have made the capture."

THE grand affair of the *English* cutting logwood in the bay of *Campeachy*, which had so much piqued the *Spanish* pride, was settled by the 17th article in the following manner. "His *Britannic* majesty shall cause to be demolished all the fortifications which his subjects shall have erected in the bay of *Honduras*, and other places of the territory of *Spain* in that part of the world, four months after the ratification of the present treaty; and his Catholic majesty shall not permit his *Britannic* majesty's subjects, or their workmen, to be disturbed, or molested, under any pretence whatsoever, in the said places, in their occupation of cutting, loading, and carrying away logwood; and for this purpose, they may build without hindrance, and occupy without interruption, the houses and magazines which are necessary for them, for their families, and for their effects; and his Catholic majesty assures to them, by this article, the full enjoyment of those advantages, and powers, on the *Spanish* coasts and territories, as above stipulated, immediately after the ratifications of the present treaty." By the 18th article, his Catholic majesty, renounces for himself, and his subjects, all pretensions to the right of fishing in the neighbourhood of *Newfoundland*. The 19th and 20th article, which we have already given, regard the cessions made by both parties in *America*; and the 21st article runs as follows. "The *French* and *Spanish* troops shall evacuate all the territories, lands, towns, places, and castles of his Most Faithful majesty, in *Europe*, without any reserve, which shall have been conquered by the armies of *France* and *Spain*, and shall restore them in the same condition they were in when conquered, with the same artillery and ammunition which were found there; and with regard to the *Portuguese* colonies in *America*, *Africa*, or in the *East-Indies*, if any change shall have happened there, all things shall be restored on the same footing there were in, and conformably to the preceeding treaties, which subsisted between the courts of *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*, before the present war."

*A peace  
concluded.*

UPON the conclusion of the peace, his Catholic majesty was at a vast expence in procuring the ablest architects, engineers, and artificers of all kinds, and sending them to re-



pair the *Havannah*, and to strengthen it with new fortifications; and, at the same time, he returned to his former good understanding with the *British* nation. This, however, has of late received some shock by letters that have been received from *America*, most pathetically describing the miserable condition of the *English* logwood-cutters, in a petition from the principal settlers to the governor of *Jamaica*, in which it is said, "That the petitioners being ordered to withdraw from every other settlement, and retire to *Balis* with their effects, a total stagnation of business hath ensued; the commanders of ships, who have disposed of their cargoes to the petitioners, seeing no possibility of payment, refuse any longer to supply them with provisions; that having now no plantations of their own to maintain themselves and families, they see no possible means of preserving themselves from famine; that having no legal authority for settling disputes among themselves, they are reduced to a state of anarchy and confusion, in which the injured can have no redress. To this wretched condition are they reduced by the inhumanity of the *Spaniards*." The court of *England* lost no time in transmitting this complaint to the earl of *Rochford*, the *British* ambassador at *Madrid*; and we have since been assured by authority, that the *Spanish* ministry have disavowed their having given any orders to their officers in *America*, that could authorise them in the smallest infraction of the treaty.

### Supplement to the History of Portugal.

THE history of this kingdom, in the former part of our work, brought it down to the year 1715, when the treaty was signed between the *Spanish* and *Portuguese* plenipotentiaries at *Utrecht*, under the mediation of *France*. His *Portuguese* majesty, thereby gaining some respite, applied himself to cultivate the arts of peace, and to keep himself entirely free from all broils in *Europe*. This naturally led him, upon all occasions, to court the friendship of the *English*, by which his dominions remained in such tranquillity, that the history of *Portugal* affords, for some years, no interesting historical matter. But however assiduous *John V.* was to preserve this tranquillity, he always retained a sense of his own dignity, and would not lose the smallest punctilio due to his rank as a sovereign. This he manifested in the year 1724,

See Vol. XXII. p. 389.

1724, when the abbe de Livri came to *Lisbon* with the character of ambassador from *France*. At first, he was received with all marks of distinction, but he insisted upon don *Diego de Mendosa*, first secretary of state, paying him the first visit, which the latter absolutely refused to do. The former asserted, that it had been customary; the latter maintained, that it had been only complied with when ambassadors were personally acquainted with each other. The two courts approved of the conduct of their respective ministers in this ridiculous dispute, which ended without its having any farther consequence, than in the abbe's leaving *Portugal* without having had an audience from the king.

THE next historical event that occurs in the affairs of *Portugal*, was a dispute with the *Dutch African* companies, about the meaning of certain ancient treaties relating to the Negro-trade; a matter of great importance to both powers. The abbe de *Mendosa*, son to the secretary, was sent to the *Hague* to negotiate the affair; but he was so far from succeeding, that he embroiled matters more than ever: so that a rupture between the two powers must have ensued, had not the ambassador been recalled, and don *Lewis d'Aucunha* sent in his room, who made up the breach without farther consequences. A more embarrassing difference happened between his *Portuguese* majesty and his holiness the pope. The king insisted, that the nuncio, *Bichi*, who had for some time resided at his court, should, at the end of his nunciature, be promoted to the purple, which his holiness refused to do. The grounds of his refusal were as follows.

*Difference between the king of Portugal and the pope.* WHEN the emperor *Charles VI.* in the character of *Charles III.* of *Spain*, kept his court at *Barcelona*, pope *Clement XI.* was prevailed upon by cardinal *Bichi* to send his nephew *Bichi* to *Lisbon*, in quality of nuncio, and the abbe de *Lutini* set out about the same time with only the character of internuncio to the court of *Barcelona*, where, for that reason, he was refused an audience in 1710. *Bichi*, upon his journey to *Lisbon*, had neglected to pay his respects to king *Charles*, who complained of him on that account at *Rome* and *Lisbon*; nor was his *Portuguese* majesty at first well satisfied with his conduct, though he came afterwards to have the most sincere friendship for him. Those complaints raised other enemies to *Bichi*, amongst whom were the abbe *Bernardi*, and several ecclesiastics, whom he had made his enemies by opposing their promotion, and who accused him of simony; and, to the misfortune of *Bichi*, his protector and uncle the cardinal died about the same time.

time. Upon the application of his *Portuguese* majesty to raise *Bichi* to the purple, his enemies remonstrated to his holiness how indecent it would be to promote to that honour a man against whom so many terrible charges lay, and the imprudence of disobliging so respectable a power as that of *Austria*. In this state the affair continued for some time, his *Portuguese* majesty refusing to admit into his dominions any other nuncio, and even threatening a total secession from the church of *Rome*.

THE obstinacy of his holiness in this affair was the more highly resented by the king, as his *Portuguese* majesty had been among the first of the *European* potentates, after the peace of *Utrecht*, who sent a squadron of men of war to assist the pope and the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and his ships did considerable service on the coast of *Italy*. This the pope acknowledged by splitting the archbishoprick of *Lisbon* into two, and erecting the chapel-royal into a patriarchal and metropolitical church, since which time that city has been divided into two grand districts, the eastern and the western. His *Portuguese* majesty had some reasons, either of policy or oeconomy, to press his brother don *Emanuel* to enter into holy orders, to which he had so great an aversion, that, to avoid being forced, he privately left the court about the time the patriarchate was erected, and going on board a ship, he set sail for *Holland*. An *English* man of war, at the request of his *Portuguese* majesty, pursued, but could not overtake, him; and the prince entered into the *German* service against the *Turks*. During the profound tranquillity that *Portugal* then enjoyed, his majesty, notwithstanding all the opposition he met with from the inquisition, established at *Lisbon* academies for the improvement of arts and sciences, with a particular regard to the rescuing from oblivion the noble actions of the *Portuguese* in past ages.

THE attention which his *Portuguese* majesty paid to the advancement of commerce, he being the chief merchant of his dominions, was rewarded by the vast treasures of gold and silver annually imported by his ships from *Brasil* and *India*. By the laws of *Portugal*, the exportation of gold is rendered capital; but those laws are so little observed, that *Portuguese* gold is to be found all over *Europe*, and especially in *England*. Two *English* merchants, *Wingfield* and *Robertis*, in 1722, who had made a practice of remitting *Portuguese* gold to *England*, were, by order of his majesty, seized, tried, and condemned to die; and it was with difficulty that their lives were saved, and their effects restored to them, by the intercession of Mr. *Worfeley*, the *British* ambas-

King of  
Portugal's  
attention to  
commerce.

sador there. Next year, in *December*, a most dreadful earthquake happened in the province of *Algarve*, which demolished several towns, and even swallowed up; for some hours, a river, though the shocks did not last above three minutes. In 1724, his *Portuguese* majesty erected some of his noblemen and most considerable subjects into a company for supplying his *American* possessions with negroes from the coast of *Africa*, where he assigned them a large district, and prohibited all other nations, and even his other *Portuguese* subjects from being concerned in that trade. The same year, two of his majesty's bastard brothers (but naturalized by their father), don *Miguel* and don *Joseph*, were overset in a boat on the river of *Lisbon*. Don *Joseph* was saved, but don *Miguel* and his attendants were drowned. On the 19th of *November* following, about six in the evening, so dreadful a storm arose upon the same river, that, before eight, sixty ships were driven on shore, and twenty of them rendered unfit for sea; the wharfs were damaged, the custom-house-quay, and the goods upon it, washed away; the steeples of the churches were blown down, trees were torn up by the roots, and most inconceivable damage was done to the houses both in town and country.

FEW or no occurrences of any note followed in *Portugal* till *December* 1727, when the double marriage took place between don *Joseph*, prince of *Brazil* (who was represented by his Catholic majesty), and donna *Maria-Anna-Victoria* (who had been formerly espoused to *Lewis XV.*), the eldest infanta of *Spain*. Some days after, another contract of marriage was celebrated between don *Ferdinand*, prince of *Asturias*, (who was represented by his *Portuguese* majesty), and donna *Maria*, the infanta of *Portugal*. The disputes between the courts of *Rome* and *Portugal* were now revived with more heat than ever. His *Portuguese* majesty had the promotion of *M. Bichi* to the purple so much at heart, that he wrote, in 1728, a most obliging letter to his holiness, notifying to him the death of one of his sons, who was but five years of age. His holiness referred the letter to the examination of five cardinals, who sat as a committee for managing the affairs of *Portugal*; and a very complaisant answer was returned. In the mean while, the king of *Spain* offered, by cardinal *Eontivoglio*, his mediation on those differences, and cardinal *de la Motte* laboured at *Lisbon* for the same purpose. All they could do was to prevail upon his holiness to offer to raise any person to the purple whom his *Portuguese* majesty should name, *Bichi* excepted; but that prince was immoveable, and actually now carried his threatenings

enings into execution. It was thought that *Benedict XIII.* the next pope, would have relaxed towards *Bichi*; but he was strenuously opposed by the sacred college, who were unwilling that so dangerous a precedent should be set as that of a pope yielding to a king. His holiness was obliged to submit, and even to send an order for *Bichi* to leave *Lisbon*, with which he was obliged to comply, and he went to *Rome* by the way of *Madrid*.

THIS step exasperated the king to such a degree, that he *Breach* cut off all communication with the *see of Rome*, prohibited *with the* his clergy to apply to the pope's datary for their bulls of *see of* confirmation, and the patriarch of *Lisbon*, in fact, acted as *Rome*. pope, by granting dispensations for marriages, and judging; in the last resort, all ecclesiastical causes. His majesty at the same time ordered all his subjects residing at *Rome*, where they spent immense sums, to return home, and put a stop to all the revenue which the pope and his court used to draw from *Portugal*. It is more than probable, that had *John* been actuated by temporal motives only, considering the powerful protection he might have expected from *Great Britain*, he would then have thrown off all connections with his holiness. But though he was a foe to the court, he was a bigot in his heart to the religion, of *Rome*. He had prevailed with the late pope to agree that the prisoners in the inquisition should be allowed council and solicitors to defend themselves; but he had not the courage to abolish that horrid tribunal, though he appointed certain assessors or commissioners to be present at the judgments of the inquisitors. But upon the death of *Benedict*, and the accession of cardinal *Corsini* to the papal chair, the difference was compromised, to the great satisfaction of both parties, tho' his *Portuguese* majesty never was gratified in his favourite view.

THE beginning of the year 1729 was distinguished by the magnificent exchange of the two royal brides, in the presence of the king and queen of *Spain* and his *Portuguese* majesty. But those princes were so jealous of their punctilio, that it was some time before their manner of meeting could be settled, and at last it was done in a very awkward manner. A wooden house with two gates was erected on a little island in the midst of the *Caya*, which serves as a boundary on that side between the territories of the two crowns, one of those gates opening towards *Spain*, the other towards *Portugal*, and each monarch at the same instant entered the building at his gate. The marriage-contracts were read, and the princesses exchanged, at the first meeting. The

*Double-  
marriages.*

two monarchs had several interviews afterwards upon their mutual interests; and his *Portuguese* majesty having presented M. Belmonte as his ambassador to *Spain*, they parted on the third day, with mutual professions of friendship. We shall not repeat the account of the quarrel between the courts of *Spain* and *Portugal*, on account of the criminal that was rescued at *Madrid* by the *Portuguese*, because we have already fully related it in the history of *Spain*, with the consequences attending it; and indeed the affairs of *Spain* and *Portugal* are so nearly connected, that the same narrative, in many cases, may serve for both. The rest of the reign of king *John* was spent in the steady pursuit of his subjects' interest, but affords no historical event of importance enough to be mentioned here, but what has been already related. He died *July* 31st, 1750, aged sixty, and left behind him a numerous issue. His character was that of a prince extremely tenacious of what he thought to be his right; but he was eaten up with superstition, notwithstanding the many severe blows which he aimed at the court of *Rome*; and he was one of the many examples in history which prove that no prince, who is in his heart a slave to religion of the pope, can ever be an effectual enemy to his power.

Death of  
king John.

Succeeded  
by his son  
Joseph.

He was succeeded by his son, don *Joseph-Pedro-John-Lewis*, who was born the 9th of *June* 1715. When he came to the throne, he gave certain indications, that he would be still more attached than his father had been to his own interest. He renewed all the rigorous laws concerning the exportation of gold, and even insisted upon an inspection of the books of the *British* merchants trading at *Lisbon*. This was peremptorily refused him, as being contrary to a treaty subsisting between the two crowns. Though he dropped this unreasonable demand, yet he laid the *English* trade under unexampled difficulties, and inflicted several unjustifiable severities upon the merchants. All *Europe* considered those proceedings as being equally impolitic and ungrateful; nor was he even at much pains to justify them, though some very severe memorials were presented to him by the *English* ambassador on that head. Upon his accession, he applied himself entirely to the improvement of commerce and his marine; and some *French* merchants offered to establish, between *Portugal* and the *East-Indies*, a trade like that between *Cadiz* and *America*; but this project was dropped.

His *Portuguese* majesty had better success in prevailing with the pope to abolish that reproach to human nature, the *Auto de fe*. of the inquisition, and in obtaining a bull from his

his holiness to suppress the endowments given to the parochial church of *Lisbon* by the late king to an immense value. About this time, some interchanges of territory in the *Brazils* made between their Catholic and *Portuguese* majesties took place, which created great dissatisfaction among the *Portuguese*, who were thereby obliged to give up the colony of *St. Sacrament*. The court of *Madrid*, at the same time, complained, that his *Portuguese* majesty extended the limits agreed upon too far. But the latter gave orders, that the settlements of *Grand-Para* and *Matta-Grosso* should be fortified, as being the most exposed of any in the colony, and that two regiments of infantry, and a body of men, should be sent thither. This year, the *Barbary* corsairs had the assurance not only to cruize before the mouth of the *Tayo*, but to advance as far up that river as *Fort-Cascais*; upon which the court ordered a squadron of men of war to be equipped, and this deterred them from the coast. On the 6th of *September*, the fleet from the bay of *All-Saints* arrived in the *Taya*, with an immense sum in specie and goods on board; and, upon a computation made by his most Faithful majesty, (a title that had lately been bestowed upon king *Joseph* by the pope) it was found that, notwithstanding the high differences between his holiness and the late king, no less than ninety-four millions of crusades had been remitted during his life from *Portugal* to *Rome*. In the month of *November*, the same year, Mr. *Oldenberg*, the manager of the duties on tobacco, obtained a charter for a new *East-India* company, which were to send out yearly eleven ships. To give the greater credit to this company, an ambassador was sent to the emperor of *China*, who was received at *Macao*, and all other places on the road, by mandarines, and treated with great honours. It was computed, upon a fair calculation, at this time, that the *British* nation gained at least a million of money by its trade with *Portugal*; but we are not to suppose, that the *English* had this preference from any principle of affection or gratitude, for his most Faithful majesty did all he could to diminish their profits. In the beginning of the year 1754, he permitted the exportation of gold, coined or uncoined, out of his kingdom, but upon condition of its paying a duty of two *per cent.* upon all that was exported. He likewise, about the same time, re-purchased and re-united to his crown all the royal fiefs that had been granted by his predecessors to the nobility. A regulation took place about the same time, by which *Oldenberg* was to have an exclusive privilege to send five ships to *Macao*, near *Canton*, in *China*, in six years, and eleven ships to *Goa* in

ten years; upon which grant a company was erected, whose stock was divided into shares of 480,000 rees, about 160 l. sterling each. But the spirit of the king in those regulations far outwent the abilities of his country, for he was obliged to send to *Great Britain* for captains to command his *East-India* ships. Mean while, the conduct of his court was such as plainly demonstrated, that if *Portugal* could have been supplied with necessaries by any other power than *Great Britain*, they would have given that power the preference. Indignities were every day heaped upon the *English* merchants: upon the ridiculous pretext of a ship (which brought corn to *Lisbon* to relieve the inhabitants from starving) having the plague on board, the government thought proper to burn both ship and cargo. But we are now upon the eve of a disaster that humbled *Portugal*, and gave the *British* nation the noblest opportunity, any people ever had, to exert its magnanimity.

Account of  
the earth-  
quake at  
*Lisbon*.

In 1755, while his most Faithful majesty's ministers were busied in peopling their *American* possessions, the city of *Lisbon* was visited by one of the most dreadful earthquakes that history mentions. On the first of *November*, which happened to be a great holiday with the *Portuguese*, the inhabitants of *Lisbon* perceived their city shaking, and, soon after, the tremblings of the earth grew so violent, that the houses all round tumbled down, and buried numbers in the ruins. The people in general fled to squares, but finding no safety there, they ran to *Belem*, while those who remained were either destroyed by the fall of the houses, or by the flames, which at first were thought to be natural, but were afterwards found to have been kindled by a set of wretches who took occasion from the public calamity to rob the inhabitants of their most valuable effects. It is certain, that this dreadful visitation was magnified in *England* far beyond the truth. The principal loss fell upon the centre of the city; and though, at first, 100,000 persons were said to have perished, yet, by the justest accounts, not above 15,000 were killed. A gentleman who was present on the spot, and who coolly surveyed the city after the first public panic was over, gave it as his opinion, that, great as the earthquake was, what remained of *Lisbon* formed a larger city than many of the *European* capitals.

“ In the neighbourhood, says he, of the hill of *Bairro-Alto*, though the fire caused great havock from the *Conventi-das* on one side, and from the palace of don *Emanuel de Sousa* on the other, quite down to the corner of the royal palace, still all the palace *das Mercês* escaped, and, from its lowest



lowest extremity, quite to the middle of the North-street. But in the straight part of the street, the palaces of the marquis of *Mariafva*, of signior *John Xavier*, where the Dutch minister resided, and of the count of *St. Tiago*, on the opposite side to the above-mentioned places, were all burnt. Great part of the neighbourhoods and parish of *St. Catharine* also escaped; the districts of *Jesus*, of *Rato*, of *Mocambo*, had the same good fortune; and so had the districts of *St. Joseph*, quite down to *S. Sebastiano da Pedreira*; of *Moiraria* quite to *Royos*, turning towards *S. John das bein Cazados*; the whole district of *Paraizo*, which takes in the great opening of *St. Clara* and all its dependencies; and, finally, all the vast territory from this territory quite to *Marvilla*.

“To shew, then, by these districts, that the town has not been entirely demolished; as has been given out, it needs only to be remembered, that the space from *St. Paul's*, where the fire stopped, to *Belem*, makes an extent of five miles *English*; that from *Moiraria* to *Royos* makes other two; and that from *St. Joseph* to *S. Sebastiano da Pedreira* makes at least two more: all which spaces are filled with houses and inhabitants, and have received but little damage. And the same is the case of great part of the district of *Alfama* quite to *Marvilla*, which makes an extent of more than two miles, and escaped the conflagration; and even in the centre, where the flames wrought the greatest havock, there is a street or two through which the fire never passed.

“I AM sensible, that those principal parts which were its victims were of very great importance; inasmuch as they contained the most stately temples, and the habitations of the trading people. However, as I before observed, all the grand devastation was wrought in the centre of the town.

“ALL the other parts above-mentioned are almost every where inhabited, and shops and manufactures carried on there. It is true, there are great numbers of barracks in all the openings and airlets, as *Campo de Coral*, *Côthvia*, *Bonos Ayres*, *Boamorte*, near the silk manufactory, and other places.

“THE greatest part of the houses are propped, some on account of the great damage they have received, but the bulk from the prudence of their proprietors, who were willing to prevent all danger by these precautions. Still, as they are almost all secured with props, it is thence conjectured by the people, that all are ruinous. Certain it is, however, that the number of those which really have been damaged is but too great; and as to the churches, they

are mostly down. Even those which have not fallen, though they remain upright, are considerably shattered. For as the earthquake wrought the strongest impressions where it met with the most resistance, these received the greatest damage.

“ THE churches, which, having first suffered by the tremor, were destroyed by fire, are the following ones: *Loyos, S. Maria Mayor, Madalena, Conceicao Nova & Velha, Misericordia, S. Justa, S. Nicolao, S. Juliao, Victoria, S. Domingos, Patriarcal, Boa Morte, Spirito Santo, Martyres, S. Francisco, Corpo Santo, Sacramento, Carmo Trindado, Loreto, Igreja Nova, Chagas, and S. Paulo.*

“ THE churches which fell entirely were, *S. Vicente, S. Clara, S. Monica, N. S. da Monte, N. S. da Penha de Franca,* and the church of that parish, *S. Pedro de Alcantara, S. Anna, Calvario, and S. Antonio dos Capuxos.*

“ THE churches of the *Paulists, of Jesus, of S. Benedict,* suffered no damages; but those of the *Bernardines, of Madre de Dios, and Santos Velha,* though standing, are much shattered.

“ IT is not feasible to fix the number of the dead, and much less to distinguish stations and sexes. At first, the total was made to amount to 14 or 15,000; since when some have pretended to swell it to 40,000. But I can by no means bring myself to give into it.

“ *SETUVAL*, though but a little town, has greatly suffered: for, of all its churches, there are not above three or four of the smallest which have escaped. And they compute to 4000 persons, of both sexes, as having perished there, part in the ruins, part by the impetuosity of the sea, which arose above its walls, and, sweeping off the people, bore them away with it in its reflux.

“ MOST days since the first, we have had perceptible repetitions of tremulous motions of the earth, with a degree of rumbling, which immediately precedes them. On the first day of the new moon of this month, we had one; and the day before yesterday, between four and five in the evening, we had another; but without farther prejudice than of opening the crevices of some houses already ruined, but not yet fallen.

“ BY letters and persons come from *Beyra*, and from beyond the mountains, we have learned, that they felt there the same shocks; and they are pretty commonly felt throughout the kingdom.

“ FROM *Brazil* we have hitherto no news, though a rumour was spread, that the *Bahia de Todos os Santos* was entirely

tirely lost, which is nevertheless false; for, to this present day, not a single sail has arrived from those parts: so that if any such fable should reach your part of the world, you may, with great safety, declare it to be an absolute forgery."

THE king, queen, and the royal family, escaped from their palace just before it fell down. The *Spanish* ambassador, with nine of his domestics, was killed by the falling in of his house. Several towns in *Portugal* suffered severely, and the waters of the *Tagus* rose at *Toledo*, 100 leagues from *Lisbon*, to the height of ten feet. At *Oporto* the concussion was so great, that some houses were thrown down, and churches and steeples much damaged. At *Port St. Maria*, the sea had rose eight several times, and frightened the inhabitants out of town. At *Cadiz*, the sea rose to twenty-two feet perpendicular, and almost overwhelmed the city. At *Madrid*, and many other towns of *Spain*, it did incredible mischief. At *St. Lucar*, several ships were thrown upon land by the sudden rising of the waves. But, what most exceeds belief, is, ships were shaken as if they had been dashed against rocks, and that at sixty leagues distance; and the waters were affected by it in *Holland*, *Great Britain*, and *Ireland*, and even as far as the *Baltic-sea*, at the distance of more than 2000 miles. It is to the honour of the court of *Spain* that we mention that prince sending money, and opening all his custom-houses duty-free for the relief of the *Portuguese*. The *British* nation, though at *ThePortu-* that time they had great reasons for being dissatisfied with these re- the *Portuguese* court, and people, shewed a noble instance lieved by of magnanimity; for no sooner did the accounts of the Great earth-quake at *Lisbon* come to the knowledge of *George Britain*. II. than he sent the following message to the house of commons:

"His majesty having received from his ambassador at *Madrid* a certain account of the fatal and deplorable event which happened at *Lisbon* on the first instant, by an earthquake, which has laid waste almost the whole city, and destroyed many thousands of the inhabitants; in consequence whereof, those who remain must be reduced to the utmost distress and necessity: and his majesty being moved with the greatest concern for so good and faithful an ally as the king of *Portugal*, and with the utmost compassion for the distresses to which that city and kingdom must be reduced, wherein great numbers of his majesty's own subjects were resident, and many more interested, recommends to his faithful commons the consideration of this dreadful and extensive calamity, which cannot fail to affect the hearts of all persons who

who have any sense of religion or humanity, and desires to be enabled by the house of commons to send such speedy and effectual relief as may be suitable to so affecting and pressing an exigency."

UPON this message, the house of commons came unanimously to the following resolution: "That this house will enable his majesty to give such assistance to the distressed people of *Portugal* as his majesty shall think fit; and that such expences as shall be incurred by his majesty in relieving the misery to which they may be reduced by this most deplorable calamity shall be made good out of the next aids." This supply was accordingly sent, partly in money, and partly in what was much more acceptable, provisions. His *Portuguese* majesty and all his court were then living in tents, and received the generous donation from *England* with the most profound acknowledgments of gratitude; nor have we since heard the same complaints from the *English* merchants in *Portugal* as before. The truth is, the earthquake rendered *Portugal* an object of compassion, and all the attention of the people, and their neighbours, was turned towards repairing the devastations occasioned by it. The reader, therefore, may easily conceive, that for some time no historical events could happen in a country where the whole cares of the community and the government were employed in repairing the effects of the earthquake.

Full account of the  
conspiracy  
against his  
Portu-  
guese ma-  
jesty;

THE conspiracy against the life of his Faithful majesty is the first great historical event that presents itself after the before-mentioned earthquake. This conspiracy is one of the darkest we meet with in history, and is hardly to be paralleled, whether we consider the quality of the persons engaged in it, or the exemplary punishment attending their crimes. The first intimation of it given to foreign courts was a paragraph of a dispatch wrote by M. *da Cunha*, secretary of state in *Portugal* for foreign affairs, and at war, dated *Belem*, Sept. 12. "Last Sunday the king had a fall in his palace, by which he was considerably hurt in his right arm. He was let blood on Monday, and is at present much better. His majesty, being prevented by this accident from attending to public affairs for some days, has empowered the queen to sign dispatches, and other instruments, during his illness." A little time cleared up the affair, as follows: It appeared, according to an authentic paper published by the court of *Portugal*, "That the duke of *Aveiro* had conceived an implacable resentment against the king, for preventing a marriage which he had precipitately adjusted between his son and the sister of the duke of *Cadaval*, endeavouring

vouring, at the same time, by vexatious artifices, to prevent the duke, who is a minor, from marrying, in order to secure to his family the possessions and honours of that house; and for defeating several projects to preserve a pernicious influence which he acquired in the latter years of the late reign.

“THAT he endeavoured to ingratiate himself with all persons who were dissatisfied with the government, of what party or conditions soever; and therefore, as soon as the Jesuits were dismissed from court, he forgot an inveterate enmity which till then had been implacable against them, invited them to his house, and made them frequently long and secret visits at their houses, where the death of the king was concerted, the Jesuits declaring, that whoever should kill his majesty would not by that act become guilty even of venial sin.

“THAT the duke of Aveiro and the Jesuits drew the marchioness of Tavora into their confederacy, notwithstanding the mutual jealousy between the two houses; and the marchioness drew in the rest of her family.

“THAT the marquis of Tavora having entrusted Joseph Romeiro, an old servant who had attended him to and from the Indies, with the conspiracy, committed to him the care of waiting with horses ready saddled, where the conspirators were to mount.

“THAT the duke of Aveiro several times rode and walked with Alvares Ferreira, his late wardrobe-keeper, and Joseph Policarp, Ferreira's brother-in-law, to acquaint them with the carriage in which the king usually rode; that he ordered them to buy two horses, not known, and some unknown arms.

“THAT after the fact the duke reproached Alvares, telling him, the shot which he discharged did no service; but when he was about to reply, he added, “Hush! for the Devil himself can know nothing of the matter, if thou dost not tell him.” He then ordered him not to sell the unknown horses he had bought directly, lest it should cause suspicion.”

THE persons concerned in this conspiracy were as follow: *with the names,* Don Joseph Mascarenhas and Lencastre (or Lancaster), duke of Aveiro, marquis of Torres Novas, and of Gouvea, and earl of Santa-Cruz, hereditary lord-steward of the king's household, which is the highest office in the palace; and president of the palace-court, or last tribunal of appeal in the kingdom, which is the second state-officer in the realm; was related himself to the Tavoras, and married to a sister of

of the elder marquis of that title. He was in the fifty-first year of his age, of the lowest middle size, well made in his person, of an agreeable countenance, and lively disposition.

MARCHIONESS of *Tavora*, in her own right, and wife to the marquis, was in the fifty-ninth year of her age: she was of the lower middle size, and thin, extremely genteel, and in her youth had been very beautiful. In the duties of life she appeared highly amiable, being an extreme good mother, and demonstrated herself as a good wife by accompanying her husband to *India*, at the age of fifty, when he was appointed viceroy of the *Portuguese* dominions in that country; of which undertaking, before hers, there had been but a single example. Her deportment in general was courteous and affable, and she was allowed to be a lady of a good understanding.

*FRANCISCO de Affiz and Tavora*. (this family being above taking the title of don), marquis of *Tavora*, and earl of *St. John* and of *Alvor*, general of horse. This nobleman was himself the eldest branch of the *Alvor* family, the third noble house of the *Tavoras*; and by marrying his kinswoman, the heiress of the said marquisate, became, in her right, the earl of *St. John*, and marquis of *Tavora*. The family of *Tavora* is the most illustrious of the kingdom, as well for the purity as antiquity of their descent, deriving their origin from the kings of *Leon*, and having ever preserved their dignity by disdaining to make any other than the most noble alliances; insomuch, that it has of late been the practice of the chief branches of this family to marry only with one another. They themselves conquered from the *Moors* the lands they possess, and on which there is a town, a river, and an ancient castle, of their name; and they even pretend to be lords of *Tavora* by the grace of God. The marquis was in the fifty-sixth year of his age, of the highest middle stature, a genteel person, comely countenance, and grave deportment.

and description,

*LUIS Bernardo de Tavora*, younger marquis of that title, was the eldest son of the above-mentioned couple, and in the thirty-sixth year of his age. He was married, with a dispensation from the pope, to his father's youngest sister, donna *Thereza de Tavora* and *Lorena* (or *Lorrain*) who was twenty days elder than himself. This is the lady who is said to be in the nunnery of *Santos*, without our having been informed whether she was sent thither a prisoner by order of the court. She was a middle-sized lady, comely in her person, and extremely elegant in her deportment. The marquis, her husband, was a little man, and thin, well-enough

enough made, but not of a pleasing aspect, though with a considerable resemblance of his mother. He was neither deficient in wit nor humour, but not amiable in his conduct, nor extremely correct in his morals. This couple had a daughter living, who was then in the twelfth year of her age, *donna Joanna de Tavora*, who was exceeding beautiful; but who was, by the sentence of her father, grandfather, and grandmother, deprived of the very name of which she would otherwise have become chief.

*DON Jeronymo de Ataide*, earl of *Atouguia*, one of the oldest (if not the most ancient) titles of the kingdom. This nobleman was in the thirty-eighth year of his age, related himself to the *Tavoras*, and married to the eldest daughter of the elder marquis and marchioness of *Tavora*, sister to the young marquis and *Joseph-Maria* of that name. He was of a middle stature, clumsy in his make, of a heavy aspect and ungraceful demeanor, and of low parts, but, in his general conduct, an inoffensive man.

*JOSEPH-Maria de Tavora*, second and youngest son of the elder marquis and marchioness of *Tavora*, in the twenty-third year of his age, of a middle size, most beautiful face, genteel person, agreeable deportment, and amiable disposition.

It must be acknowledged, that however criminal the above parties might have been, no proofs of their offences are specified in the sentence pronounced against them, in a manner that is satisfactory to impartial enquiry. The duke *de Aveiro* is accused, in general terms, of having contracted an intimacy with the Jesuits after they had been dismissed from receiving the confessions of the royal family, and universally forbidden all access to court; and that he and they entered into a conspiracy against the king's life, and had drawn the marchioness of *Tavora* into the plot; and that she had been directed by a Jesuit, one *Gabriel Malagrida*, to bring all her family into the same execrable design. The marquis *Francis Affix* of *Tavora*, her husband, is accused of having personally assisted at an ambush laid against the king's life, on the third of *September*, at which time the king was shot at, while other ambushes were laid against him, which he fortunately escaped. "It farther appears (says the said sentence), that the third of the followers, whom the said three seditious and detestable ringleaders drew into this infamous conspiracy, was don *Jerome* of *Ataide*, count of *Atouguia*, son-in-law to the aforesaid marquis *Francis Affix* and lady *Eleanor* of *Tavora*; it being proved, that he, with the countess his wife, almost every night assisted at the seditious  
and

and abominable cabals which were held in the house of the marquis and marchioness, his father and mother-in-law; that he contributed eight moidores towards the most worthless reward of the assassins who fired the sacrilegious shot; and that he was an associate in the way-layings which were posted against his majesty."

of the con-  
spirators.

YOUNG *Joseph-Maria of Tavora* is next mentioned in the sentence, as having been present at the ambush against his majesty's life, and expressing his regret at the king's escape. The next person mentioned is one *Blaise Joseph Romero*, a domestic of the marchioness of *Tavora*, who had the charge of three horses that were to have carried off the conspirators after the assassination was perpetrated. "It farther appears (says the judicial sentence), that the sixth and seventh followers whom the head of this conspiracy, the duke of *Avi-ro*, engaged in it, were the criminals *Antony Alvares Ferreira*, formerly keeper of the wardrobe to the said duke, and *Joseph Policarp de Azevedo*, brother-in-law to the same *Antony Alvares*. It being fully proved, that both the said criminals went several times on foot and horseback, in company of the said duke, in order to become acquainted with the carriage in which his majesty usually rode; that, for this purpose, he ordered them to buy two horses, not known, which the criminal, *Antony Alvares*, did; that he also ordered them to buy unknown arms, which the aforesaid criminal, *Antony Alvares*, did not buy, he, together with his said brother-in-law, making use of one blunderbuss of his own, of another which was borrowed, and of two pistols which he had borrowed of a foreigner, under pretext of making trial of them; that the premium which these two most savage criminals received from the duke was forty moidores, sixteen at one time, four at another, and twenty at another; that immediately after having discharged the said arms on the back of the carriage, the said *Antony Alvares* and his brother-in-law retreated directly to *Lisbon*; and, finally, that the criminal *Antony Alvares*, going, two days afterwards, to the house of the duke, he reproached him greatly, saying, "That those shot had been of no service;" and uttering (with his finger on his mouth, and great serenity) the following words: "Hush! for the Devil himself can know nothing of the matter, if thou dost not tell him;" and charging him not to sell the horses directly, that he might not become suspected."

*EMANUEL Alvares Ferreira* is named in the same sentence, as being another conspirator; as is one *John Michael*; and the manner of the assassination is related as follows:

"That



“ That after *Joseph Mascarenbas* and lady *Eleanor of Tavora* had settled a most sordid gathering, to which the other associates did also contribute, towards making up the paltry sum of 192 milrees, which was the premium given to the two savage and unnatural assassins, *Antony Alvares Ferreira* and *Joseph Policarp*; and after, with the two infamous and savage malefactors aforesaid, the associates in the crime had completed the number of eleven, they all posted themselves on horseback, divided into different parties or ambuscades, within the little tract of ground which lies between the northern extremity of the houses belonging to the garden called *de Mayo*, and the opposite southern extremity of the garden called *de Cima*, through which our lord the king usually returned home when he had been abroad in a private manner, as was the case the night of the most horrible insult in question; that if his majesty escaped from the first way-layings, he might not fail of being destroyed by the others which succeeded them.

“ It further appears, that our said lord having turned *Their sentence*, the corner of the said northern extremity of the above-mentioned houses belonging to the garden *do Mayo*, the ring-leader of the conspiracy, *Joseph Mascarenbas*, came forth immediately from the arch which was in that place, and presented against *Costodio da Costa*, the coachman who drove his majesty, a blunderbuss, which missing fire, and warning the coachman with the snap and sparks from the flint, obliged him, without declaring to his majesty what he had seen and heard, to push on the mules, so as to avoid the murder which he apprehended. The miscarriage of this firing was the first of the apparent miracles with which the divine omnipotence, in that most fatal night, succoured all these realms, by the preservation of the inestimable life of his majesty; it being impossible he should have escaped, if, the coachman falling dead with that infamous discharge, our said lord had remained a prey in the hands of those horrible monsters, who stood armed, in so many and such neighbouring ambushes, against his most august and precious life.

“ It farther appears, that, on account of the hasty pace with which the coachman endeavoured to save himself, the two most savage malefactors, *Antony Alvares* and *Joseph Policarp*, who were posted in the ambush, immediately following, could not take a steady aim at the spot against which they should fire; wherefore, galloping after the said carriage, they fired as fast as they possibly could upon the back of the same the two sacrilegious and execrable shot which

which caused in his majesty's most august and most sacred person those most grievous and most dangerous wounds and dilacerations, which, from the right shoulder along the arm and down to the elbow on the outside, and also on the inner part of the same, occasioned a considerable loss of substance, from the variety of the contusions; six of which went so far as to offend the breast, a great number of slugs being extracted from them all. Whence, on one hand, is manifestly seen the cruelty with which the slugs were preferred to bullets, in order, by that means, the more certainly to secure the most fatal purpose of that savage and sacrilegious insult; and, on the other, that this was the second of the miraculous works of the divine omnipotence, in that most unfortunate night, for the common benefit of these realms; for it cannot be in the common order of events, nor can it be in any wise ascribed to the casualty of accidental occurrences, that two charges of slugs, fired out of such pieces, should make their way through the narrow space of a carriage, without totally and absolutely destroying the persons who were in such carriage.

"It farther appears, that this miraculous event was followed by a third, equal to it, or rather greater. For our Lord God making use, in that critical conjuncture, of his majesty's heroic courage and unshaken serenity, to manifest his prodigies to us, his majesty not only bore those unexpected and most torturing mischiefs, without uttering a single word which indicated a complaint, but took the wonderful resolution to order the carriage to return back immediately, from where he then was, to the house of the chief surgeon of the kingdom; where, not suffering his wounds to be uncovered till he had, by the sacrament of penance, first returned thanks to the supreme King of Kings, for the preservation of his life from so great a danger, he first confessed at the feet of a minister of the gospel, and then proceeded with the same silence, serenity, and firmness, to submit to the painful operations necessary towards a cure. By these means his majesty avoided the perils from the other savage associates in the crime, which he could not have escaped had he continued the route he was accustomed to take in returning home to his palace.

"It farther appears, that the aforesaid criminals assembled again the said night, and instead of shewing any symptoms of remorse, boasted of it one with another, the criminal *Joseph Mascarenhas*, then duke of *Aveiro*, being on the stones the blunderbuss which had missed going off, and saying in a passion these infernal words, " Damnation  
seize

seize thee! when I want thee, thou art of no use to me." The criminal, *Francis Affizes*, expressing some doubt whether his majesty had perished, the said criminal, *Joseph Mascarenhas*, re-assuming the discourse, said, "No matter; if he is not dead, he shall die;" another of the associates taking up these words, and replying, with the most impious threat, "The point is, that if he do but go abroad;" and the other criminal, *Joseph-Maria of Tavora*, enquiring with great composure after the associate *John Michael*, who was not as yet arrived. On the day immediately following, in a family-meeting, in consequence of the same inflexible obstinacy, savage despair, and deplorable abandon of all divine graces, they there persisted, some in reproaching the assassins, *Antony Alvares* and *Joseph Policarp*, for that they had not aimed their fires in such a manner as to complete all their most mischievous intent; others in boasting, that they should have effectually completed the said execrable intent, had our lord the king passed by the ambushes where they themselves were posted to way-lay him, instead of turning back, as he did, by the descent of *Ajuda to Junqueira*."

THE sentence then proceeds to accuse the Jesuits (who had kindled a war in the *Portuguese* dominions in *Africa*, *Asia*, and *America*) of their having been the contrivers and authors of the assassination, and of their having predicted the king's death from the latter end of *August* preceding. Don *Joseph Mascarenhas* is accused of having been the author of innumerable intrigues and cabals, with which he filled the court of his Faithful majesty, so as to keep him from all knowledge of the truth. It farther charges him with retiring, from a consciousness of his guilt, to his country-seat, and first attempting to fly, and afterwards resisting those who apprehended him. "With regard to lady *Eleonor of Tavora* (says the sentence) heretofore marchioness of that title, the third ring-leader, it is notorious, that her diabolical spirit of pride, and insatiable ambition, was sufficient to excite her into the greatest insults. Instigated by those blind and ardent passions, she had the boldness (along with her husband) to offer a remonstrance to our lord the king for him to be made a duke, notwithstanding his insignificant services had been fully requited with the promotions he had obtained in *India*, and that there was no precedent in the chanceries of the realm of any person of his post being promoted to that title; yet both the said criminals, without consideration or shame, were incessantly persecuting the secretary of state for domestic affairs for that promotion, in-

so much that, in order to check those importunities, it became necessary to make them comprehend, in a polite and decent manner, that their pretension had no precedent to support it. This proved the foundation of that passion with which the said machioness went and reconciled herself with the duke of Aveiro, in order to obtain by his favour, with the ruin of majesty and the monarchy, that ducal title which her vehement ambition had inflamed her with. However, all that pride, ambition, and haughtiness, which she had exerted till the fatal epoch of the execrable insult of the third of *September* last, fall spiritless into manifest confusion and dismay."

THE sentence of the court upon all the criminals was as follows: " They condemn the criminal, *Joseph Mascarenhas* (who is already unnaturalized, divested of the honours and privileges of a *Portuguese*, and of those of a vassal and servant, degraded of the order of *St. Jago*, of which he was a commendatory, and resigned up to this tribunal, and to the lay justice which is therein administered) to the punishment that he, as one of the three heads, or chief ring-leaders of this infamous conspiracy; and of the abominable insult which resulted from it, be conveyed, with a halter about his neck, and proclamation of his crimes, to the square upon the quay of the town of *Belem*; and that there, upon a high scaffold, which shall be sufficiently elevated for his punishment, to be visible to the whole people whom the scandal of his most horrible crime has offended, after he has been broken alive, by the fracture of the eight bones of his legs and arms, he be exposed on a wheel, for the satisfaction of the present and future vassals of this realm; and that, after this execution being done, the same criminal be burnt alive, with the said scaffold on which he was executed, till all be reduced by fire into ashes and powder, which shall be thrown into the sea, that there may be no more notice taken of him or his memory; and though, as a criminal guilty of the abominable crimes of rebellion, sedition, high-treason, and parricide, he be already condemned by the tribunal of military orders to the confiscation and forfeiture of all his real and personal estate to the use of the crown, as has been practised in those cases wherein the crime of high-treason of the first-rate has been committed; nevertheless, considering this as having been a case so unexpected, so unusual, and so extravagantly horrible, and unthought of by the laws, that not even they have provided for, nor can there be found therein a punishment proportionable to its exorbitant foulness; therefore, from this motive, our said lord

was

and execution.

was entreated in the consultation of this court, and his majesty was pleased, in conformity to its request, to grant it the ample jurisdiction to establish all the punishments which should be settled by a plurality of votes, over and above those which, by the laws and the dispositions of law, are already established; and considering that the punishment the most conformable to equity is that of erasing and obliterating, by every means, every memorial of the name and remembrance of such enormous criminals; they also condemn the same criminal not only in the penalties of the common law, that his arms and achievements, whatever placed, be pulled down and rent in pieces; and that the houses and material edifices of his abode be demolished and erased, in such sort that there may not a sign of them remain, being reduced to a wild, and covered with salt, but also that all effective houses or estates by him enjoyed, in those parts thereof which have been established in properties of the crown, or have issued from thence, be confiscated, and from this time forward forfeited, with effectual reversion and re-incorporation in the said crown from whence they derived, &c. The same they order to be observed with respect to the copyholds of any kind whatever, with the proviso established concerning the sale thereof in benefit of the lords of the manors. With regard to the other entailed estates, settled with the patrimony of the entailers, they declare that the statutes are to be observed in benefit of those who ought to succeed to them.

“THEY condemn to the same pains the criminal *Francis Affizes of Tavora*, and ordain that no persons whatever shall use the surname of *Tavora*, on pain of confiscation and outlawry.

“THEY condemn the two savage monsters, *Antonio Alvares Ferreira* and *Joseph Policarp*, who fired the two sacrilegious shot, to be conveyed, with halters about their necks, to the great square; and that being there exalted on two posts, fire be set to them, which shall consume them alive, till their bodies be reduced to ashes and powder, which shall be thrown into the sea, their dwelling-houses erased, and their names blotted out. But the criminal *Joseph Policarp* having absconded, a power is given to any body to seize and kill him; and a reward of 10,000 crusados is offered for bringing him dead or alive before the senator of the palace, or 20,000 if taken in a foreign country.

“THEY condemn the criminals, *Lewis Bernard of Tavora*, don *Jerome of Ataide*, *Joseph-Maria of Tavora*, *Blaise Joseph Romeira*, *John Michael*, and *Emanuel Alvares*; to be

conveyed to the same place of execution, with halters about their necks, to be first strangled, and afterwards to have the eight bones of their legs and arms broken, and then their bodies to be reduced by fire into powder, and thrown into the sea, &c. with confiscation and forfeiture of goods, &c. to the use of the crown, demolition, erazement, and pulling down and defacement of arms and achievements.

“AND the criminal, lady *Eleanor Tavera*, for certain just considerations, they condemn only to be conveyed to the same place of execution, with a halter about her neck, and there to be beheaded, her body reduced to powder by fire, and thrown also into the sea, &c. with extinction of memory, and all other confiscations.”

WE shall make no other observation upon this remarkable sentence, than that it was executed with the most rigid punctuality. Upon the whole, it seems most probable, that this was a conspiracy instigated and fomented by the Jesuits, who had been disgraced for some time before at court. After the king was wounded, he shut himself up in his palace, and published a manifesto, investing the queen with the government of his kingdom; nor did he suffer any one to approach his person, but herself, the first minister, the cardinal *de Saldanha*, the physicians and surgeons. To prevent the escape of the conspirators, an embargo was laid upon all the shipping in the *Tago*; but though the duke *de Aveiro* was suspected of having an eye to the crown, yet nothing of that kind was ever proved, nor does there seem to have been the least concert amongst the conspirators, farther than the personal assassination of the king. The consequences of the conspiracy were, with regard to the pope, very serious. His nuncio was not only forbid the court; but sent under a strong guard to the frontiers of *Portugal*. His holiness, at the same time, ordered the *Portuguese* ambassador to leave the Ecclesiastical territories. The Jesuits, who were the great objects of his most Faithful majesty's resentment, were shipped off by shoals from *Portugal* to *Civita Vecchia*, and their army in *Paraguay* was defeated by the united troops of *Spain* and *Portugal*.

Conclusion  
of the  
history of  
Portugal.

ADMIRAL *Boscawen*, as we have already observed in the history of *Spain*, having destroyed some *French* ships in the Bay of *Lagos*, the court of *Lisbon* made some remonstrances upon its neutrality being invaded. The earl of *Kinnoul* was sent ambassador to *Lisbon*, and explained the affair in such a manner as gave entire satisfaction to his most Faithful majesty. Some doubts with regard to the succession to the crown of *Portugal* still remaining, his *Portuguese* majesty agreed

agreed to a marriage between his brother, don *Pedro*, and his daughter, the princess of *Brazil*, which was celebrated on his birth-day, the 6th of *June* 1760, to the great joy of the *Portuguese*, who thereby saw all disputes concerning the succession to the throne terminated. The invasion of *Portugal* by the *Spaniards* and *French* has been already treated of under the head of *Spain*, nor do the affairs of that kingdom afford any farther historical matter.

### Supplement to the History of France.

THE latter part of *Lewis XIV.*'s reign terminated the history of this kingdom, in the preceding part of this work. Upon the accession of king *George I.* to the crown of *Great Britain*, the *French* were so unpopular at *London*, that the duke of *Ormond*, then commander in chief of the *British* forces, upon the application of *Iberville*, his most Christian majesty's ambassador, assigned him a guard to protect him from the resentment of the populace. In return for this, he assured the regency, "That his master would inviolably maintain the treaty of peace concluded at *Utrecht*, particularly with regard to the settlement of the *British* crown in the house of *Hanover*." This step fully manifested the duplicity of that court. *James II.* had been received in *France*, where he died, and his queen and son had been recognized at the same court with royal honours. Nay, at the very time the above assurance was given by the *French* ambassador, that court was fomenting a rebellion in *Great Britain*, in favour of the Pretender.

THE earl of *Peterborough*, who was in *France* when queen *Anne* died, received from that court the strongest assurances of their readiness to support the interest of the house of *Hanover* in *Great Britain*; and *Iberville* received a letter from the *French* king, the *marquis de Torcy*, and another from the *French* king, importing, "That having been informed, that reports had been spread as if he designed to make alterations in the late

*France acknowledged the house of Hanover's sovereignty over Great Britain.*

renunciations, he thought fit to declare, as he had already done to the earl of *Peterborough*, that these reports were altogether false and groundless; that the king of *Spain* having sent the cardinal *del Giudice* as ambassador to *France*, which might create some suspicions, his most Christian majesty had desired the king his grandson to recal him; and that the

elector of *Brunswick* having, some time before the death of the queen, signified to his most Christian majesty, that, whenever his succession to the crown of *Great Britain* should take place, he would cultivate a friendship with his most Christian majesty; he, (the king of *France*) on his part, assured the lords justices, that he would do all that lay in his power to maintain a good intelligence and amity between the two crowns." His most Christian majesty was, at this time, reduced to a most despicable condition. He was obliged to seize all the coin belonging to his subjects, and giving it a new stamp, he issued it at an advanced value; while the paper-money which he issued was at forty per Cent. discount, at the time the peace of *Utrecht* was concluded. This introduced an almost universal bankruptcy all over *France*, for the moneyed people, perceiving that they could not ward off the blows of despotism, whenever they were required to bring in their coin, omitted no method of securing it in other funds. By this time, *Lewis XIV* perceived his latter end drawing near. On the 11th of *August* 1715, he was seized with the cramp, gout, and sciatic pains; a few days after, being a little relieved, he intended to have dined in public. Lord *Stair* was then the *British* ambassador at his court, and a rebellion then raging in *Scotland*, *Lewis* thought it was of the utmost importance for him to be considered as the only power in *Europe*, whose friendship, or enmity, could be of service or detriment to the house of *Hanover*. With this view, he never openly espoused the cause of the Pretender, but affected before the earl of *Stair* to have a share of health, of which he was so far from being possessed, that he was in the most excruciating torments. The earl, with a sagacity peculiar to himself, treated the king's affectation with the contempt it deserved; and his majesty committed some excesses in eating and drinking to keep up the appearances he assumed, that were thought to hasten his end; for they brought on a violent fever, and an old sore he had in his leg tended towards a mortification; and on the first of *September* he died about eight in the morning.

Death of  
Lewis  
XIV. of  
France.

He was the son of *Lewis XIII.* and *Anne of Austria*, and was born the 5th of *September*, 1638. His widow was *Maria Theresa*, daughter to *Philip IV.* of *Spain*, whom he married in 1660. His issue by her were *Lewis*, dauphin of *France*, who married *Mary-Anne-Christina*, sister to the duke of *Bavaria*, by whom he had issue three sons. First, *Lewis*, duke of *Burgundy*, born 1682; secondly, *Philip*, duke of *Anjou*, afterwards king of *Spain*, born 1683; thirdly, *Gaston*, duke of *Berry*, born in 1684. *Lewis*, the dauphin, died in



1711, and his eldest son, the duke of *Burgundy*, succeeded to that title. That prince in 1698, married *Mary-Adelaide*, eldest daughter to the duke of *Savoy*, afterwards king of *Sardinia*. This dauphin died in 1712, leaving issue three sons, two of whom were named duke of *Brittany*, and died soon after himself; but the third son, who was born in 1710, now fills the throne of *France*. The natural children of *Lewis* His family XIV. by madam *de la Valiere* were, *Mary-Anne de Bourbon*, and issue. born in 1666, and married in 1680, to *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, prince of *Conti*, who died without issue by her. By madam *Montespan*, he had 1. *Lewis-Augustus de Bourbon*, duke of *Maine*, born in 1670, who, by his wife *Louisa*, daughter to the prince of *Condé*, has a daughter called mademoiselle *D'Aumale*, born in 1697; and a son, *Lewis-Augustus*, prince of *Dombes*, born in 1700. 2. *Louisa-Frances de Bourbon*, mademoiselle *de Nantes*, born in 1673, and married to *Lewis*, duke of *Bourbon*, in 1685; whose children are mademoiselle *de Bourbon*, born 1699; *Lewis*, duke of *Enguien*, born 1692; *Louisa*, mademoiselle *de Chatelois*, born 1693; and *Louisa-Anne*, mademoiselle *de Sens*, born in 1695. 3. *Lewis Alexander de Bourbon*, count of *Thoulouse*, born 1678, late admiral of *France*. 4. *Frances-Mary de Bourbon*, mademoiselle *de Blois*, born 1681. His majesty's only legitimate brother was *Philip*, duke of *Orleans*, first married to *Henrietta-Maria*, daughter to *Charles I.* king of *England*, by whom he had one daughter, married to the duke of *Savoy*; he was afterwards married to *Charlotta-Elizabeth*, daughter to *Charles-Lewis*, elector-palatine; by whom he had issue *Philip*, duke of *Chartres*, late duke of *Orleans*, who married *Frances-Mary de Bourbon*, mademoiselle *de Blois*, by whom he had issue the duke of *Orleans*, born anno 1703, and four daughters.

THE person of *Lewis XIV.* was agreeable and majestic. He performed his exercises well, and to do him justice, he was by far the most magnificent prince of the age he lived in. His encouragement of learning has passed almost to a proverb; though it is said, that all the expences he bestowed upon men of letters, did not amount to 7000 l. sterling, a year. His complexion was amorous, and had not his mother found means to prevent it, he would have married his first mistress mademoiselle *de Mancini*, cardinal *Mazarine's* niece. His second mistress was the famous *la Valiere*, who loved him so faithfully, that finding herself rivalled in his affections, she retired to a convent, where she died. The countess *de Montespan*, a celebrated beauty, by whom he had several children, was his third mistress, and was succeeded by mademoi-

selle de Fontange; but madam *Maintenon* was the fair one who had the unrivalled possession of the heart of *Lewis*. She had been bred in *America*, and, after various adventures, she was married to *Scarron*, the famous *French* wit, by whom she was left a widow. About that time, madam *Montespan* made use of madam *Scarron's* pen in writing to the king; and he found her billets so delicately composed, that he desired to see the author, and her conversation confirmed him her slave. She was then past her bloom, but her judgment, address, and manners, so entirely won the heart of *Lewis*, that he married her secretly; and it was owing meerly to her own moderation, that he did not publickly own her as his queen. She had, during the latter end of his reign, almost the sole management of public affairs, but never had any children by *Lewis*.

Accession  
of Lewis  
XV.

*LEWIS XV.* the present king of *France*, was but six years of age at the time of his accession to the throne, on the first of *September* 1715. *Lewis XIV.* had appointed a council of regency, consisting of the duke of *Orleans*, the duke of *Bourbon*, the duke of *Maine*, the count de *Thoulouse*, the chancellor, the president of the royal council, the marshals *Villeroy*, *Villars*, *Uxelles*, *Tallard*, and *Harcourt*, the four secretaries of state, and the comptroller-general of the finances. By the same will, he ordered the duke de *Maine* to have the guardianship of his majesty, and marshal *Villeroy* to act as his sub-governor; but the duke de *Maine's* powers were so great in the council of regency, that the duke of *Orleans*, who was a man of far superior talents, considered himself as no better than a cypher in the government, and resolved to set him aside. For this purpose, he applied to the parliament of *Paris*, whom he promised to restore to all their ancient privileges, and claimed, in right of his birth, the regency of the kingdom. The parliament agreed to this request; the will of *Lewis XIV.* was set aside, and the duke of *Orleans*, the next heir to the crown, was declared sole regent. It is thought that the crown of *France*, at that time, was in debt about three hundred millions sterling. Amongst the first measures of the duke's regency, he published an edict, by which the value of louis d'ors was fixed at fourteen livres, the crown-piece at three livres ten sols, and the other species in proportion. He then called in the louis d'or at sixteen livres, as a bait to the people; but he soon after published another edict, by which the crown got possession of a fifth of all the money in the kingdom, by obliging the public to receive the louis d'ors at twenty livres each, and other specie proportionably, upon their being issued out of the mint.

Arbitrary  
proceedings  
of the re-  
gent.

mint. For this arbitrary proceeding he apologized by the necessity he was under to diminish the debts of the crown ; and this, for some days, kept the people quiet. But the merchants and tradesmen of all kinds, especially foreigners, paid no regard to the edict, and raised the prices of their commodities according to the nominal rise of the coin ; so that a louis d'or of twenty livres could purchase no more goods than one of fourteen livres, which was the intrinsic value, had done before. To make the people some amends for this disagreeable proceeding, the regent established a court, which he called *Chambre Ardent*, by which he obliged those who had been concerned in the management of the public revenues during the late war, and who had been guilty of most terrible extortions, to refund large sums.

THE regent was conscious, not only that those proceedings were very unpopular, but that a great part of the kingdom considered his title to be extremely questionable and unpopular ; and to secure himself, he cultivated an intimate friendship with *George I. of Great Britain*, who had mutual reasons for accepting of his alliance. The earl of *Stair* was still minister at the *French* court, and the Pretender to the crown of *Great Britain* having failed to support the rebellion that had been raised in his name in *Scotland*, his lordship presented several very warm memorials upon the encouragement and assistance he had received from *France*. The regent knew how disagreeable it would be to the *French* nobility and nation, if he should openly employ force against a cause which their late king had so much at heart. He therefore contented himself with sending to the court of *Great Britain* private information of all the proceedings of the Pretender and his adherents in *France*, and winked at a few supplies sent to *Scotland*, which he knew could do no service to their cause.

THE disputes between the Jesuits and Jansenists having made a great noise in *France*, even to the threatening to kindle up a civil war, it is proper we should give some account of them here. A doctor of *Louvain*, (*Jansenius*) afterwards bishop of *Ipres*, having published a book concerning *St. Augustine's* doctrine of grace and free-will, he was answered by a Jesuit ; and at last the matter was carried before the pope, who condemned five propositions in the bishop's book. His followers, who are called Jansenists, denied the propositions condemned were deducible from the book, and some of them went even so far as to say they were not heterodox ; and that the pope, though an infallible judge of doctrines, was not a judge of facts. The Jesuits maintained he was  
Religious  
affairs of  
France.  
judge

judge of both. The pope, *Clement XI.* would gladly have compromised the dispute, by waving his right to judge of facts; but the Jansenists aimed at destroying the Jesuits, whom they accused as being the corrupters of all piety, virtue, and morals. The Jesuits, on the other hand, upbraided the Jansenists with being Quietists, or Molinists, and influenced entirely by temporal considerations. In this state of the question, father *Quesnel*, of the *Oratory*, wrote a book, called “Moral Reflections on the New Testament,” and levelled at the Jesuits. This book was approved of by cardinal *de Noailles*, archbishop of *Paris*, and several of the bishops; but the reading of it was forbid by other prelates. Upon this, the controversy was carried before the king, who being unable to reconcile the dispute, referred it to the pope, who condemned the book, as containing an hundred-and-one heretical propositions. The bull of this condemnation beginning with the word *Unigenitus*, it was afterwards called the bull *Unigenitus*. Many of the clergy, and some of the parliaments of *France*, refusing to accept of this bull, appealed to a general council; but the Jesuits having an entire ascendancy over *Lewis XIV.* he enforced the observance of the bull, and banished some of the most forward of the appellants. His death put a stop to the dispute for some time.

ON the accession of the duke of *Orleans* to the regency, it was revived with so much fury, that he published an edict, setting at liberty all who were imprisoned on account of the bull *Unigenitus*, and recalling those who had been exiled; but, at the same time, he enjoined the recusant bishops to accept of it with certain modifications. But while the persecution of the Jansenists ceased for a while by this interposition, that of the Protestants still went on. Though the regent could not be said to be of any religion, he was too great a politician to give offence to so powerful a body as the clergy of *France*, by shewing any indulgence to the Reformed; and all that even the importunity of *George I.* could obtain from him was, the release of three or four-score protestants, who had been condemned to the galleys merely on account of their religion. The next point of great consequence that fell under the cognizance of the regent, was a petition of the princes of the house of *Bourbon*, born in wedlock, against an edict of the late king, by which his spurious issue, the duke of *Maine* and the count of *Thoulouse*, were not only legitimated, but put upon the same footing with the other princes of the blood, and even declared capable of succeeding to the crown. This, it must be acknowledged, was an illegal arbitrary act, and the effect of  
royal

royal dotage ; but the edict had been formally registered in parliament, and received even by the parties who now petitioned against it. The legitimate princes could not deny those facts ; but they said, that neither they, nor the parliament, were free under the late king, whose act was invalid in its nature, as he could not destroy the fundamental constitution of the kingdom by transferring the succession to foreigners, or illegitimate issue. The duke *de Maine* and the count *de Toulouse* requested, that the matter might stand as it was till his majesty should be of age ; but the regent thought proper to annul the edict and declaration which had passed in their favour, and they were forbidden for the future to assume the title of princes of the blood, by an edict published in July 1717.

THAT same summer, the czar *Peter the Great*, of *Russia*, <sup>The czar</sup> visited *Paris*, where he was entertained with surprising politeness. <sup>visits Pa-</sup> The famous project of the *Mississippi* company was then on foot. It was calculated to discharge the prodigious debt that had been contracted during the late war, and fifty millions of livres was the capital sum which was to carry on a trade in *Florida*, *Louisiana*, and the other countries on the borders of that river ; the shares to be purchased with state-bills. The scheme was so plausible, that thirty millions were immediately subscribed. It would be too tedious to recount the various other expedients which the regent had recourse to for robbing the people of their money. At last, having partly by plausible means, and partly by force, got into his hands almost the whole specie of the kingdom, it was re-coined, and the louis d'or was raised to thirty-six livres, at which rate all who had state-bills in their hand were obliged to take them. Nay, they were forced under penalties to carry their old specie to the mint ; by all which oppressive measures it was thought, upon a moderate computation, that the people were cheated at once of two hundred millions of livres. The parliament struggled long against those iniquitous proceedings, but all was in vain. The regent was resolved to be obeyed ; and to secure himself against the public indignation, he formed more strict connections than ever with the court of *Great Britain*, by giving the Pretender and his adherents a perpetual exclusion from *France*, and guarantying the Protestant succession in *Great Britain*, his *Britannic* majesty undertaking a reciprocal guaranty in favour of the house of *Orleans*.

THE discontents which the regent's conduct occasioned in *France*, encouraged the court of *Madrid* to form the schemes which we have fully given an account of in the history of *Spain* ;

*Spain*; therefore we shall not repeat them, but proceed to the internal affairs of *France*. It is certain, that at this time, the *French* in general were well disposed to have admitted his Catholic majesty to the regency instead of the duke of *Orleans*; but the latter, besides the support of *England*, had upon his side the army, which disappointed all their efforts. The duke de *Richelieu* and some other noblemen were taken into custody on suspicion of favouring the *Spanish* interest, and some men of quality were executed in *Brittany* on the same account; while the great blow given to the *Spanish* marine by Sir *George Byng*, delivered the regent from all apprehensions on that quarter. This emboldened him to proceed in his arbitrary schemes of fleecing the people, and he met with a proper tool for that purpose in the person of *John Law*, a *Scotsman*, a projector and a professed gamester. This person had formed a scheme for establishing a bank, which the regent liked so well, that after agreeing to it, he ordered it to be continued under the royal name and authority; and the king having purchased all the actions or shares in it, became its sole proprietor; and from the first of *January* 1719, it was declared to be a royal bank. The parliament of *Paris* refused to register this declaration, foreseeing that the bank-bills, in a short time, would be of as little value as the state-bills. The opposition made by the parliament was ineffectual, and an arret was published, enjoining all men to look upon the declaration as registered in parliament, though it had been rejected. Offices were erected in all the great towns of the kingdom for paying and delivering bank-bills, and in *April* 1719, the stock of the bank, through the regularity of its payments, was increased to an hundred millions of livres.

and pro-  
gress

THE establishment of this royal bank was but one part of the mighty plan that had been formed by *Law*. He undertook the improvement of the *Mississippi* scheme; and it must be acknowledged that there was somewhat great in all his proposals, setting aside the intention. Before the end of the year 1719, the circulation of the royal bank amounted to a thousand millions of livres, which sum is above thirty-eight millions of pounds sterling, a circulation exceeding that of all the other banks of *Europe*. While the *French* were thus enjoying their imaginary wealth in the midst of beggary, Mr. *Law* persuaded the regent to transfer all the privileges of the *East-India* company to that of the *Mississippi*. As the last mentioned company had received for the purchase of their shares state-bills without any discount, their original subscription was soon filled, and by adding subscriptions to subscriptions, the

of the  
*Mississippi*  
scheme.

the whole ran up to two hundred millions; and in *August* 1719, every share of an hundred livres was sold for nine hundred. The treasurer of the royal bank was ordered to deliver to the company twenty-five millions of livres for carrying on the trade to *Louisiana*. In short, without entering into the particulars of a scheme which very few of our readers can be supposed to understand, such was the madness of the *French* nation at this time, that the actions rose at last to 2050; and the total, when calculated at that rate, amounted in *November*, and part of *December* following, to 228 millions sterling. In *December* an arret was published, by which no tender but what was made in bank-bills should be accepted of in payment, and those bills at last encreased to a million of millions. It now came to be suspected, that all the management of the government tended towards getting the whole specie of the kingdom into their own hands, and to pay their debts with paper, the value of which was in their own breasts.

In *January* 1720, Mr. Law was made comptroller of the finances, and was by many looked upon as the greatest subject in *Europe*. Some of the great men in *France* having made immense sums by the *India* stock, sent their money out of the kingdom to purchase jewels, foreseeing what would happen. This coming to the knowledge of the government, an arret was published, prohibiting, under severe penalties, either the wear or importation of diamonds, pearls, or precious stones. Notwithstanding all these oppressive measures, the regent, and the comptroller of his finances, being sensible that a great deal of money was still concealed, published another arret, permitting the merchants and others to export specie for the purchase of merchandize. This, in a few days, occasioned abundance of money to circulate; upon which, another arret was published to lower the value of gold and silver-money, and to oblige the proprietors, on pain of forfeiture, to bring it into the mint, where it was to be exchanged for bank-notes. This severity not being found quite successful, a most unheard-of arbitrary power was given the *India* company, to enter all houses in the kingdom, civil and religious, not excepting the royal palaces, and to search them for concealed money. Those, and many other tyrannical acts of power, rendered the people of *France* at once slaves and beggars. As the former edicts respected only ready money, many foreigners and others, who had great hoards of it, had converted it into plate; and it was found, by an account taken from the books of the silversmiths at *Paris*, that, in three months time, they had made an hundred and twenty thousand which is attended with great ruin

thousand dozen of plates, besides dishes, the value of which was computed at seven millions two hundred thousand pound sterling; supposing each plate at an average to be worth five pound sterling. This produced another arret, prohibiting the making of any gold plate above an ounce weight; and the quantity of silver plate was reduced to the necessary uses of the table, beyond which it was penal to make any beyond the king's permission. After this, arrears upon arrears were issued for obliging the people to accept of a paper security for money, till the people, tame as they were, and bridled by a numerous army, were upon the point of rising as one man against the government.

to the  
French.

THIS obliged the regent by the end of *May* 1720, to repeal some of his most unpopular edicts, and the people were obliged to become creditors to one another, instead of the government being a debtor to them; so that *France* wore a general face of ruin, by fifteen hundred millions of livres being transferred from them to the king. The regent, at last, was obliged to dismiss Mr. *Law* from all his employments, and to assign him a guard to protect him from the fury of the people; and he left the kingdom, but with no very considerable addition to his private fortune. As it would have been impossible for the projectors of the above iniquitous schemes to have carried them into execution without amusing the people with a shew of somewhat real, no fewer than an hundred ships were built, or taken into the pay of the *Mississippi* company. But this deception served only to encrease the public expence, as no settlement was seriously attempted to be made, and no new channel of commerce opened. In a short time, the *Indian Mississippi* company was actually dissolved, and the trade to the *East-Indies* and *America* was put upon its former footing. People, to this day, are divided in opinions concerning *Law's* schemes. The common voice is, that they were chimerical, and calculated only to answer the regent's purposes, by impoverishing the people of *France*, who hated him. Some who pretend to have better judgment, think that they were formed upon two maxims of commerce and policy, and that their miscarriage was owing to the impatience of the people of *France*, which did not suffer them to wait for the result of them. The arguments of the latter might have some weight, were they able to prove that the trade of the *Mississippi* ever could have been rendered so considerable as to have indemnified the sufferers by realizing their subscriptions.

Plague at  
Mar-  
seilles.

BESIDES the above artificial calamity, a natural one was, at this time, heavy upon the people of *France*, and no nation



in *Europe* could have recovered so soon as she did from both. A ship arriving at *Marseilles* from *Sidon*, brought in it the plague, of which some porters employed in unloading it, died; but the magistrates of the city gave out that it was only a malignant fever, and trade went on as formerly, by which the pestilence communicated itself to all the southern provinces of the kingdom; and it was computed that in the city of *Marseilles* itself, no fewer than 40,000 people died during the month of *September*. Great precautions were taken by the *French* government, by drawing lines of circumvallation, establishing patrols, and enforcing even capital severities, to prevent the infection from spreading, and at last it ceased; but not till after having occasioned inexpressible devastations.

It is recorded to the honour of the parliament of *Paris*, *The parliament* that the members opposed all the tyrannical proceedings of the regent, and refused to register the pernicious edicts he *opposes the* issued; upon which he quartered 45,000 troops in that capital and its neighbourhood. Even this force being thought insufficient to bridle the people, the parliament had the additional glory of being banished to *Pontoise*, where they remained, for some time, in a state of exile. Amidst so many unpopular acts the regent pursued, one which a little softened the public resentment, was that of establishing a court, by which he obliged those who had enriched themselves during the late *Mississippi* project, to refund immense sums; a measure which gained him vast profit and some popularity. Having some reason to believe that many of the nobility of *France*, though not in the *Spanish* interest, were in that of their country, and consequently wished that their king was removed out of his hands, he discharged the duke of *Villeroy*, whom he considered as being of that number, from his post of governor to the king, and substituted the duke of *Charost* in his room. The charge against *Villeroy* was his having suggested some things to his majesty to the disadvantage of his royal highness, his aiming at being independent, and his refusing to leave the room when the regent wanted to speak with his majesty.

It is remarkable, notwithstanding the distresses of the people of *France* at this time, that the court never appeared in greater splendor. We have already mentioned at length the marriage of his most Christian majesty to the infanta of *Spain*, and the other royal marriage concluded at the same time; together with the short war between the two crowns that preceded them, and the intrigues of cardinal *Alberoni*. Cardinal *Du Bois*, a monster of irreligion and immorality,

was

was declared by the regent first minister of *France*; and in the year 1723, the king was crowned at *Rheims*, and next spring he was declared by the parliament to be of age. On the 10th of *August*, *Du Bois* died, and the regent thought it most safe to act as first minister himself; but he died the *who dies*, second of *December* following. He was succeeded as first minister by the duke of *Bourbon*, who was a wise moderate man, and restored *Villeroy* to court; for though the king was *and is succeeded by* declared to be of age, he was, in fact, still considered as a *the duke of* minor, and was as much under tutelage as before. The incidents that brought on the congress of *Cambray*, have been related in the history of *Spain*, as have been most of the particulars relating to *France* at this juncture; as to the part she acted in the affairs of *Europe*. The foreign trade of *France* being, at this time, low, the duke of *Bourbon* reduced the louis d'or from twenty-seven livres to twenty-four. This created vast losses to traders and manufacturers of all kinds; and the profligacy of the city of *Paris* was such, that the most audacious robberies and murders were every hour committed, and a general insurrection apprehended, so that the government ordered some bodies of regular troops to march into the capital. Those public calamities did not allay the bitterness of the clergy against one another, concerning the bull *Unigenitus*, nor the persecution of the Protestants, the only point in which those holy men were agreed. The king, to oblige his clergy, published many cruel edicts against them; and in one of them he is made to say, that he was determined to pursue the glorious example laid down by his great-grandfather, of extirpating hereby out of his kingdom.

THE court, by this time, was determined to force the *French* clergy to accept of the bull *Unigenitus*; and the bishop of *Montpelier* was severely punished for refusing it. Notwithstanding all the miseries the *French* suffered, their love for the young king kept them quiet; but all ranks and degrees of people lamented the youth, or rather infancy, of his queen, and wished to see him married to a princess by whom he could have issue; upon which he sent her back; and the king declared his intention to take to wife *Mary Leczinski*, the daughter of king *Stanislaus*. This match had been pitched upon for him by the duke of *Bourbon*, preferable to far more powerful alliances, because he thought that interest, as well as gratitude, would always induce the young queen to befriend him and his family. It is certain, the duke could not have made a better choice for the good of *France*. She was unconnected with the great powers of *Europe*, and therefore brought

brought no foreign interests to the king's bed, that could create cabals and intrigues in his court; and above all, she was distinguished for her piety, virtue, and good disposition. The *Vienna* and *Hanover* alliances, which succeeded this marriage, have been already mentioned and explained.

THE lead which the court of *France* took, at this time, *Hardships of the people continue,* in all the affairs of *Europe*, and the subsidies it paid to the *Italian*, *German*, and Northern powers, obliged his majesty to encrease the taxes upon his people; and in the preamble to one of the declarations published for that purpose, it is said, that the king, within the compass of seven years, viz. from 1716 to 1723, by raising the value of the coin, and new stamping it, had gained upwards of three hundred and fifty-three millions of livres; and in the years 1719, and 1720, by the royal bank notes which had been issued by the government, and never paid, above three millions of millions; and that notwithstanding these prodigious profits, the crown was still so far in debt, that it paid fifty-one millions of livres annually for interest-money, though that interest was but two per Cent. When those, and several other edicts of the like import were carried on the 8th of *June* 1725, to the parliament of *Paris*, they required time to deliberate upon them, as they were not only of great weight, but considerable length. This was a favour that could not be granted, and the members were obliged to comply with the king's positive command that they should be immediately registered. All, therefore, that the parliaments, all over the kingdom, could do, was, to lay before the throne the most pathetic remonstrances concerning the miseries of the people, who were then actually in a state of famine; but those which came from the parliament of *Britany* were the most spirited and the best drawn.

EVEN the terrors of the numerous army could not prevent *and they are driven to mutiny:* the populace in some places from committing acts of violence, particularly in *Paris* and *Rouen*; bread being then at the exorbitant price of eight-pence and ten-pence a pound, and other provisions proportionably dear. All this while, the religious persecutions, particularly on account of the bull *Unigenitus*, continued to rage; the court being resolved to enforce the acceptance of it all over the kingdom. The *Carthusian* friars, who refused to accept it, fled to *Holland* for protection. Great numbers of other ecclesiastics were imprisoned, banished, or deprived, for the same cause; and, among other sufferers, was the abbess *de Chelles*, daughter to the late duke of *Orleans*; but, far from complying, she declared, that she thought it meritorious to share in the persec-

*Character  
of cardinal  
Fleury.*

cution with so many holy men. In the year 1726, for the causes mentioned in the history of *Spain*, his most Christian majesty augmented his army, dismissed the duke of *Bourbon* from his post of first minister, and took the whole of the government into his own hands. This removal was thought to be occasioned by the interest of the *Spanish* party, who could never forgive the duke's sending back the infanta to *Spain*; and it is said, that he had somewhat in his manner that was disagreeable to the king. Soon after, cardinal *Fleury* appeared upon the stage of state as first minister. He had been preceptor to the king, and by his smooth insinuating address, he had obtained a complete ascendancy over that monarch's mind and affections. He had not even the learning that was requisite for his profession as a priest, but his decent, and seemingly open, behaviour, begot in the public an opinion both of his abilities and virtue; the first of which he did not deserve, and the latter was at best equivocal. He had good sense enough to know the influence he had with his royal pupil; that his own genius rendered him to be a far more fit minister in time of peace than war; and he had the art to persuade all the foreign ministers by turns, that he was equally a friend to the interests of them all. With all this shew of moderation, it is certain that he was in his heart a violent bigot in matters of religion; and one of the first measures of his administration was, to prevail upon the king to publish a declaration, by which he required the bull *Unigenitus* to be received through all his dominions, and equally binding upon laity as clergy. We have already, in the history of *Spain*, discussed the transactions which gave rise to the unnatural alliance between *France* and *Great Britain*, and which preceded the congresses of *Cambray* and *Soissons*.

*Congress of  
Cambray  
and Soissons.*

THE cardinal never appeared with so much lustre as he did in those places, which were of his own nomination, and so near to his master's person, that he was in no danger of leaving him too long in the hands, or under the influence, of other ministers. On the 17th of *August* 1727, *Te Deum* was sung at *Paris* for the birth of the two princesses, which was a prodigious disappointment to the people of *France*; and the king himself, in the letter he wrote to the archbishop of *Paris* on that occasion, ordered him to put up prayers that he might be blessed with a dauphin. On the 28th of *July*, next year, the hopes of the *French* were again disappointed by her majesty being brought to-bed of another princess; upon which she underwent a solemn, but ridiculous procession to the church of *Notre Dame*, to pray that

she

he might be impregnated with a dauphin. A few days after this, the king was taken ill of the small-pox, but recovered so well, that he appeared abroad about the beginning of *November*. The winter this year was so excessively severe, that the king was not only obliged to remit to the poor great part of his *taille* or land-tax, but to issue large sums for their relief; in which he was imitated by his chief nobility.

AMIDST those natural calamities, religious rage seemed *Religious* to gather strength in *France*, and the divisions between the *disputes*. *Jansenists* and *Jesuits* rose higher than ever. It was, for some time, hard to say which of the two parties, as ecclesiastics, were the most solicitous for proselytes; but the parliaments, and the lay-tribunals in general, were on the side of the *Jansenists*, chiefly because they were in opposition to the pope. The *Jesuits*, however, were allowed to be the greatest proficients in the art of making converts, especially among the women, whom they often worked up into enthusiasm, to accomplish their infamous purposes, carnal as well as religious. All this while the *French* ministry, taking advantage of the heats and divisions that reigned in the *British* parliament, were employed in fortifying and repairing the harbour of *Dunkirk*, in violation of the most solemn engagements; particularly the treaty of *Utrecht*. The death of *Augustus*, king of *Poland*, in 1733, drove the cardinal from his pacific system. He could not, with safety to himself, refuse to join in the measures that were concerted for restoring the queen's father to his throne; in opposition to the late king's son, the elector of *Saxony*, who likewise declared himself a candidate, and whose interest was espoused by the emperor, the czarina, and the king of *Prussia*.

THE marquis de *Monte*, the *French* ambassador at *Warsaw*, *Stanislaus*, had the address to bring over the primate, and the most zealous popish dietines to the interest of *Stanislaus*, who travelled *chosen king* of *Poland*; through *Germany* in disguise to *Warsaw*, where he remained for some days concealed in the *French* ambassador's house; and when he appeared in public, was received with great acclamations of joy. The *Russian* troops, by this time, advancing rapidly towards *Warsaw*, and the primate thinking that no time ought to be lost, declared, after collecting the votes of the electors, that *Stanislaus* was duly elected king. All the palatines who were in the *Saxon* interest, protested against this election, and withdrew from the diet. In the mean while, the emperor of *Germany* having assembled an army in *Silesia*, the duke of *Berwick*, the best general in *France*, had orders to assemble another on the *Rhine*, and to march into *Germany* as soon as the Imperialists should proceed

towards *Poland*. But the danger of *Stanislaus* did not lie in that quarter. *Lacy*, the *Russian* general, had entered *Poland* at the head of 50,000 men, and being joined by the *Poles* in the *Saxon* interest, after proclaiming *Augustus* king, they passed the *Vistula*, on their march to *Warsaw*. *Stanislaus* was in no condition to oppose such a force, which soon became masters of *Warsaw*, while he, with the primate and a few friends, retired towards *Dantzick*. Those proceedings produced a treaty between *France*, *Spain*, and the king of *Sardinia*; and the duke of *Berwick* passing the *Rhine*, took fort *Kehl*, which put an end to the campaign that year, for the duke of *Berwick* returned immediately to *Paris*.

but loses  
that  
crown.

FROM the conduct of the *French* court during the late campaign, it is very doubtful, whether his most Christian majesty and his ministers ever were sincere in their professions to assist *Stanislaus*; and there is reason to believe, from the event, that they never were. His most Christian majesty, however, next year declared, that he would put himself at the head of his army; but, in the mean time, he suffered *Dantzick* to fall into the hands of the *Russians* and *Saxons*, from whence his father-in law escaped in the habit of a peasant, after suffering as much misery as human nature is capable of enduring. On the *Rhine*, the *French*, under the count, afterwards the famous duke de *Belleisle*, took *Traerbach*; and the duke of *Berwick* invested *Philipsburgh* with 60,000 men, but was killed by a cannon-ball in visiting the trenches. His command devolved upon the marquis d'*Asfeldt*; while prince *Eugene*, who commanded the Imperialists, was so ill supported by his court, that he was obliged to remain inactive in a fortified camp at *Heilbron*. The reader, in other parts of this history, has been acquainted with the other operations of the *French* at this time, in different parts of *Europe*. Their army occupied both sides of the *Rhine*, without any molestation from the Imperialists, prince *Eugene* not daring to attack them; and the campaign ended about the beginning of *October*.

A peace  
between  
France  
and Ger-  
many.

IN the winter of this year, *Great Britain* was insulted by one of the most extraordinary ordinances that ever was published, commanding all the *British* subjects in *France*, who were not in employ, instantly to depart out of that kingdom on pain of being sent to the galleys. This ordinance was so rigorously carried into execution, that, in a few days, the prisons of *Paris* were filled with *British* subjects, who found themselves without remedy or relief. The earl of *Waldgrave*, the *British* ambassador at *Paris*, exerted himself so strenuously against this unheard-of proscription, that he obtained an explanation

planation of the ordinance, confining it to vagabonds, who had no visible way of living, without affecting noblemen and gentlemen who were on their travels, or any persons of fortune, or their servants. The *French* court being now masters upon the *Rhine*, beheld with the greatest indifference the ruin of the party of *Stanislaus* in *Poland*; but, upon the czarina ordering 30,000 men to march to the assistance of the emperor, their ministers offered to enter upon a negotiation for restoring peace to *Germany*. Preliminaries, by a peculiar management of the *French*, were concluded between them and the Imperialists, without the privacy or intervention of an ally on either side. By them, which were afterwards carried into a treaty, the duke of *Lorraine* was to have the reversion of *Tuscany*, and, in that event, *Lorraine* was to be given to *Stanislaus*; but, upon his death, was to be annexed for ever to the crown of *France*, which was to restore to the emperor all the conquests it had made in *Germany*, and to guaranty the Pragmatic Sanction. The remaining parts of this treaty have been mentioned in other parts of this history; neither shall we recapitulate circumstances already set down, or which fall more properly under other heads of this history.

THE death of the emperor *Charles VI.* afforded a new theatre for the ambition of the *French*, who most perfidiously broke their lately-concluded guarantee of the Pragmatic Sanction, and declared their intention to place on the Imperial throne the elector of *Bavaria*, who was neither able nor willing to withstand their power. Notwithstanding this, the *French* minister was making the strongest professions to the queen of *Hungary*, while the count *de Belleisle* undertook, being furnished with vast sums underhand, to procure the votes of the electors in favour of the duke of *Bavaria*, who was declared generalissimo of 25,000 *French* troops, who were to put him in possession of the *Austrian* dominions in *Germany*: to the history of which we must refer the reader for the transactions which followed. It was with the utmost grief that old cardinal *Fleury* saw *France* plunged into a war from which he augured but little success, and himself driven from all his pacific schemes by the superior genius of *Belleisle*; but the spirit of the nation was not to be checked, and the king himself was obliged to give way to it, especially as he found his parliaments extremely unmanageable. It is certain, that the elevation of the elector of *Bavaria* to the Imperial throne was owing, in a great measure, to the predilection of his *Britannic* majesty for his *German* dominions, which induced him to embrace a neutrality. When

the *French* in a manner forced him from that neutrality, and when he defeated them at the battle of *Dettingen*, the same influence operated in their favour when orders were given to stop the pursuit, by which the *French* army under *Noailles* was saved from immediate and total destruction.

Disputes  
between  
the French  
king and  
parlia-  
ment.

THE religious heats of *France* now communicated themselves from the church to the state. The parliaments, particularly that of *Paris*, began now to have a relish for civil liberty, and to talk to their king in a manner very different from what they had ever used before. The severities practised by the friends of the constitution *Unigenitus*, in persecuting all who would not receive that bull, particularly an order of nuns called the *Calvarists*, induced them to entreat his majesty to permit them to make remonstrances to the pope's brief against them; but he forbade them with an air of authority that required absolute obedience to his will. In all other cases and grievances, too numerous to be here mentioned, he told them, that their remonstrances were useless; that he took it ill his parliament should meddle with the rights of his kingdom, and that they concerned himself alone; and made use of many such arbitrary expressions. In the year 1741, he published a declaration for raising the tenth penny, which it was thought would produce four millions a-year. The parliament made a strong remonstrance against this imposition, and the president even shed tears when he represented the miseries of the people. The king's answer was more mild than usual; but they were obliged to obey him by registering it. A free-gift of about 120,000*l.* was at the same time demanded of the clergy, and the order of knights of *Malta* were required to compound once a-year for their revenues in *France*. Those impositions were occasioned, in a great measure, by the war between *Great Britain* and *Spain*, which prevented the galleons, upon whom the government greatly depended for their supplies, from returning to *Europe*. The unfortunate issue of the arms of *France* in *Germany* increased her distresses so much, that in 1742 her king was obliged to extend the tenth penny to handicrafts and manufacturers, which occasioned an insurrection at *Lyons*; and it was thought that a civil war would follow.

The  
French  
befriend  
the Spaniards  
against

In proportion as the *Spaniards* were distressed by the *British* arms, the expences of the court of *France* grew. They could not see with unconcern the progress of the *English* in *America*, and this hurried them to take part in that war, especially after the death of cardinal *Fleury*. It is certain, at this time, not only their court, but their people, were in

a mi-  
a mi-



a miserable situation ; but the amazing resources which *Great France* has within itself, and the love which the people have *Britain* ; for the greatness of their monarch, carried their court thro' all difficulties at home, however unsuccessful their arms proved abroad. They had been driven, with prodigious loss, out of *Germany* ; their intrigues had been unsuccessful ; they had been deserted by some of their allies, and they paid immense subsidies to others ; but still their preparations went on, and in the beginning of the year 1744, being then determined to join with *Spain* against *Great Britain*, they had a prodigious fleet at sea, and their armies in *Flanders*, on the *Rhine*, and the *Moselle*, consisted of 230,000 men. It was about this time that they formed the scheme, which was then thought ridiculous, but afterwards proved but too serious, of placing the Pretender on the throne of *Great Britain*. They were encouraged to this by the great army which his *Britannic* majesty at that time was obliged to employ upon the continent, by the reports made by the *British* and *Irish* Roman Catholics in *France* of the small number of regular troops who were then in *Britain* ; but, above all, by the representations which their emissaries in *London* sent them concerning the disaffection of the nation to the house of *Hanover* ever since the battle of *Dettingen*, and the prodigious heats and dissensions then prevailing in the *British* parliament.

SUCH were the motives that induced the court of *France* and sent to revive their long-disused policy of making the abdicated *the young* house of *Stuart* their tools in their differences with *Great Pretender* *Britain*. Cardinal *Tencin*, who owed his hat to the old Pre- to invade *Great Britain*, had succeeded to great part of *Fleury's* power in the cabinet, and warmly espoused the revived system, to which he brought the king over. He entered into a correspondence with the old Pretender at *Rome*, who, unable himself to embark in such an expedition, was persuaded, but it is said against his better judgment, to lend (for so we may call it) his eldest son, *Charles*, to the *French* ; and about the end of *December* 1743, the youth set out, in the disguise of a *Spanish* courier, from *Rome*. Being furnished with passports by cardinal *Aquaviva*, he went through *Tuscany* to *Genoa*, and proceeding to *Savona*, he took shipping at *Antibes* ; and arriving at *Paris*, he had a private audience of the *French* king, at which, we may suppose, the future operations were concerted. All this was not so privately done, but intelligence of what was passing came to the knowledge of *Mr. Thomson*, the *British* resident at *Paris*, who presented strong remonstrances on so glaring an infraction of treaties as the

receiving into *France* the son of the Pretender to the crown of *Great Britain*, who was, by this time, set out for *Picardy*. The *French* had gone too far to pretend to dissemble then. They were scarcely at pains to disavow their intention of declaring war against *Great-Britain*.

THE court of *Versailles* was so wrapt up in the success of this expedition, that the command of it was given to Count *Saxe* and *Monf. de Roquesfeuille*, the two best officers the *French* had, the one by land, and the other by sea. The land-troops who were to serve in it were said to consist of 15,000 men, and a vast number of transports were assembled at *Dunkirk*, *Calais*, and *Boulogne*. Their intention was to land in *Kent*, and to have attempted to take *Dover-Castle* by an escalade. *Roquesfeuille*, above all things, was enjoined to prevent the junction of the *English* squadrons equipping at *Portsmouth* and *Chatham*; and it was their trusting to the supposed impracticability of such a junction, that rendered them so sanguine in their hopes of success. *Roquesfeuille*, when he sailed in the month of *January* from *Brest*, had twenty ships of war, and three or four frigates, under

Their fleet  
driven  
back.

his command. He was, unknown to himself, discovered by an *English* cruizer, who ran into *Plymouth*, and sent an express over land to the *British* admiralty with the news. Sir *John Norris* was immediately sent to take the command of the squadron at *Spithead*, with which he sailed for the *Downs*, where being joined by the *Chatham* ships, his fleet was much superior in strength to that of *Roquesfeuille*. The latter had dispatched a frigate to the *Isle of Wight*, who returning, reported that no ships lay at *Spithead* or *St. Helen's*, and this made *Roquesfeuille* conclude that the *British* squadron had put into *Portsmouth*. While *Roquesfeuille* lay off the *Isle of Wight*, which he did for three or four days, he dispatched four of his ships, which were to serve as a convoy for the embarkation of the troops that was going on at, *Dunkirk*, where he himself was in danger of losing his fleet by the stormy weather. Having repaired his ships, he anchored at *Dungeness*, in full persuasion that the *English* squadron durst not put to sea to fight him.

Declara-  
tions of  
war

ON the 10th of *March*, *Roquesfeuille* perceived the *English* fleet, which at first he took for merchantmen, advancing against him with all the expedition a contrary wind would admit of; but the tide failing, they were obliged to cast an anchor two leagues short of the *French*. *Roquesfeuille* knew his own inferiority too well to think of fighting, and calling a council of war, it was resolved to make the best of their way back to *Brest*, without firing a gun, or observing any order

order of battle; which resolution was signed by all the members present. As the *French* were, as it were, hemmed in a bay, even this resolution might not have saved them, had not a strong gale of wind sprung up from the north-east, which carried them down the Channel with such rapidity, that the *English* next morning were astonished at their having totally disappeared. But the storm that favoured their escape proved fatal to their expedition, for many of their transports which had put to sea were dashed to pieces, and most, if not all, the others were rendered unfit for immediate service. This unsuccessful attempt was followed by a declaration of war from the court of *France* against *Great Britain*, dated *March* the 15th, and another declaration of war against the queen of *Hungary*, whom the *French* had hitherto opposed only as auxiliaries to the emperor *Charles VII.* By the first declaration, the *French* king charged his *Britannic* majesty, whom he affected to call king of *England*, elector of *Hanover*, with want of moderation, and with having views very inconsistent with the interests of *England*, aiming at nothing less than the kindling a general war, to which he excited the court of *Vienna*. His majesty is farther accused of having thrown off all the appearances of moderation which he wore while he was in *Germany*, upon his return to his regal dominions, and of having not only taken all opportunities of provoking *France* by the piracies exercised against her ships, and by the *English* daring to block up the port of *Toulon*, and committing all kinds of depredations against her subjects, but of exciting all the powers of *Europe* against her. In short, the *French* king declares war against the king of *England*, elector of *Hanover*, by sea and land.

between  
France,  
Great Bri-  
tain, and  
Austria.

THIS declaration created great indignation amongst the *English* and their allies, as it was plain, from the affected appellation given his *Britannic* majesty, the *French* court insinuated that another king of *England* was in being. The declaration against the queen of *Hungary* was a very weak piece. The *French* king, without apologising for his scandalous breach of faith in invading the *Austrian* dominions, and breaking his guarantee of the Pragmatic Sanction, accuses the court of *Vienna* with malice and violence, and its ministers with having propagated infamous writings against *France*; their breaking their capitulations, and cruelly treating the *French* prisoners; charges which were notoriously false. After himself having desolated the *Austrian* dominions, he charges her *Hungarian* majesty with having invaded *Alsace*, and stirred up his subjects to rebellion. On the

the 31st of *March*, the same year, war was declared against *France* at *London*. This declaration was extremely precise, without admitting any vague matter, and founded on facts. His most Christian majesty was charged with having violated his solemn guaranty of the Pragmatic Sanction, given by him in the year 1738, in consideration of the cession of *Lorraine*; with having connived at his subjects acting as privateers under *Spanish* commissions, both in *Europe* and *America*; and with sending, in the year 1740, a strong squadron into the *American* seas, to keep the *English* from prosecuting the war against *Spain* in those parts. A duplicate of an order, dated the 7th of *October* 1740, was mentioned, by which the *French* admiral was instructed to act in a hostile manner against the *British* ships, either jointly or separately, but to act in concert with the *Spaniards* in attacking one of the chief of the *British* settlements in the *West-Indies*; and this too at the time when the *French* minister at the court of *England* was declaring, that his master had no intention to break with the *British* nation. The unwarrantable proceeding of repairing *Dunkirk*, a notorious breach of treaties; the reception of the Pretender's son; and the late attempt of the *French* to invade *England*, transactions that were publicly avowed and acknowledged by the *French* themselves, were likewise mentioned. As to his *Britannic* majesty's acting another part in *England* than he had done in *Germany*, it was very justly observed in the declaration, that he had contracted his neutrality as elector of *Hanover*, but not as king of *Great Britain*.

French  
campaign  
in the Ne-  
therlands.

THE *French* court, after this declaration, thought proper to transfer the chief seat of war from *Germany* to *Flanders*, where they had an army of 120,000 men commanded by count *Saxe*. The prospect of glory which the ensuing campaign presented, prevailed on his most Christian majesty himself to review his army in the fields of *Lisle*, which he did in the month of *May*; and notwithstanding the most earnest instances made by the *Dutch* for the preservation of their barrier, on the 17th, count *Saxe*, then a marshal of *France*, seized *Courtray*, *Harlebeck*, and *Warneton*; and the very next day he invested *Menin* with 40,000 troops, the allied army being all this while obliged to post themselves behind the *Schelde*. *Menin* surrendered after a brisk siege. In seven days, *Ypres*, *Fort Knoques*, and *Fournes*, were obliged to surrender likewise; and the *French* having taken some measures to hinder any more *English* troops from joining their allies, the *French* king, who was attended by all the ladies of his court, on the 29th day of *June* made

a triumphant entry into *Dunkirk*. A sudden irruption of prince *Charles of Lorrain*, at the head of an *Austrian* army, into *Alsace*, where he thought himself most secure, interrupted the course of the *French* king's conquests in the *Netherlands*. He no sooner heard that prince *Charles* had passed the *Rhine*, than he ordered 30,000 troops from the *Netherlands*, besides a great number of detachments that followed; so that not above 30,000 regulars, besides garrisons, were left with marshal *Saxe* in the *Netherlands*, where the allied army consisted of above 70,000 men. The *Dutch* and the people of *England* flattered themselves that this superiority would not only drive *Saxe* out of the *Netherlands*, but retake all the towns they had lost. *Artemberg* and *Wade*, the *Austrian* and *British* generals, had neither genius nor experience for the chief command of an army that was to act against such a general as marshal *Saxe*, and they had a fixed hatred for one another; and thus the campaign was thrown away by the allies.

AFTER his most Christian majesty had given orders for *Their king* the march of his army from the *Netherlands* to the *Rhine*, *falls sick*. he resolved to head it in person, that he might give the greater spirit to its operations. He was then in the height of his glory. The sufferings and complaints of his subjects were now forgot, and nothing was heard through all the provinces of *France* but the praises of *Lewis the Well-beloved*. When he was arrived as far as *Metz*, in *Lorrain*, he was seized with a violent fever, and the physicians despaired of his life. Upon this, his queen and family hastened to pay him their last duties; and he appeared so great a penitent that he dismissed all the loose women who attended his person, and was preparing himself seriously for death, when his distemper taking a turn, he recovered, to the infinite joy of the *French* nation. In *August*, his army passed the *Rhine* at *Fort Louis*, invested and took *Friburg*, one of the strongest and most important fortresses in *Europe*; prince *Charles* having been obliged, for reasons to be met with in the history of *Germany*, to repass that same river. The place made a brave defence for thirty days, and then count *Damnitz*, the governor, made an honourable capitulation. In the mean while, the duke de *Lauragnais* had orders, as ambassador-extraordinary from *France*, to demand the infant of *Spain* for the dauphin; and the marshal *Belleisle*, with his brother the chevalier, were taken prisoner at *Elbingerode* by a *Hanoverian* magistrate, and both of them were sent to *England*. This capture made a great noise; nor was it very easy to justify the conduct of the *English* ministry in denying him, after he

came

came to *England*, the benefit of the cartel, and the privilege of being ransomed as a prisoner of war. The matter, however, was afterwards agreeably compromised, and the two illustrious prisoners were honourably set at liberty. During the winter of the year 1744, the *French* committed most terrible devastations in the bishopric of *Cologne*. When that elector complained of their taking quarters in his dominion, the marshal *Maillebois* sent his aid-de-camp to assure him, that they would behave as friends. "That is the very thing I dread, replied the elector; for I have always observed, that the friends of the *French* suffer more from them than their enemies."

Death of  
the emperor  
Charles  
VII.

IN the beginning of the year 1745, died the emperor *Charles VII.* chiefly, as was reported, from heart break, which his son and successor would have resented upon the *French*, had they not had 25,000 men quartered in or near his dominions. The conduct of marshal *Saxe*, in the preceding campaign, procured him the command of the *French* army in *Flanders* immediately under the king, who declared that he was resolved to make the campaign in person; and his ministers gave out, that his army would consist of 120,000 men, with a train of 150 pieces of battering cannon and 60 mortars, and that his army in *Germany* would be proportionably strong. They accordingly took the field early, and with infinite advantages, as the allies had nothing to oppose them, and were consuming their time in ridiculous negotiations and fruitless efforts to awaken the *Dutch* to a sense of their danger. The duke of *Cumberland*, who was to command the allied army in the *Low-Countries*, did not arrive at *Brussels*, where he reviewed his army, before the 10th of *April*; but, by that time, the *French* had besieged *Tournay*. The importance of that place was such, that his royal highness resolved to risk every thing for its relief. The place itself was invested on the 25th of *April*. Its fortifications were constructed by the famous *Vauban*, and the inhabitants were inclined to the *French*; and the *Dutch* themselves, cautious as they had always appeared, were the first who requested his royal highness to risk a battle, rather than suffer the city to be taken. The allied army was far inferior in numbers to that of the *French*. The *Austrians* in it were but eight squadrons, with old *Konigsegg* at their head, though the cause in which they were to fight was that of their mistress. The *Dutch* troops consisted of forty squadrons and twenty-six battalions, ill disciplined, cowardly, and insincere, under the command of the prince of *Waldeck*; so that, in fact, the only dependence of his royal highness

ness was in twenty battalions and twenty-six squadrons of *British* forces ; nor did his whole army exceed 50,000 fighting men

THE *French* army consisted of about 80,000 men, after leaving 18,000 men to continue the siege of *Tournay*, and 6000 to guard the bridges on the *Schelde*. On the 7th of *May*, early in the morning, the king and the dauphin joined it, and reconnoitred the ground which marshal *Saxe* had appointed for the future engagement. On the day of the battle, which was the 11th of *May*, the king and the dauphin passed the bridge of *Calonne*, and the marshal *Saxe* ordered the *gens d'armes*, his majesty's body-guards, to be reserved for the safety of the two royal personages, and, if needful, to secure their retreat. This disposition was countermanded by the king, who instantly ordered his guards to advance, and he himself took post, with no more than 120 men to guard him, beyond a place called *The Justice of our Lady in the Wood*. The dispositions made by his royal highness for attacking the *French* were such as did honour to his judgment, and the courage the *English* shewed through the whole of that bloody engagement, did the same to their country ; but they were betrayed by the cowardice of the *Dutch*, who failed in their attack upon the village of *Fontenoy*, upon which the event of the day depended. Notwithstanding this, the resolution and intrepidity of the *British* troops, animated by his royal highness, were such, that the *French* king and his son were preparing to repass the bridge, and the whole army to take flight, when the duke de *Richelieu*, or some other *French* general (for it is not agreed who), advised the bringing up four field-pieces, which played directly on the front of the *English* column, and which disordered it so much, that the *French* troops rallied, and obliged his royal highness to leave his enemies in possession of the field, after the *English* had made a much greater slaughter than they suffered.

THE *French*, upon this victory, pushed the siege of *Tournay*, which they took, and baron *Dorth*, with 7000 men French in his garrison, retired to the citadel. All this while, the *French* acted upon the defensive in *Germany*, where nothing of importance followed ; but neither their power nor intrigues could prevent the great-duke of *Tuscany*, husband to the queen of *Hungary*, from being chosen emperor. As to the operations of the war in *Italy*, the reader will find them in our history of *Spain* and the *Italian* states. The citadel of *Tournay* capitulated on the 20th of *June*, and the *French* gave orders to demolish its fortifications, and those of several

ral other towns of the barrier. After the battle of *Fontenoy*, the allies lay encamped at *Lessines*, from whence they unaccountably retreated, by which the towns of *Ghent*, *Bruges*, and *Oudenarde*, with many other places, fell into the hands of the *French*, who invested *Dendermonde* and *Ostend*. In short, during the course of this campaign, the *French* king, with unparalleled facility, subdued the greatest part of the *Austrian Netherlands*, and in one day took towns which had cost the great duke of *Marlborough* many weeks to reduce. They were not, however, equally fortunate in all parts of the globe.

THEY had been at a vast expence in fortifying *Louisburgh*, on the island of *Cape-Breton*, in *North-America*; and the destruction they dealt from thence justly entitled it to the appellation of the *American Dunkirk*. But it was now taken by a *British* Squadron under Mr. *Warren*, a body of *New-England* forces, who were no better than militia; and some *British* marine-officers, who conducted the operations of the siege. The *French* beheld this important conquest with unconcern, the occasion of which was soon explained. We have already seen the disappointment which the young Pretender met with in his attempt to invade *England*. Upon his return to the *French* court, he found the respect which it paid him decline in proportion as the necessity they had for him decreased. He had cultivated a correspondence with the friends of his father in *Scotland*, and they ignorantly persuaded him, that the *English* were ripe for a revolt, and that all *Scotland* would join him if he appeared in that country. He imparted his advices to the *French* ministry, who were well apprized of the public discontents in *England*, and ridiculously supposed that the writers in the opposition to government spoke the sense of the nation. They adopted the plan of an insurrection in *Scotland*, which was then without troops, king *George* being in *Germany*, and the *Highlanders* in general exasperated against him and his family on account of some severe, if not unjust, proceedings of his ministers against their countrymen. In the beginning of *July*, the young adventurer embarked on board a small frigate at *Port St. Lazare*. Off *Belleisle*, on the 14th of the same month, he was joined by the *Elizabeth*, a *French* man of war of sixty-six guns, which maintained a most dreadful engagement with the *Lion*, a *British* ship of war, while the Pretender held on his course, and landed on the coast of *Lochaber* in *Scotland*, where he was joined by about 1500 followers. The particulars of his success, farther than as they are connected



connected with the history of *France*, do not belong to this part of our history.

THIS rebellion unaccountably gathered force, from the *Rebellion* security of the *British* ministry, who were weak enough to in *Scot-* despise or distrust the accounts of its commencement. The land. *French* court, it is probable, had it not been for the victories of *Preslon* and *Falkirk*, which his less than half-armed *Highlanders* gained over the king's forces, would have taken very little notice of this adventurer; and it is to this day doubtful, whether he set out upon his invasion with the money furnished him by *France*, or by his father and his friends. An obscure *Frenchman* attended him in the character of a minister; but he was a spy employed by that court to send them intelligence, and his success prevailed with them to send him some troops, who landed in *Scotland* during the amazing march which he made into *England*. The vigilance of the *British* cruizers, who intercepted them, prevented more from joining him; and those who did, did him no service, nor (so far as we can learn) did they fire a gun or draw a sword at the decisive battle of *Culloden*, when the duke of *Cumberland*, in 1746, extinguished the rebellion. It is even uncertain, whether the ship which carried off that wanderer, after his defeat, to *France*, was not hired by his own followers there; so little regard had that king and ministry for his person after their own ends were served. Just before the battle of *Culloden*, they indeed sent him 40 or 50,000 louis-d'ors; but they did not land till after his defeat, nor did they ever come to his hands. After the peace of *Aix la-Chapelle*, he taxed the court of *Versailles* for having betrayed him. Their answer was to seize, pinion, and imprison him, like a common malefactor, and then to drive him out of their kingdom.

THE campaign of 1745, in the *Netherlands*, was un-*Campaign* doubtedly glorious for *France*; but her glory was owing to in the *Netherlands* the pusillanimity of the *Dutch* and *Germans*. *Brussels* was besieged and taken in the depth of winter; and the barrier which had cost the *English* millions of lives and money, was given up almost without resistance. Count *Saxe*, in the latter end of *April* 1746, at the head of 120,000 men, intimidated *Bathiani*, the general of the allies, so much, that he invested and took *Antwerp* in a manner before his face; and *Mons*, hitherto deemed almost impregnable, surrendered after a siege of twenty-eight days. *St. Guislain* and *Charleroy* were next reduced, and by the middle of *July*, the *French* were in possession of all *Flanders*, *Brabant*, and

and *Hainault*. Prince *Charles* of *Lorraine*, at this time, took the command of the confederate army, which consisted of about 80,000 men. He endeavoured to cover *Brussels*, and count *Lowendahl*, the *French* general, availed himself of that opportunity to take possession of *Huy*, and to cut off the communication of the allies with *Maastricht*; while count *Saxe* deprived them of their subsistence. This obliged prince *Charles* to repass the *Maeze*, by which *Namur*, after a vigorous siege, fell into the hands of the *French*. The allied army now finding their communication with *Maastricht* open, encamped near that place, where they were joined by Sir *John Ligonier*, with some battalions of *British* and *Bavarians*. Prince *Charles* wanted to force marshal *Saxe* to a battle, and repassed the *Maeze*; but finding the *French* too advantageously encamped at *Tongres*, he marched back to *Maastricht*. *Saxe*, being reinforced, attacked and beat the confederates at *Roucoux*, and soon after both armies took up their winter-quarters, the allies in the duchies of *Limburgh* and *Luxemburgh*, and the *French* in their conquests. In the winter, count *Brown*, an *Austrian* general, passed the *Var*, and penetrated into *Provence*, where he besieged *Antibes*, being seconded by the *British* squadron; but the *French*, under marshal *Belleisle*, had made so good dispositions, that *Brown* was obliged to repass the *Var* with some loss. A body of *British* troops, under general *Sinclair*, made an attempt upon *Port l'Orient*, in *Brittany*, with the like success; but his failure was owing to a most shameful mismanagement. In the mean while, the *British* squadrons remained either inactive in *America*, or carried on only a privateering war, to the advantage of private persons only. In the winter of the year 1746, the duke of *Cumberland* and the States-General concerted the operations of the following campaign, which they intended should be vigorous, if not decisive, as the demands of the *French*, in a congress that was held at *Breda*, were too insolent to be complied with, and the court of *Versailles* had rejected all applications of the *Dutch* for peace. In *February*, his royal highness assembled his army, and took post, with the *English*, *Hanoverians*, and *Hessians*, at the village of *Tilberg*; while the prince of *Waldeck*, with the *Dutch*, encamped at *Breda*, and the marshal *Bathiani*, with the *Germans*, in the neighbourhood of *Venlo*. The *French* king had now created count *Saxe* marshal-general of *France*, and his armies continuing quiet in their cantonments, the allied army had no object to act against. Though it consisted of 120,000 men, it remained inactive, and suffered more by

Progress of  
the French  
in Dutch  
Flanders.

the inclemency of the weather, and scarcity of provisions, than it could have done by the sword of an enemy. In April, Saxe took the field, and detached count *Lowendahl*, with 27,000 men, to invade *Dutch Flanders*, where he took the town and fortress of *Sluys*, and many other places; some of which were shamefully given up, and others bravely, though ineffectually, defended by *British* troops.

*LOWENDAHL* wanted to pursue his good fortune, and prepared flat-bottom boats for a descent into *Zealand*. This alarmed the common people of *Holland* so much, that, in a fit of despair, they chose the prince of *Orange* their stadtholder, and orders were issued to act offensively against the *French*. The duke of *Cumberland* was then encamped between the two *Neths*, so as to cover both *Maastricht* and *Bergen-op-zoom*; and Saxe made dispositions for a general engagement, and, at the same time, for besieging *Maastricht*. All this he did in the most masterly manner, and

attacked the confederates at the village of *La Feldt*. Here the *French* availed themselves of their superiority; but they must have been entirely defeated, had not the cowardice of the *Dutch*, as usual, left them in possession of the field, by giving them an opportunity of surrounding the duke of *Cumberland*, who owed his deliverance to general Sir *John Ligonier*, at the expence of his own liberty, for he was taken prisoner by a *French* carabineer. After this action, the confederates passed the *Maese*, and the *French* king, who had joined his army, remained in the neighbourhood of *Tongres*, while marshal Saxe, after perplexing the allies by his marches and countermarches, detached count *Lowendahl*, with 36,000 men, to besiege *Bergen-op-zoom*, the strongest fortress of the *Dutch Brabant*. On the 12th of July, the *French* summoned the governor to surrender; but this summons being disregarded, a siege followed, which was the most bloody and important of any in the war. After all, the *French* took the place, almost without resistance; and this important conquest procured to *Lowendahl* the rank of a marshal of *France*: after which the *French* king returned in triumph to *Versailles*.

In the mean while, the *French* had the glory of assisting and protecting the *Genoise* in the recovery of their liberty from the tyranny of the *Austrians*; but marshal *Belleisle* and his brother, who was killed, were unfortunate in attempting to penetrate into the king of *Sardinia's* dominions by the pass of *Exilles*; nor was the *French* marine more fortunate in their attempt to retrieve or revenge the losses they had suffered in *America*: and the ruin of their fleet was

completed by the admirals *Anson* and *Warren*; admiral *Hawke*, about the same time, having destroyed another *French* fleet that was bound for the *West-Indies*. Those disagreeable events rendered the *French* king sufficiently tired of the war. He saw the trade of his people almost annihilated by the *British* fleet and privateers; his finances were exhausted; the *Dutch* were united against him under a stadtholder, and *Germany* under an *Austrian* emperor; while the commerce of *Great Britain*, notwithstanding the war, never had been known to be in so flourishing a condition. His Most Christian majesty having dropt some hints favourable for peace to his prisoner, Sir *John Ligonier*, a negotiation was opened at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, while the *French* were investing *Maastricht*, which they took. After some besitation, and various operations, both in the field and the cabinet, a definitive treaty was concluded on the footing of a general restitution of the conquests made by the *French* during the war. As to the other conditions in this treaty, the reader may find them in the preceding parts of this history. The only peculiar stipulation was, that *France* had the glory to oblige the court of *Great Britain* to send to her court two noble hostages for the performance of the articles. Very little occurs during the interval between the peace of *Aix-la-Chapelle* and the commencement of a new war in 1756, relating to the history of *France*, that are worthy the attention of the reader, excepting the internal policy of her government. A scheme of œconomy was laid down and executed; but the quarrels between the king and his parliaments little less than threatened a civil war.

*Interior  
affairs of  
France.*

DISPUTES had subsisted for some time between the *French* clergy and parliaments, and between both and the king, which, according to the genius of that nation, went no farther than political altercations, confined to prate and paper. The king, at last, ordered the parliament to suspend all proceedings against such of the clergy as had refused to give the sacraments to dying persons who had refused to subscribe the bull *Unigenitus*; and this prohibition led the parliaments into a disquisition of their own powers, which, they pretended, obliged them to oppose the papal power, and to vindicate the rights of the regale, which the king, in fact, had given up. The archbishop of *Paris*, a violent prelate, took part with the clergy, or rather the *Jesuits*. The parliament of *Paris* ordered some clergymen who had refused the sacraments to be apprehended; the latter justified themselves under the orders of the archbishop  
of

of *Paris*, who treated the parliaments authority with the utmost contempt, and this produced remonstrances to the king. At first he despised them, but they raised their own importance in proportion as he did his prerogative, and refused even to register his letters-patent upon the subject of their disputes. The king repeated his orders for that purpose: they were again disobeyed; and the chambers refused to proceed upon any business, or even to pay any obedience to the king's arrests, till they had right done them with regard to their privileges. The king, upon this, by *lettres de cachet*, banished all the members except those of the great-chamber, who, proving as intractable as their fellows, were banished likewise, amidst the acclamations of their countrymen, who applauded their firmness. The members of the parliament of *Rouen* imitated, and even exceeded, those of *Paris*, for they issued a warrant to apprehend the bishop of *Evreux*, who, when summoned, had refused to appear before their tribunal. The king's council of state dissolved their decrees; but they answered him by a bold memorial, which was despised by the ministry. The parliament ordered a deputation to attend the king; but all the satisfaction they received was an order to register an injunction not to meddle in the affair of the sacraments; and, when they returned to debate upon this order, one of their number, who had spoken too freely, was arrested and carried prisoner to *Dourlens*. All the known tribunals of justice in *France* were, by this time, annihilated, and the subjects had no other resort but the king's authority, which was backed by a standing army. He endeavoured to repair the deficiency by the establishment of what he called a Royal-Chamber for determining all matters civil and criminal. The constitution of this chamber not having been registered by the parliament, the ministry applied to the inferior court of the *Chatelet*, which refused to register it. Orders were issued to apprehend two of its members, one of whom was arrested, and the other absconded, and the royal officers having entered it in the register, the lieutenant-civil appeared in their court; upon which the counsellors retired, after leaving an arret, in the nature of a protest, to account for that proceeding.

In the mean while, the commissaries appointed by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle* met at *Paris*, and the French pretended to dispute the most indubitable rights of the *British* in *America*. They went so far as to order their officers there to dislodge the *English* from a post within the limits of the government of *Virginia*, and made it no longer a secret

A new  
war.

that they intended to exclude the *British* subjects from all commerce with the *Indians* to the westward of the *Alleghany* mountains ; they built a strong fort, called *duquesne*, on the forks of the river *Monongahela* ; and thus they commanded the entrance into all the country, into the rivers *Ohio* and *Mississippi*. This was too important an encroachment for the *British* nation to digest, as the *French* thereby pretended to form a frontier of above 1500 miles in length, beyond which the *English* could not trade with the *Indians*, and they must, in a very short time, have been confined to the sea-coast, and to traffic only among themselves. The dispute thus became critical, and the *French*, who had foreseen it, had prepared a marine to back their pretensions. They accordingly fitted out some ships, and the *English*, towards the latter end of *April* 1755, equipped likewise a squadron, the command of which was afterwards given to admiral *Boscawen*, with orders to prevent the *French* fleet that had been sent to *America* from entering the river *St. Laurence*. This vigorous resolution entirely disconcerted the court of *Versailles*, which had depended upon the tameness of the *British* government on account of their king's *German* dominions, which, in case of a rupture, lay open to the *French* arms.

*BOSCAWEN* executed his commands bravely, but imperfectly. He took a proper station off *Cape Race*, the southernmost point of *Newfoundland*, and there waited for the *French* fleet commanded by *Monf. Bois de la Mothe*. When it arrived at *Boscawen's* station, only two of their ships, the *Alcide* of sixty-four guns, and the *Lys*, which had been pierced for sixty-four likewise, fell into the hands of the *English*, the rest escaping, by favour of a fog, to the straits of *Belleisle*, by which they entered the river *St. Laurence*. Upon the news of this action, his Most Christian majesty recalled his ambassador from *London*, and his *Britannic* majesty ordered general reprisals to be issued for taking all *French* ships wherever they could be found, a measure that could be justified only by the prior and injurious hostilities committed by the *French* in *America*. Those reprisals ruined the *French* trade, and in a few weeks above 15,000 of their sailors were prisoners in *England*, which number was doubled in the course of the war. This spirited conduct of the *English* rendered *France*, from being the terror, the object of contempt all over *Europe* ; so that the king was at last obliged to side with his parliaments against the clergy, though the latter had presented him with the enormous sum of sixteen millions of livres.

THE

THE *British* court supported their vigorous measures by *disadvan-* ordering the colonels *Laurence* and *Monckton* to attack the *tageous* to *French* forts, which they had built upon the isthmus that *the* divides *Nova-Scotia* from what the *French* pretended to be *French*. *Acadia*. This service was bravely performed, and *Beaufour*, with all their forts there, were taken, to the amazement of all *Europe*, who were now convinced of the emptiness of the *French* boasts against *Great Britain*. In the mean while, the court of *England* ordered general *Braddock*, with about 1500 regular troops, to *America*, where he was to have attacked fort *du Quesne*. He was an officer no way fitted for such a command, and, as the reader may see in the preceding parts of this work, he was defeated and killed in his march thither. Another expedition, at the same time, was planned against the *French* fort of *Crown Point*, built on the frontiers of *New-York*, the command of which was given to general *Johnson*, who entirely defeated the *French* army, and made its general, *Dieskau*, prisoner; but the season being far advanced, the expedition, for that year, came to nothing. The *French* being thus lessened in their reputation, began, at last, to exert themselves. They fitted out a fleet, and sent an army of 11,000 men, under the duke *de Richelieu*, to reduce fort *St. Philip* in *Minorca*, which, to the shame of the *English* arms, they accordingly did, and, on the return of their fleet, under *Galissoniere*, *Byng*, the *English* admiral, attacked it; but the event of the engagement being doubtful, *Byng*, upon his return to *England*, was shot, pursuant to a sentence of a court-martial. War being soon after declared between *France* and *Great Britain*, the *French* resolved to execute their favourite scheme of attacking his *Britannic* majesty's dominions in *Germany*. They tempted him to renounce the rights of his crown and people in *America*, by offering him a neutrality for *Hanover*; but he disdained it, and, in *January* 1756, he entered into an alliance with the king of *Prussia*, which produced a counter, but an unnatural, alliance between the houses of *Bourbon* and *Austria*. The *French*, in consequence of this alliance, sent an army of 80,000 men, under marshal *d'Etrees*, across the *Rhine*, with orders to invade the *Prussian* dominions, in quality of allies to the empress queen, but, in reality, to fall upon *Hanover*, while another army of 25,000 men, under the prince *de Soubise*, took possession of *Cleves*, *Meurs*, and *Guelldres*. *D'Etrees* was opposed by an army of observation, as it was called, under the duke of *Cumberland*, who, notwithstanding his inferiority in numbers, threw great obstacles to the *French*

Battle of  
Haften-  
beck.

in their march; but they were so well provided, and so numerous, that all difficulties gave way to them, and they passed the *Wefer*. His royal highness was in no condition to hazard a battle, and retired till he came to *Haftenbeck*, within a few miles of *Hamelen*, where he made a stand. A battle ensued, in which *D'Etrees* got the better, and the duke was obliged to retire towards *Stade*. While *D'Etrees* was thus at the summit of glory, the duke *de Richelieu*, who had reduced *Minorca*, undermined him, by means of the *French* king's favourite mistress, and got the command of his army, upon which he entered with vast advantages.

Conven-  
tion of  
Closter-  
seven.

His royal highness in vain called upon the regency of *Hanover* to support him; but he saw them more intent upon finding the means of protecting themselves from the fury of the *French*, than resenting their sovereign's wrongs. The duke of *Cumberland* was obliged to give way to their pusillanimity, and to sign a capitulation at *Closterseven*, which disarmed 28,000 *Hanoverians*, and left the *French* at liberty to proceed in their enterprize against the king of *Prussia*. In the mean while, the court of *England* planned an expedition against *Rochfort*, which, through the mismanagement of its conductors, most scandalously miscarried. *Soubise* all this while was pressing upon his *Prussian* majesty, who was now reduced so low, that he was given over for lost by all *Europe*; but he recovered himself by an amazing victory which he obtained over the *French* at *Rosbach*. This victory re-animated the *Hanoverians* against the *French*, who had most unjustly violated every article of the *Closterseven* convention, and resuming their arms under prince *Ferdinand* of *Brunswick*, they drove the *French* out of their country. Their retreat from *Hanover* was shameful for themselves, and the more so, as they had behaved with the greatest rapaciousness and injustice in that electorate; though history must do the justice to the duke *de Randon*, who was appointed governor of the city of *Hanover*, to acknowledge, that he acted with moderation and humanity, and did every thing in his power to alleviate the distresses of the *Hanoverians*.

Operati-  
tions in  
America,

In *America*, preparations were made for an expedition against *Louisburgh*, which had been restored to the *French* by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*; but by the misconduct of the *English*, the expedition was postponed, and a violent storm drove their fleet from that coast. *Oswego*, an *English* fort of the greatest importance, and fort *William-Henry* fell into the hands of the *French*, by which they remained en-  
tirely



tirely masters of all the lakes, and of the five nations of *Indians*, who till then had been remarkably attached to the *English* interest. To counterbalance those losses in one part of the globe, the *English* were victorious in another; for the *French* interest in the *East Indies* was entirely ruined by admiral *Watson* and colonel *Clive*. After the shameful expulsion of the *French* out of *Hanover*, their army, one of the finest that had ever been sent from *France* into *Germany*, repassed the *Rhine*, the object rather of contempt and compassion than of terror; but a detachment remained under the count *de Clermont* at *Wesel*.

So many disgraces and disasters having attended the *French* and *German*s, at last convinced their king and nation, that the many management of their affairs was in weak, or wicked hands, and the marshal duke *de Belleisle*, with the approbation of all *France*, was placed at the head of the military department. Though he had not been remarkably fortunate as a general, the *French* had an opinion of his genius and moderation, and he immediately applied himself to repair the disgraces which his nation had suffered in *Germany*. But this, in the beginning of the year 1758, exhausted, in a manner, all the resources of *France* both by sea and land, while the *English* every day seemed to encrease in strength and spirit. In the beginning of *June*, prince *Ferdinand*, the *Hanoverian*, and then, indeed, the *British*, general, passed the *Rhine* in pursuit of the *French* army, which, though 50,000 men strong, was so far from opposing him, that they retired back as far as *Nuys*; but, after some consultation, they advanced towards *Crevelt* near the *Hanoverian* army. A most desperate battle followed, in which the *French* were defeated; but, by the help of their cavalry, which protected their foot, they made a tolerable retreat to *Nuys*. In this battle, the count *de Gisors*, eldest son to the marshal count *de Belleisle*, and the glory of the *French* nobility, was killed in the 25th year of his age. The *French*, after their defeat, being on the frontiers of their own country, were soon recruited, and in a condition to reinforce their army on the *Rhine* under the prince *de Soubise*, who, on the 23d of *July*, defeated the *Hessians*, by which the *French* came to be possessed of the *Weser*.

It was now perceived that prince *Ferdinand's* pursuit of the *French* to the frontiers of their own country, was ill-judged; and there was some danger, lest the *British* troops, which had landed in *Germany*, and were then on their march under the duke of *Marlborough*, should be intercepted. Prince *Ferdinand* was enclosed between the *Rhine* and the

The British troops join prince Ferdinand.

*French* army, which he was in no condition to attack ; and *Chevert*, the *French* general, taking advantage of the swell of the *Rhine*, made an attempt upon the *Hanoverian* general, *Imhoff*, in which being unsuccessful, prince *Ferdinand* became again in a condition to retrieve his mistake. This action happened on the 5th of *August*, and *Imhoff* after that quitted his post, passed the *Rhine*, and joined the *British* troops under the duke of *Marlbrough*. In the mean while, prince *Ferdinand* reduced the important city of *Dusseldorp*, by which his passage over the *Rhine* was secured, and his force upon the *Rhine* multiplied. Some days were spent in marches and countermarches ; but both parties had their reasons for avoiding an action. Prince *Ferdinand* had flattered himself that the *Hessian* general, the prince of *Ysenburgh*, would have been a match for prince *Soubise*, till, at the head of the allies, he could have passed the *Maese*, and carried the war into the enemy's country ; and with this view all his dilatory motions had been made. Had this plan succeeded, the prince of *Soubise* must, probably, have come to the assistance of *Contades*, the *French* general, who now commanded in the room of count *Clermont* ; but his expectations were defeated. The duke de *Broglie* formed a junction with the prince of *Soubise*, attacked *Ysenburgh* with a superior force, and defeated him on the 23d of *July*, near *Sangerhausen* ; by which the *French* preserved the possession of the *Wefer*, and consequently commanded all that part of *Westphalia*. Prince *Ferdinand* had now only two measures to take, one was to fight the *French*, the other to repass the *Rhine*. This last was attended with difficulties, on account of the prodigious rains that had fallen, and of the *French* being in possession of *Wachtendonck*, a place of importance on the left of the allies. This place was attacked with amazing intrepidity by the hereditary prince of *Brunswick*, who plunged into the river, and being seconded by his grenadiers, drove the *French* from the post ; by which the latter was so much daunted, that prince *Ferdinand*, without farther loss, on the 9th and 10th of *August*, effected his passage, at a place called *Griet-huyster*.

The English insult the coast of France.

THOUGH, in reality, the *French* nation suffered greatly, nor were the allies much benefited by those actions and motions, yet the *French* themselves were sensible, that neither their generals, nor soldiers, were comparable to those of the allies ; nor did *Broglie* and *Soubise* venture to pursue the blow they had given to *Ysenburgh*, who, after his defeat, had taken up his camp in a strong ground. While those operations were passing in *Germany*, the *English* fleet in-

invaded *France*, and burnt the *French* shipping at *St. Malo's*. It then moved towards *Cherburgh*, but were obliged by the weather to return to *England*. On the first of *August*, the fleet under commodore *Howe*, with the transports, again set sail for *Cherburgh*. They landed with scarce any opposition from the *French*, who most shamefully suffered them to enter the town, where most immense sums had been laid out by the *French* government in fortifying it, and making its harbour one of the strongest in *Europe*. The work of all this labour and expence was now totally destroyed by the *English*, who found far more difficulty in demolishing than in conquering the place. This destruction being accomplished, all the ships in the harbour were burnt, and hostages taken for the payment of the contribution laid on the town, upon which the army, after having remained for ten days unmolested in *France*, re-embarked on the 16th, carrying with it all the brass cannon and mortars taken at *Cherburgh*. The *English* troops again landed in the bay of *St. Lunar*, in the neighbourhood of *St. Malo*; but they found it impracticable to make any impression upon that place, and while they remained there, the commodore found himself obliged, from the danger of the coast, to move up to the bay of *St. Cas*, about three leagues to the westward. The army, without resolving upon any operation, marched to the village of *Man-tignon*, being skirted all the way by *French* parties, who never durst stand an engagement; and the *English* troops pushed forward to the bay of *St. Cas*. By this time, as the *English* might easily have foreseen, the duke *D'Aguillon*, governor of *Brittany*, was within six miles of the *English* army, at the head of twelve battalions, and six squadrons of regulars, besides two regiments of militia. The *English* still pushed on towards *St. Cas*, where they all embarked but the last division, which consisted of the grenadiers of the army, and the first regiment of guards. These were attacked by the *French*, and though they made a most gallant resistance, about 600 of them were killed, and 400 taken prisoners, not being able to reach the boats for their embarkation.

are defeat-  
ed at *St.*  
*Cas*.

THIS small advantage elevated the *French* nation beyond measure, but the decisive advantages the *English* obtained in *America*, by their taking *Louisburgh* a second time, soon humbled them. In this place the garrison, consisting with the irregulars and seamen, of 5637 men, were made prisoners of war, and their ships in the harbour destroyed, to the irretrievable loss of the *French* trade in *America*. The defeat of the *English*, in their attempt, upon *Ticonderoga*, on the 8th of *July* this year, did not make them amends for the loss of

*Louis-*

**Louis-***Louisburgh* ; and, on the 27th of *August*, they lost fort *Fron-*  
*tenac*, with nine armed sloops, and all the magazines which  
 they had amassed for the support of their garrisons to the  
**English ;** southward. General *Forbes*, on the 25th of *November*, the  
 same year, reduced fort *du Quesne*, now called *Pittsburgh*,  
 the object of general *Braddock's* unfortunate expedition, and  
 thereby gave the third fatal blow to the *French* dominion in  
*America*. It would far exceed the bounds we are obliged to  
 allot to this sequel of our history to particularise every suc-  
 cess of the *English* during this year, which, among other glo-  
 ries, was signalized by the reduction of *Senegal* and *Gorée*, in  
*Africa*, places thought inaccessible to the *English* arms, and  
 before entirely in possession of the *French*. Though the *Eng-*  
*lish* had lost *Minorca*, they remained victorious in the *Medi-*  
*terranean*, where they continued to ruin the *French* marine.

as is Gua-  
daloupe.

Campaign  
in Ger-  
many.

TOWARDS the end of this year, the *English* fitted out a  
 squadron of nine ships of the line, with sixty transports,  
 containing six regiments of foot, for the conquest of *Mar-*  
*tinico*. General *Hopson* commanded the land-forces, and the  
 command of the sea was given to commodore *Moore*, then  
 in the *West-Indies*. After a slight attempt upon *Martinica*,  
 the conquest of that island was judged to be impracticable ;  
 but the *English* atchieved a more important conquest, that  
 of *Guadaloupe*, which was followed by the reduction of all  
 the *French* *Leeward-Islands*. While the *English* were thus  
 victorious in *America*, the *French* obtained some advantages  
 in *Germany*. They most perfidiously seized *Frankfort*, which  
 secured to them the course of the *Maine* and the *Rhine*, and  
 gave them other important advantages. Prince *Ferdinand*  
 drew his troops out of their winter-quarters to dislodge them ;  
 but the duke *de Broglie* took up an advantageous post near  
*Bergen*, where he repulsed the allies under prince *Ferdinand*,  
 who was obliged to retreat. The consequence of this was,  
 that *Ritberg* was surprised, *Lipstadt* blockaded, and *Minden*  
 taken by assault, with a garrison of 1500 men who were  
 made prisoners ; immense magazines at the same time falling  
 into the hands of *French*. On the 25th of *July*, *d'Armen-*  
*tieres*, one of their generals, took *Munster*, in which was a  
 garrison of 4000 men ; and, from this train of irresistible suc-  
 cesses, the *French* thought themselves so sure of the conquest  
 of *Hanover*, that their ministry gave no attention to any ob-  
 ject relating to the war, but the securing their conquests by  
 the most inhuman methods, which were prescribed by the  
 duke *de Belleisle* to the marshal *Contades*, who had the com-  
 mand of the *French* army in *Germany*. He was a young offi-  
 cer, and though spirited, he was unequal to the command

to which he was preferred by the partiality of *Belleſſe* in his favour. All *Europe* now looked upon *Hanover* as loſt, and the moſt valuable effects and papers in the electoral palaces were tranſported to *Stade*. Nothing but a battle could have preſerved that electorate from ruin. The *French* lay near *Minden*, in a camp ſo ſtrong, that it could not be attacked with any probability of ſucceſs. On the 28th of *July*, the hereditary prince was detached with 6000 men to cut off the enemy's communication with *Paderborn*.

On the 29th, prince *Ferdinand* advanced from his camp *French* on the *Weſer*, but left a body of troops under *Wangenheim*, defeated at on the borders of that river. The *French* imagined, that by *Minden*, this diſjointed ſtate of the allied army, it would be eaſy for them to defeat *Wangenheim*, and to get between the prince and the *Weſer*; the great object they had all along aimed at. With this idea, they left their advantageous camp, but were aſtoniſhed, after paſſing the morafs, and mounting an eminence, when they found that the prince, inſtead of being, as they imagined, at *Hillen*, had, in the night time marched back, and taken up the very ground, which he foreſaw the *French* would endeavour to paſs. The duke *de Broglio* led the attack upon *Wangenheim's* diviſion, with a viſible aſſurance of ſucceſs; for his center was entirely compoſed of horſe, who attacked ſix *English* regiments, particularly thoſe of *Waldegrave* and *Kingsley*, ſupported by two battalions of *Hanoverian* guards, who ſuſtained the whole ſhock of the battle, and to the amazement of the *German* general himſelf, obtained a compleat victory by the help of the artillery, which was well ſerved by the *English* officers. The *French* loſt about 7000 men, and the *English* about 1200; but the victory of the latter muſt have been more deciſive, had not the general of the *British* cavalry miſunderſtood the prince's orders, and thereby loſt the opportunity of engaging and ſupporting the purſuit. In ſhort, this battle was as glorious to the *English*, as thoſe of *Creſſy* and *Agincourt* had been to their anceſtors. Juſt before the iſſue of the day was decided, *Con- tades* received an account that the duke *de Briſac* had been entirely routed by the hereditary prince. This obliged *Con- tades*, who, with all his chief officers, loſt their equipages, to fly with the utmoſt diſorder to *Minden*, which ſurrendered the next day, while the *French* continued their flight over the *Weſer*, and thereby loſt all their advantageous poſts upon that river.

PRINCE *Ferdinand* purſued without being able to overtake purſued by them, but defeated them in every poſt where they made a prince *Fer- dinand*; and on the 11th of *September*, *Marpurg* was ſur-

rendered with a garrison of between 8 and 900 men, who were made prisoners of war. The resistance made by this inconsiderable place, stopped the allies in their pursuit of the *French* towards *Cassel*; and the amazing victory at *Minden* did no more than just save the conquerors from ruin, as no care was taken to improve it. *D'Armentieres* obliged the *Hanoverian* general *Imhoff*, to raise the siege of *Munster*, and *Contades* having collected his vanquished army, was still an over-match in numbers for the allies. *Contades* and *Broglia* recriminated upon each other. The public and their court took the part of the latter; but both of them were so much despised by the troops they commanded, that old marshal *D'Etrees* was sent by the *French* king to moderate between them, to prevent matters from coming to an extremity; which, to his glory he did, though with the mortification of being obliged to serve under them.

and de-  
feated by  
sea.

THE operations of this year by sea were still more fatal than those by land had been to the *French*. To repair their losses in *America* and *Germany*, they meditated a descent upon the *British* dominions with three squadrons. The smallest, consisting of three frigates, was commanded by one *Thurot*, a marine free-booter, who, after a variety of adventures, landed in *Ireland*, where he did little more than alarm the people of *Carrickfergus*; and putting to sea again, he was met by three *British* frigates of a force inferior to his own, and after a severe encounter he was killed, and his ships led in triumph by the *English* commanders to the *Isle of Man*. The duke d'*Aguillon* was to have headed another invasion, which was thought to have been intended against *Ireland*, while the grand fleet, which was designed against *England*, was to have been commanded by marshal *Conflans*. The ruin of the latter fleet by admiral *Hawke*, on the 20th of *November*, put an end to all those ambitious schemes; and admiral *Boscawen* was equally fortunate at *Cape Lagos*, where he defeated the *Toulon* fleet, under *M. de la Clue*, who, when he came on shore, died of his wounds.

Conquest of  
Quebec  
by the  
English.

THE *French* government could not stand so many repeated shocks, and partly through necessity, but more through policy, they authentically acknowledged themselves to be bankrupt. The *French* king retrenched the expence of his house to those of a private gentleman. He converted his plate into money, and he invited all his subjects who valued the safety of their country to do the same. This was of infinite service to his affairs. It roused a spirit of generous compassion in the breasts of his subjects, and he soon found resources for continuing the war; the operations of which had been unaccountably

accountably relaxed, through the opinion the allies had of the inability of the *French*. Let us now turn our eyes to *America*, where the *French* were commanded by *Moncalm*, a general of abilities and experience, and had been often successful against the *English*, particularly in the reduction of *Oswego*. The conquest of *Quebec* was committed to general *Wolfe*, and that of the rest of *Canada* to general *Amberst*. *Wolfe* was not at the head of above 7000 men, including provincials, for this arduous undertaking. *Moncalm's* army was far more numerous, and had the advantage of a situation which art and nature seemed to conspire to render inaccessible. The *English* admiral was *Saunders*; but both he and *Wolfe* failed in their attempts to make a landing good; and *Wolfe* was despairing of the expedition, when, by a lucky feint, a landing was effected, but under such disadvantages, that the *English* were obliged to drag their heavy artillery up the steep hill, which they mounted. *Moncalm* was then forced to fight; his army was defeated, and himself killed, as was the brave general *Wolfe* likewise; and the *English* took *Quebec*, which they are now in possession of, notwithstanding a vigorous effort made by the *French* a few weeks after to retake it. This conquest was followed by the reduction of all *Canada* by general *Amberst*; and Sir *William Johnson* took *Niagara*.

NOTWITHSTANDING the victory of *Minden*, the *French* *Inactivity of the two armies.* affairs in *Germany* were unaccountably bettered, in the beginning of the year 1760, partly, through the indolence of the allies, and partly, through the support of the *French* nation. No considerable advantage had resulted from the victory at *Minden*, and the winter had been spent in bloody, indecisive skirmishes in the field, and ineffectual proposals for peace in the cabinet. The allies, under prince *Ferdinand*, repassed the *Rhine*, and the *Lippe*, to the surprize of the public, thereby abandoning *Hesse*, and with difficulty covering *Hanover*. Large reinforcements were sent from *England* to join him; so that it was computed 25,000 *British* soldiers served in his army. *Broglio* had, by this time, received the baton of a marshal of *France*, and his army was augmented to near 100,000 effective men; while count *de St. Germain*, a general of genius and merit, commanded a separate body of 30,000 men upon the *Rhine*. Those vast armies were far better supplied than that of the allies, who were unable to undertake any thing of importance. All that was done was by the hereditary prince of *Brunswick*, who drove the *French* out of *Fulda*, and laid it under contribution; and a few skirmishes, of no moment, passed between the *French* and

and the *Hanoverian* general, *Sporken*. Had the *French*, on this occasion, kept to their original plan of acting in separate bodies, *St. Germain* upon the *Weser*, and *Broglie* in *Hesse*, the allied army, probably, must have been ruined. But *Broglie*, jealous of *St. Germain's* success, ordered him to join the main army; for which *St. Germain*, who was *Broglie's* senior, afterwards quitted his command in disgust. The *French*, however, took *Marburgh* and *Dillenburgh*. In the mean while, *June* the 10th, *Broglie* having pushed forward a strong detachment by the way of *Westphalia*, while he himself marched by *Hesse*; both bodies joined at a place called *Corbach*.

Successes of  
the French.

THE hereditary prince, not knowing of this junction, and imagining he had not above 10 or 12,000 men to deal with, attacked the whole, was defeated and wounded, but carried off by the intrepidity of the *British* cavalry. He repaired this miscarriage, by surprising and defeating *Glaubitz*, a *French* general at *Ermsdorf*; and on this occasion, no fewer than 177 officers, and 2482 private men were made prisoners. After this, prince *Ferdinand* moved his army from *Saxenhausen* to *Kalle*, near *Cassel*, and defeated the *French*, under the chevalier *de Muy*, at *Warburgh*. This victory cost the allies dear, for the other two divisions of the *French* army made themselves masters of *Hesse*, while the general of the allies remained inactive upon the *Dymel* for a whole month. All that was done at this time, was his surprising the town of *Zierenburgh*, where 2000 *French* lay. He was, however, unable to keep the place. This brisk action somewhat quickened the operations of the two armies. *Bulow*, the *Hanoverian* general, took *Marpurg*, but was defeated by *Stainville*, the *French* general, and must have been destroyed, had he not been supported by the hereditary prince. *Wangenheim* passed the *Weser*, but, after receiving a severe check, was obliged to repass it. The hereditary prince, with incredible expedition, marched with an army of twenty battalions and ten squadrons towards the *Rhine*, which he passed, and after taking *Cleves*, he besieged *Wesel*, but through the inclemency of the weather, and the approach of the *French* army under *M. de Castres*, the siege was raised. The *French* had chosen a camp with the convent of *Campen* in their front; and where the hereditary prince, attempting to surprize them, was defeated with considerable loss, especially of the *English*, about 1200 of his army being killed, and 500 made prisoners. This defeat obliged the hereditary prince to repass the *Rhine*; and soon after, both armies drew towards winter-quarters without any action of consequence following.

THE



THE war between *France* and *England* in *Germany* being thus *Negotiated* equally ruinous and ineffectual, *France* who had been sufficiently humbled thro' all other parts of the globe, fought to make peace, and *Augsburgh* was pitched upon by all parties as the scene of negotiation. It not being thought proper to carry the *American* territorial disputes before a congress in *Germany*, *M. Buffy* was named by the *French* court to repair to *London*, where he was to treat with the *English* ministry, as *Mr. Stanley* was with the *French* at *Paris*. The *French* had no equivalent to oppose to the successes of the *British* arms in all parts of the globe, excepting *Germany*, but the evacuation of *Hesse*; and, as we have seen in the history of *Spain*, *Buffy's* negotiation broke off upon his being so imprudent as to propose the mediation of his Catholic majesty between his court and that of *London*. The *French*, at this time, viz. in the beginning of the year 1761, had a manifest superiority over the allies in *Germany*, which creating great uneasiness in *England*, prince *Ferdinand* resolved to exert his utmost to dislodge them out of *Hesse*. They were possessed of *Göttingen* and *Wesel*, where they had strong garrisons and large magazines, and their situation in *Hesse* was such, that they threatened to enclose the allies. Prince *Ferdinand*, on the 9th of *February*, assembled his army, and penetrated by three quarters into *Hesse* and *Thuringia*. This amazing attempt threw the *French* into such consternation, that they appeared enervated and fled on all sides, leaving *Göttingen* and *Cassel* at their backs, where they had a large body of men. After this, the hereditary prince attempted to surprize *Fritzlar*, but the garrison made so brave a defence, that he was obliged to draw off with considerable loss; but soon after the place capitulated, and the marquis of *Granby* reduced all the forts and castles in the neighbourhood. The *French* army continued to retire, and their magazines fell into the hands of the allies, an acquisition, which, at that time, stood them in more stead than conquest itself. *Broglio* being thus driven out of *Hesse*, prince *Ferdinand* made dispositions for besieging *Cassel*. The season of the year made this attempt, at that juncture impracticable, though the *Hanoverians* under general *Sporken*, had driven the *French* to *Bamburg*. *Marpurg* and *Ziegenhagen* were blockaded; but, upon the whole, the allies gained little more than mere subsistence by this impetuous incursion. By their pushing forward, they left a vast tract of territory behind them, which was garrisoned by the enemy, and *Broglio* lay before them with a superior army. The count *de Vaux*, the *French* governor of *Göttingen*, took the town of *Duderstadt*, and forced *Sporken* to fall back upon prince

prince *Ferdinand's* army. *Broglie* collected his strength, and attacking the hereditary prince near *Grunberg*, he routed the advanced part of the allied army, consisting of *Hessians*, *Hanoverians*, and *Brunswickers*, and took 2000 prisoners. The siege of *Cassel* upon this was abandoned by the allies, after the trenches had been open twenty-seven days; and the blockade of *Ziegenhagen* was broken up, prince *Ferdinand* himself being obliged to fall back upon the *Dymel*, and to repossess his former quarters.

*Hereditary  
prince de-  
seated.*

THOUGH the irruption of prince *Ferdinand* into *Hesse* carried with it abundance of eclat, yet it was of no solid advantage to the allies, or of prejudice to the *French*. Nothing would now satisfy the government of *England* less than the bringing *France* to the most humiliating state. They equipped a most expensive fleet for the conquest of the barren, sandy, island of *Belleisle*, only for having the glory of conquering a spot that was under the eye and protection of the *French* monarchy. *Commodore Keppel* had the command of the sea, and general *Hodgson* of the land forces. On the 25th of *April*, their landing, after great loss and difficulty, was made good; and *Palais*, the principal place in the island, capitulated on the 7th of *June*. A war so glorious, but so un-availing to *England*, began now to be considered as a splendid calamity; and the most thinking part of both nations were in their private sentiments for peace. A negotiation had been set on foot at *Augsburgh*; but, from the incompatible claims of the various parties, with little prospect of success. It was imagined, that when once the difference between the *Spanish* and *British* courts were settled, *Europe* would have peace, and a negotiation was set on foot. *Mr. Buffy* was sent to *London*, as *Mr. Stanley* was to *Paris*. The former negotiated for the duke de *Choiseul*, the first minister of *France*, and the only man of true political genius that had appeared there for a century before. The latter acted under the auspices of *Mr. Pitt*, the popular minister of *Great Britain*. We have, in the sequel of our history of *Spain*, given an account of this negotiation, and its concomitant circumstances; it is therefore sufficient here to say, that a definitive treaty was signed at *Paris*, on the 10th of *February*, 1763; by which peace was once more restored to *Europe*.

*Progress of  
the war.*

WE are obliged, though with reluctance, here to resume the operations of a war, in which *England* and *France* bore the greatest share, but had the least concern. During the dependence of the negotiation for peace, each party imagined that the more vigorously they carried on war, they would obtain the more advantageous terms. The allies, by this time,

time, had, with no great credit to the capacity of their general, been obliged to repass the *Dymel*; and a manifest superiority appeared on the side of *France*, though the month of *June* was far advanced before *Broglie* could assemble his army, so as to pursue the advantage he had obtained. *Sporcken* was posted on the front of the allies, but could not prevent the *French* from passing the *Dymel*, for he was defeated with very considerable loss. Prince *Ferdinand* was obliged to fall back upon the *Lippe*, and to take post between *Ham* and *Lipstadt*, while the *French* made themselves masters of *Warburgh*, *Dringleburgh*, and *Paderborn*. The situation of prince *Ferdinand's* army prevented *Broglie* from penetrating into *Hanover*, but could not hinder his joining the prince *de Soubise* at *Soest*. This junction obliged prince *Ferdinand* to call in all his posts, to defend himself against the *French*. He then secured the communication between *Lipstadt* and *Ham*. His left wing took post between the *Lippe* and the *Aa*; his main body occupied the height of *Wambeln*, and the prince of *Anhalt* the ground between *Illengen* and *Hohenover*. The marquis of *Granby* kept possession of the height of *Kirch-Denkern*, and general *Wutgenau* was encamped on the heath of *Untrup*, while the avenues and posts on the *Aa* and the *Sulbach* were guarded by piquets.

On the 15th of *July*, at six in the evening, lord *Granby's* French advanced posts were most furiously attacked and dislodged by the *French*; but he himself maintained his ground and repulsed the enemy. Next morning the *French* renewed their attack, which was chiefly directed against *Wutgenau's* corps. They were commanded by *Broglie* and *Soubise*; and, after a cannonade, which lasted five hours, they were routed by the allies, with the loss, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, at *Kirch-Denkern*, of 5000 men, that of the allies amounting to 300 killed and 1000 wounded, and 200 taken prisoners. This defeat reflected great dishonour upon the *French*, and created a dispute between their two generals. Their affairs, however, did not suffer in the main: they soon repaired their loss of men. *Soubise*, at the head of one part of their army, crossed the *Lippe* to besiege *Munster*, and another division under *Broglie* passed the *Weser*, to penetrate into *Hanover*. The hereditary prince was sent to cover *Munster*, and many skirmishes, mostly to the advantage of the allies, through the bravery of the *British* troops, happened. *Broglie*, industriously but wisely, declined a battle. The hereditary prince, on the 30th of *August*, took *Dorsten*; and *Soubise*, instead of besieging *Munster*, returned to *Hesse*, as prince *Ferdinand* did to *Paderborn*. In the mean while, prince *Xavier* of

*Saxony* bombarded and took *Wolfsenbuttle*, and drove the reigning prince of *Brunswick* to *Hamburgh*. Prince *Xavier*, after that, besieged *Brunswick*, but was driven out of his entrenchments by the hereditary prince, and obliged to abandon *Wolfsenbuttle* with great loss. To make some amends for those misfortunes, the *French*, under *Soubise*, took and plundered *Osnaburgh*, and another party of them reduced *Embsen* after a capitulation, which was infamously broke on their part; so that the boors of the country drove them out of the place soon after they took possession of it. The prince of *Conde*, with a detachment from *Soubise's* army, took *Mapper*; but the *French* were repulsed in an attempt they made upon *Bremen*; and the rest of the campaign was spent in skirmishes, which did more honour to the courage than to the judgment of either of the parties, as neither of them derived any solid advantage from their efforts.

IN the mean while, the *English* arms reduced the important island of *Martinico*, and the town of *Havannah* in *Cuba*, the particulars of which may be seen in former parts of this work. On the 4th of *June*, next campaign, prince *Ferdinand* attacked the *French*, under the marshals *d'Etrees* and *Soubise*, in their camp at *Graebenstein*, from four different quarters. The marquis of *Granby*, at the head of the *British* troops, distinguished himself in this action, which must have utterly ruined the *French* army, had it not been for the intrepidity and presence of mind of *Stainville*, one of their general officers, who sacrificed a fine body of infantry under his command, that he might favour the retreat of their cavalry. The same general again preserved the *French* army under prince *Xavier*, after it had retired precipitately over the *Fulda*; but the prince of *Conde* defeated the allies under the hereditary prince. By this time, all the material articles for a general pacification were settled between the courts of *London* and *Versailles*; and prince *Ferdinand*, who had again besieged *Cassel*, had that city surrendered to him. As if the rage of war could never be satiated, the most bloody encounter during the whole war happened at *Amœneburgh*, between the *French* and *English*, while their two courts in fact were at peace. The dispute was concerning a trifling post, which the *French*, by superior numbers and artillery, carried, and the subsequent definitive treaty here puts an end to the military history of *France* in this work.

Attack at  
Amœne-  
burgh.

Peace con-  
cluded.

No nation, perhaps, ever emerged from a state of civil slavery with more credit than the *French* have done within these forty years past. The prerogative, which, under the reigns of *Lewis XIII.* and *XIV.* were thought so sacred, that  
the

the disputing it must have been immediate death to any opponent, is now upon the point of being annihilated. The *French* nation have adopted the maxims of the *English*. Their parliaments have shewn themselves to be proof against all the arts, power, and prerogative of their prince, whose glory, they say, consists in the happiness of his people, and his being independent upon the church of *Rome*, and all ecclesiastical jurisdiction. In consequence of those maxims, they have exterminated out of *France* the order of the Jesuits; they have supported the dignity of their king against his ministry; they have punished the officers of the crown, who, from the phantom of prerogative, invaded the liberties of the *Gallican* constitution; and have carried the claims of liberty to as great a length as they ever were known to be in *England*.

### Sequel to the History of Germany.

**F**EW facts of great importance to history occur in this sequel, that are not mentioned in the histories of *Spain* and *France*. We have already seen the principal motions of *Europe* after the peace of *Utrecht*, in which we have given a view of the capital concerns of *Germany*; so that we have little more to add than what relates to the internal interests of that empire, especially as we have been so explicit in the wars between the *Germans* and *Turks*.

It is well known with what passion the emperor *Charles VI.* maintained the mode of succession in his own family, as prescribed by the Pragmatic Sanction. It was the favourite measure of his life and reign, but built upon a very disputable principle, as it excluded from the *Austrian* succession all the descendants of his elder brother *Joseph*, in favour of his own daughter. This Pragmatic Sanction was in reality intended to be a perpetual and irrevocable decree. By it the *Austrian* succession was, in the first place, to pass entire to the archduchesses his daughters; in the second place, to the archduchesses his nieces; thirdly, to the archduchesses his sisters; and after that, to the next right heir, whether male or female. The two daughters of his brother *Joseph* were married, one to the prince royal of *Poland*, electoral prince of *Saxony*; and the other to the electoral prince of *Bavaria*, who both of them succeeded to their father's dominions. Their

marriages, however, could not be effected till they took the most binding oaths to renounce all their claim upon the *Austrian* succession. The rest of *Europe*, though they guaranteed the Pragmatic Sanction, were extremely jealous of its consequences. A powerful prince, by marrying the heiress of the house of *Austria*, it was evident, must soon become an over-match for the rest of *Europe*; but different views prevented any material opposition to the Pragmatic Sanction.

Troubles of  
Germany  
after the  
decease of  
Charles  
VI.

THE elector of *Saxony*, who was chiefly interested against it, acceded to it on account of the emperor's assisting him with his interest in obtaining the crown of *Poland*; and the elector of *Bavaria* continued neuter, being unwilling to accept the Pragmatic Sanction, and unable to oppose it. *Charles VI.* by a concurrence of circumstances fortunate for his family, got the better of all difficulties before his death, which happened in the year 1740. He was succeeded by his eldest daughter *Maria-Theresa*, who soon saw herself in danger of being stript of her immense fortune. She had been married to *Francis Stephen*, duke of *Lorraine*, a prince of no power or importance, and therefore the less liable to excite any jealousy in the other *European* states. Though *France* had guaranteed the Pragmatic Sanction, yet she pretended that this guaranty could not take place in prejudice of a third power; and *France*, *Prussia*, *Saxony*, and *Bavaria*, all at once attacked her dominions. The *Prussian* monarch alone effectually carried his point. He had been left by his father immensely rich, and he had on foot a strong army, which he disciplined to the greatest advantage. He pretended, that the family of *Austria* had unjustly seized upon the fine duchy of *Silesia*, and he shewed *Europe* a new way of making war. Without publishing tedious manifestoes, or undertaking amusing motions, he marched his army into that duchy, while the *Austrians* beheld him with silent contempt. The *French*, notwithstanding their guaranty of the Pragmatic Sanction, broke it in favour of the elector of *Bavaria*, who, by their means, was chosen emperor, and recognized as such by all the powers of *Europe*.

King of  
Prussia  
seizes *Silesia*.

Disputes  
about the  
Austrian  
succession;

*MARIA-THERESA* now saw herself and her family in danger of wanting bread. *Belleisle*, who was, at once, the *French* general and minister, threatened to give her laws upon the bastions of *Vienna*; and the progress her enemies made in stripping her of her territories, was inconceivably rapid. In this distress, she fled to *Hungary*, where she assembled the states, and harangued them in a manner so effectual and pathetic, that they unanimously resolved to stand by her to the last drop of their blood. This country, which had formerly

merly been refractory to her family, was now its only support against the greatest powers in *Europe*. The house of *Austria*, had before this time, lost its great possessions in *Italy*. The elector of *Bavaria* claimed *Maria-Theresa's* dominions, under a will made by the emperor *Ferdinand*, brother to *Charles V.* from whom he was descended on the mother's side. The queen of *Poland's* right, as being daughter to the emperor *Joseph*, elder brother of *Charles VI.* was strenuously asserted by the house of *Saxony*; and the king of *Spain* himself claimed, by a maternal title, the whole of the *Austrian* succession. Many other small claims started up to other parts of her dominions. *Maria-Theresa* saw the storm gathering round her, and faced it with intrepidity. She held up the *Pragmatic Sanction*, which had been guarantied by the great *European* powers, as her defence, but it was regarded by *Great Britain* only. The immense opposition to her was greatly weakened by the *French* king not being a claimant, though he had a prior right to the king of *Spain*, as being descended, in a right line, from the eldest male branch of the house of *Austria*, by two princesses, the wives of *Lewis XIII.* and *Lewis XIV.* Had his most Christian majesty appeared as a claimant, all *Europe* would have united against him; and his not appearing as such, was more than a tacit acknowledgment of the validity of the last *Pragmatic Sanction*.

THE intention of *France* was already answered by giving which is to the empire a weak head, and dismembering it from the *saved by Austrian* succession. It would have been equally disagreeable *Great-Britain*, to her to have seen that succession possessed by the *Josephine*, as by the *Caroline* line, if at the head of the empire; and it is pretty evident, that the *French* ministry never were in earnest about aggrandizing the emperor they had made. *Maria-Theresa*, bred up in those stupid ideas of power which had been always attached to *Austrian* grandeur, had good sense enough to relax in some particulars. By an oath she took at her *Hungarian* inauguration, she gave her subjects leave to oppose her if ever she should invade their privileges, which won the hearts of that nation. She likewise took off many of the restraints and those awful distances which her family had always affected towards their inferiors, or rather those whom they considered as such. But in all this she sacrificed none of her real power. She knew that *Great Britain* looked upon the indivisibility of the *Austrian* succession as a capital point; and perhaps no prince ever adhered more sacredly to a maxim than *George II.* did to that. He was the soul of the *Protestant* interest in *Europe*, and he understood it well;

neither he nor *Maria-Theresa* ever dreamed of *Brandenburg* greatness. They had been accustomed to look upon that house, during the reign of his present *Prussian* majesty's father, in a contemptible light, without considering that his most despicable qualities laid the surest foundations for the greatness of his son. He had a most ridiculous affectation for military grandeur, and without entering upon any warlike expedition, he maintained 80,000 men. His son disciplined them, and made them soldiers. The father had a sordid passion for money. The son at his succession found his treasury equal to any enterprize, and his own genius was superior to all.

HE spoke to *Maria-Theresa* the language of good sense. He shewed her the inability of her opposing his designs upon *Silesia*; and offered, if she would yield it up, to guaranty her other dominions against *France* and all other powers. She heard him with contempt, and had the *Austrian* weakness to risk every thing rather than part with territory. In this she was privately encouraged by *George II.* and openly, by the spirit of indignation, which the *French* breach of the guaranty of the Pragmatic Sanction spread through the *English* nation. A single vote of a *British* parliament can raise millions of money, and consequently, thousands of men. It was easily obtained; and the moment it passed, the money was ready, even before it was raised, without waiting for the tedious forms that attend *French* or *Austrian* supplies. But the *British* generosity, great as it was, could not answer all the purposes of *Maria-Theresa*. Her spouse was an indigent prince. She had a vast extent of territory to guard, and nothing to depend upon but *English* money. The parliament, on the third of *April*, 1742, voted her the sum of 500,000*l.* and that 16,334 effective men should be sent to her assistance in *Flanders*, to which they were immediately transported. The earl of *Stair*, who was appointed to be their commander, was nominated ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary to the States-General, to bring them into the like measures for the support of public liberty. Those vigorous measures saved the house of *Austria* from apparent ruin. The king of *Sardinia* declared himself for *Maria-Theresa*, and the Protestant cause was re-established. But nothing could re-animate the public spirit of the *Dutch* government. They had, indeed, consented to considerable augmentations of their force both by sea and land, and they expressed themselves in the most cordial manner in favour of his *Britannic* majesty's system; but they could be brought to nothing more, because they were secretly in the *French* interest, tho' their

Generosity  
of the  
English  
parliament.



their subjects in general were even sanguine for the queen of Hungary.

GEORGE II. would willingly have averted the blow which he saw the king of Prussia was aiming at Silesia; but though Maria-Theresa owed him every thing she possessed, he could not persuade her to give up an inch of her dominions. Europe had not, for some years, seen such operations as were conducted by his Prussian majesty, nor an army so well disciplined as that which he headed. He entered, and rapidly over-run all Silesia. He was opposed by Neuperg, the Austrian general, and a battle was fought at Molwitz, near the river Neisse. The Prussian cavalry was defeated, their king's baggage was plundered, and he himself, in a manner, forced out of the field in the common rout. His second line of infantry, by that admirable discipline which he had taught them, retrieved the day and gained him the victory. The court of France, though under no special engagements to support the king of Prussia, found it was her interest not to oppose him. The count de Belleisle was ordered by the French king and his ministry, to draw up a scheme for distressing Maria-Theresa. He said he had one ready, and that he would answer for the success of it with his head; but that it would be ineffectual if it was executed by halves. He proposed that 50,000 French, of whom 20,000 were to be cavalry, should pass the Rhine, and advance towards the Danube, to second the operations of the Saxons, Russians, and Bavarians, who were then in arms against Maria-Theresa; while an army of 40,000 men was to enter Westphalia, and over-awe George the III's electoral dominions into a neutrality. This scheme had an appearance as if the French were resolved to give law to Prussia as well as Austria. He ordered his ministers at Vienna to declare, that he was willing to enter into a confederacy with Russia and the maritime powers, for the support of Maria-Theresa and the co-regency of her husband; that he would give him his vote at any future election of an emperor; and that he would immediately pay them down two millions of florins, if she would cede to him even the half of Silesia. She rejected all these propositions, and her husband was accused of having entered into a conspiracy for taking off the king of Prussia by violence.

THE elector of Cologne, brother to the Bavarian emperor, Confederately joined the French in their invasion of the Austrian empire's dominions, and the elector Palatine adhered to the same party. In short, Belleisle's scheme of invading the empire took place, to the apparent ruin of Maria-Theresa; and the Bavarian

Battle of  
Molwitz.

peror, at the head of his own and the *French* army, sent a summons to *Kevenhuller*, governor of *Vienna*, to surrender that city. An army under the *French* general *Maillebois*, had forced *George II.* to accept of a neutrality for his electoral dominions. The emperor was in possession of *Passau*, and had advanced as far as *Lintz*, the capital of the *Upper Austria*. The conduct of *France*, at this juncture, is unaccountable, otherwise than by supposing that they thought a *Bavarian* emperor, if too powerful, might prove as formidable to them as an *Austrian*; and that it was their interest not to extinguish, but to weaken, the power of *Maria-Theresa*. Instead of undertaking the siege of *Vienna*, to which the combined armies of *France* and *Bavaria* were advanced within three leagues, they turned off towards *Bohemia*; and being joined in the month of *November*, 1741, by 20,000 *Saxons*, they took *Prague* by surprise, and made the garrison, consisting of 3000 men, prisoners of war. The affairs of *Maria-Theresa* now appeared to be desperate; her competitor the *Bavarian* emperor had been crowned archduke of *Austria* at *Lintz*, king of *Bohemia* at *Prague*, and was chosen emperor at *Frankfort* on the 4th of *January*, 1742. The last was an empty title, but the two former struck at her vitals, as did the conquest of *Silesia* and *Moravia*, which was now almost compleated by the king of *Prussia*.

whose af-  
fair is mend.

IT has been observed, that few great confederacies against a single state have been successful. The differences that prevailed among the powers in alliance against *Maria-Theresa*, worked out her deliverance. The *Saxons*, *Prussians*, *French*, and *Bavarians*, accused each other, and all of them complained that *Belleisle's* plan of operations had been but partially executed. Instead of 20,000 cavalry, the court of *Versailles* had sent no more than 8000 into the field, and the whole of their army did not exceed 32,000; and marshal *Belleisle* was lying sick at *Frankfort*. The *Austrian* generals made incredible efforts for the relief of their mistress, and they were successful. The emperor had improvidently left but a few troops in the *Upper-Austria*; and *Transylvania*, *Croatia*, *Moldavia*, and other *Pannonian* counties scarce ever heard of before, poured out their thousands of hardy combatants in the cause of *Maria-Theresa*. Count *Kevenhuller*, who was reckoned one of the most accomplished generals in *Europe*, served under the great-duke of *Tuscany* in *Upper-Austria*, where the emperor's conquests were guarded only by about 15,000 *Bavarians*, and 8000 *French*. *Belleisle* had sensibly foreseen, that this handful of men must fall a sacrifice to the superiority of the *Austrians*. The grand-duke made himself master

master of *Lintz*, *Scharding*, and *Passau*; all *Bavaria* was over-run, and its elector lost his capital of *Munich* to *Mentzel*, an *Austrian* freebooter, on the very day when preparations were making to crown him emperor at *Frankfort*. The king of *Prussia*, it is true, was still successful; but he looked upon himself, through the *French* having failed in their engagements, to be detached from the confederacy; and he had, upon that head, upbraided the old marshal *Broglie*, who, upon the illness of *Belleisle*, had been sent to command the *French* army.

IN fact, his *Prussian* majesty, contented with securing his own interest, left his allies to their own fate, but not without fairly telling them so. The consequence was, that the *Austrian* generals, invigorated by *English* money, recovered *Austria*, secured the best posts in *Bohemia*, and desolated the emperor's electorate of *Bavaria*. Prince *Lobkowitz*, an active *Austrian* general, made head against *Broglie* in *Bohemia*, as prince *Charles* did against the king of *Prussia*, who was obliged to abandon *Olmütz*, with great part of his magazine and artillery. He attributed those misfortunes to the inability of *Broglie* to oppose *Lobkowitz*, which gave an opportunity to prince *Charles* of *Lorraine* to recover *Moravia*. The king of *Prussia*, for his own interest, was obliged to march to the relief of *Broglie*, and was followed by prince *Charles*; *The king of Prussia* but his *Saxon* confederates deserted him upon their entering *Bohemia*. On the 6th of *May*, 1742, the *Prussian* army, gains the battle of under its king, and the *Austrian*, under prince *Charles* of *Czasslaw*. *Lorraine*, fought a severe battle at *Czassaw*. The *Prussian* cavalry at first gave way, but the *Austrians* were in their turn repulsed by the admirable discipline of the *Prussian* infantry. Prince *Charles* was obliged to retire, and consequently may be said to have been defeated.

HIS *Prussian* majesty, after this battle, discovered that the *French* were rather his enemies than his allies; and that he had more to dread from them than from the queen of *Hungary* herself. King *George II.* had always been indefatigable in bringing about an accommodation between him and *Maria-Theresa*; and his *Prussian* majesty, when the world least expected it, accepted of his mediation. In about three weeks after the battle of *Czassaw* was fought, a treaty was signed, which gave up to him all *Silesia*; and it was agreed between them, that neither should assist the enemies of the other. *Prague*.

*MARIA-THERESA* never would have submitted to this mortifying treaty, had she not been forced to it by the impending dangers that surrounded her, and which were now diminished, but not extinguished. The emperor was abandoned

done by the peace, nor was *France* mentioned in it. *Maria-Theresa* soon persuaded the *Saxons* to withdraw their arms from both those allies, made a rapid conquest of all his electoral dominions, and forced him to shut himself up in *Frankfort*, while the *Austrians* besieged the *French* in *Prague*. That poor prince had now no dependence but upon *France*, whose army was in a most miserable situation. Notwithstanding this, the *French* general, the duke *de Harcourt*, taking post on the *Danube*, obliged *Kevenbüller* to evacuate *Munich*, which had suffered inexpressible barbarities and desolation from the licentiousness of the *Austrian* soldiers, especially the *Pandours*, who exceeded, if possible, in barbarity the antient *Goths*. The treaty with the king of *Prussia*, had left the queen of *Hungary* at liberty to send general *Festitz*, who commanded in *Silesia*, with 18,000 men to reinforce prince *Charles*, who was besieging *Prague*, which was defended by *Belleisle* and *Broglio*. The *French* offered to surrender not only that city, but *Egra*, and all the posts they held in *Bohemia*, provided all the *Austrian* troops should evacuate *Bavaria*, and the garrison of *Prague*, consisting of 28,000 men, was permitted to depart with their arms, artillery, and baggage. The emperor, on his part, made the like advantageous offers. The inherent *Austrian* pride would not suffer *Mary* to accept of those terms. She imagined the surrender of *Prague* to be inevitable, and she thought it would give her husband, who was sent for for that purpose, an éclat in *Europe*, if he commanded the army that took it. The siege was according formed about the end of *July*, and was attended with very extraordinary circumstances.

ALL *Europe*, as well as her *Hungarian* majesty, thought that the *French* garrison of *Prague* must surrender prisoners of war, which must have been the case, had the *Austrian* artillery been tolerably well served. The garrison was reduced to eat horse-flesh, and that of other unclean animals, for their subsistence, and the hardships they otherwise underwent were inexpressible. The *French* general, *Maillebois*, was ordered immediately to their relief; and he was joined in the *Upper Palatinate* by the *French* and Imperialists from *Bavaria*. Prince *Charles*, hearing of this, left *Festitz* to continue the siege of *Prague*, and marched with the main body of his army against *Maillebois*, whom he forced with infinite loss to fall back upon the *Palatinate*. In the mean while, the two *French* generals had obtained some advantages over *Festitz*; but upon the approach of *Lobkowitz* with a strong body of troops, they were obliged again to shut themselves up in *Prague*, where their condition appeared now more deplorable than

than ever. The genius of *Belleisle* exerted itself, upon this occasion, in a most amazing manner, notwithstanding his own indisposition, the inclemency of the weather, and the unhealthiness of his troops. He amused *Lobkowitz*, he imposed upon the inhabitants of *Prague*, and leaving a garrison of no more than 900 men, with proper directions how to act, he marched out of *Prague* in the night-time; and though followed by *Lobkowitz* as soon as his departure was known, *Their* he reached *Egra*, and from thence *Assace*, without any material loss from the enemy, while the small garrison he left in retreat. *Prague* obtained an honourable capitulation.

THIS wonderful retreat put *Mary* again in possession of the *War* be-capital of *Bohemia*. Being now supported by his *Britannic* <sup>between the</sup> majesty, her generals again ravaged the electorate of *Bava-* <sup>empress-</sup> *ria* to the very gates of its capital; which, for a third time, <sup>queen and</sup> fell into the hands of the *Austrians*. The emperor was then <sup>the Prus-</sup> a beggar and a fugitive, in his own dominions, at *Frankfort*, and made the most humiliating proffers for a neutrality, but they were rejected. *Mary's* unseasonable haughtiness awak-ened compassion in the breasts of many Protestant princes; particularly the king of *Prussia*, and *George II.* was touched with his deplorable condition. On the 9th of *June*, 1743, his *Britannic* majesty came to his camp upon the *Upper Maine*; notwithstanding the advantageous post occupied by the *French* general, the duke *de Noailles*, he gained the battle of *Dettingen* that same month; but used his victory with so much moderation, that it did not prove decisive against the *French*. In *September*, a treaty was concluded at *Worms* between his *Britannic* majesty, the queen of *Hungary*, and the king of *Sardinia*, the substance of which we have already given. Though *George II.* appeared so zealous for her *Hungarian* majesty, who by this time had been crowned at *Prague*, yet he thought that she ought to hear reason now that all the purposes of the *Pragmatic Sanction* were answered; and his *Prussian* majesty openly espoused the part of the distressed emperor, by making a sudden irruption into *Bohemia*. *Mary* beheld this amazing reverse of fortune with great firmness, though he made himself master of *Prague*, and the greatest part of that kingdom. The reduction of *Prague* happened on the 16th of *September*, 1744. He even talked of penetrating to *Vienna*, and it was now publicly known, that an alliance had been formed at *Frankfort* against the house of *Austria*, between him, the *French*, and the emperor. His *Prussian* majesty lost those conquests almost as rapidly as he had gained them. The *French* suffered prince *Charles* to re-pass the *Rhine*, and this obliged his majesty to evacuate *Bo-*  
*hemia*,

*hemia*, and even *Prague* itself, and to return with very considerable loss to *Silesia*.

THE emperor *Charles* died in the beginning of the year 1745, and the great-duke of *Tuscany*, husband to the queen of *Hungary*, was chosen in his room. *Mary*, before the emperor's death, had made peace with him. The war still continued between the *Prussians* and the *Austrians*; but the latter, with the *Saxons*, were defeated at *Niedburgh* in *Silesia*, and afterwards at *Standentz*. His *Prussian* majesty then made himself master of all the electorate of *Saxony*, and *Maria-Theresa* was at last compelled to make peace with him upon his acknowledging her husband as emperor. As the other events of this war are to be found in the foregoing parts of this history, we shall confine ourselves to those of *Germany*, of which a slight recapitulation will be sufficient. *Maria-Theresa* could not contentedly sit down with the loss of *Silesia*, and a secret alliance was formed between her, the empress of *Russia*, and the elector of *Saxony*, for dismembering the *Brandenburg* dominions. This alliance was discovered by the king of *Prussia*, who was, or pretended to be thereby exasperated beyond all measure. The system of *Europe* now received a total alteration. The empress queen, to support her plan, formed a strict alliance with *France*, as *Prussia* did with *Great Britain*. His *Prussian* majesty once more fell into the electorate of *Saxony*, which he again reduced, and made the *Saxon* army of 16,000 men prisoners. He afterwards, on the first of *December*, defeated the *Austrians* at *Lowositz*; and pushing forwards to *Bohemia*, on the 6th of *May* 1757, he gained a complete victory over *Brown*, the *Austrian* general, near *Prague*, which was immediately invested, and must have been taken, had not count *Daun*, another *Austrian* general, collected the remains of that army, and defeated his *Prussian* majesty at *Colin* so effectually, that he was obliged to raise the siege of *Prague*, to evacuate *Bohemia* with great loss, and to take refuge in *Saxony*.

COULD the empress-queen have acted with any degree of moderation in this prosperous state of her arms, she might have obtained a good peace at this time. The *French* were victorious in *Westphalia*, the *Russians* had entered the empire, and the *Austrians* had taken *Schweidnitz* and *Breslau*, in *Silesia*. The king of *Prussia* had gained the battle of *Rosbach* against the *French* and Imperialists; but that did not compensate for his other losses; he engaged *Daun* at *Lissa*, and gained a decisive victory over the *Austrians*, of whom 6000 were killed, and 1500 taken prisoners. The consequence was, that *Breslau* was retaken, and the *Austrians* once more

She forms  
an alliance  
with  
France.

more driven out of *Silesia*; and, in the beginning of *April*, 1758, *Schweidnitz* itself was retaken. The empress-queen was all this while firmly supported by her sister the empress of *Russia*, who poured her troops into *Germany*, defeated the *Prussians*, and when the *Austrian* affairs seemed desperate, retrieved them. The king did not fail, under all his difficulties, to shew himself a great soldier. Though he was obliged to raise the siege of *Olmütz*, and to retreat before *Daun*, yet he found means to re-enter *Silesia*, where he acted on the defensive; while *Daun* marched in concert with the army of the empire, to deliver *Saxony*; in which, after many operations, too complicated to be described here, he at last succeeded, after surprizing the king of *Prussia* and his army at *Hobkirsch*. The death of the empress of *Russia* delivered his *Prussian* majesty, when his affairs were thought to be irretrievable. Her successor, the hereditary duke, was as much his friend as she had been his enemy; and *France* and *England*, as we have already seen, being tired of the war, had entered into a negotiation, which the empress-queen had reason to believe would deprive her of the assistance of the *French*, as she had lost that of the *Russians*.

SHE was at war with no power but *Prussia*, and she reasonably concluded, that as she could not, without great difficulty, make head against that prince, even with the powerful assistance of *Russia* and *France*, she could be far less able to do it without them; and she had some intimations from the court of *Petersburgh*, that if she obstinately refused to conclude a peace, the *Russians*, who were still in the heart of *Germany*, would declare against her. She therefore wisely resolved, as soon as she knew that she must be deprived of the assistance of *France*, to conclude a peace with his *Prussian* majesty, which she accordingly did at *Hubertsburg*, and which left matters between them in the same condition as they were in when they went to war. She, however, reaped one advantage from this peace, which is her procuring her eldest son, the archduke *Joseph*, to be chosen king of the *Romans*, by which his succession to the imperial crown is secured.

THE histories of *Spain*, *Portugal*, *France*, and *Germany*, which we have brought down to the present time, in fact, include the great public transactions of the capital powers of *Europe*; and we shall, therefore, conclude this work, which has already run to so unexpected a length, with a short recapitulation of their affairs since the time of their having been broken off in this history to the present.

THE empress *Elizabeth* of *Russia*, after a most glorious reign, died on the 2d of *January*, 1762, in the career of

*Sequel to the histories of her Russia,*

her *German* victories, and left her empire to *Peter* the III<sup>d</sup>, who had been designed her successor. His attachment to the king of *Prussia* was entirely personal; and though generous, was ill-timed, because disagreeable to the *Russians*. In other respects, nothing could be more plausible than the commencement of *Peter* the Third's government. He recalled the prisoners that had been banished to *Siberia*, and among others the famous count *Biron*, who, from being a slave in that country, is now the sovereign prince of *Courland*, which he has rendered hereditary in his family. The reign of *Peter* III. was short. There had, for some time, been no good understanding between him and his princess; and he shewed dispositions for a war to recover his hereditary dominions of *Holstein* from the king of *Denmark*. A few weeks discovered his temper to be irregular, and his conduct impolitic. From a rage for reformation, and by the most extravagant behaviour, he disobliterated both the army and the clergy. He even preposterously attempted to abrogate the established religion of *Russia*. Those were measures which, joined to the intemperance, levity, and dissoluteness of his behaviour, rendered him equally odious and despicable. A conspiracy to dethrone him was formed among the great lords of the empire, who invited the empress to take upon her the imperial authority; a dignity, to which they thought her entitled, by her sufferings, her understanding, and her manners, which were the reverse of those of her husband. She accepted the invitation, and while her husband was indolently spending his hours at a country-seat, she mounted the throne of *Russia*, with the unanimous election and approbation of all orders of the empire. When news of this catastrophe was brought to the unhappy *Peter*, he endeavoured to escape, but was prevented, though he offered to resign the empire and retire to *Holstein*; and he was obliged to sign an unconditional resignation of his empire, and to acknowledge under his hand his inability to rule. A few hours after he had signed those mortifying deeds, it was publicly declared, as had been generally foreseen, that he was dead of a distemper which the court chose to call a hemorrhoidal cholick. The new empress *Catharine* II. daughter of the prince of *Anhalt Zerbst*, has, since her succession, outdone all the high expectations her subjects had formed of her genius, wisdom, and moderation, by preserving her husband's engagements with the king of *Prussia*, and contributing all that a great monarch can do towards the public tranquillity of *Europe*, and the prosperity of her dominions.

Poland.

*AUGUSTUS* III. king of *Poland*, elector of *Saxony*, had, at the time of the peace of *Hubertsburgh*, been a kind of an exile



exile in *Poland* from his electoral dominions. As he had great family-alliances, and the compassion of the public on his side, he had attempted to make one of his sons duke of *Courland*, and another bishop of *Liege*, but he failed in both; and he died of a lethargic distemper on the 5th of *October*, 1763, in the 67th year of his age. His eldest son declared himself a candidate for the crown of *Poland*, but he died on the 17th of *December* following, leaving behind him a minor son, under the tuition of prince *Xavier*. This prince, it is thought, is secretly favoured in his pretensions to the crown of *Poland* by the courts of *Vienna* and *Versailles*; but the interests of *Russia* and *Prussia*, with the general inclination of the *Polish* nation being against him, the elevation will probably fall upon a piast, or a native *Pole*.

THE present king of *Sweden* is *Adolphus Frederic*, of *Hol- Sweden*,  
*stein Eutin*, who mounted that throne in 1751. He married *Louisa Ulrica*, sister to his present *Prussian* majesty. Both of them are personages of great accomplishments and virtues, but have not an opportunity of exerting either their virtues or their talents, which are controuled by the senate. This senate has more power than is consistent with the form of a monarchical government. It was the ungovernable spirit of this senate that forced the *Swedes* to take part against the *Prussians* in the late war, which was equally prejudicial to their reputation as their interest; and, probably, the *Swedes* cannot, for many years, make that capital figure in the affairs of *Europe*, which they did at the beginning of this century.

THE king of *Denmark*, *Frederic*, who succeeded his fa- *Denmark*,  
ther in 1746, is a wise and understanding prince. He took no capital concern in the late war, but in ordering his minister, count *Lynar*, to settle the convention of *Olosterseven*, between the duke of *Cumberland* and marshal *Richelieu*. The improvement of the trade, manufactures, learning, arts, and police, of his kingdom, entirely employs his attention. Upon the death of his queen, *Louisa of England*, he married *Julia Maria* of *Brunswick Wolfenbuttle*, by whom he has a numerous issue. The prince-royal of *Denmark* is now about fifteen years of age. All the disputes that subsisted between *Russia* and *Denmark*, are amicably adjusted; and his *Danish* majesty is not only improving his *East-India* trade, but has made very considerable additions to the few possessions which he has in the *West-Indies* and *America*.

WE have, in the preceding work, sufficiently explained *Sardinia*,  
the views of the king of *Sardinia*, whose territories have been more encreased than those of any other prince in *Europe* since the year 1740. He has of late found means to obtain a confirmation and guaranty of that part of the treaty of *Aix la*  
Cha-

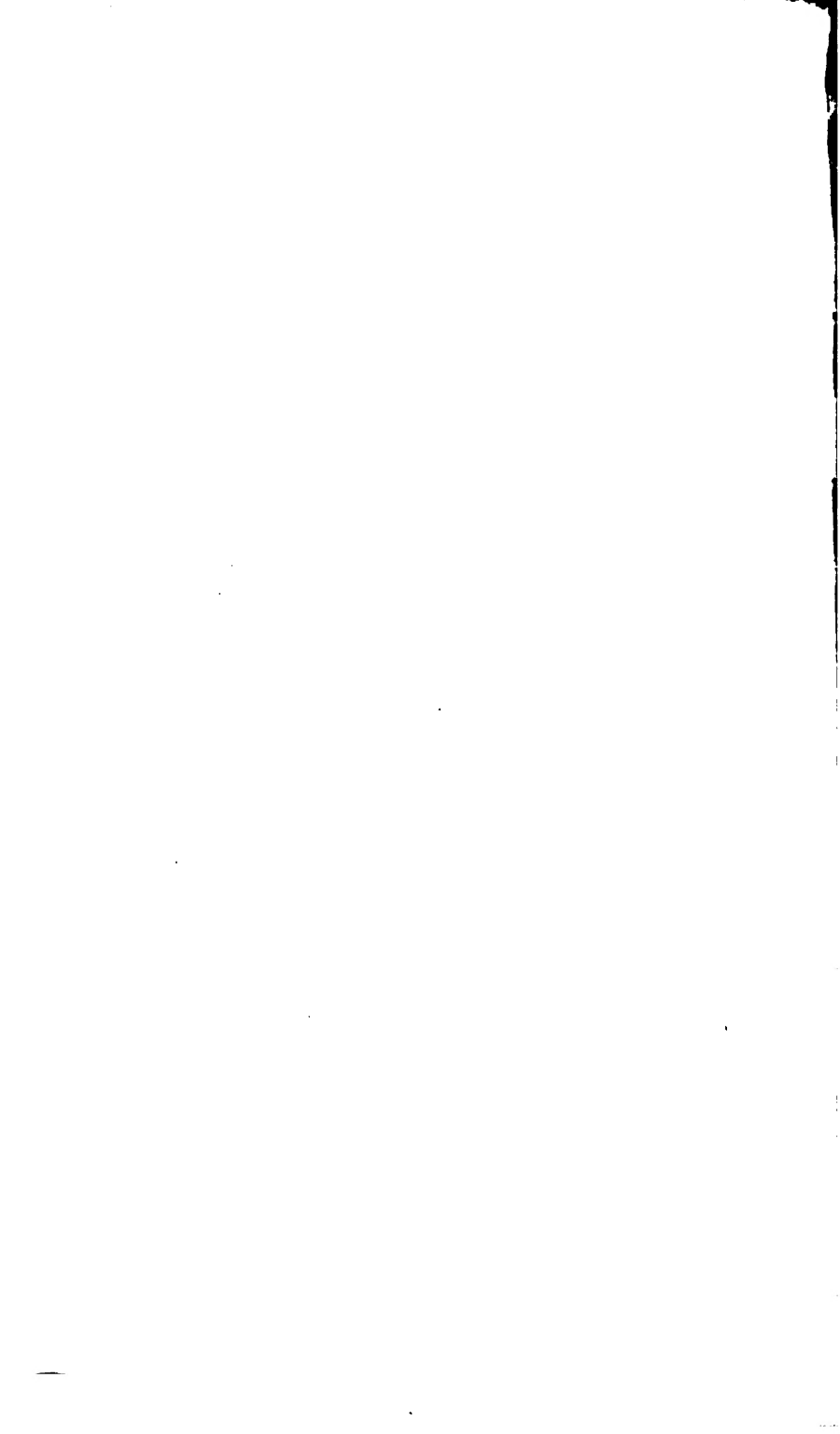
*Chapelle*, which establishes in him and his family the reversionary right to the duchy of *Placentia*, in case don *Philip* should die without heirs male, and the *French* pay him on that account a very considerable annuity. He beholds without any uneasiness the struggles which the *Corficans* are making for their liberties; and it is thought that he could not, without jealousy, behold any third power interfere between them and the *Genoese*, who, by the latest and best accounts, are upon the point of being driven out of that island. The affairs of the other powers of *Italy*, and likewise of the republic of *Holland*, are so complicated with those related in the preceding part of this history, that it is needless here to repeat them.

and Turkey.

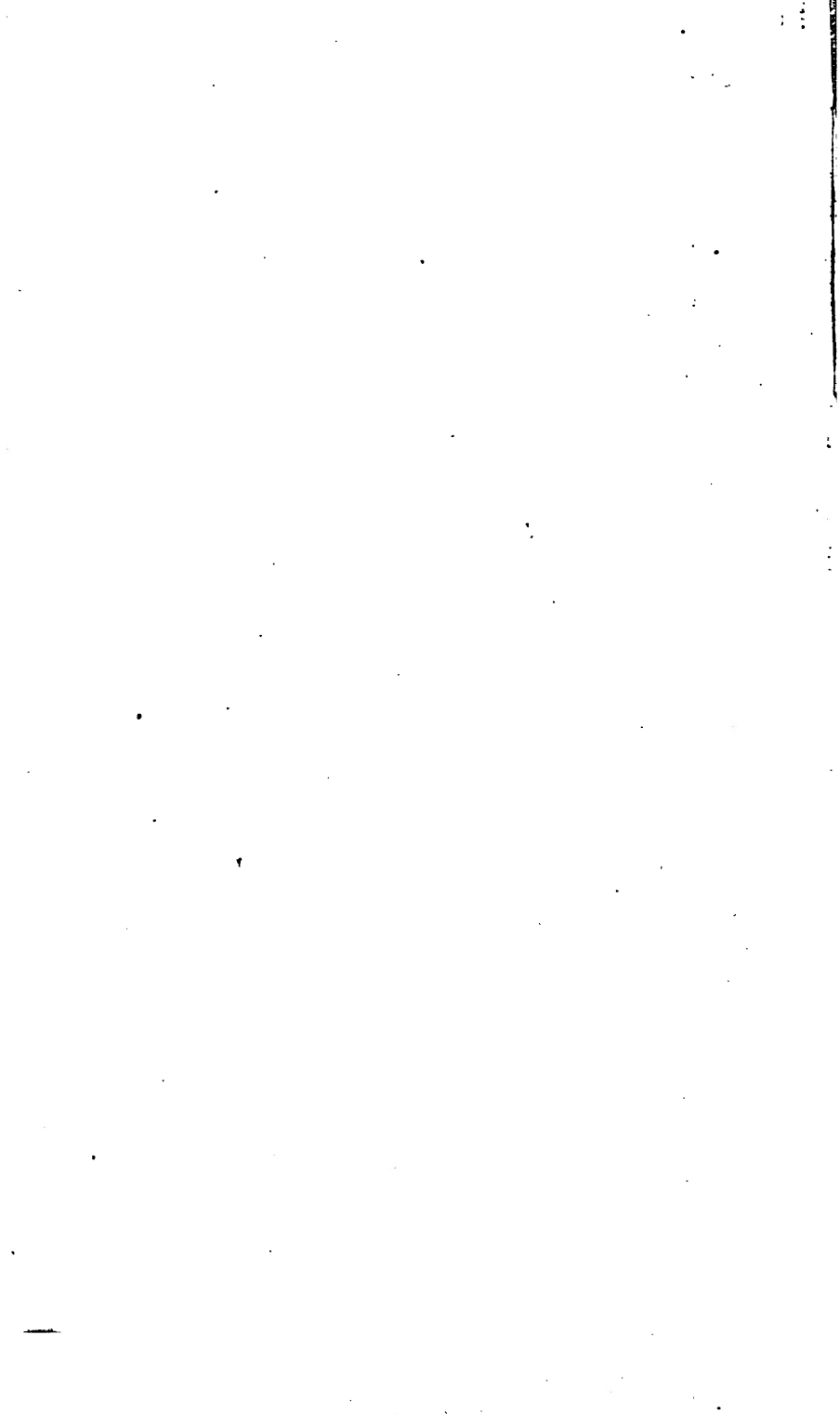
OUR history of *Turkey*, in the preceding part of this work, ended in 1699; and the principal transactions of that empire since are connected with the history of *Germany*. *Mos-tapha*, who was then sultan, being too much guided by his favourites, especially the musti, was deposed in 1703, and succeeded by his brother *Achmed*, who gave shelter to *Charles* king of *Sweden*, after the battle of *Pultowa*. It was in his reign that the famous treaty of *Pruth* was concluded with the czar *Peter the Great*; and it must be acknowledged, that he behaved with unexampled magnanimity and good faith towards both those *European* monarchs. In the year 1715, the armies of *Achmed* III. took from the republic of *Venice* all the *Morea*. In 1716, they were entirely routed by prince *Eugene* near *Peterwaradin*, and the Imperialists took *Temeswar*. Next year they received a still greater defeat near *Belgrade*, which likewise fell into the hands of the Imperialists; but a treaty between the two powers was made in 1718. A war breaking out with the *Persians*, sultan *Achmed* was deposed by an insurrection which happened at *Constantinople*, and was succeeded by *Mohammed* V. who made an advantageous peace with the *Persians*. That treaty being broken by the latter, the *Turks* were defeated at the battle of *Babylon*, or *Baghdad*. In a subsequent war, that broke out between them and the empires of *Germany* and *Russia*, they were successful against the former, but were obliged to make an inglorious peace with the latter. *Ozman* III. who succeeded to the *Othman* throne, died in 1754; and the present sultan, *Mos-tapha* III. seems to take a great deal more concern in the affairs of *Europe* than his predecessors have done for many years. He has lately joined the empress of *Russia* and his *Prussian* majesty, in expressing his hopes that the *Poles* would elect a piast for their king.

END of the FORTY-SECOND VOLUME.









B'D OCT 5 1914